MIDVAAL
INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN
2018/2019 REVIEW



FINAL REPORT

MAY 2018

FOREWORD EXECUTIVE MAYOR IDP 2018/19



The past year has been filled with many highs and some lows for us as a municipality, but through it all we remain united in our goal to make the people of Midvaal proud to call this municipality home. I am forever in awe of the resilience of this municipality and its people, which has become more evident through the challenges we triumphed over this past year.

When I came into this office in August 2013, part of our mandate was to ensure good governance because we strongly believe that for government to be able to fully carry out its mandate to serve the needs of its people and consequently improve their quality of life, the needs of those people need to be placed above any political or personal gains.

Indian Prime Minister Nahendra Modi once said “fighting corruption is not just good governance. It's self-defence. It's patriotism” and as a proud South African who’s one wish is to be part of securing a better future for the next generation, I understand the responsibility that we have in ensuring that our fight against corruption is not merely a philosophy but that it translates into a quality of life for all our communities.

We recognise that we cannot realise our vision **to inclusively serve the needs of our community** if we neglect our day to day practices, because good governance is the cornerstone of all-round development.
Every morning that we wake up and set out on the day’s tasks, the plight of our most downtrodden resident is as much at the top of our minds as is the question on how we can sustain and improve the lives of those who are more privileged. Notwithstanding the reality that the former will need more of our support and backing.

Our vision to improve the lives of all our residents goes beyond handouts. I believe that while providing housing, water, sanitation, electricity and other social services that many desperately depend on is important, it is indispensable that we also find ways in which we can create opportunities for our residents to become self-reliant. A self-reliant citizenry is necessary for many reasons; it eases the burden on governments, increases self-confidence, which consequently fosters better productivity and most importantly it’s a catalyst for sustainable development.

We continue to drive our commitment to realise our political theme to grow the economy and create employment.

It is for this reason that I am ecstatic to introduce the concept of what we have dubbed ‘Economic Development Centres’. These are economic hubs, which will be situated in the heart of our communities, focusing on specialised economic activities that will service businesses operating in the municipality and create employment for locals.

We can confidently assure our residents that these are not merely ambitions but plans that will be implemented. We have countlessly shown our commitment towards delivering on our promises, through our rolling clean audits and financial sustainability reports, cementing that we can be held to our word.

We have carefully considered your inputs during our IDP and Draft Budget meetings earlier this year, which have culminated in this document. Through this IDP, we hope to realise our collective goals as a municipality and fundamentally deliver on the aspirations of our people.

Proudly Midvaal



_____
Councillor Bongani Baloyi
EXECUTIVE MAYOR

FOREWORD MUNICIPAL MANAGER IDP 2018/19



The Integrated Development Plan for the period 2017/18-2021/22 was reviewed for the period 2018/19. The Municipality adopted a vision and mission statement that directed all current and future planning of the municipality. The fact that the vision is now more focused helps to ensure that the communities are served inclusively throughout Midvaal.

The focus on a credible and single implementation plan for Midvaal Municipality created a sound and stable foundation to ensure that IDP subscribe to this principle. The fact that South Africa economic forecast reflects slow and low growth for the short term requires alignment and dedicated focus on the limited resources available to the Municipality. Midvaal Local Municipality will only survive these difficult times if the Vision and Mission Statements are implemented to the full extent possible.

The human settlements plan which was included last year forms the basis for all future Infrastructure planning This plan is aimed at ensuring that the Infrastructure requirements are aligned to the future human settlements strategy. The planning for these settlements cannot be done without considering the requisite services and social amenities to create sustainable communities. The IDP will also give direction for the next five-year Bulk Infrastructure planning.

The implementation of new reporting requirements by National Treasury also necessitated the realignment of the budget layout. The budget would ensure implementation of the focus areas as per the approved IDP. The Service Delivery Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) would keep track of the goals and strategic key performance indicators that were developed for the medium-term expenditure framework.

The adopted IDP has now created a clear plan for Midvaal Local Municipality, emphasising the core values of the municipality. These values are as follows: Ethical Conduct, Accessibility, Collaboration, Innovation, Sustainability and Excellence. These values lay the basis for a municipality that strives towards a customer-centric approach across the whole Municipality.

Albert de Klerk
Municipal Manager

Contents

List of Tables 8
List of Figures 9
1. Introduction 11
1.1 Background 11
1.2 Legal Framework & Mandate 11
1.3 Cooperative Governance 12
1.3.1. National Development Plan 12
1.3.2. CoGTA – National KPAs for Municipalities 13
1.3.3. The New Growth Path 14
1.3.4. Gauteng City Region (GCR) 14
1.3.5. Gauteng Provincial Government's Ten Pillars 15
1.3.6. Sedibeng District Municipality 15
1.4 Political Vision for MLM 16
1.5 IDP Theme 2018/2019 17
1.6 Process Plan 17
1.7 MLM Performance Framework 20
2. Situational Analysis 27
2.1 Introduction 27
2.2 Analysis of Past Performance Analysis 27
2.3. Midvaal Overview & Demographics 46
2.3.1. Midvaal Overview 46
2.3.2. Spatial Demographics of Midvaal 47
2.3.3. Socio-Economic Demographics of Midvaal 48
2.4. Community & Stakeholder Level Analysis 59
2.4.1. Affluent Community 60
2.4.2. Township Community 60
2.5. Economic Analysis 61
2.5.1. Economic growth 61
2.5.2. Regional economic contribution 62
2.5.3. Economic activity by sector 63
2.5.3. Employment profile 63
2.6. Environmental Analysis 66
2.7. Institutional Analysis 66

2.7.1. Institutional Achievements 66
2.7.2. Institutional Challenges 67
2.8. Spatial Analysis 70
2.9. Municipal Level Summary SWOT 75
2.10.Identification of priority Areas 76
3. Five Year Development Plan 80
3.1 Introduction 80
3.2 Vision 80
3.3. Mission 80
3.3 Values 81
3.4 Strategic Themes 81
3.5. Governance Structure 84
3.6. Council Structure 85
3.7. Performance Framework 86
4. Support Plans 96
4.1. Financial Plan 96
4.1.1. Introduction 96
4.1.2. Financial Framework 96
4.1.3. Financial Strategies 99
4.1.4. Financial Policies 101
4.1.5. Budget Assumptions 104
4.1.6. Operating Revenue 105
4.1.7. Operating Expenditure 107
4.1.8. Capital Expenditure 109
4.1.9. Capital Expenditure Funding 111
4.1.10. Conclusion 112
4.2. Human Resource Support Plan 113
4.2.1. Introduction 113
4.2.2 Human Resources and Overview 113
4.3 Operating Context 114
4. 3.1 External Environment 114
4.3.2 Internal Environment 114
4.4 Strategic Direction for Human Resources 114
4.4.1 Staff Establishment 115
4.4.2 Workforce Planning 116
4.4.3 Recruitment 116
4.4.4 Performance Management 117

4.4.5 Continual Learning 117
4.4.7 Staff 117
4.4.8 Creating a safe and supportive workplace culture 118
4.5 Values 118
4.6 Goals and Objectives 118
4.7 Risk and Challenges 119
5. Performance Management 120
5.1. Introduction 120
5.2. Legislative and policy framework 120
5.3. Objectives of performance management 123
5.4 Performance management framework 124
5.4.1 Components of Performance Management Framework 124
5.4.2 Clarifying Roles and Responsibilities of Stakeholders and Role-players 124
5.4.3 Setting Measures/indicators and Targets 128
5.4.4 Performance Planning 131
5.4.5 Performance Measurement 132
5.4.6 Performance Monitoring 132
5.4.7 Performance Analysis 132
5.4.8 Performance Reporting 132
5.5. Performance Management Process 138
5.5.1 Municipal Level 138
5.5.2 Individual Level 139
5.6 Performance Auditing 141
5.6.1 The Role of Internal Audit in terms of Performance Management 141
5.6.2 Performance & Audit Committee 142
5.7 General Performance Management Issues 143
5.7.1. Managing Poor Performance 143
5.7.2. Reward and Recognition 144
5.7.3 Dispute Mechanism 146
5.7.4 Integrating PMS with the Council's existing Management Cycle 146
6. ANNEXURES: 149

ANNEXURES A1 - A271

List of Tables

Table 1: Midvaal Process Plan 17
Table 2: Definitions of KPAs 21
Table 3: KPAs aligned to governmental and political objectives 24
Table 4: Spatial properties of Midvaal 47
Table 5: GDP - Local municipalities of Sedibeng District Municipality, 2003 to 2013, share and growth 62
Table 6: Municipal Level SWOT 75
Table 7: Priority areas and opportunities 76
Table 8 - Detailed current challenges 77
Table 9: Emergent strategic themes 82
Table 10: Performance Framework Summary 86

List of Figures

Figure 1: MLM performance framework 20
Figure 2: Alignment between KPAs and Six Promises 22
Figure 3: KPA and KFA Framework 23
Figure 4: Midvaal Municipality Location in Gauteng Province 47
Figure 5: Growth Population and households in Midvaal 48
Figure 6: Population Density Map of Midvaal Area 49
Figure 7: Racial Profile of Midvaal Population 50
Figure 8: Midvaal Age Profile 50
Figure 9: Gender Profile of Mdivaal 51
Figure 10: Educational Profile of Midvaal 52
Figure 11: Average Household Income in Midvaal 52
Figure 12: Midvaal Geographic Regions 55
Figure 13: Dwelling Profiles of the Midvaal Regions 56
Figure 14: Map of LSM areas in Midvaal 57
Figure 15: Map of location of people living below the minimum living level 57
Figure 16: % of Households receiving services below the minimum standard 58
Figure 17: % Households served with premier service 59
Figure 18 : Key Socio-Economic Demographics 59
Figure 19: Disparity in Midvaal Household Income 60
Figure 20: Municipality contribution to district GDP 61
Figure 21: Size of regional economies, 2011 (at basic prices) - GVA 62
Figure 22: Economic activity by sector 63
Figure 23: Employment status Midvaal regions (economically active population), 2011 64
Figure 24: Employment status Midvaal regions (employed and unemployed population), 2011 64
Figure 25: Labour force participation rate of Midvaal LM compared to Gauteng Province ... 65
Figure 26: Labour absorption rate for Midvaal LM 65
Figure 27: Trends in Revenue & Expenses over the period 2013/14-2016/17 (Rmn) 67
Figure 28: Economic growth trends in Midvaal between 1996/97 and 2010/11 68
Figure 29: Draft Spatial Development Framework for the Midvaal Municipality 2018/19 71
Figure 30 - Alignment of challenges with KPAs 79
Figure 31 - Strategic Themes 82
Figure 32: Midvaal Governance Structure 84
Figure 33: Midvaal Council Structure 85
Figure 34 - KPA 1 Schematic 88
Figure 35 - KPA 2 Schematic 89
Figure 36 - KPA 3 Schematic 90
Figure 37 - KPA 4 Schematic 91
Figure 38 - KPA 5 Schematic 92
Figure 39 - KPA 6 Schematic 93
Figure 40 - KPA 7 Schematic 94
Figure 41 - KPA 8 Schematic 95
Figure 42: Operating Revenue Distribution for the 2017/18 Financial Year 112
Figure 43: Operating Revenue per Funding Source (2013/14 – 2019/20) 112
Figure 44: Operating Expenditure Distribution for the 2017/18 Financial Year 112
Figure 45: Operating Expenditure per Type (2013/14 – 2019/20) 112

Figure 46: Capital Expenditure per Department for the 2017/2018 financial year 112
Figure 47: Capital Expenditure per Funding Source for the 2017/2018 financial year 112
Figure 48: External Borrowings as a Percentage of Total Operating Revenue 112
Figure 49 Components of Performance Management Framework..... 124

1. Introduction

1.1 Background

The Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000, requires that local government structures prepare Integrated Development Plans (IDPs). The IDP serves as a tool for the facilitation and management of development within the areas of jurisdiction. In conforming to the Act's requirements, the Council of the Midvaal Local Municipality (MLM) has delegated the authority to the Municipal Manager to prepare the IDP.

The aim of the IDP for Midvaal is to present a coherent plan to achieve the vision of the municipality. The intention of this IDP is to link, integrate and co-ordinate development plans for MLM which is aligned with national, provincial and district development plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation.

1.2 Legal Framework & Mandate

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (1996) stipulates that the local sphere of government consists of municipalities which were established for the whole South Africa, the so-called wall-to-wall municipalities. The objectives of local government are set out in Section 152 of the Constitution as follows:

- To provide democratic and accountable government for local communities;
- To ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner;
- To promote social and economic development;
- To promote a safe and healthy environment; and
- To encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government.

In order to realise the above, the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (MSA) was enacted. Chapter 5 of the MSA states that a municipality must undertake developmentally oriented planning, in the form of integrated development planning, to ensure that it achieves the objects of local government as set out in the Constitution. It must further give effect to its developmental duties as required by Section 153 of the Constitution.

According to Section 25 of the MSA each municipal council must, after the start of its elected term, adopt a single, inclusive and strategic planning (IDP) for the development of the municipality which links, integrates and co-ordinates plans and takes into account proposals for the development of the municipality and which aligns the resources and capacity of the municipality with the implementation of the said plan. The IDP should form the policy framework and general basis on which annual budgets will be based and should be aligned with national and provincial development plans and planning requirements.

The Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) is regulated by National Treasury Circular No. 13 dated 2005 and Performance Management by Regulation 29089 dated 2006.

Chapter 3 to 5 of this IDP outlines in detail how the long-term vision of MLM translates into an effective plan that aligns the municipal budget, monitoring and evaluating mechanisms as well as timeframes for delivery.

1.3 Cooperative Governance

The Constitution (referenced in 1.2 above) further states that the three spheres of government are distinctive, inter-dependent and inter-related. They are autonomous, but exist in a unitary South Africa and have to cooperate on decision-making and must co-ordinate budgets, policies and activities, particularly for those functions that cut across the spheres.

Co-operative governance means that national, provincial and local government should work together to provide citizens with a comprehensive package of services. They have to assist and support each other, share information and coordinate their efforts. Implementation of policies and government programmes particularly require close cooperation between the three spheres of government.

A number of policies, strategies and development indicators have been developed in line with the prescriptions of legislation to ensure that all government activities are aimed at meeting the developmental needs of local government.

The following sections outline the national, provincial and district policy directives, sector plans and legislation that set the strategic direction and with which the Midvaal Local Municipality must align to ensure that government spending is directed at the pressing needs of the community and those that contribute towards economic growth.

1.3.1. National Development Plan

The South African Government through the Presidency has published a National Development Plan. The Plan aims to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030. The Plan has the target of developing people's capabilities to improve their lives through education and skills development, health care, better access to public transport, jobs, social protection, rising income, housing and basic services, and safety. It proposes to the following strategies to address the above goals:

1. Creating jobs and improving livelihoods;
2. Expanding infrastructure;
3. Transition to a low-carbon economy;
4. Transforming urban and rural spaces;
5. Improving education and training;
6. Providing quality health care;
7. Fighting corruption and enhancing accountability;
8. Transforming society and uniting the nation.

As the core of the Plan is to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality and the special focus on the promotion of gender equity and addressing the pressing needs of youth. More importantly for efficiency in local government the NDP proposes 8 targeted actions listed below:

1. Stabilise the political-administrative interface;
2. Make public service and local government careers of choice;
3. Develop technical and specialist professional skills;
4. Strengthen delegation, accountability and oversight;
5. Improve interdepartmental co-ordination;
6. Take pro-active approach in improving national, provincial and local government relations
7. Strengthen local government;
8. Clarify the governance of SOEs.

The National Development Plan 2030 has been adopted by the National Cabinet in August 2012 and this place an injunction on the state and its agencies (including municipalities) to implement the Plan.

The Plan makes the following policy pronouncements and proposes performance targets that intersect with developmental mandates assigned to local government. Importantly, municipalities are expected to respond to these developmental imperatives when reviewing their Integrated Development Plan and developing the corresponding three-year Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Frameworks.

1. Youthful population presents opportunities to boost economic growth, employment and reduce poverty;
2. Strengthen youth service programmes – community based programmes to offer young people life skills training, entrepreneurship training;
3. Increase employment from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million in 2030;
4. Ensure that skilled, technical, professional and managerial posts better reflect the country's racial, gender and disability makeup;
5. Establish effective, safe and affordable public transport;
6. Produce sufficient energy to support industry at competitive prices;
7. Ensure that all South African have access to clean running water in their homes;
8. Make high - speed broadband internet universally accessible at competitive prices.

1.3.2. CoGTA – National KPAs for Municipalities

Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA) assess the progress made by municipalities against five Key Performance Areas (KPAs) and cross-cutting interventions adopted in the 5-Year Local Government Strategic Agenda. The five KPAs that form the basis of the assessments are:

NKPA 1: Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development;
NKPA 2: Basic Service Delivery;
NKPA 3: Local Economic Development (LED);
NKPA 4: Municipal Financial Viability and Management; and
NKPA 5: Good Governance and Public Participation.

The above allow CoGTA to determine how well each municipality is performing, compare its performance to targeted goals, create measures to improve performance, identify the

municipalities that have under-performed and propose remedial action to improve performance of municipalities.

1.3.3. The New Growth Path

This National Policy Framework deals specifically with issues such as creating decent, reducing inequality and defeating poverty through “a restructuring of the South African economy to improve its performance in terms of labour absorption as well as the composition and rate of growth”. Important and of practical consequence to local government, are the specific job drivers that have been identified:

1. Substantial public investment in infrastructure both to create employment directly, in construction, operation and maintenance as well as the production of inputs, and indirectly by improving efficiency across the economy;
2. Targeting more labour-absorbing activities across the main economic sectors – the agricultural and mining value chains, manufacturing and services;
3. Taking advantage of new opportunities in the knowledge and green economies;
4. Leveraging social capital in the social economy and the public services; and
5. Fostering rural development and regional integration.

1.3.4. Gauteng City Region (GCR)

The Gauteng City Region has a long-term vision of building a Metropolitan System of Governance, realised through working in a seamless way and characterised by high levels of coordination and integrated planning.

The GCR’s vision is:

“*an integrated city region, characterised by social cohesion and economic inclusion; the leading economy on the continent underpinned by smart, sustainable and social-economic development*.”

The Sedibeng District in which Midvaal Local Municipality is located, has been identified as the southern development corridor and is expected to contribute to the region through the creation of new industries, economic nodes and cities.

The Development of the GCR is anchored on the Transformation, Modernisation and Re-Industrialisation programme as listed on section 1.3.5 below.

1.3.5. Gauteng Provincial Government's Ten Pillars

The Gauteng Provincial Government administration has adopted ten pillars aimed at radical socio-economic and political transformation towards the modernisation and re-industrialisation of the province's economy. The ten pillars are as follows:

1. Radical economic transformation
2. Decisive spatial transformation
3. Accelerated social transformation
4. Transformation of the state and governance
5. Modernisation of public service
6. Modernisation of the economy
7. Modernisation of human settlements and urban development
8. Modernisation of public transport infrastructure
9. Re-industrialisation of Gauteng Province
10. Taking the Lead in Africa's new industrial revolution

1.3.6. Sedibeng District Municipality

Through the National Growth Path, the National Government expects that all spheres of government must develop programmes which enhance sustainable economic growth to overcome the triple axis of poverty, unemployment and inequality through job creation and sustained through skills development targeting young people and women.

The Key Performance Areas (KPAs) of the Sedibeng District Municipality are aligned to the national and provincial strategic priorities and are the following:

R1: Sedibeng KPA 1: Reinventing the Economy from an old to a new by consolidating existing sectors and exploring new sectors of growth and in this way, build local economies to create more employment and sustainable livelihoods.

R2: Sedibeng KPA2: Renewing our communities from low to high quality through the provision of basic services, improving local public services and broadening access to them, and regenerating and property development to improve the quality of living.

R3: Sedibeng KPA 3: Reviving a Sustainable Environment from waste dumps to a green region, by increasing the focus on improving air, water, and soil quality and moving from being a producer and receiver of waste to a green city.

R4: Sedibeng KPA 4: Reintegrating the region with the rest of Gauteng, South and Southern African to move from an edge to a frontier region, through improving connectivity and transport links.

R5: Sedibeng KPA 5: Releasing Human Potential; from low to high skills and build social capital through building united, non-racial, integrated and safer communities.

G1: Sedibeng KPA 6: Good and Financially Sustainable Governance; through building accountable, effective and clean government, with sound financial management, functional

and effective Councils, and strong, visionary leadership. It is about compliance and competence.

D1: Sedibeng KPA 7: Vibrant Democracy; through enabling all South Africans to progressively exercise their constitutional rights and enjoy the full dignity of freedom. To promote more active community participation in local government, including further strengthening the voice of communities and making sure that community based structures such as ward committees, police forums, school governing bodies are legislatively supported to function effectively.

1.4 Political Vision for MLM

In addition to the National, Provincial and District objectives presented in Section 1.3, MLM must also align to the political vision for the municipality. The political vision can be derived from the six electoral promises made by the Executive Mayor to the Midvaal community. They can be defined as follows:

Promise 1: To be Youth Biased

To prioritise uplifting the youth through the creation of productive activities in an enabling environment, empowering them to participate and contribute towards the success of Midvaal.

Promise 2: Be an open, transparent, honest and responsive government

To be a trustworthy Municipality that responds with efficiency and integrity in the best interests of our people.

Promise 3: Grow the economy

To incubate an enabling business environment, which fosters job creation and is supportive of key sectors, in order to address inequality and improve standard of living.

Promise 4: Quality & standardised service delivery

Excellent service delivery for more with greater inclusiveness delivered through improved efficiency and innovation.

Promise 5: Safe communities and environment

To create an environment safe from crime and which is proactive with respect to disasters.

Promise 6: Fight the demarcation Board

To continue the fight to ensure that Midvaal remains an independent and thriving municipality for the people

1.5 IDP Theme 2018/2019

Following the Political Vision as set out in 1.4 above, The MLM Executive Mayor has expressed the approach to further the attainment of the vision by focussing on Manifesto Promise 3: Grow the Economy. The promise is further expanded by promoting the below mentioned IDP Theme as the Municipality's primary focus for 2018/2019

The IDP Theme for 2018/2019 thus is: Growth and Employment with a specific focus on the Key sectors for growth:

- Agriculture;
- Construction;
- Tourism and;
- Commercial (Retail)

During the year 2018 /2019, The Midvaal Local Municipality will introduce plans and measures that will seek to simultaneously advance employment creation for its community within the above mentioned sectors while growing the local economy.

1.6 Process Plan

Table 1: Midvaal Process Plan

Current Approved Date	Activity
14 August 2017	Final Virements for the 2016/2017 financial year to be approved by the Mayoral Committee.
24 August 2017	Approval of Key Deadlines as required by Section 21 of the MFMA as well as the IDP Process Plan as required by the Municipal Systems Act.
24 August 2017	Council approval of the Annual Financial Statements and Draft Annual Report for the 2016/2017 financial year.
31 August 2017	Submission of Annual Financial Statements and Draft Annual Report for the 2016/2017 financial year to the Auditor General for auditing.
18 September 2017	Budget Steering Committee to review comments received from NT and PT regarding the 2017/2018 budget process as well as the approval of parameters for the compilation of the 2018/2019 budget.
October to November 2017	Tariff modelling using COGTA Tariff setting model.
October to November 2017	Departments to prepare draft mSCOA compliant operating budgets – particular focus on Fund, Project and Item. Projects to be derived from IDP and clear link to be established.
27 October 2017	Departmental submissions of Adjustments Budget for 2017/2018.
13 November 2017	MM / HOD's meeting to discuss Adjustments Budget for 2017/2018 financial year.
15 November 2017	Departmental submissions of Draft Capital Budget for 2018/2019:

	- Compilation of project plans (including outputs and outcomes to be achieved) - Motivations for new projects - Analysis of impact on operating budget. - mSCOA compliant, particular focus on Region and Project.
20 November 2017	MM / HOD's meeting to discuss Adjustments Budget for 2017/2018 (for finalisation).
20 November 2017	Budget Steering Committee to consider Adjustments Budget for 2017/2018.
30 November 2017	Finance department to submit Draft Operating Budget for 2018/2019 to departments for comments (including proposed tariffs).
4 December 2017	MM / HOD's meeting to discuss Draft Operating Budget for 2018/2019 (inclusive of tariff increases).
January and February 2018 **(Detailed dates to be determined by the Office of the Speaker)**	Public Engagement in terms of sections 28 and 29 of the Municipal Systems Act: - Advertisement of time-schedule on website, local newspapers and notice boards - Acknowledgement of inputs received.
January 2018	Departments to confirm Capital Budget Projects based on latest IDP ward analysis and need collation – adjustments to Capital Budget to be made where applicable.
25 January 2018	Tabling of Annual Report (inclusive of Final AFS and AG report) and MPAC Report for the 2016/2017 financial year to Council: - Tabling of Annual report to Council - Annual report made public - Oversight report made public.
25 January 2018	Council to approve main adjustments budget.
25 January 2018	Council to approve 2017/2018 mid-year review.
February 2018	Corporate Services to confirm all tariff submissions and by-laws for legal compliance.
February 2018	Budget Steering Committee to consider final balanced budget and budget related policies, IDP and SDBIP (final consideration, weekly meetings).
29 March 2018	Formal tabling of Draft IDP, Budget and SDBIP to Council in terms of the MFMA and the Municipal Systems Act.
30 March 2018	Advertise and publish final draft of IDP and Budget for public comment and submit to National and Provincial Treasury and others as prescribed by the MFMA and Municipal Systems Act. Submission of IDP to MEC for Comments.

	Submission of Budget to NT for Comments (Including upload files in printed and electronic format). Submission of draft IDP / Budget to organs of state.
April 2018	Engagements with National and Provincial Treasury regarding the tabled IDP, Budget and SDBIP.
April 2018	Workshop with all councilors regarding the IDP and Budget.
April 2018 **(Detailed dates to be determined by the Office of the Speaker)**	IDP and Budget Hearings in terms of section 74 of the Municipal Systems Act and section 23 of the MFMA: - Conduct IDP/Corporate Scorecard / Budget Public Hearings to obtain public comment and inputs from communities, provincial government and other relevant stakeholders (performed through ward councilors) - Comments to be provided in writing - Acknowledgement of comments received - Response to public comment i.r.o. Budget, tariffs and policies (to Budget Steering Committee).
7 May 2018	Budget Steering Committee to consider final IDP, Budget and SDBIP.
14 May 2018	Section 80 Committee and Mayoral Committee to recommend final IDP, Budget and SDBIP.
31 May 2018	Council to approve final IDP and Budget. SDBIP to be noted by Council. Council must give final approval of the IDP/Corporate Scorecard and Budget document by resolution, setting taxes and tariffs, approving changes to the IDP and budget related policies, approve measurable performance objectives for revenue by source and expenditure by vote before the start of the financial year as required by sections 23 and 24 of the MFMA and section 25 of the MSA.
8 June 2018	Making public of approved IDP / Budget as per the MFMA and MSA requirements. Tariff and By-law Promulgation. Submission of approved IDP to MEC for Local Government and Housing. Submission of approved IDP and Budget to NT (Including upload files in printed and electronic format).
14 June 2018	Submission of Draft SDBIP to Executive Mayor: - Executive Mayor to receive Draft Municipal SDBIP within 14 days after approval of the budget.
28 June 2018	Approval of SDBIP by Executive Mayor:

	- Executive Mayor to approve Municipal SDBIP within 28 days after approval of the budget - Place all Directorate Executive Summaries and SDBIPs and Department Business Plans and SDBIPs on website.
12 July 2018	Section 57 (MSA) Performance Agreements: - Submit performance agreements to the Executive Mayor within 10 days after approval of the IDP and Budget. - Council to note New Section 57 Scorecards. - Performance agreements of Municipal Manager and senior managers to be made public no later than 14 days after the approval of the SDBIP.

1.7 MLM Performance Framework

In order to support the national, provincial and district policies, plans and objectives (as set out in 1.3 above) as well as deliver on the political vision for Midvaal (as set out in 1.4 above) MLM has developed a performance framework which is aligned to and supports the objectives of both.

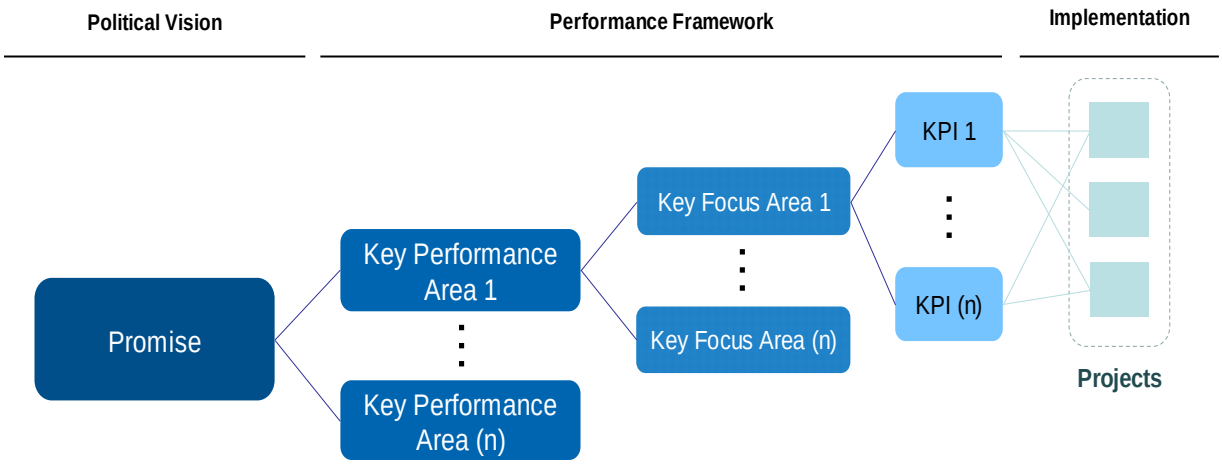


Figure 1: MLM performance framework

The MLM Performance Framework (as depicted in Figure 1) is composed of Key Performance Areas (KPAs) which are the areas of focus required for the Municipality to achieve its strategic objectives, and are aligned with the Promises made as part of the political vision. MLM has developed eight KPAs, the definitions of which are presented in Table 2, below. The eight KPAs have been closely aligned to governmental and political objectives with the detailed association provided in Table 3. Further granularities with respect to the alignment to political objectives are provided in ***Figure 2*** below.

The KPAs have been further broken down into focus areas for implementation referred to as Key Focus Areas (KFAs), see **Figure 3**, the focus areas segment the KPA into its constituent opportunities and are supported by Key Performance Indicators (KPIs), which are turn achieved through project implementation.

The cascading of performance from KPA through to KPI, ensures that all project contribute in some way to the achievement of a MLM strategic objective and in turn District, Provincial and National objectives.

Table 2: Definitions of KPAs

KPA	Definition
KPA 1: Good Governance & Public Participation	To promote increased participation and improved communication with all key internal and external stakeholders
KPA 2: Safety & Environment	To create a sustainable environment safe from harm
KPA 3: Social & Community Development	To create an environment focussed on uplifting the youth, the poor and the most vulnerable
KPA 4: Institutional Transformation	To transform and align the people, processes and systems of the municipality to achieve its objectives
KPA 5: Financial Sustainability	To improve the financial sustainability and capacity of the municipality, whilst adhering to statutory requirements
KPA 6: Physical Infrastructure & Energy Efficiency	To ensure efficient infrastructure and energy supply that will improve the quality of life of the community
KPA 7: Services & Customer Care	To deliver inclusive and excellent services to the community
KPA 8: Economic Growth & Development	Increasing the GDP of the local municipality and improving the economic and social well-being of its people



Figure 2: Alignment between KPAs and Six Promises

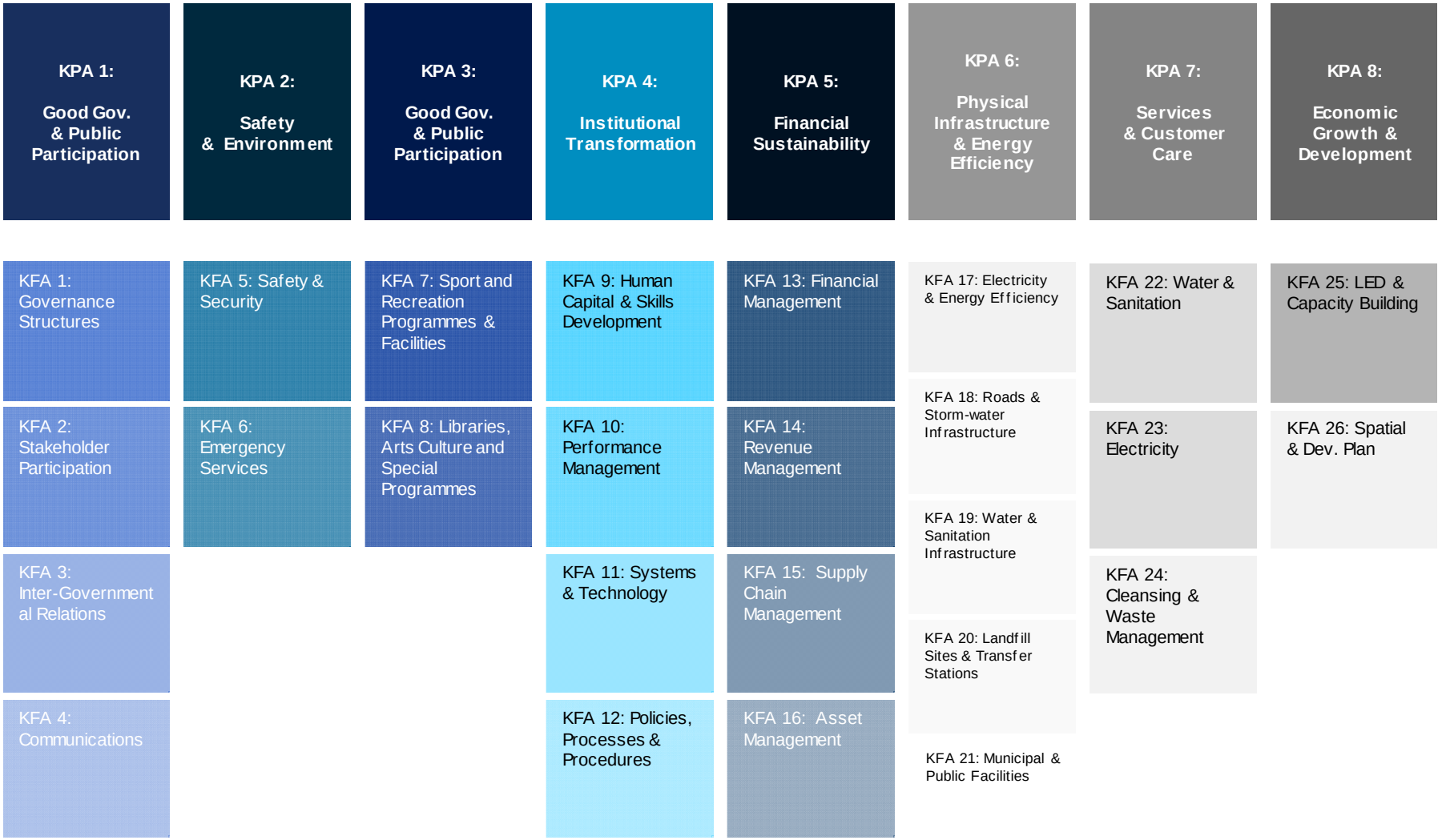


Figure 3: KPA and KFA Framework

Table 3: KPAs aligned to governmental and political objectives

National KPAs	Gauteng Ten Pillars	Sedibeng KPAs	Midvaal Political Vision	MLM Performance Framework
NKPA 5: **Good Governance & Public Participation**	**GC Pillar 4:** Transformation of the state and governance	**KPA 6 (G1):** Vibrant Democracy	**Promise 2:** Be an open, transparent, honest and responsive government	**KPA 1:** **Governance and Stakeholder Participation**
NKPA 2: **Basic Service Delivery** ***All people in SA are and feel safe***		**KPA 6 (G1):** Vibrant Democracy	**Promise 5:** Safe communities and environment	**KPA 2:** **Safety & Environment**
NKPA 3: **Local Economic Development** ***Sustainable Human Settlements and improved quality of HH Life***	**GC Pillar 3** Accelerated social transformation	**KPA 2 (R2):** Renewing our communities	**Promise 5:** Quality and standardised service delivery	**KPA 3:** **Social and Community Development**

National KPAs	Gauteng Ten Pillars	Sedibeng KPAs	Midvaal Political Vision	MLM Performance Framework
NKPA 1: **Municipal Transformation & Development** ***A responsive, accountable*** ***effective and efficient local government***	**GC Pillar 4:** Transformation of the state and governance	**KPA 5 (R5):** Releasing Human Potential	**Promise 2:** Be an open, transparent, honest and responsive government	**KPA 4:** **Institutional Transformation**
NKPA 4: **Municipal Financial Viability & Management** ***A responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government***	**GC Pillar 1:** Radical economic transformation	**KPA 6 (G1):** Good and financial sustainable governance	**Promise 2:** Be an open, transparent, honest and responsive government	**KPA 5:** **Financial Sustainability**

National KPAs	Gauteng Ten Pillars	Sedibeng KPAs	Midvaal Political Vision	MLM Performance Framework
NKPA 2: **Basic Service Delivery** ***Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of HH life***	**GC Pillar 8:** Modernisation of public transport infrastructure	**KPA 2 (R2):** Vibrant Democracy	**Promise 5:** Quality and standardised service delivery	**KPA 6:** **Physical Infrastructure and Energy Efficiency**
NKPA 2: **Basic Service Delivery** ***Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of HH life***	**GC Pillar 7:** Modernisation of human settlements and urban development	**KPA 3 (R3):** Reviving a sustainable environment	**Promise 5:** Quality and standardised service delivery	**KPA 7:** **Services and Customer Care**
NKPA 3: **Local Economic Development** ***Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of HH life***	**GC Pillar 6:** **Modernisation of the economy**	**KPA 1 (R1) & KPA 4** **Reinventing the economy and region**	**Promise 6:** **Grow the economy**	**KPA 8:** **Economic Growth and Development**

2. Situational Analysis

2.1 Introduction

This chapter in accordance with the requirements of the Municipal Systems Act provides a situational analysis of the existing conditions and trends in the Midvaal Local Municipality.

2.2 Analysis of Past Performance Analysis

A performance analysis was conducted across the eight KPAs in order to inform the current performance and status quo of MLM.

NOTE: The Performance Framework presented in this structure represents a historical KPA-KFA framework. The KPA-KFA Framework highlighted in Chapter 1 is representative of the newly developed Framework for the upcoming administrative period. The number of KPAs is consistent between the frameworks however the KFA list has changed from 33 to 26.

The performance analysis is presented as a rating system with three evaluation criteria, as follows:

1.	☺	Good performance / implementation / standard
2.	😐	Average performance / standard OR policy in place with average implementation
3.	☹	Poor performance / standard OR no performance / function

The key benefit of this performance review framework is the ability to rapidly monitor the current areas of strengths and weaknesses of the Municipality. Moreover, it provides the ability to evaluate trends, allows decisions to be made on areas which require immediate attention. Below is the current performance of the Municipality.

KPA 1: GOVERNANCE AND STAKEHOLDER PARTICIPATION

KFA 1: GOVERNANCE AND STRUCTURES

Governance and Structures

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Council has been duly elected and is fully functional	☺	☺
2.	Executive Mayor and Mayoral Committee	☺	☺
3.	Sect 80-Committees	☺	☺
4.	Sect 79-Ethics Committee	☺	☺
5.	Sect 79-Municipal Public Accounts Committee (MPAC)	☺	☺
6.	Sect 79-Naming Committee	☺	☺

7.	Sect 79-Petitions Committee	☺	😐
8.	Sect 79-Gender Committee		☺
9.	Performance & Audit Committee	☺	☺
10.	IDP Representative Forum	☺	☺
11.	Office of the Speaker	☺	☺
12.	Ward Committees in all 15 wards	☺	☺
13.	Office of the Chief Whip	☺	☺
14.	Municipal Code (By-laws)	☺	☺
15.	Town Planning Tribunal	☺	☺

Risk Management

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Anti-Fraud and Corruption Management	☺	☺
2.	Risk Matrix	😐	☺
3.	Risk Management Policy	☺	☺
4.	Risk Register (Strategic & Operational)	😐	☺
5.	Risk Committee	☺	☺
6.	Risk Management Committee	☺	☺
7.	Incident Register	☺	☺
8.	Disaster Management Plan / Risk Management Plan / Business Continuity Plan	😐	😐

KFA 2: STAKEHOLDER PARTICIPATION

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Petitions Policy	☺	☺
2.	Petitions Committee	☺	☺
3.	Resources and Procedures	☺	☺
4.	Functional ward committees in all 15 wards	☺	☺
5.	Participation in IDP and Budget process	😐	😐
6.	Annual People's Assembly/ SOMA	☺	☺

KFA 3: INTER-GOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS (IGR)

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Premier's Co-ordinating Forum (PCF)	🙂	🙂
2.	Technical PCF	🙂	🙂
3.	MEC/MMC Fora	😐	😐
4.	SALGA	😐	😐
5.	District Fora	😐	😐

KFA 4: COMMUNICATIONS (INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL)

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Communications Policy	🙂	🙂
2.	Communications Plan	🙂	🙂
3.	Marketing Plan	🙂	🙂
4.	Communications and Marketing Unit	😐	😐
5.	Budget and Resources	😐	😐
6.	Internal Newsletter	🙂	🙂
7.	External Newsletter	🙂	🙂
8.	Complaints Management System	🙂	🙂
9.	Media Releases	🙂	🙂
10.	Stakeholder Engagement	🙂	🙂
11.	Branding	🙂	🙂
12.	Corporate Identity Manual	🙂	🙂
13.	Advertising and Marketing	😐	🙂
14.	Events	🙂	🙂
15.	Telephone Systems	😐	🙂
16.	Regular internal management meetings	🙂	🙂
17.	Departmental Meetings	🙂	🙂
18.	Regular Mayoral Strategic Sessions	🙂	🙂
19.	Functional Website and Compliance with Sect 75 of MFMA	🙂	🙂
20.	Functional Ward Committees in all 15 wards	🙂	🙂
21.	People's Assembly / SOMA	🙂	🙂
22.	E-mail System	🙂	🙂

KPA 2: SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT

KFA 5: SAFETY & SECURITY

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Traffic Administration	😐	😐
2.	Community Training/ Projects	😐	😐
3.	Community Policing Forum (**Expansion of the coverage and operation of CCTV cameras & enhanced communication, between all sector policing forums)**	🙂	🙂

Environmental Management

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Environmental Management Framework (EMF)	😐	😐

Disaster Management

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Disaster Management Plan	😐	😐
2.	Disaster Management Centre	☹	☹

KFA 6: EMERGENCY SERVICES

EXISTING FACILITIES		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Meyerton Fire Station SANS 090-Standard	🙂	🙂
2.	Vaal Marina Fire Station SANS 090-Standard	😐	😐
3.	Fire Prevention	🙂	🙂
4.	Community Training /Projects	😐	😐

Law Enforcement

EXISTING ACTIVITIES		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Informal Trading By-law Enforcement	😐	😐
2.	Poster Management	😐	😐
3.	CCTV Project	😐	😐
4.	Crime Prevention	🙂	😐

5.	Fire By-law Enforcement	😐	😐
6.	Traffic Law Enforcement	😐	🙂
7.	Speed Law Enforcement	🙂	🙂
8.	Building and Land use Enforcement	🙂	🙂
9.	Outdoor Advertising Enforcement	😐	😐

KPA 3: SOCIAL AND COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT

KFA 7: SPORT AND RECREATION PROGRAMMES AND FACILITIES, INCLUDING PARKS AND OPEN SPACES

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Sicelo community facility, Sport Hall with ablutions and kitchen & Basketball & Netball court, Soccer field with ablutions office rooms and kitchen. Caretaker house	🙂	🙂
2.	Bantu Bonke community facility, Hall with ablution and kitchen & Soccer field with ablutions	🙂	🙂
3.	Meyerton Swimming Pool office and ablutions & Caretaker house	🙂	🙂
4.	Meyerton Sports Club, Cricket field with ablutions, Soccer & Rugby field with ablutions, Ring Ball Courts & Clubhouse with ablutions, Bowling greens & Clubhouse	🙂	🙂
5.	Lake side Park, Lake side	🙂	🙂
6.	Ohenimuri Park, Ohenimuri	🙂	🙂
7.	Riversdale Park, Riversdale	🙂	🙂
8.	Danie Mclean Park, Rothdene	🙂	🙂
9.	Park in Pierneef Street , Meyerton Town	🙂	🙂
10.	Park at cnr Pierneef and Shippard Str, Meyerton Town	🙂	🙂
11.	Japonica Str. Park Golf Park	🙂	🙂
12.	Oval Park Henley on Klip	🙂	🙂
13.	Frasher Park Henley On Klip	🙂	🙂
14.	Henry Str. Park Risiville	🙂	🙂
15.	Annet Str. Park Risiville	🙂	🙂
16.	Cypress str. Park Noldick	🙂	☹

Clinics

AREA		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Meyerton Clinic	☺	☺
2.	Randvaal Clinic	☺	☺
3.	Kookrus Clinic	☺	☺

Cemeteries

EXISTING ACTIVITIES		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Meyerton	☺	☺
2.	Kliprivier	😐	😐
3.	Kookrus	☺	☺
4.	Sybrand van Niekerk (Inactive)	😐	😐
5.	Riversdale	☺	☺
6.	Required Additional Cemeteries/Crematoria	😐	😐
7.	Mamello	☹	☹
8.	Savanna City	☹	☹
9.	Cemetery Master Plan	☺	☺

KFA 8: LIBRARIES, ARTS CULTURE & SPECIAL PROGRAMMES (GENDER, ELDERLY, YOUTH AND PEOPLE LIVING WITH DISABILITIES, INCLUDING EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT CENTRES (ECD CENTRES)

LIBRARIES (AREAS)		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Meyerton	☺	☺
2.	Henley-on-Klip	☺	☺
3.	Randvaal	☺	☺
4.	Sicelo	☺	☺
5.	De Deur	☺	☺
6.	Lakeside	☺	☺
7.	Mamello	☹	☹
8.	Savanna City	☹	☹
9.	Required Additional Libraries	😐	😐

PROGRAMMES		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Gender programmes	☺	☺
2.	Elderly programmes	☺	☺
3.	Youth programmes	☺	☺
4.	Disabled programmes	☺	☺
5.	Kgatelopele “Progress (English)” Youth Development Programme	☺	☺

There are 73 Early Childhood Development (ECD) facilities in Midvaal

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	ECD Facilities (8) [Formal -COA]	☺	☺
2.	ECD Facilities (64) [Informal]	☺	😐

KPA 4: INSTITUTIONAL TRANSFORMATION

KFA 9: HUMAN CAPITAL & SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

Organisational Structure

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Functional Organisational Structure (Organogram)	☺	☺
2.	Number of Vacancies	😐	😐
3.	Staff Turn-over	☺	😐
4.	Employment Equity	😐	😐
5.	Vetting	☺	☺

Human Capital and Skills Development

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Workplace Skills Plan & Annual Training Report (WSP & ATR)	☺	☺
2.	Annual updating and submission of WSP & ATR	☺	☺
3.	Succession Plan	☺	😐
4.	Study Assistance Scheme	☺	☺
5.	Training Programmes	☺	☺
6.	Staff Morale	😐	😐

KFA 10: PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT

Performance Management / System

	DESCRIPTION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Performance Management Policy	☺	☺
2.	Performance Management System	☺	☺
3.	Cascading of Performance Management System	☺	☺

Monitor and Evaluation

	DESCRIPTION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Regular review of institution	☺	☺
2.	Regular review of service providers and contractors	☺	☺

Project Management Unit

	DESCRIPTION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Project Management Unit (PMU)	☺	☺

KFA 11: SYSTEMS AND TECHNOLOGY

	DESCRIPTION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	ICT is a district function	😐	😐
2.	SLA in place for District	☺	☺
3.	Strategic Capability	☺	☺
4.	Resources (Budget, Staff& Equipment)	😐	😐
5.	Master Systems Plan (MSP)	☺	☺
6.	ICT Helpdesk and Technical Support	☺	☺
7.	Financial Management System	☺	☺
8.	Human Resources Management Plan	☺	☺
9.	Consumer Account Management	☺	☺
10.	Bulk SMS and Central Database	😐	😐

KFA 12: POLICIES, PROCESSES AND PROCEDURES

	DESCRIPTION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Processes and procedures are in place to address and implement Council policies	☺	☺
2.	Processes and procedures are reviewed or developed departmentally as and when required on the basis of changed circumstances	☺	☺
3.	Policy Register	☺	☺
4.	Regular review of policies & by-laws	☺	☺
5.	System of Delegations	☺	☺

KPA 5: FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY

KFA 13: FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Financial Management

	DESCRIPTION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Capital Expenditure	☺	☺
2.	Operating Expenditure	☺	☺
3.	Cost Containment	☺	☺

Financial Reporting

	DESCRIPTION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Section 71-monthly reporting	☺	☺
2.	Section 52-quarterly reporting	☺	☺
3.	Mid-year Performance Reporting	☺	☺
4.	Annual Report	☺	☺
5.	Annual Financial Statements	☺	☺

Budgeting

	DESCRIPTION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Budget Policy	☺	☺
2.	Budget Steering Committee	☺	☺
3.	Operational Budget	☺	☺
4.	Capital Budget	☺	☺

Funding

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Own Funding	😐	😐
2.	Grant Funding	😐	😐
3.	External Loans	😐	😐

KFA 14: REVENUE MANAGEMENT

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Outstanding Debt	😐	😐
2.	Registered Indigents	😐	😐
3.	Revenue Collection	😐	😐

KFA 15: SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Supply Chain Management	😐	😐

KFA 16: ASSET MANAGEMENT

Asset Management

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Movable Assets	😐	😐
2.	Infrastructure Assets	😐	😐

Equipment and Fleet Management

DESCRIPTION			RATING	
			17/18	18/19
1.	Total of the Midvaal LM Fleet: 237 vehicles, excluding trailers and equipment			
2.	Average age of the Council's vehicles: 9 years			
3.	Condition of fleet:	1. 59.07 %	🙂	🙂
		2. 19.40 %	😐	😐
		3. 21.53%	☹	☹
			RATING	

DESCRIPTION		17/18	18/19
Equipment			
1.	Slashers	☺	☺
2.	Bush-cutters	☺	☺
3.	Kudu's	☺	☺
4.	Chainsaw	☺	☺
5.	Pole Pruners	😐	😐
6.	Water Carts	😐	😐
Fire-arms			
1.	Fire-arms (Traffic)	☺	☺
IT Equipment			
1.	Computers	☺	☺
2.	Laptops	😐	☺
3.	Printers	☺	☺
4.	Switches	😐	😐

KPA 6: PHYSICAL INFRASTRUCTURE AND ENERGY EFFICIENCY

KFA 17: ELECTRICITY & ENERGY EFFICIENCY

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Energy Efficiency	😐	😐

The Midvaal supply area as approved by NERSA consists of the following major areas:

- Blue Rose City Development;
- Vaal Marina area;
- Farm Doornkuil;
- R59-corridor;
- Meyerton;
- Kookrus;
- Riversdale;
- Golf Park;
- Risiville;
- McKay Estates; and
- Risiville Small Farms.

SUB-STATION		CAPACITY		CONDITION	
		17/18	18/19	17/18	18/19
1.	M1-main Sub-station (60 MVA-capacity)	☺	☺	☺	☺
2.	Eye of Africa (Main Sub-station 80 MVA)	☺	☺	☺	☺
3.	The Grace Sub-station	☺	☺	☺	☺
4.	Risiville Eskom 4 Emfuleni Sub-station (5 000 kVA)	☹	☺	😐	☺
5.	Sybrand Van Niekerk Switching Sub-station (10000kVA)	😐	😐	😐	😐
6.	Riversdale R1 Switching Station	😐	😐	☺	☺
7.	Riversdale RI 3 Switching Station	😐	😐	☺	☺
8.	Switching Sub-stations in Kookrus	☹	☹	☹	☹
9.	Switching Station Vaal Marina	☹	☺	☹	☹
10.	Switching Stations Golf Park	☺	☺	☺	☺
11.	Switching Stations Sicelo and Meyerton farms	☹	☹	😐	😐
12.	Switching Sub-stations Meyerton area	😐	😐	😐	😐
13.	Switching Sub-stations Risiville area	😐	😐	☺	☺
14.	Minor Sub-stations	😐	😐	😐	😐

NETWORK		CAPACITY		CONDITION	
		17/18	18/19	17/18	18/19
1.	Midvaal HV 88kV	☺	☺	☺	☺
2.	Riversdale MV	😐	😐	😐	😐
3.	Meyerton MV	😐	😐	😐	😐
4.	Golf Park MV	😐	😐	☺	☺
5.	Kookrus , Rothdene MV	😐	😐	☹	☹
6.	Meyerton Farms MV	😐	😐	😐	😐
7.	Sicelo MV	☹	☹	😐	😐
8.	Valley Settlements MV	😐	😐	☹	☹
9.	Risiville MV	😐	☺	😐	😐
10.	McKay Estates MV	😐	😐	😐	😐
11.	Vaal Marina MV	☹	☺	😐	😐
12.	Glen Donald MV	☹	☹	☹	☹
13.	Risiville Small Farms MV	😐	😐	😐	😐

14.	Chrissiesfontein MV	😐	😐	☹	☹
15.	Vaal Marina LV	☹	☹	😐	😐
16.	Riversdale LV	😐	😐	😐	😐
17.	Meyerton LV	😐	😐	😐	😐
18.	Golf Park LV	☺	☺	☺	☺
19.	Kookrus, Rothdene LV	☹	☹	☹	☹
20.	Meyerton Farms LV	😐	😐	😐	😐
21.	Sicelo LV	☹	☹	😐	😐
22.	Valley Settlements LV	😐	😐	☹	☹
23.	Risiville LV	😐	😐	😐	😐
24.	McKay Estates LV	😐	😐	😐	😐

KFA 18: ROADS AND STORM-WATER INFRASTRUCTURE

Roads

DESCRIPTION	CONDITION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
National Roads	None		
Provincial Roads	General in poor condition and require upgrading. Freight transport and lack of maintenance contribute to deterioration of infrastructure. Gautrans busy with upgrading	☹	☹

MUNICIPAL ROADS		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Paved 660 km	😐	☺
2.	Unpaved 640 km	😐	😐

Storm-water

DESCRIPTION	RATING	
	17/18	18/19
Limited storm-water infrastructure exists. Storm-water is mainly drained in surface drains and channels which are cleaned on an annual basis.	😐	😐

KFA 19: WATER AND SANITATION INFRASTRUCTURE

Water Service Infrastructure

NETWORK	CAPACITY		CONDITION	
	17/18	18/19	17/18	18/19
The bulk network (asbestos cement pipes) total length of 657km	😐	😐	☹	😐

RESERVOIRS	CAPACITY		CONDITION	
	17/18	18/19	17/18	18/19
1. Blue Saddles High Level	☺	☺	☺	☺
2. Drumblade	☺	☺	☺	☺
3. Eye of Africa	☺	☺	☺	☺
4. Kliprivier Reservoir (Heineken)	☺	☺	😐	☺
5. Meyerton Reservoir (X2)	😐	😐	☺	☺
6. Randvaal Reservoir (Valley Settlements)	☺	☺	☺	☺
7. Vaal Marina Reservoir (X2)	☺	☺	☺	☺

Sanitation Infrastructure

NETWORK	CAPACITY		CONDITION	
	17/18	18/19	17/18	18/19
The network consists of 375 km pipe in a fair condition	😐	😐	😐	😐

Sewer Pump Stations

SEWER PUMP STATIONS	CAPACITY		CONDITION	
	17/18	18/19	17/18	18/19
1. Pilkington	😐	😐	😐	😐
2. KliprivierNo5	☺	☺	😐	😐
3. KliprivierNo6	😐	😐	☹	☹
4. Leeuw Street	☺	😐	😐	😐
5. Adelaar Street	☺	☺	😐	😐
6. Varty Street	😐	😐	😐	😐
7. Brockett Street	😐	😐	☺	☺
8. Gordon Street	😐	😐	☺	☺
9. Bekker Street	😐	😐	😐	😐

10	Rothdene	☹	☹	😐	😐
11	Van Riebeeck Street	☺	☺	☺	☺
12	Meyerton Sports Club	☹	☹	😐	😐
13	Ribbok Street	😐	😐	😐	😐
14	Keurboom Street	😐	😐	😐	😐
15	Ewelme Street	☺	☺	😐	😐
16	Church Street	😐	😐	😐	😐
17	Assemblies of God Street	☺	☺	😐	😐
18	Regatta Street	😐	😐	😐	😐
19	Heineken Pump Station	☺	☺	☺	☺
20	Roshnee/Rus-ter-vaal	☹	☹	😐	😐
21	Anchovy Street	☺	☺	😐	😐
22	Cormorant Bay	😐	😐	😐	😐
23	Harbour Town	😐	😐	😐	😐
24	Marina Letata	😐	😐	☹	☹
25	Perlemoen Pump Station	😐	😐	☺	☺
26	Port O'Call Pump Station	😐	😐	😐	😐
27 .	Sunset Cove Pump Station	😐	😐	😐	😐
28	Misty Bay Pump Station	😐	😐	😐	😐
29	Banana Bay Pump Station	😐	😐	😐	😐
30	Sewer Plant Pump Station	😐	😐	😐	😐

Treatment Works

WASTE-WATER TREATMENT WORKS	CAPACITY		CONDITION	
	17/18	18/19	17/18	18/19
1. Ohenimuri Treatment Plant	☺	☺	☺	☺
2. Vaal Marina Treatment Plant	😐	😐	😐	😐
3. Meyerton Treatment Plant	😐	😐	😐	😐

Water Services Development Plan

WATER SERVICES DEVELOPMENT PLAN	RATING	
	17/18	18/19
1. Water Services Development Plan	☺	☺

KFA 20: LANDFILL SITES AND TRANSFER STATIONS

	LANDFILL SITES & TRANSFER STATIONS	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Walkerville Landfill Site	☹	☹
2.	Henley-on-Klip Landfill Site	☹	☹
3.	Vaal Marina Landfill Site	☹	☹
4.	Galloway Transfer Station	☺	☺
5.	Kliprivier Transfer Station	☺	☺
6.	Blackwood Transfer Station	☹	☹

KFA 21: MUNICIPAL AND PUBLIC FACILITIES

	DESCRIPTION OF FACILITIES	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Civic Centre (Administrative Buildings)	☺	😐
2.	Vaal Marina Municipal Buildings	☺	😐
3.	Randvaal Engineering Offices	😐	😐
4.	De Deur Administrative Offices	☺	😐
5.	Depot & Stand-by Quarters (Galloway Street – Eng & Comm Services)	😐	😐
6.	Meyerton Fire Station	☺	😐
7.	Mechanical & Electrical Workshop (Arrie	😐	😐
8.	Vaal Marina Fire Station (New)	-	😐

KPA 7: SERVICES AND CUSTOMER CARE

KFA 22: WATER AND SANITATION

	DESCRIPTION	RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Water: Blue Drop (84,1 %)	☺	☺
2.	Sewer: Green Drop (53,5 %)	☹	☹

DESCRIPTION	RATING	
	17/18	18/19
1. Households without formal housing	☹	☹
2. Households without hygienic toilets	😐	😐
3. Households without piped water at or above RDP level	☺	☺

KFA 23: ELECTRICITY

Electricity for the area is purchased in bulk by the Midvaal Local Municipality from Eskom and reticulated throughout the licensed area. Some backlogs exist in the Mamello and Sicelo areas which will only be reticulated once they are formalised. In the following areas the internal reticulation is provided directly by Eskom:

- Ironsyde Agricultural Holdings;
- Homestead Apple Orchards;
- Blue Saddle Ranches;
- Blignautsrus;
- De Deur;
- Golfview;
- Hartzenbergfontein;
- Henley-on-Klip;
- Highbury;
- Kliprivier;
- Parts of Walkerville.

ELECTRICITY BACKLOG	NUMBER		RATING	
	17/18	18/19	17/18	18/19
Households without electricity connections	4205	4205	😐	😐

NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS CONNECTED (Midvaal Local Municipality Supply Area)	NUMBER		RATING	
	17/18	18/19	17/18	18/19
1. Electricity (Paid)	12 426	12 426	☺	☺
2. Electricity (Free)	423	423	😐	😐

KFA 24: CLEANSING AND WASTE MANAGEMENT

DESCRIPTION	RATING	
	17/18	18/19
1. Townships	☺	☺

2.	Agricultural and other settlements	☺	☺
3.	Farms	☺	☺
4.	Business and Industrial	☺	☺

Customer Relations

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Complaints System	☺	☺
2.	Toll free complaints hotline in Sicelo	☺	☺
3.	Toll free complaints hotline in Lakeside	☺	☺

KPA 8: ECONOMIC GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT

KFA 25: Local Economic Development (LED) & Capacity Building

ENTITY	POPULATION (15-64 YEARS)	LABOUR FORCE	% ACTIVE IN LABOUR MARKET	RATING	
				17/18	18/19
Midvaal LM	46 068	32 176	69.84	😐	😐
Sedibeng DM	556 028	354 242	63.71	😐	😐
Gauteng	6 400 482	4 554 389	71.16	😐	😐

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	LED Strategy	☺	☺
2.	Food Security Programmes	☺	☺
3.	Improved IGR with other Provincial and National Sector Departments	☺	☺
4.	SMME Database	😐	😐
5.	Community Works Programme (CWP)	☺	☺
6.	Midvaal Economic Analysis	☺	☺
7.	LED Projects	☺	☺
8.	Agriculture	😐	😐
9.	Farmers Support (Access to Municipal Owned Land)	😐	😐

QUALIFICATION LEVEL		GENDER	NOTES		
			2011 (%)	RATING	
				17/18	18/19
1.	No schooling	Male	4,95	😐	😐
		Female	5,02	😐	😐
2.	Grade 0 - 7	Male	24,69	😐	😐
		Female	24,07	😐	😐
3.	Grade 8 - 11	Male	32,16	😐	😐
		Female	32,20	😐	😐
4.	Grade 12	Male	25,01	😐	😐
		Female	26,87	😐	😐

QUALIFICATION LEVEL		GENDER	NOTES		
			2011 (%)	RATING	
				17/18	18/19
5.	NTC1 – 6	Male	3,93	😐	😐
		Female	1,11	😐	😐
6.	Certificate/Diploma	Male	5,59	😐	😐
		Female	7,15	😐	😐
7.	Bachelor's or Higher Degree	Male	3,67	😐	😐
		Female	3,60	😐	😐

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Capacity Building Programmes for Job Creation	🙂	🙂
2.	Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)	😐	😐
3.	SMME development	😐	😐

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Primary Schools	😐	😐
2.	Secondary Schools	😐	😐
3.	Tertiary Institutions	☹	☹

KFA 25: SPATIAL & DEVELOPMENT PLANNING

DESCRIPTION		RATING	
		17/18	18/19
1.	Comprehensive Rural Development Programme	😐	😐
2.	Spatial Development Framework	🙂	🙂

3.	Annual revision of SDF	☺	☺
4.	Regional Spatial Development Frameworks	😐	😐
5.	Precinct Plans	☺	☺
6.	Development & Planning Policies	😐	😐
7.	Regular revision of precinct plans and policies	☺	☺
8.	By-laws		
	a. National Building Regulations	☺	☺
	b. Town Planning/Land Use	☺	☺
	c. Outdoor Advertising	☺	😐
	d. Flood line	😐	😐
	e. SPLUMA	☺	☺
9.	Law enforcement:		
	a. By-laws	☺	😐
	b. National Building Regulations	☺	☺
	c. Town Planning/Land Use	☺	☺
	d. Outdoor Advertising	😐	😐
10.	Monitoring of attorney performance on matters handed over	☺	☺
11.	Land Use Management Scheme (SLUMS)	😐	😐
12.	Turn-around times on Land Use Applications	☺	☺
13.	Turn-around times on Building Plan Applications	☺	☺
14.	Turn-around times: Complaints received in respect of NBR, TPS, OA	☺	☺
15.	Up-to-date Geographic Information System	☺	☺
16.	Electronic Application Tracking and Processing System (City Solve)	☺	☺
17.	Electronic Building Plan Tracking and Processing System (City Solve)	☺	☺
18.	Local Migration Plan	😐	😐
19.	Integrated Sustainable Human Settlement Plan (HSP)	😐	☺
20.	Monitoring of Land Invasions	☺	☺
21.	Dolomite Risk Management Plan	😐	😐
22.	CBD Revitalisation Programme	😐	😐

2.3. Midvaal Overview & Demographics

2.3.1. Midvaal Overview

The Midvaal Local Municipality (GT422) is a Category B municipality as defined in the Municipal Structure Act. It comprises of fifteen wards, and is one of three local municipalities situated within the Sedibeng District Municipality. The other two Municipalities in the district being the Emfuleni Local Municipality (GT421) and the Lesedi Local Municipality (GT423).

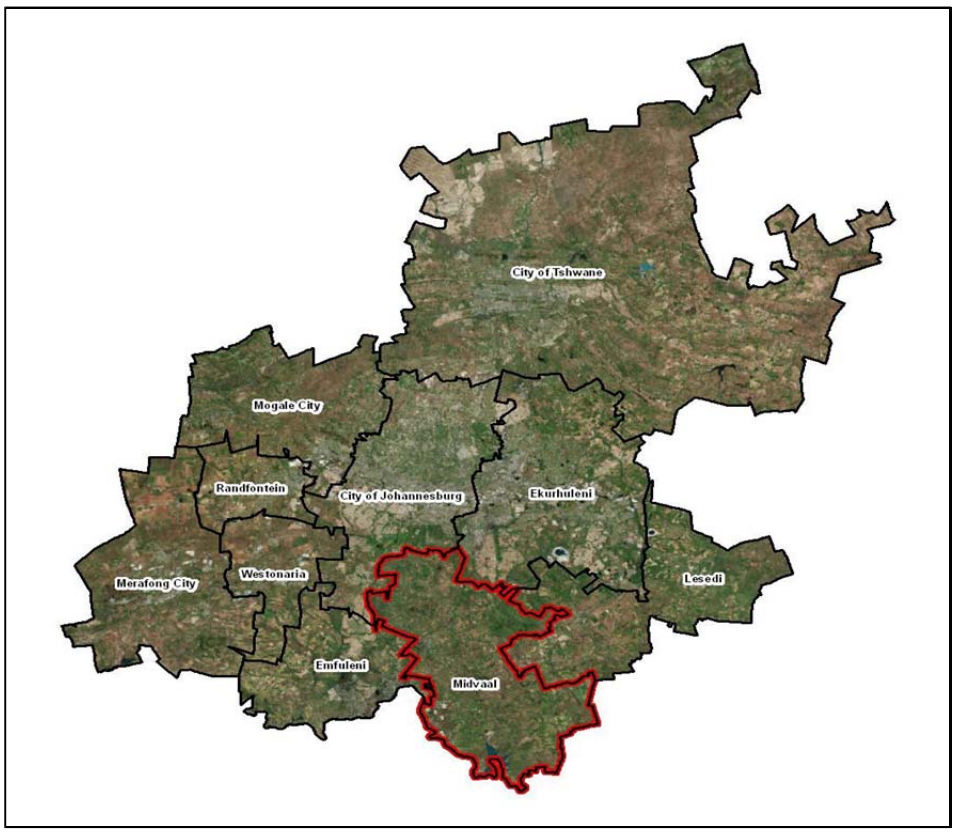


Figure 4: Midvaal Municipality Location in Gauteng Province

2.3.2. Spatial Demographics of Midvaal

The Midvaal local Municipality covers an area of approximately 1722 km^2 compared to approximately 966 km^2 and 1484 km^2 for neighbouring Emfuleni and Lesedi Municipalities, respectively.

The spatial layout of the Midvaal Local Municipal area is predominantly that of a rural area with extensive farming constituting approximately 50% of the total area of jurisdiction. Midvaal possesses the following spatial structures[1].

Table 4: Spatial properties of Midvaal

Spatial Structures of Midvaal	
Areas	***Total number***
Townships	58 (30996 Stands)
Farms	85 (3415 Portions)
Agricultural Holdings and other Settlements	34 (4334 small / agricultural holdings)
Nature Reserves	1
Conservancies	10

[1] Source: Midvaal GIS, Jan 2016

2.3.4. Socio-Economic Demographics of Midvaal

The socio-economic demographics section will provide the status of:

- Population & Household Profile
- Racial Profile
- Age Profile
- Gender Profile
- Educational Profile
- Household Income Profile
- Dwelling Profile
- Lifestyle Measure (LSM) Profile
- Basic Service Delivery Profile within the Midvaal area.

Population & Household Profile

The population growth in Midvaal has been consistent, with the current population as at 2016 given as 111 612 people, growing from a base of 95 301 since 2011. The number of households has also grown significantly from a base of 29 964 to 38 046 as at 2016[2,3,4].

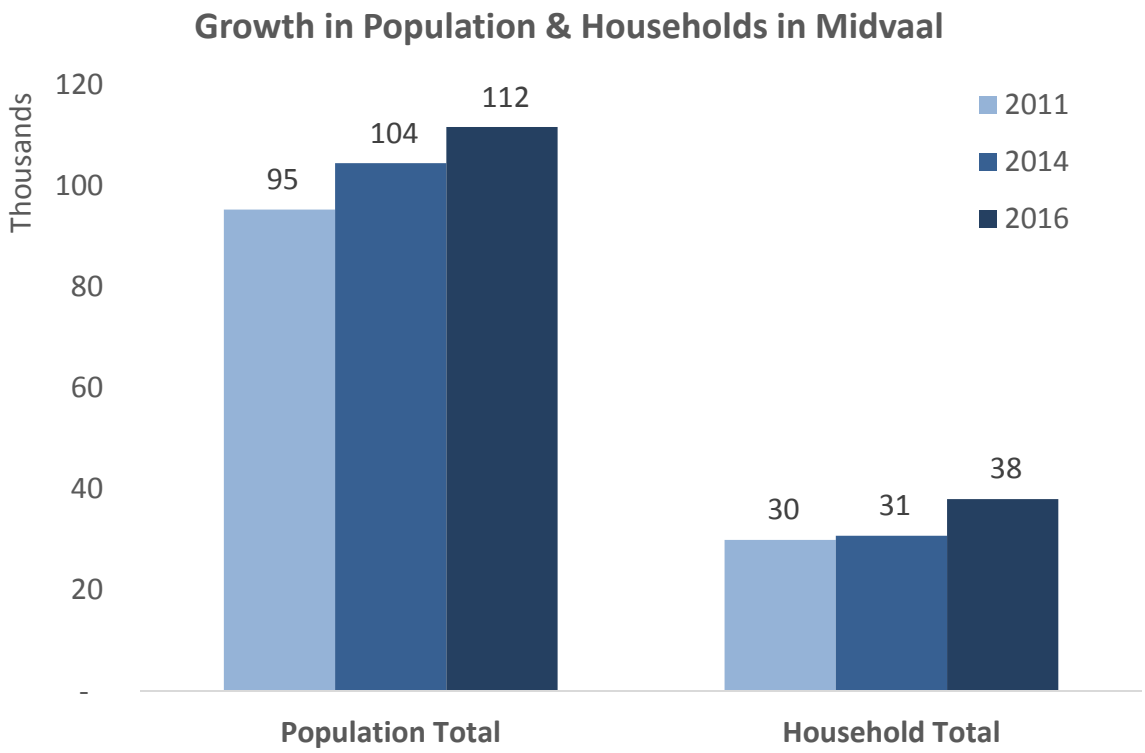


Figure 4: Growth Population and households in Midvaal

The population growth in Midvaal has been localised to the areas in close proximity to the R59, as illustrated in the population density map (Figure ***5***[2], below). The remaining portions

[2] Source: Stats SA 2011 Census
[3] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015
[4] Source: Stats SA Community Survey 2016

of the municipal area have relatively low density, with concentrations increasing reaching the border with the Emfuleni municipality.

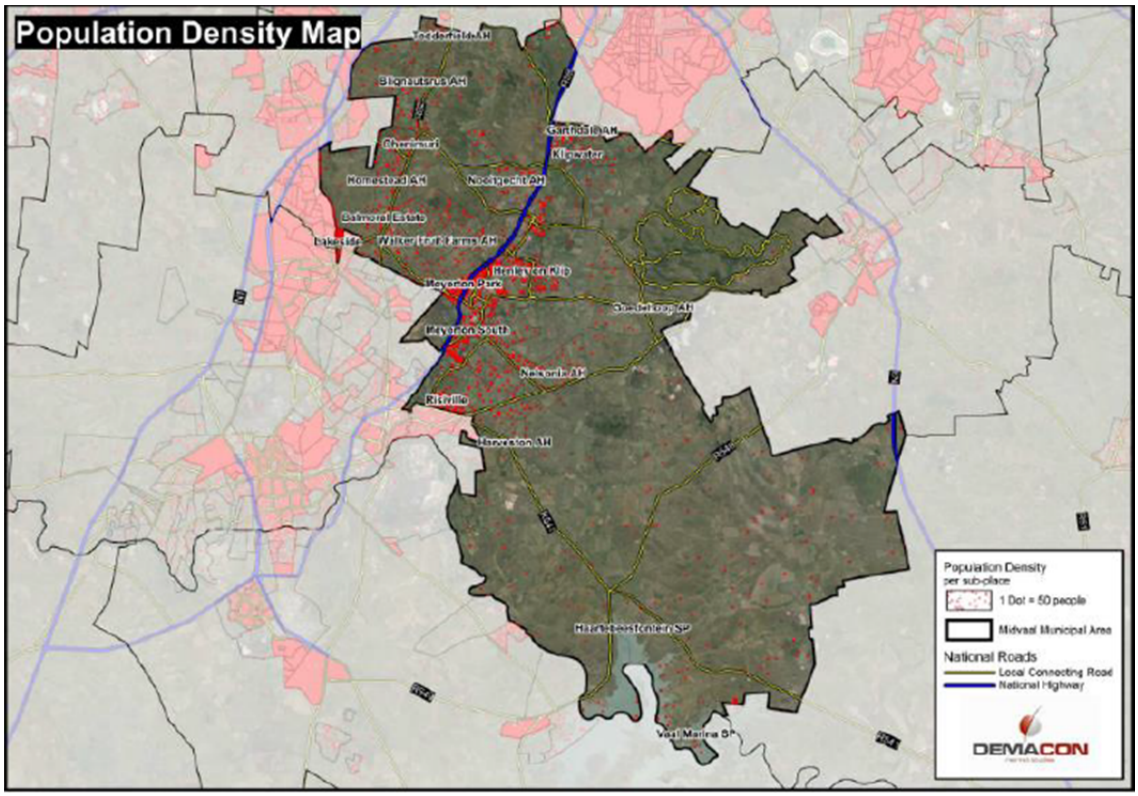


Figure 5: Population Density Map of Midvaal Area

Racial Profile

The racial profile of the Midvaal population is largely dominated by African Black and White populations together making up more than 90% of the population.

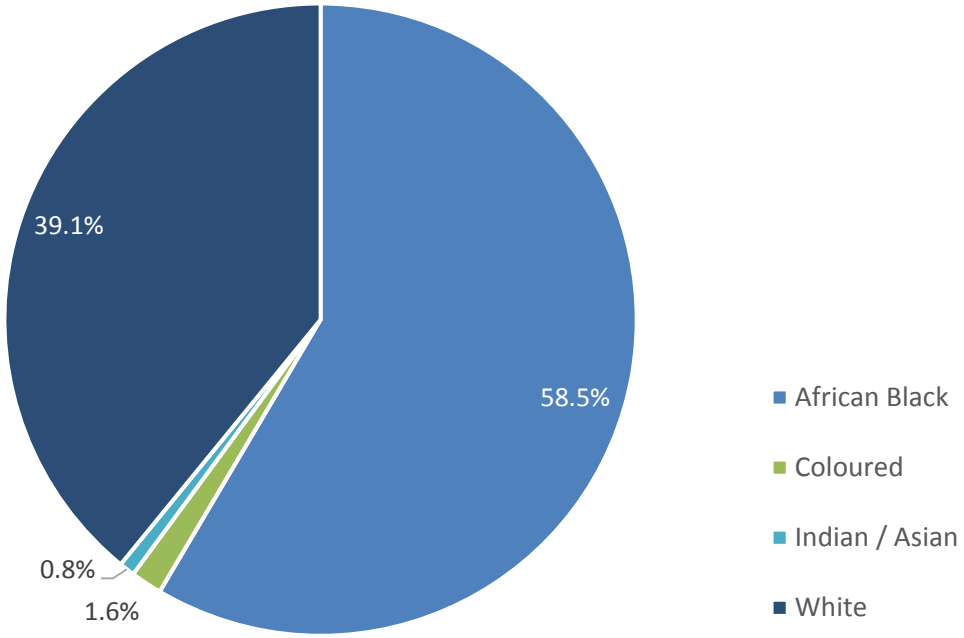


Figure 6: Racial Profile of Midvaal Population[5]

Age Profile

The age profile of the population (as per Figure ***7***, below) falls largely within the youth sector which compose approximately 58% of the total population. In addition, approximately 70% of the population falls within the working age group (people aged between 15-64)[5].

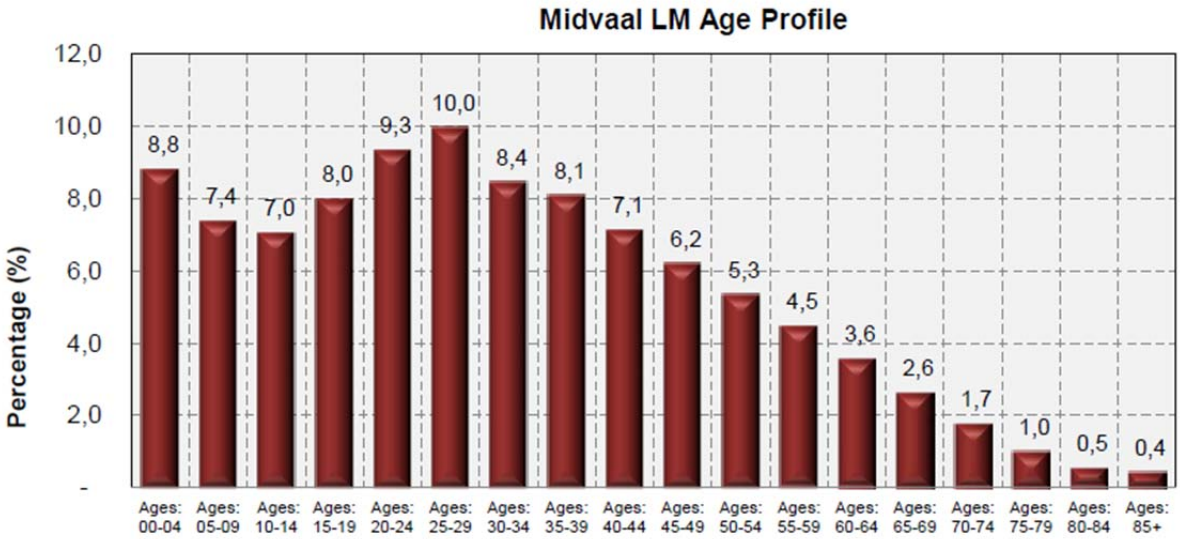
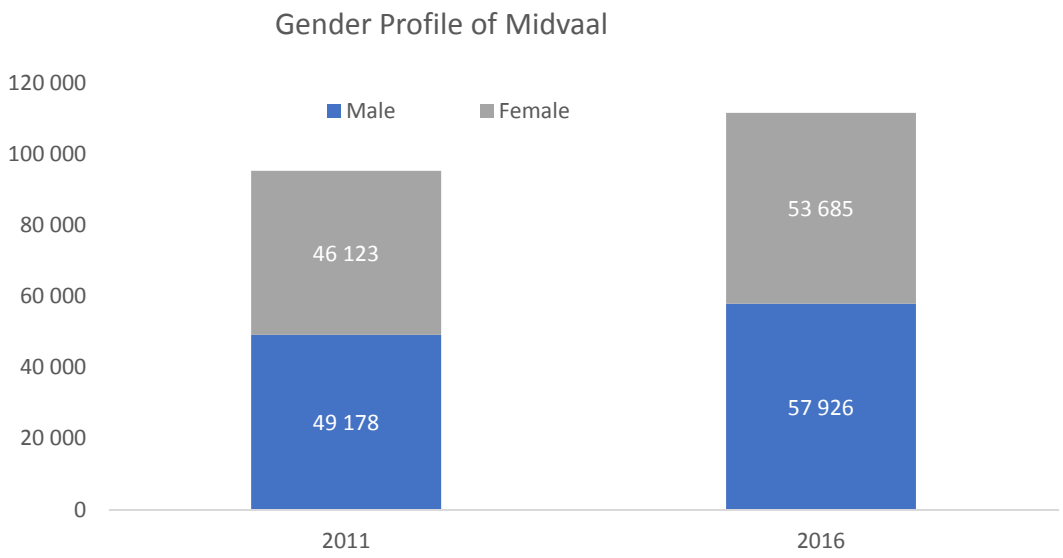


Figure 7: Midvaal Age Profile

[5] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

Gender Profile



`Figure 8: Gender Profile of Midvaal

The Gender Profile of Midvaal marginally favours males over females with the, 52% of the population being male and only 48% being female (as per 2016[6]).

This is consistent with the profile as per 2016 with less than a 1% shift in profile since 2011.

Educational Profile

The educational profile of the Midvaal area is biased largely towards those who have had some form of Secondary Education and upwards, amounting to 82% of the total population, with 15,3% of the population having attended higher learning[7].

[6] Source: Stats SA Community Survey 2016
[7] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

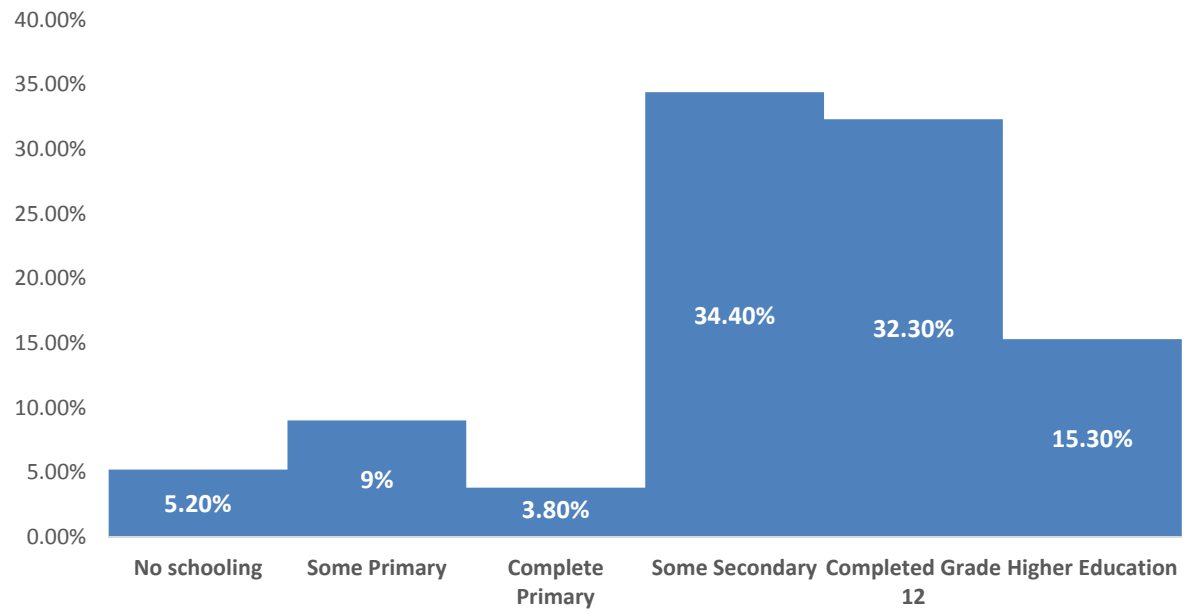


Figure 9: Educational Profile of Midvaal

Household Income Profile

There is a broad distribution of incomes across the households in Midvaal with the largest portion of households earning between R 21 350- R 42 698 per annum. Significantly, 13,9% of all households earn no income[8].

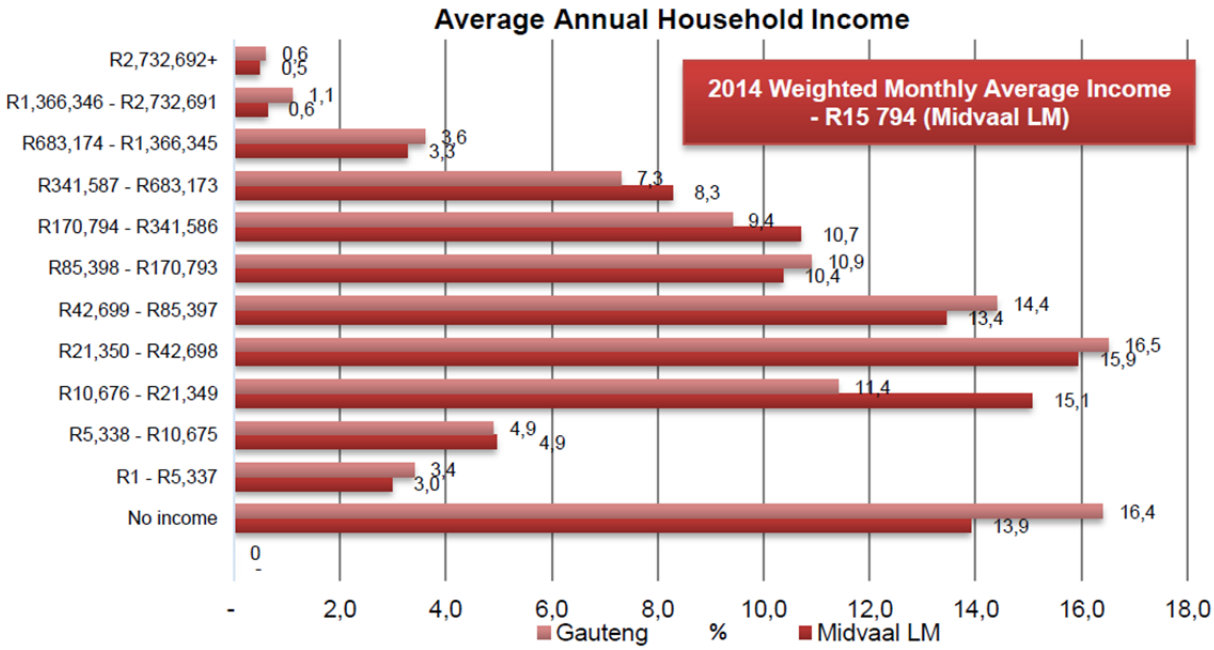


Figure 10: Average Household Income in Midvaal

[8] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

GT422 Midvaal - Supporting Table SA9 Social, economic and demographic statistics and assumptions

Description of economic indicator	Ref.	Basis of calculation	2001 Census	2011 Census	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	Current Year 2017/18	2018/19 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
					Outcome	Outcome	Outcome	Original Budget	Outcome	Outcome	Outcome
Demographics*		Narritive report 1									
Population		Narritive report 1.1		95 301	95 301	95 301	112	112	115	118	122
Females aged 5 - 14		Source: Community Survey 2016 for 2016/17		6 717	6 717	6 717	9	9	9	9	10
Males aged 5 - 14		Source: STATS SA Census for 2001 and 2011 Census		7 011	7 011	7 011	9	9	9	9	10
Females aged 15 - 34		2017/2018 and outer years data projected by 3% growth		16 080	16 080	16 080	18	18	18	19	19
Males aged 15 - 34				17 970	17 970	17 970	19	19	20	20	21
Unemployment		As per broad definition= 18.8%	7	8 619	8 619	8 619	21	21	22	22	23
Monthly household income (no. of households)**	1, 12	Narritive report 2									
No income				4 350	4 350	4 350	5 326	5 326	5 486	5 650	5 820
R1 - R1 600				6 867	6 867	6 867	8 719	8 719	8 981	9 250	9 527
R1 601 - R3 200				4 917	4 917	4 917	6 243	6 243	6 430	6 623	6 822
Housing statistics*****	3	Narritive report 5									
Formal			15 915	24 042	24 042	24 042	31 546	31 546	31 546	31 546	31 546
Informal		Midvaal IDP 2005/2006	4 845	5 922	5 922	5 922	6 500	6 303	6 303	6 303	6 303
Total number of households ******		Narritive report 6	20 760	29 964	29 964	29 964	38 046	37 849	37 849	37 849	37 849
Dwellings provided by municipality	4						-	-	-	-	-
Dwellings provided by province/s		Savanna City, Lakeside and Sicelo				387	947	975	1 200	1 200	1 200
Dwellings provided by private sector	5						166	116	600	600	600
Total new housing dwellings			-	-	-	387	1 113	1 091	1 800	1 800	1 800
Economic	6										
Inflation/inflation outlook (CPIX)								6.1%	5.2%	5.5%	5.5%
Interest rate - borrowing								10.5%	10.0%	10.0%	10.0%
Interest rate - investment								7.0%	7.0%	7.0%	7.0%
Remuneration increases								7.4%	6.0%	6.0%	6.0%
Consumption growth (electricity)								0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
Consumption growth (water)								0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
Collection rates	7										
Property tax/service charges					93.1%	92.9%	93.8%	94.0%	95.0%	95.0%	95.0%
Rental of facilities & equipment					100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%
Interest - external investments					100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%
Interest - debtors					50.0%	50.0%	50.0%	50.0%	60.0%	60.0%	60.0%
Revenue from agency services											

Detail on the provision of municipal services for A10

Total municipal services	Ref.		Census 2011	2016/17	Current Year 2017/18			2018/19 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
			Outcome	Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year 2018/19	Budget Year +1 2019/20	Budget Year +2 2020/21
		Household service targets (000)								
		Water:								
		Piped water inside dwelling	19 461	19 461	24 710	24 710	24 710	25 451	26 215	27 001
		Piped water inside yard (but not in dwelling)	5 376	5 376	9 461	9 461	9 461	9 745	10 037	10 338
	8	Using public tap (at least min.service level)	1 467	1 467	3 699	3 699	3 699	3 810	3 924	1 042
	10	Other water supply (at least min.service level)	–	–	176	176	176	181	187	192
		Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total	26 304	26 304	38 046	38 046	38 046	39 187	40 363	41 574
	9	Using public tap (< min.service level)	2 394	2 394	–	–	–	–	–	–
	10	Other water supply (< min.service level)	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		No water supply	1 266	1 266	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Below Minimum Service Level sub-total	3 660	3 660	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Total number of households	29 964	29 964	38 046	38 046	38 046	39 187	40 363	41 574
		Sanitation/sewerage:								
		Flush toilet (connected to sewerage)	17 367	17 370	22 060	22 060	22 060	22 722	23 404	24 106
		Flush toilet (with septic tank)	5 496	5 505	10 385	10 385	10 385	10 697	11 017	11 348
		Chemical toilet	1 842	1 842	2 044	2 044	2 044	2 105	2 168	2 234
		Pit toilet (ventilated)	480	477	3 429	3 429	3 429	3 532	3 638	3 747
		Other toilet provisions (> min.service level)	420	3 519	42	42	42	43	45	46
		Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total	25 605	28 713	37 960	37 960	37 960	39 099	40 272	41 481
		Bucket toilet	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Other toilet provisions (< min.service level)	4 359	645	86	86	86	89	91	94
		No toilet provisions	–	606	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Below Minimum Service Level sub-total	4 359	1 251	86	86	86	89	91	94
		Total number of households	29 964	29 964	38 046	38 046	38 046	39 188	40 363	41 575
		Energy:								
		Electricity (at least min.service level)	15 906	15 906	20 196	20 196	20 196	20 802	21 426	22 069
		Electricity - prepaid (min.service level)	7 500	7 500	10 516	10 516	10 516	10 831	11 156	11 491
		Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total	23 406	23 406	30 712	30 712	30 712	31 634	32 583	33 560
		Electricity (< min.service level)	363	363	510	510	510	1 000	1 500	1 000
		Electricity - prepaid (< min. service level)	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Other energy sources	6 195	6 195	6 824	6 824	6 824	6 553	6 280	7 015
		Below Minimum Service Level sub-total	6 558	6 558	7 334	7 334	7 334	7 553	7 780	8 015
		Total number of households	29 964	29 964	38 046	38 046	38 046	39 187	40 363	41 575
		Refuse:								
		Removed at least once a week	24 594	24 594	34 648	34 648	34 648	35 789	36 965	38 176
		Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total	24 594	24 594	34 648	34 648	34 648	35 789	36 965	38 176
		Removed less frequently than once a week	303	303	587	587	587	587	587	587
		Using communal refuse dump	579	579	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Using own refuse dump	3 177	3 177	2 666	2 666	2 666	2 666	2 666	2 666
		Other rubbish disposal	363	363	145	145	145	145	145	145
		No rubbish disposal	948	948	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Below Minimum Service Level sub-total	5 370	5 370	3 398	3 398	3 398	3 398	3 398	3 398
		Total number of households	29 964	29 964	38 046	38 046	38 046	39 187	40 363	41 574

Dwelling Profile

Midvaal can be divided geographically into three specific regions, those being the Eastern, Central and Western regions, as pictured in

Figure 11[9].

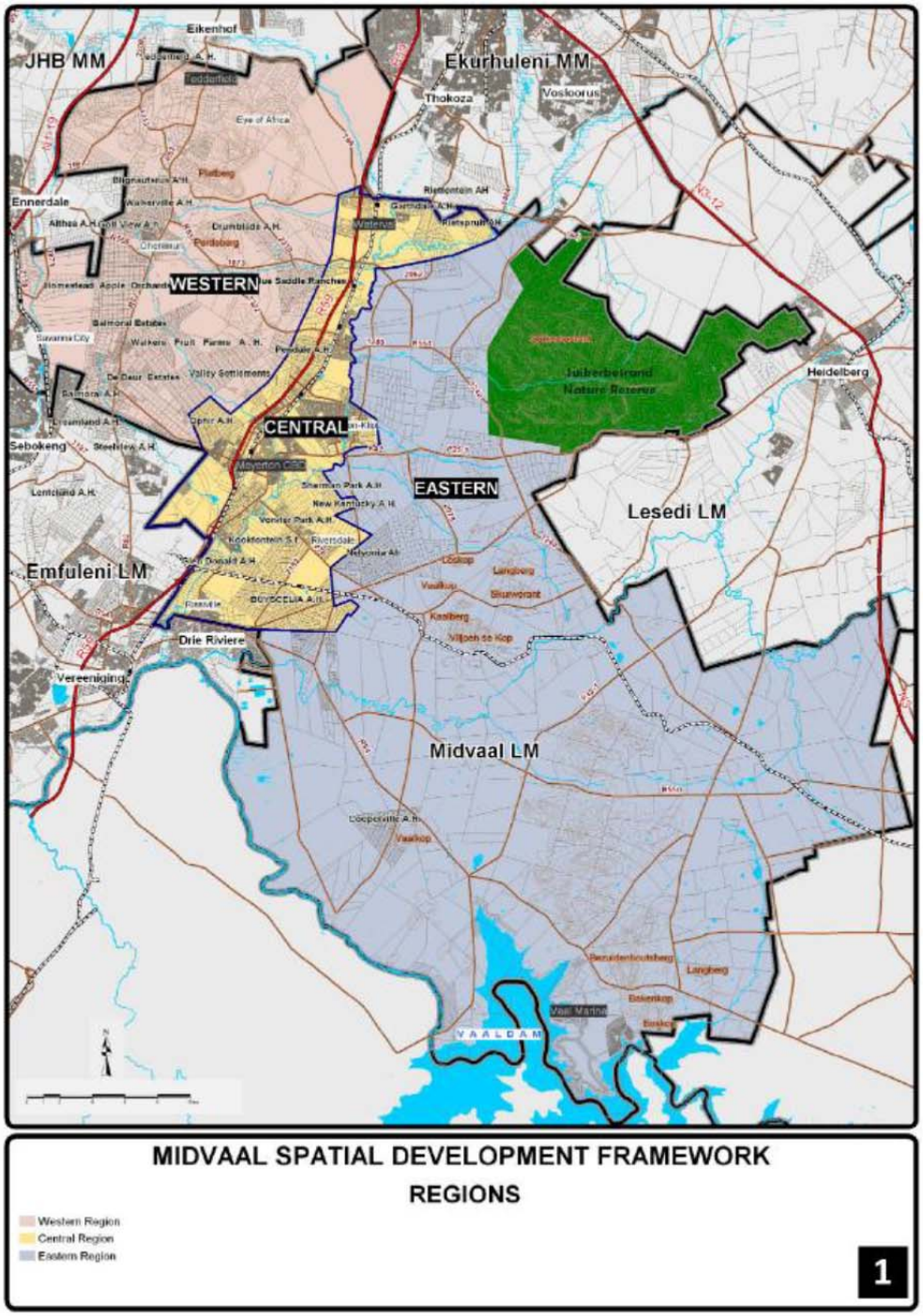


Figure 11: Midvaal Geographic Regions

The regions have different compositions of housing as indicated in

[9] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

Figure 12[10], with the Central and Eastern Regions showing a far greater proportion of informal dwellings than the Western Region.

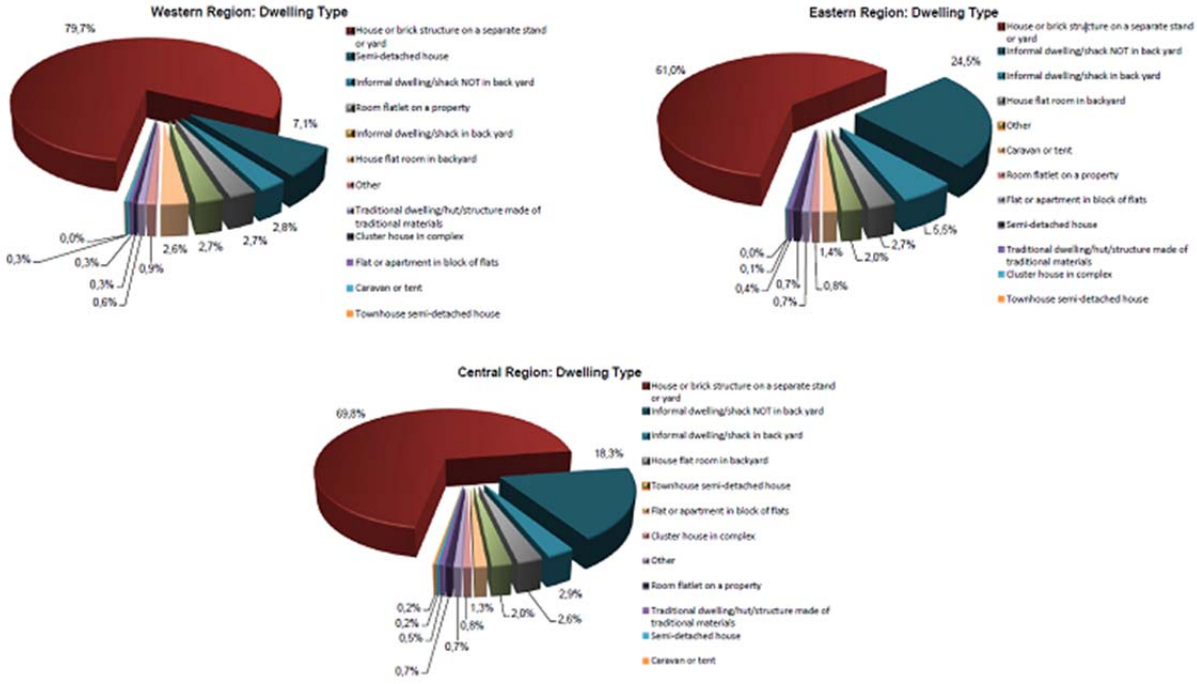


Figure 12: Dwelling Profiles of the Midvaal Regions

Lifestyle Measures Profile

The Living Standards Measure (LSM) is used to measure the lifestyle profile across the Midvaal area. The LSM areas are mapped in

Figure 13[10], with darker indicators representative of higher LSM areas,

Figure 14[10] provides a view of the location of household below the minimum standards of living.

[10] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

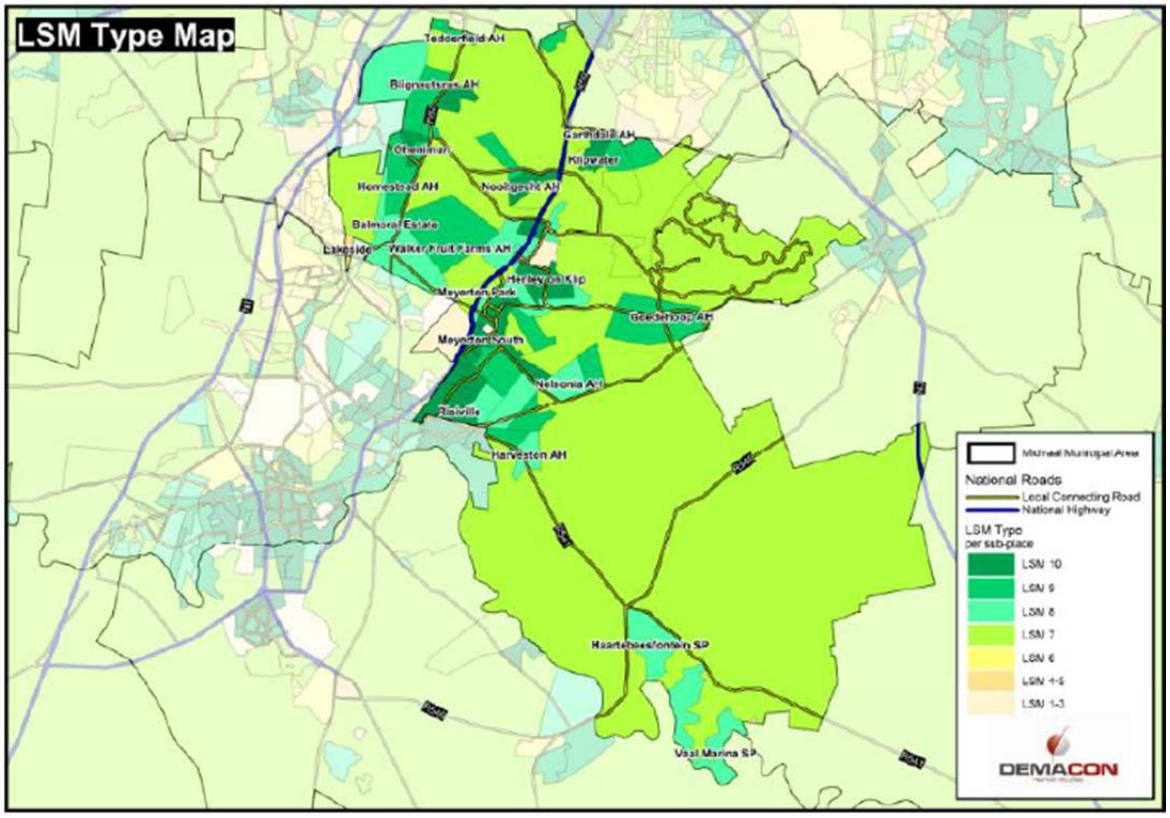


Figure 13: Map of LSM areas in Midvaal

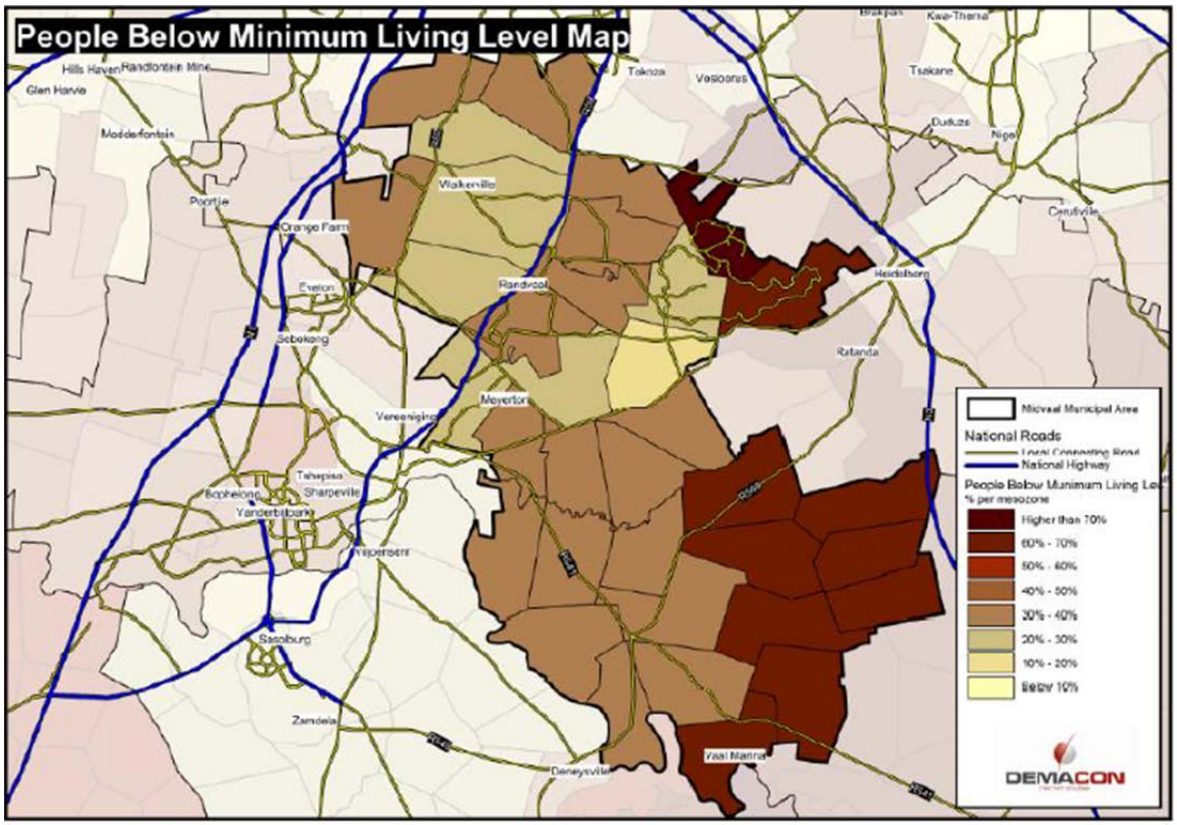


Figure 14: Map of location of people living below the minimum living level

Basic Service Delivery Profile

Basic service delivery includes providing access to water, electricity and sanitation as well as providing waste removal. Midvaal has progressed quite steadily with regard to providing basic service delivery to all households in the community. As indicated in ***Figure 15***, MLM has achieved a successful reduction in the percentage of household not served to the minimum level of service quality.

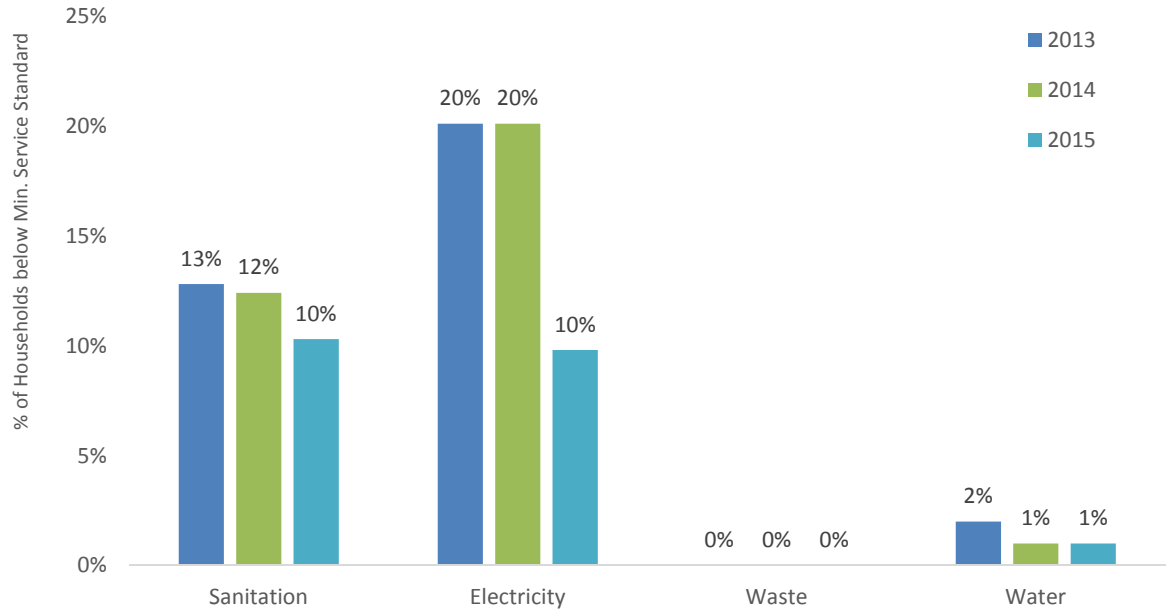


Figure 15: % of Households receiving services below the minimum standard

However, within the definition of standard of service there exists a range of products, each with differing levels of quality and customer experience which qualify as above the minimum standard. Thus, two household may be counted as served sufficiently but be receiving widely varying service experiences. Figure 16 indicates the percentage of households served with the premier service across the basic services catalogue[11]. With the exception of Waste Removal, all categories fall short of providing the premier services to all households.

[11] Source: Midvaal Local Municipality Annual Report 2015/16, Jan 2017

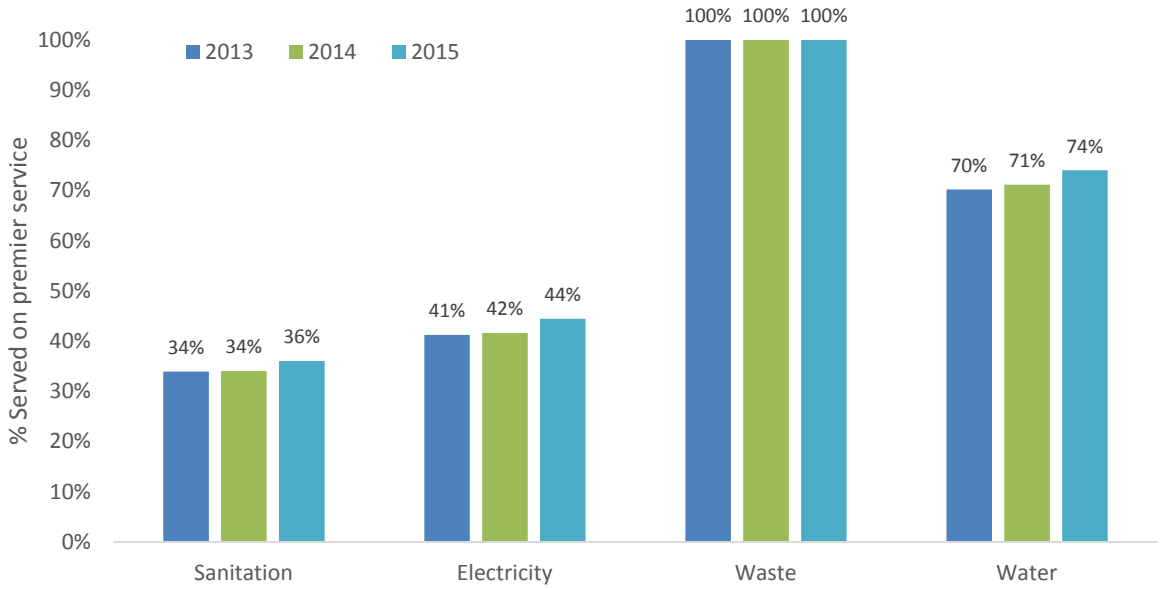


Figure 16: % Households served with premier service

Key Socio-Economic Demographics

MLM Socio Economic Overview	
Population & Household Delivery	Population (2016) - 111 612 Household (2016) - 38 046 High Population Density around R59
Age Profile	70% of Population of Working Age 58% of Population is Youth
Educational	Completed Grade 12 - 48% of Population
Household Income	Majority of Households earn between R 21 350- R 42 698 per annum
Dwelling	Central and Eastern Regions composed of greater number of informal settlements
Lifestyle Measures	High LSM areas in the West and around R59
Basic Service Delivery	Reduction in number of households with access to minimum level of service, since 2013. Large disparity between households with premier and non-premier services

Figure 17 : Key Socio-Economic Demographics

2.4. Community & Stakeholder Level Analysis

The Midvaal Municipality broadly serves two key community groups, the affluent community, as per

Figure 18[12] the households placed within the upper LSM (high income earning) groups, and the township community, as per

[12] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

Figure 18 the households occupying the lower LSM groups (low income earning).

Income category (R/month)	LSM Status	2011 (% of households)
R0 - R25 122	LSM 1 to 3	44,0%
R25 122 - R32 376	LSM 4	6,6%
R32 376 - R43 818	LSM 5	4,5%
R43 818 - R62 922	LSM 6	8,7%
R62 922 - R93 852	LSM 7 LOW	4,5%
R93852 - R123 498	LSM 7 HIGH	4,1%
R123 498 - R146 838	LSM 8 LOW	3,1%
R146 838 - R168 552	LSM 8 HIGH	2,1%
R168 552 - R197 220	LSM 9 LOW	2,2%
R197 220 - R235 896	LSM 9 HIGH	3,3%
R235 896 - R288 204	LSM 10	2,7%
R288204 and higher	LSM 10+	14,2%

Source: Demacon Ex Stats SA, 2014

Figure 18: Disparity in Midvaal Household Income

2.4.1. Affluent Community

The Affluent Community (high income earning) occupy the developed areas of Midvaal, which already have access to service delivery enabling infrastructure such as tarred roads, piped water and sanitation and receive the respective basic and social services from the municipality.

The Affluent Community requires excellent and efficient services from the municipality, with the top registered complaints relating to water leakages, electricity outages and potholes[13].

In addition to the basic services challenges, Midvaal has a key social challenge impacting the affluent. There are a limited number of recreational and social activities within the Municipality which is not limited to the largely rural areas of the municipality. Meyerton, the largest town in the municipality has limited choices of entertainment, requiring the inhabitant to travel outside of the municipality for entertainment[14].

2.4.2. Township Community

The Township Community (low income earning) occupies the less developed areas of Midvaal, either on the edge of developed areas or in rural settings, where there is limited or no service enabling infrastructure. The Township Community thus receives limited basic services from the municipality.

The Township Community require access to basic and social services which they do not have at present and have highlighted their displeasure with respect to the disparity in access and service quality between themselves and the Affluent.

[13] Source: Midvaal Customer Satisfaction Survey 3rd Quarter 2016
[14] Source: Internal Analysis

Basic services are seen as a vehicle for upliftment however this cannot be seen in isolation to social services. The municipality currently support the Township community with a number of programmes focused on uplifting and supporting the youth and population who most need it the most, however a lack of funding and resources has limited the reach of the respective programmes[15].

2.5. Economic Analysis

The economic indicators of an area form the basis for current demand for residential and commercial product offering and also serve as the drivers for future growth in demand. An improving economy has positive implications for disposable income growth and thus residential purchasing power in the short term.

2.5.1. Economic growth

Midvaal falls within the Sedibeng District alongside two other municipalities, Emfuleni and Lesedi. Emfuleni is the largest municipality within the District, contributing 76.61% to its GDP, whilst Midvaal and Lesedi contributed 15.27% and 8.13% respectively.

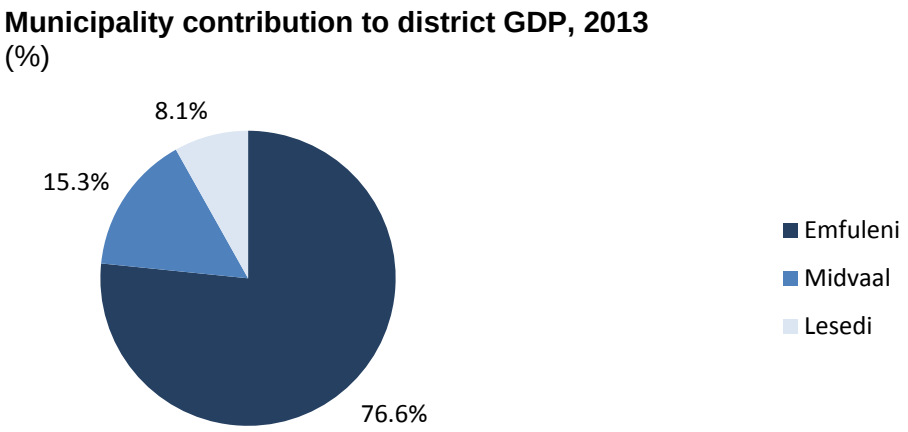


Figure 19: Municipality contribution to district GDP

The total GDP for Sedibeng was R42.7 billion in 2013[16], of which Midvaal contributed R6.52 billion and Lesedi, R3.47 billion. Midvaal had the highest average annual economic growth, averaging 5.4% between 2003 and 2013. Lesedi averaged 4.29%, and Emfuleni, 3.12%.

[15] Source: Internal Analysis
[16] Source: Sedibeng 2015/16 IDP, page 46

Table 5: GDP - Local municipalities of Sedibeng District Municipality, 2003 to 2013, share and growth

District	GDP (2013, current prices)	Share of district municipality	Average annual growth rate
Emfuleni	32.7	76.6%	3.12%
Midvaal	6.52	15.3%	5.40%
Lesedi	3.47	8.1%	4.29%
Sedibeng	42.68	100%	

2.5.2. Regional economic contribution

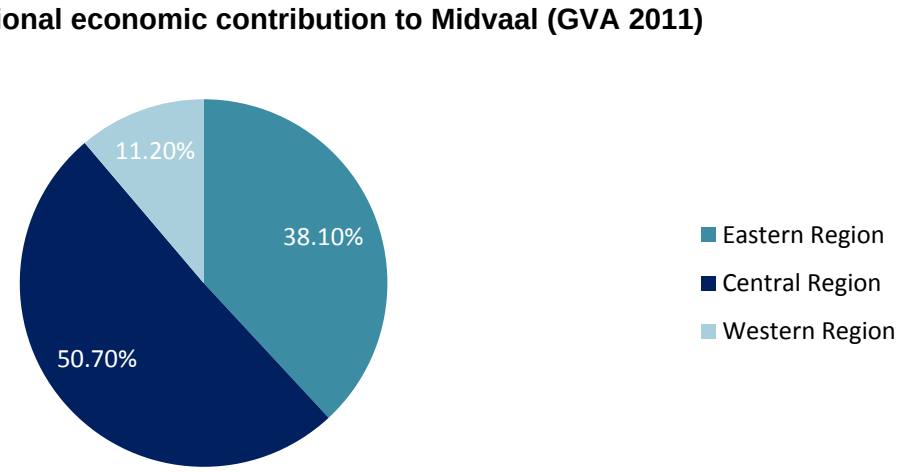


Figure 20: Size of regional economies, 2011 (at basic prices) - GVA

The Midvaal area is composed of three distinct areas, Central, Easter and Western as presented in **Figure 20**.The Western region of Midvaal contributes 50.7% to the economy of Midvaal, with the Central region and Eastern region contributing 38.10% and 11.20% respectively[17].

[17] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

2.5.3. Economic activity by sector

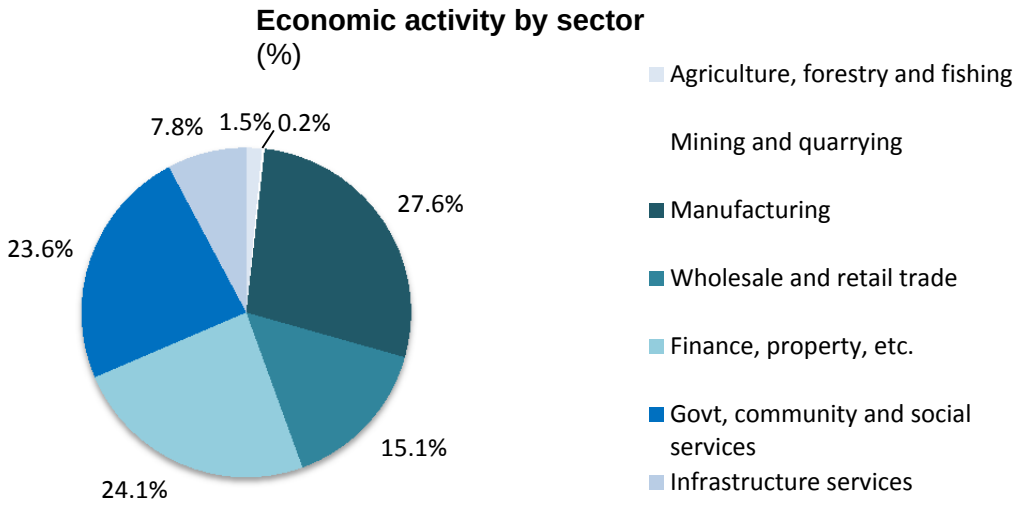


Figure 21: Economic activity by sector[18]

As can be seen in the table above, the pillars of the local economy are Manufacturing, Finance, Government, Community & Social services, Wholesale and Retail trade. These cumulatively contribute 90.4% to the local economy[19].

Ranking the sectors from highest to lowest:

1. Manufacturing – 27.6%
2. Finance, property etc. – 24.1%
3. Government, Community and Social Services – 23.6%
4. Wholesale and retail trade – 15.1%
5. Infrastructure services – 7.8%
6. Agriculture, forestry and fishing – 1.5%
7. Mining and quarrying – 0.2%

From a growth perspective, Midvaal is endowed with the potential to diversify its economy and grow manufacturing, tourism, agriculture and construction. According to the draft spatial development framework (SDF), these are sectors with a comparative advantage. Diversification not only promotes growth within the area but also allows the economy to be resilient to negative shocks to any one specific sector.

2.5.3. Employment profile

Employment is the primary means by which individuals who are of a working age may earn an income that will enable them to provide for their basic needs. With the exception to the provincial level, Midvaal has the highest level of economically active population – 70.4%. Midvaal local municipality therefore has a large supply of labour. As can be seen from the figure below, the level of economically active individuals versus not economically active individuals is a function of the region of the municipality within which one resides[19].

[18] Source: Midvaal Local Municipality Annual Report 2015/16, Jan 2017
[19] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

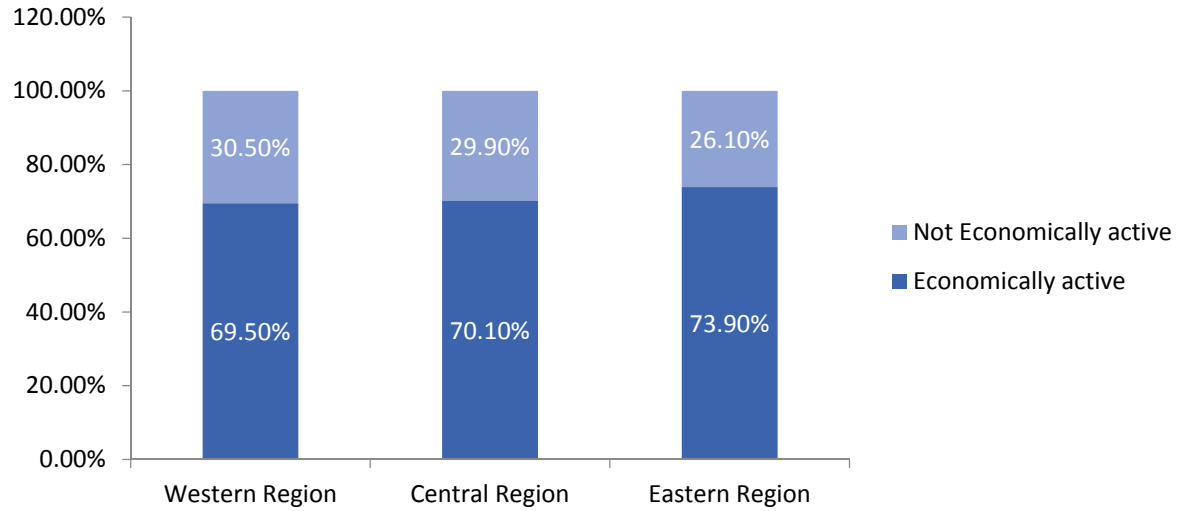


Figure 22: Employment status Midvaal regions (economically active population), 2011

The unemployment rate for Midvaal, as per the broad definition, is 18.8%[20]. This translates to the highest employment rate (81.2%), when compared to the provincial and district situation.

The youth unemployment rate however, stands at 25.4% for those aged 15-24 (i.e. those eligible to work).

The trend within the regions extends into the employment rates of each region, with the Eastern Region experiencing the highest rates of employment across the municipality, at 85.5%, with the Central Region following closely behind at 82.8% and the Western Region at 75.8%[21].

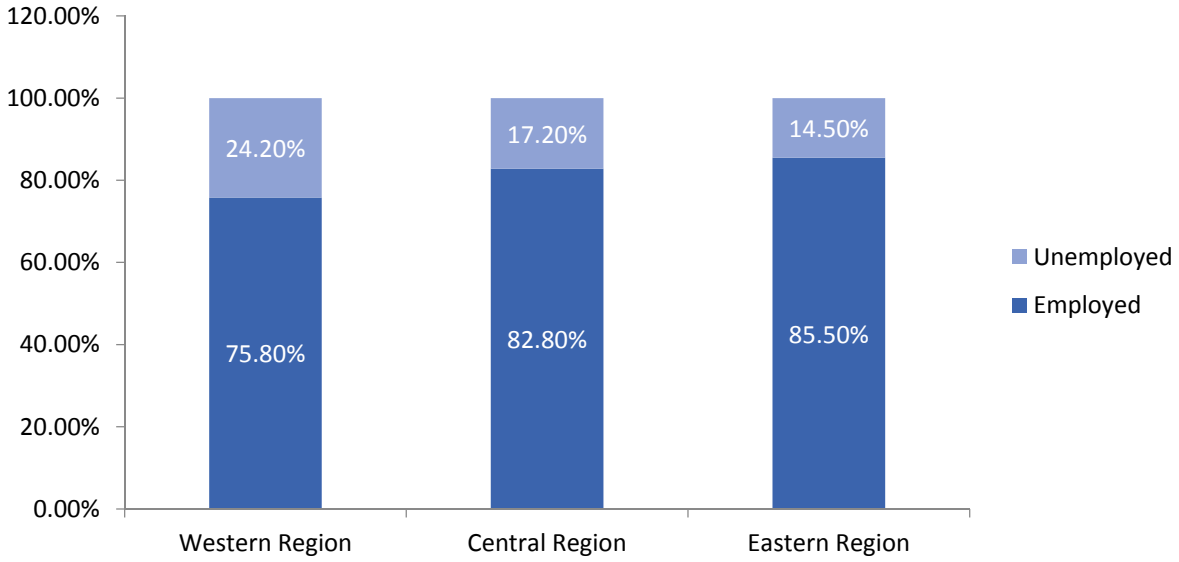


Figure 23: Employment status Midvaal regions (employed and unemployed population), 2011

Since 2006, the labour force participation rate for Midvaal local municipality deviated from the provincial level, declining as the province's rate increased.

[20] Source: Stats SA, Census 2011
[21] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

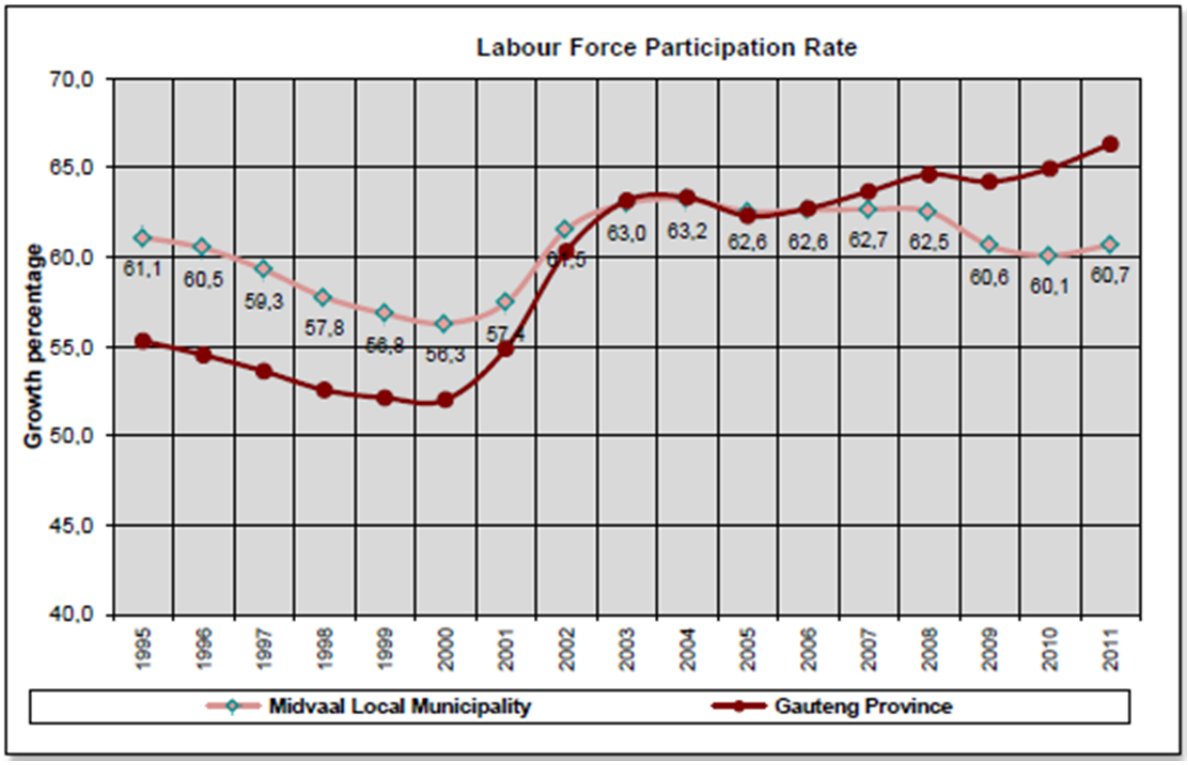


Figure 24: Labour force participation rate of Midvaal LM compared to Gauteng Province

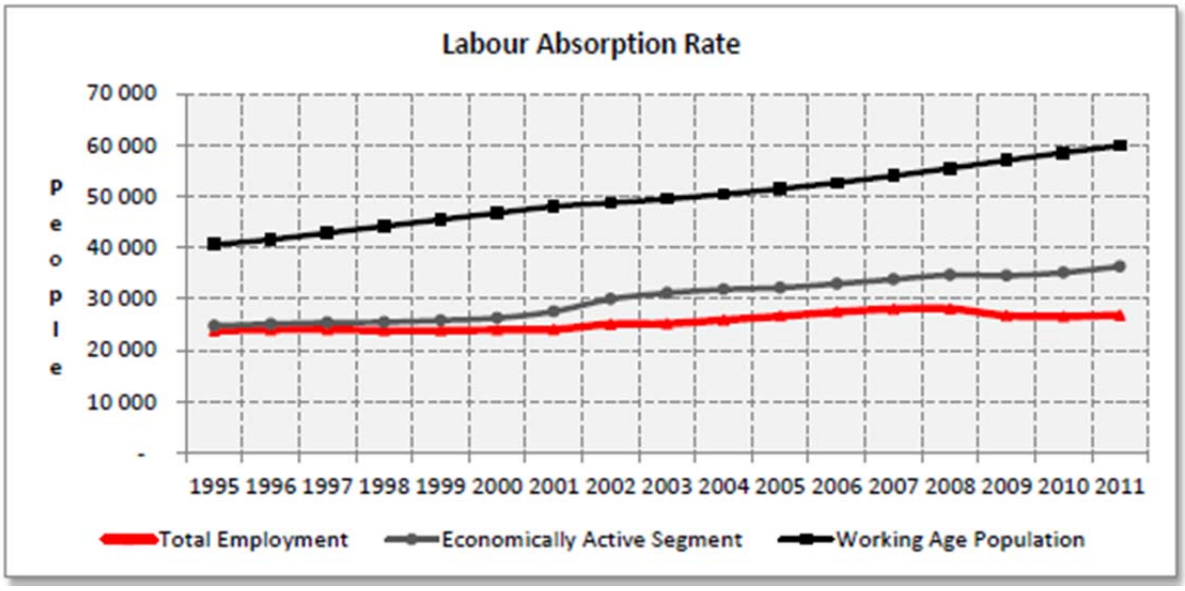


Figure 25: Labour absorption rate for Midvaal LM

Furthermore, as per the figure above, the working age population is growing with approximately 1204 people per annum, whilst the economically active population is expanding with approximately 720 people per annum. The economy however, can absorb only 189 people per annum[22].

[22] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

2.6. Environmental Analysis

Environmental challenges are unique in that its effects often cannot be localised. For instance, air pollution is transported in the atmosphere between municipalities and provinces and countries. Moreover, river contamination affects all users in proximity to the river at any point downstream. It is often for this reason that most environmental regulations are typically a provincial or national function, instead of a local municipal function.

In the Midvaal, manufacturing is the highest contributor to the local economy and furthermore has been earmarked as a key development area of the future[23]. Manufacturers are typically high producers of air pollution (in its various forms), which can have a significant effect on the health of the population and the environment, i.e. air pollution can cause breathing and skin diseases as well as cause harmful rain, contaminating water bodies. A strong manufacturing industry can also result in a high level of effluent emissions, which may contain compounds that are a human health and environmental risk. Effluent can contaminate surface-and ground water aquifers, affecting water supply to communities or facilitate widespread ecosystem degradation. Midvaal is currently mandated to enforce compliance in primarily three areas of environmental management:

(1) pollution (effluent) control
(2) biodiversity; and
(3) landscape[24].

A major challenge faced by the Municipality is that its vast geographical area makes controlling, in particular land pollution such as illegal dumping and illegal oil spills, extremely difficult. Advanced control systems are required to effectively control environmental risks. An additional challenge is lacking resources and infrastructure to impact positively on the pollution levels[25].

2.7. Institutional Analysis

The institution has a number of strengths and weaknesses, which directly impact on its ability to serve the community. These are discussed as follows:

2.7.1. Institutional Achievements

1. The institution has obtained a **clean audit** for the 2013/14 and 2014/15 financial year which takes into account KPI commitments as well as financial and procurement audits[24]
2. Midvaal Local Municipality was ranked as the top performing municipality in Gauteng in the 2015 Annual Municipal Financial Sustainability Index compiled by Ratings Afrika[26] for the second consecutive year.
3. Midvaal received the 1st place award in the category Overall Service to Residents by Municipalities for the 2015 PMR. Africa awards[24]

[23] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015
[24] Source: Midvaal Annual Report 2015/16
[25] Source: Internal Analysis
[26] Source: www.midvaal.gov.za

4. The Municipality maintains a high level of positive public approval, with its approval rate being 81%
5. The Institution also boasts the lowest unemployment rate in Gauteng, being 18.8%
6. Midvaal Local Municipality won the award for “The institution doing the most to clean the environment” in the 2014 Sedibeng Regional Survey Business Excellence Awards, conducted by PMR Africa

2.7.2. Institutional Challenges

Midvaal experiences a number of challenges which threaten its ability to operate efficiently and effectively, in terms of its mandate. The major current challenges can be synthesised into eight key themes, which are as follows:

Funding and Finance

One of the key challenges being experienced by Midvaal is insufficient funding for its operations and insufficient finance for expansion. The funding challenges are due to the rate of revenue increasing at a slower rate than the increase in expenditure, as presented in the below figure[27]. These trends are influenced by two key factors. (1) The Municipality currently shows a lag in revenue brought about by significant investments in medium to long term development projects. It is expected that revenues will significantly increase once investments begin yielding returns. (2) The current model of cross subsidisation employed by the Municipality is exhausting its expenditure, which has now reached a tipping point where funding for adequate provision of services (for all) is under threat. The cross subsidisation model is not sustainable in the Midvaal context, and alternative streams of revenue is required in moving forward. (3) There is limited debt collection in certain areas of the municipality.

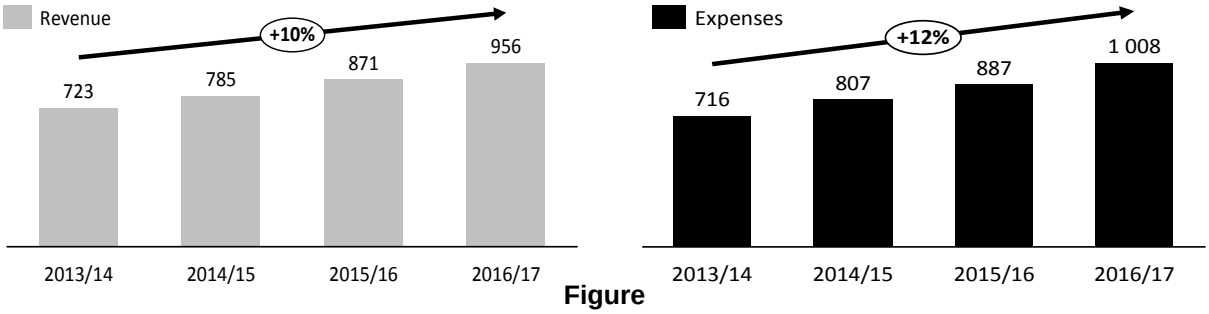


Figure 26: Trends in Revenue & Expenses over the period 2013/14-2016/17 (Rmn)

Inefficiencies in Service Delivery (SD)

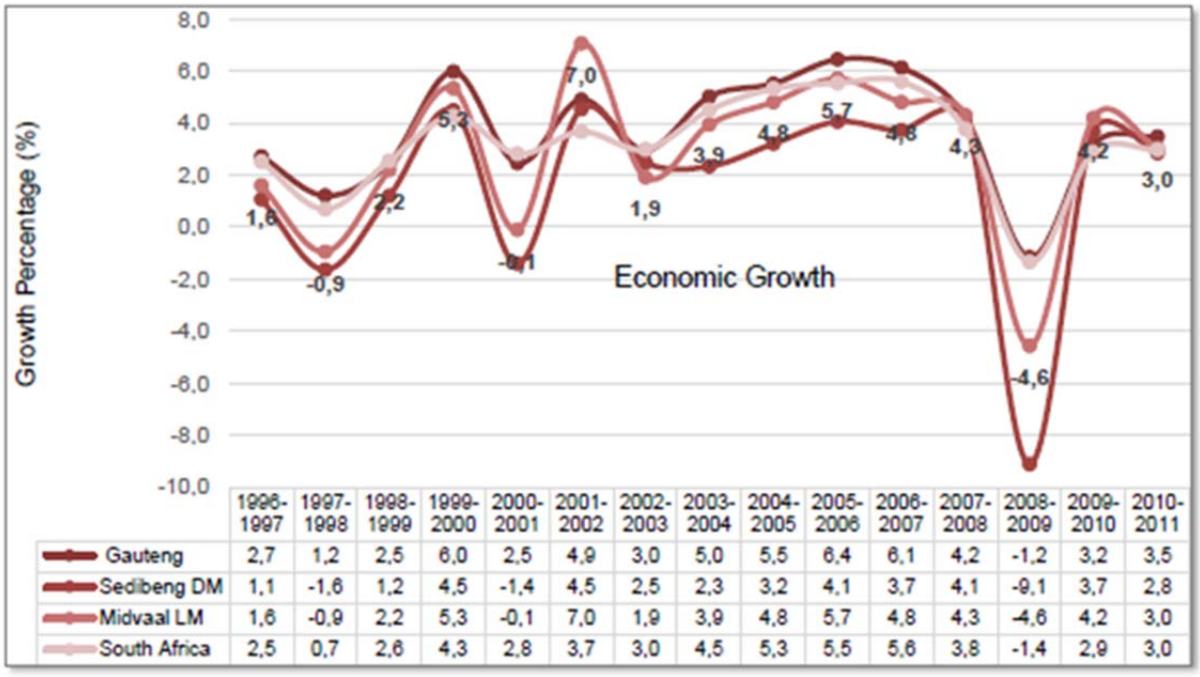
The next key challenge for the Municipality is inefficiencies in delivering services. In particular, the Municipality shows poor turnaround times in service delivery on account of resource and capacity constraints[28]. This has the ability to significantly affect the quality of life of the Midvaal community. According to the 2016 Oct-Dec Customer Satisfaction survey, the highest number of complaints in the Municipality were all related to service delivery. These included:

[27] Source: Midvaal Municipality Financial Results 2017
[28] Source: Internal Analysis

1. water leakages,
2. overgrown stands,
3. tree trimming,
4. electrical issues,
5. blocked sewers and
6. road maintenance and potholes.

Growth Challenges

The Midvaal Municipality has shown relatively conservative economic growth over the period 1996/97-2010/11 (latest data[29]. Its GDP as of 2013 was R6.52 billion, and is projected to be R10.44 billion in 2018, and average annual growth rate of 3.87%[30]. Sluggish growth is a result Midvaal existing primarily as a residential Municipality, with much of the economic activity occurring within other Municipalities in close proximity. Moreover, Midvaal is struggling to establish itself as an attractive development destination. An assertive effort is required to grow the economy by sweating its resources and attracting investments.



	1996-1997	1997-1998	1998-1999	1999-2000	2000-2001	2001-2002	2002-2003	2003-2004	2004-2005	2005-2006	2006-2007	2007-2008	2008-2009	2009-2010	2010-2011
Gauteng	2,7	1,2	2,5	6,0	2,5	4,9	3,0	5,0	5,5	6,4	6,1	4,2	-1,2	3,2	3,5
Sedibeng DM	1,1	-1,6	1,2	4,5	-1,4	4,5	2,5	2,3	3,2	4,1	3,7	4,1	-9,1	3,7	2,8
Midvaal LM	1,6	-0,9	2,2	5,3	-0,1	7,0	1,9	3,9	4,8	5,7	4,8	4,3	-4,6	4,2	3,0
South Africa	2,5	0,7	2,6	4,3	2,8	3,7	3,0	4,5	5,3	5,5	5,6	3,8	-1,4	2,9	3,0

Figure 27: Economic growth trends in Midvaal between 1996/97 and 2010/11

Inequality in service delivery and socioeconomic conditions

There is currently significant inequality in the Municipality in terms of infrastructure for service delivery and resultantly, quality of service delivery[31]. There is also significant disparity in skills and capacity throughout the Municipality, particularly in youth. Youth (0-35 years old) comprise of approximately 58% of the population, however they are the

[29] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015
[30] Source: Sedibeng IDP 2015/16
[31] Source: Midvaal Customer Survey 2016

demographic which shows the highest unemployment rate, being 25.5%[29]. This poses significant social, economic and political challenges for the municipality.

Internal Capacity and Skills Gaps

The Municipality faces important internal capacity challenges inhibiting the ability of the Municipality to deliver on its mandate. The internal capacity challenges stem from the following key issues: (1) There is a high number of vacancies internally, which are causing strain on current staff, affecting morale, and inhibiting performance[32]. The current total number of vacancies is 42 for 2017/18[33]. (2) Understaffing has resulted in high amounts of overtime being worked. Staff are required to take long periods of leave to offset overtime, which creates operational challenges[32]. (3) There are skills gaps in key functions within the Municipality[32].

Poor Communication

Another major challenge for Midvaal is communication, internally and externally. Internal communication is limited due to the internal operating structure, which supports a 'silo' way of working[32]. There is limited flow of information between Departments, which results in a high level of inefficiency in multi-department projects, especially when multiple sign-offs are required. Moreover, the poor internal communication practises has manifested into a low level of staff morale, which requires attention in order to improve personal performance and efficiency.

Externally, the municipality has been criticised for slow response times in communicating back to the community, particularly when work has been pipelined, but delayed. There is also currently a dual complaints system leading to lost complaints, further exacerbating the problem. There is also ineffectiveness in the use of a variety of communication channels in order to reach target communities. These are a result of a poorly integrated communication system within the municipality.

Poor Public Perception

Midvaal Municipality is currently struggling to be perceived as an attractive and business enabling municipality. This is partly because the municipality is not correctly utilising its resources to brand and promote itself. For instance, there is high potential for tourism in the Municipality which is not being fully utilised[34]. Furthermore, there is an abundance of land, which could be sweated to attract development[34]. The poor perception of Midvaal, in comparison to neighbouring Municipalities directly affects the Municipalities ability to form partnerships and attract people into its borders.

Internal and External Processes

With regards to its Information, Technology and Communication (ITC) systems, the municipality currently has outdated internal technology and systems. This creates a high

[32] Source: Internal Analysis
[33] Source: Internal Vacancies Analysis 2017
[34] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

levels of inefficiency, which has the ability to hinder timely completion of projects. Inefficient internal processes also affect decision making, building plans, communications and procurement practises.

Externally, the main challenge is that there are long legal processes with respect to debt collection.

Limited Mandate

Local Municipalities operate in an extremely legislated environment. Therefore, its ability to serve the needs of the community are restrictive[35]. For instance, it is out of Midvaal's jurisdiction to develop human settlements, maintain a police force and improve the quality of air emissions. These have the potential to severely impact the delivery of basic and non-basic services.

2.8. Spatial Analysis

The Midvaal Municipality is a vast expanse of land, covering an area of 1722 km^2. The major economic zone is defined by the R59 and R82 highways. Both of these routes, along with the N3 and N1 highways, have been identified as development corridors according to the Midvaal Development Corridor Hierarchy[36]. The primary development regions can be divided into three key regions; the central region, western region and eastern region[36]. The spatial development framework map of the Municipality is presented below.

[35] Source: Constitution of the Republic of South Africa No 108 of 1996
[36] Source: Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015

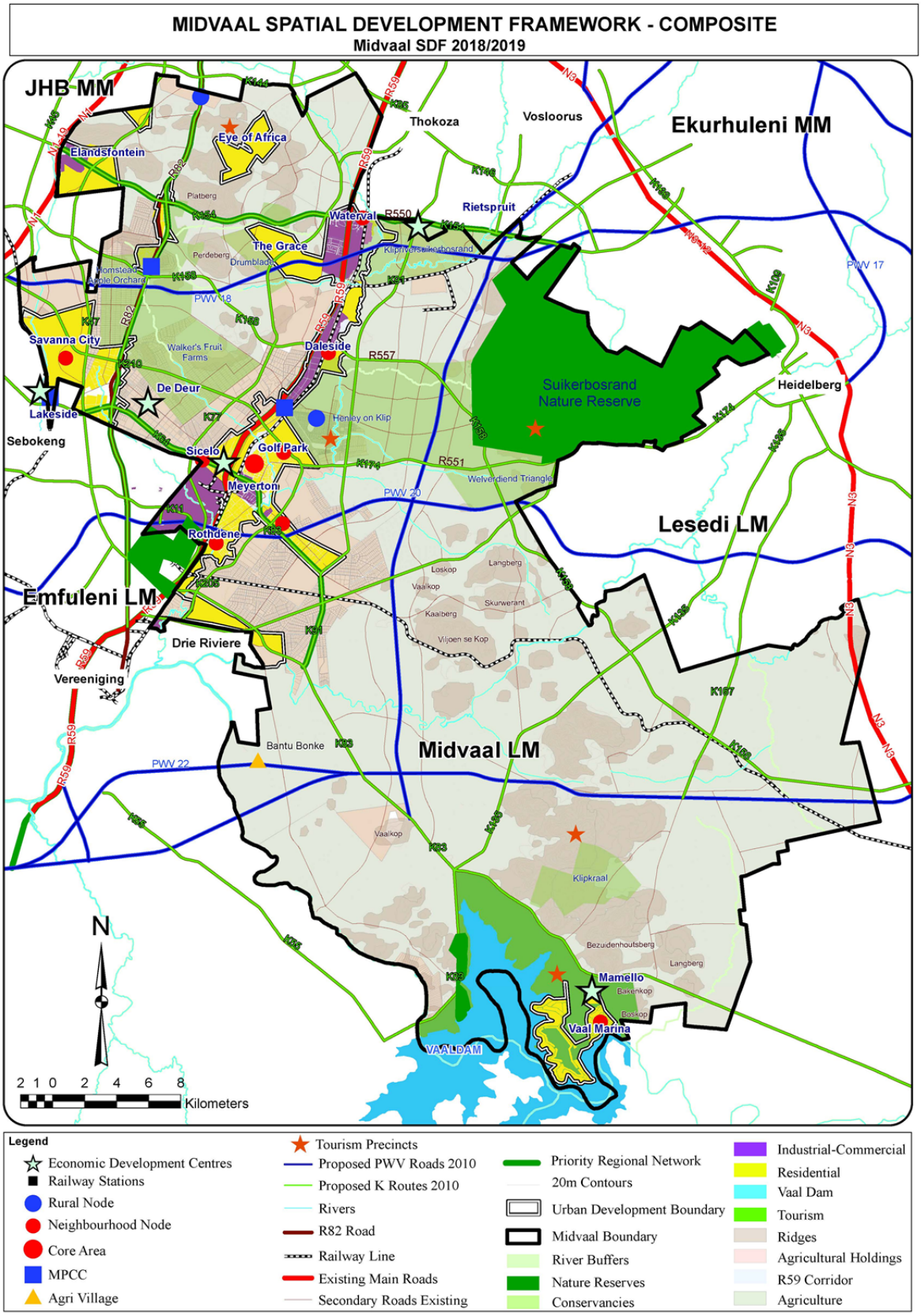


Figure 28: Spatial Development Framework for the Midvaal Municipality 2018/19

The Central Region of the development zone is the most advanced economic region in the Midvaal, partially because is located in close proximity to the R59 Development Corridor. It offers the best mobility and distribution opportunities for goods and services and as a result

plays an important role in the Midvaal local economy. It is further the region with the highest population number, population density and most diverse economic structure (as discussed above). This region, however, has very little aesthetic value and high concentrations of air pollution[37].

The Western Region is well situated with regard to the smaller R82 Development Corridor and as a result, shows strong economic potential. The Western region is however in close proximity to the economic powerhouses of Emfuleni and the southern part of the City of Johannesburg, creating strong competition for market investments. The Western Region has a scenic quality due to the hillock range and a middle-high income rural lifestyle type of residential development. Moreover, the presence of the Eye of Africa golf estate and equestrian estates in the region further add to the aesthetic beauty of the region[38].

The Eastern region has an aesthetic rural charm that favors tourism and agricultural activities, which are currently underdeveloped. The current challenge in developing these regions is high levels of air and water pollution, which affects the aesthetic appeal of the region[39]. It is important that this be urgently addressed to facilitate development in the region.

Spatial Development Potential

Between the three major development regions, the central region is believed to be the most attractive for market investment. This is on account of its proximity to R59 Development Corridor, which increases its accessibility to the urban markets located in Southern Gauteng and Northern Free State. The region further has the highest level of bulk service infrastructure to facilitate additional development. The central area is an ideal location for future industrial and commercial activities.

Development in the Western region, particularly due to its aesthetic charm should likely be in the residential sector. It lends itself to a rural and quiet type of setting, where people wishing to escape the bustle of cities may want to reside.

In the Eastern region, focus in development should be around tourism and agriculture. Tourism-related investment opportunities should focus on the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve and the Vaal Marina Node. The abundance of land should also be sweated in order to maximize its economic potential. It is interesting that Agriculture only contributes 1.5% to the local economy despite Midvaal being made up of a large portion of agricultural land. In fact, Midvaal has been earmarked as Gauteng's 'Agritropolis'.

Agri-tropolis: Growing the Midvaal Vision

Midvaal Local Municipality spans 1722 Sq. km, the second largest municipality (geographically) in Gauteng, of this 1621 Sq. Km is agricultural land (comprising farms and small/agricultural holdings). Yet agriculture contributes less than 1% to the Midvaal economy and showed the greatest decline in the long term (1996-2011) when compared to

[37] Demacon Midvaal Economic Analysis 2015
[38] *Demacon Economic Analysis Report 2015*
[39] *Demacon Economic Analysis Report 2015*

the national, provincial, and district economies (-7.3% annually).

In the medium term (-5.3% per annum between 2001-2011) and short term (1.2% per annum between 2006-2011) it fared worse than the national and provincial growth rates, but better than the district economy. The positive of this is that the Agricultural Sector is showing some improvement. This improvement can be linked to the increased government spending in this sector.

In terms of the total employment in Midvaal Local Economy, the Agricultural Sector housed 2.0% of all employees, the second smallest employment providing economic sector in the local economy. Employment growth (both formal and informal employment) shows the same pattern between 1996 and 2011, though the informal employment pattern fluctuated much more in extreme than formal employment.

In total, employment growth in agriculture, forestry & fishing has been on a slight increase between 1996 and 2011, but even with the agricultural initiatives implemented in 2009-2010, employment growth has steadily stayed in the negative. Thus indicating that government investment did not have the same impact on job creation as what it had on economic growth.

South Africa is faced with increased volatility in food security, and this is intensified in the Gauteng Province by the high rate of immigration and the resultant high population growth experienced. Midvaal Local Municipality assessed its comparative advantages and came to the conclusion that agricultural development is the arena where Midvaal can make the largest contribution, presenting the province with a “Game-changer” programme.

The role that Midvaal Local Municipality could play has been expressed by the Gauteng Premier in his State of the Province Address (SOPA) “The second area of focus is to unlock the agricultural potential of Sedibeng as the food basket of the Gauteng City Region and position the region as an Agri-tropolis.”

The reviving of agriculture and the agro-processing value chain is key for radical economic transformation, says Trade and Industry Minister Rob Davies. "Much more value is created in agro-processing than it is in agriculture. There are high quality jobs if we actually process the products that we produce. Agro-processing can exist and add value where there is agriculture. But agro-processing can also drive agriculture and create a market for farmers," said Minister Davies.

The minister was speaking at the Eat Well, Eat Safe Local campaign at Cofimvaba High School, in Cofimvaba village, Eastern Cape.The result of this is the recognition of the “Agri-tropolis” concept as a major “game-changer” programme to propel the Midvaal Economy towards modernization and leading the municipality towards the re-industrialization of Gauteng.

The impact would be beyond the revitalization of the township economy and will drive Midvaal towards decisive spatial and economic transformation, and accelerated social transformation as we will start to address unemployment through enhanced employment of women, youth and people with disabilities in agriculture and agricultural beneficiation.

The “Agri-tropolis” initiative will be an important enabler in the modernization of human settlements and urban development. The anticipation would be to give effect to the Midvaal vision for Midvaal to be renowned for robust economic growth and a high quality of life for all.

2.9. Municipal Level Summary SWOT

Table 6: Municipal Level SWOT

Municipal Level SWOT analysis	
Strengths • Clean Audit for 2013/14, 2014/15 & 2015/2016 financial years • Ranked as the top performing municipality in Gauteng • High level of positive public approval • Large supply of labour due to 70.4% of the population being economically active • Political majority • Large youth population • Lowest unemployment rate in Gauteng	**Weaknesses** • Funding and Finance constraints • Currently at a tipping point in being able to provide service based on current resources • Poor internal efficiencies • Poor internal and external communication • High inequality in provision of services • Inequality in socioeconomic conditions within the municipality • Limited mandate being a local Municipality
Opportunities • Growth in a diversification of sectors, incl. manufacturing, agriculture and tourism • Savanna City • Opportunity to leverage the customer base of City of Johannesburg due to its close proximity • Large portion of undeveloped land	**Threats** • Poor commercial perception • Continued financial stability • Slow economic growth • Internal capacitation

2.10. Identification of priority Areas

Over the course of Chapter 2 insights have been identified with respect to the current municipal situation, which was captured in the Municipal Level SWOT presented in 2.9.

From this identification, several challenges have been derived, as overarching issues within the municipality which need to be addressed as part of the five-year strategy (Chapter 3), the details and alignment, with regard to the KPAs, are provided in **Table 8** and **Figure 29**, respectively.

In addition, potential opportunities have been identified to guide the resolution of these challenges:

Table 7: Priority areas and opportunities

Challenge	Opportunities
Capacity & Capabilities Shortfall	• Capacitation • Improve internal culture
Poor Communication & Perception	• Improve marketing • Effective and visible development plans • Improve internal communication
Limited Mandate	• Improve Inter-Governmental Relations
Socio-Economic Inequality	• Introduce innovative mindset to deliver services • Skills development • Cross subsidization through growth
Insufficient Funding & Financing	• Improve revenue collection • Lobbying for additional funding • Additional tariffs and fines
Inefficient Processes & Systems	• Continuous Improvement • Optimization of internal processes and systems
Slow Economic Growth	• Diversification in key sectors • Partnering for growth • Incentivisation efforts • Employment opportunities

Table 8 - Detailed current challenges

Key Performance Area	Challenge	Detailed Challenge
KPA 1: Good Governance & Public Participation	Poor Communication & Perception	Municipality is poorly perceived with respect to external stakeholders
		Municipality has limited successful internal and external communication
		The existing communication channels are not reaching their target communities
		Municipality lacks an integrated communication system
KPA 2: Safety & Environment	Limited Mandate	Limited mandate with respect to maintaining a police force
		Limited mandate with respect to environmental protection
	Capacity & Capabilities Shortfall	Limited resources and infrastructure to combat pollution
KPA 3: Social & Community Development	Poor Communication & Perception	Limited social and entertainment activities within Midvaal
	Socio-Economic Inequality	Disparity in living conditions between households within Midvaal
		Limited skills of youth in Midvaal
	Insufficient Funding & Financing	Insufficient land for building additional cemeteries
		Insufficient budget for Early Childhood Development initiatives
		Insufficient budget for GEYODI initiatives
KPA 4: Institutional Transformation	Capacity & Capabilities Shortfall	Lack of capacity and skills
		Staff accumulating excessive leave
	Inefficient Processes & Systems	Outdated internal technology and systems
		Inefficient internal processes for decision making, building plans, communications and procurement
	Poor Communication & Perception	Poor staff morale

Key Performance Area	Challenge	Detailed Challenge
KPA 5: Financial Sustainability	Insufficient Funding & Financing	Municipality Expenses are growing faster than Revenue
		Long external legal process with respect to debt collection
		Limited debt collection in certain areas of the municipality
	Capacity & Capabilities Shortfall	Limited resources to perform debt collection
KPA 6: Physical Infrastructure & Energy Efficiency	Insufficient Funding & Financing	Limited financing for infrastructure build
		Limited service delivery enabling infrastructure in certain areas of the municipality
		Limited long term planning with respect to infrastructure
		Security concerns around key infrastructure
KPA 7: Services & Customer Care	Insufficient Funding & Financing	Limited service delivery enabling infrastructure to deliver customer service
		Disparity in service and service experience delivered to households within the municipality
KPA 8: Economic Growth & Development	Slow Economic Growth	Rate of unemployment, specifically prevalent with respect to youth
		Lack of diversity in leveraging prevalent economic sectors
		Low labour absorption rate

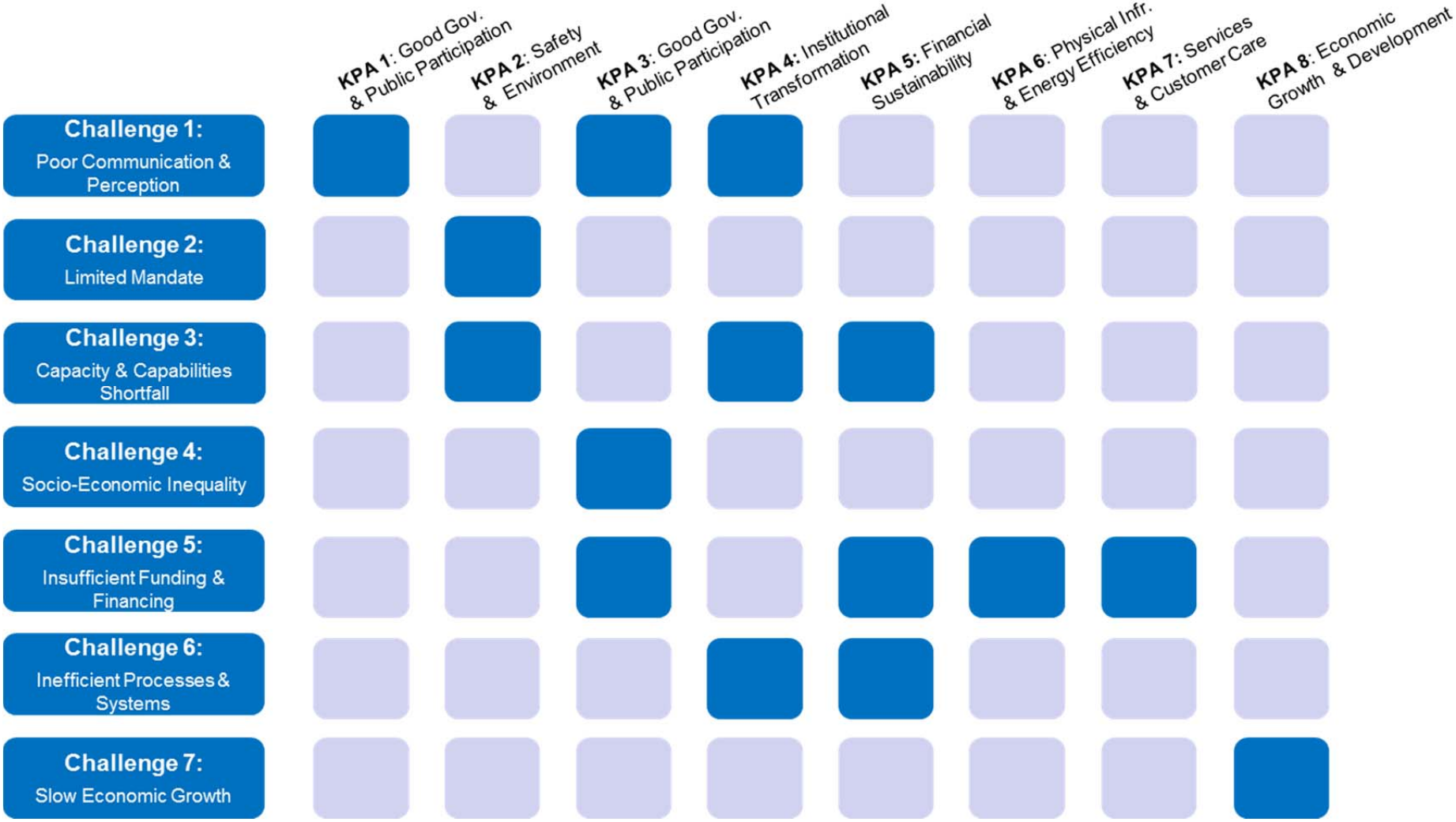


Figure 29 - Alignment of challenges with KPAs

3. Five Year Development Plan

3.1 Introduction

This chapter outlines Midvaal's strategic intent and Key Performance Areas for the next five years. It aims to respond to some of the key issues and challenges highlighted in Chapter 2, as well as national policy imperatives outlined in Chapter 1.

3.2 Vision

The municipality has performed considerably well over the last administrative period, winning the title of Gauteng's top performing municipality in 2015 and achieving a clean audit, both for two consecutive years.

Significant emphasis has been placed on delivering services to those that are most in need, without neglecting those within well-established areas.

However, with the population continually growing, it's becoming increasingly more difficult to meet the needs of our community, given a proportionally smaller increase in resources – the municipality is thus at a tipping point.

As a municipality, we are determined to ensure we continue to deliver above and beyond what is expected of us and overcome the challenges that are placed before us.

Through a process of vigorous communication, consultation and thought, we have embarked on a new journey as a municipality – one that is intended to lead us to an elevated future state for all.

A new end-state requires a revised vision to constantly give us something to strive and reach for. As an administration, we thought long and hard about what we want to achieve – a result that will truly bring about change – but also about what our role in that result is. Thus, the vision for the municipality for the next 5 years is:

"To inclusively serve the needs of our community"

3.3. Mission

In order to execute on our vision, we need to supplement it with a set of actionable principles that guide us in our day-to-day operations.

What this effectively means is that a step change is required in our approach to enable us to increase our pool of resources, whilst subsequently learning how to do more with less.

Thus, given our vision, we needed to include within our principles, elements that spoke to a new and competitive approach, and the six promises that were made to the community, as per section 1.4. Our mission for the next 5 years is thus:

We strive daily to enrich the lives of our people by:

1. Adopting a mind-set of innovation to revolutionise the way we operate
2. Leveraging partnerships to realise our full potential
3. Driving sustainability within the local ecosystem
4. Growing the economy in Midvaal, premised on incubating entrepreneurship, socio-economic growth and environmental responsibility
5. Providing excellent and standardised service delivery for all
6. Prioritising the upliftment of our youth
7. Being an ethical and proactive local municipality
8. Elevating Midvaal to be the best and most attractive municipality in the country

3.3 Values

Values reflect the core guidelines of the organization and following them ensures we remain on the right path. A customer-centric approach shapes the values of the Midvaal Local Municipality. This defines the character of the municipality and the foundation on which leadership and employees behave and conduct themselves, and guide the way in which decisions are made. Furthermore, our change in approach requires for us to prioritise values that create a new behaviour within the municipality. Midvaal Local Municipality's values are as follows:

1. Ethical
2. Accessibility
3. Collaboration
4. Innovation
5. Sustainability
6. Excellence

3.4 Strategic Themes

Given that we have adopted the six promises made to the community as our strategic goals for the next five years, it is necessary for us to adopt a concise strategic approach that provides a framework for the municipality to work within in achieving these promises through resolving the challenges referred to in Chapter 2 of this document.



Figure 30 - Strategic Themes

The attainment of our goals is dependent on the delivery of projects across seven emergent strategic themes. The execution across the strategic themes identified allows for the resolution of the challenges highlighted. Furthermore, these strategic themes can be linked back to the promises made to the community. The relationship between the strategic themes, challenges and promises can be seen within Table 9 below.

Table 9: Emergent strategic themes

#	Strategic Theme	Description	Challenge(s) resolved	Promise(s) touch point
1	**Increase revenue**	Increasing the revenue position of Midvaal Local Municipality to ensure its financial sustainability, provide improved services and enable growth	• Insufficient funding & financing • Slow economic growth • Inefficient Processes & Systems • Capabilities & Capacities shortfall	• Quality and standardised service delivery • Grow the economy
2	**Get the basics right**	Delivery of services through continuous improvement on our current processes and systems to ensure that we deliver on what is required of us	• Socio-economic inequality • Inefficient processes & systems	• Quality and standardised service delivery
3	**Innovation in**	Innovating the way we	• Socio-economic	• Quality and

	service delivery	approach challenges and how we operate to enable us to do more with less	inequality	standardised service delivery
4	**Strategic partnerships and incentives**	Forming strategic alliances with commercial and non-commercial entities, improving inter-governmental relations and working together with the community to increase resources available to the municipality to create change	• Slow economic growth • Poor communication & perception • Insufficient funding & finance	• Grow the economy • Safe communities and environment • To be youth biased
5	**Marketing and communication**	Improving communication with the community, other governmental departments, and internally within the municipal administration, whilst also elevating the perception of Midvaal within the broader economy	• Poor communication & perception • Slow economic growth • Limited mandate	• Open, honest, transparent and responsive government • Grow the economy • Safe communities and environment
6	**Youth bias & entrepreneurship**	Aggressive creating an enabling environment for youth to thrive and to breed a culture of entrepreneurship	• Socio-economic growth • Socio-economic inequality	• To be youth biased • Grow the economy
7	**Internal enablement**	Improving the municipality's ability to deliver on the 6 promises through by resolving challenges hampering its progress	• Capabilities & Capacities shortfall • Inefficient processes & systems • Poor communication & perception	• Open, honest, transparent and responsive government • Quality and standardised service delivery • Grow the economy

3.5. Governance Structure

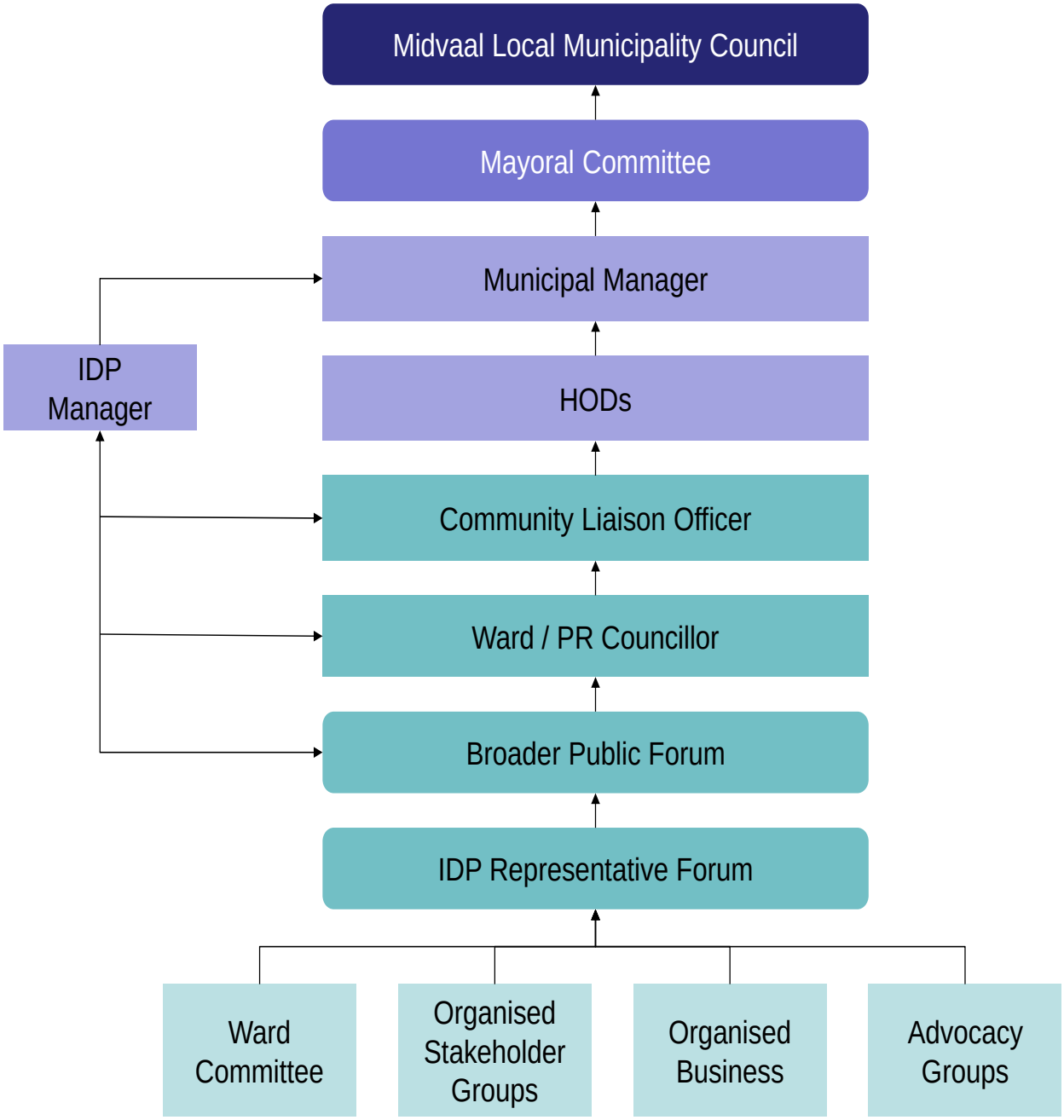


Figure 31: Midvaal Governance Structure

3.6. Council Structure



Figure 32: Midvaal Council Structure

3.7. Performance Framework

Table 10: Performance Framework Summary

KPA	KPA Definition	KFA	KFA Definition	Driver
KPA 1: Good Governance & Public Participation	To promote increased participation and improved communication with all key internal and external stakeholders	KFA 1: Governance Structures	To promote sound and sustainable governance	CORP
		KFA 2: Stakeholder Participation	To increase active stakeholder participation	CORP, Mayor
		KFA 3: Inter-Governmental Relations	To improve inter-governmental relations	MM
		KFA 4: Communications	To improve internal & external communication to enhance the perception of the municipality	CORP, DP
KPA 2: Safety & Environment	To create a sustainable environment safe from harm	KFA 5: Safety & Security	To improve the safety of the community both on the roads and in the suburbs	COMM
		KFA 6: Emergency Services	To ensure adequate prevention measures as well as prompt response to emergencies	COMM
KPA 3: Social & Community Development	To create an environment focussed on uplifting the youth, the poor and the most vulnerable	KFA 7: Sport and Recreation Programmes & Facilities, including Parks & Open Space	To create an ecosystem of sports and recreation activities	COMM
		KFA 8: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes	To promote the development of cultural and social programs to uplift the community	COMM, Mayors Off.
KPA 4: Institutional Transformation	To transform and align the people, processes and systems of the municipality to achieve its objectives	KFA 9: Human Capital & Skills Development	To ensure adequate internal capacity and capability to deliver on the municipalities objectives	CORP, Mayor
		KFA 10: Performance Management	To develop and implement an effective and efficient performance management system	MM
		KFA 11: Systems & Technology	To enhance systems and technology to enable the municipality to deliver excellent customer experience	CORP
		KFA 12: Policies, Processes & Procedures	To write and review processes and procedures to ensure the objectives of the municipality are achieved.	CORP, ES, Mayor
KPA 5: Financial Sustainability	To improve the financial sustainability and capacity of the municipality, whilst adhering to statutory	KFA 13: Financial Management	To manage the finances of the municipality in a manner that will enhance its financial viability and maintain sustainability	FIN
		KFA 14: Revenue Management	To protect and enhance revenue position of the position to enable the objectives of the municipality	FIN, Strategic

KPA	KPA Definition	KFA	KFA Definition	Driver
	requirements	KFA 15: Supply Chain Management	To develop and maintain an effective supply chain which uplifts local business and youth.	FIN
		KFA 16: Asset Management	To adequately maintain the assets of the municipality	FIN
KPA 6: Physical Infrastructure & Energy Efficiency	To ensure efficient infrastructure and energy supply that will improve the quality of life of the community	KFA 17: Electricity & Energy Efficiency	To plan, construct and maintain electricity networks and to improve energy efficiency	ES
		KFA 18: Roads & Storm-water Infrastructure	To plan, construct and maintain roads and storm-water infrastructure	ES
		KFA 19: Water & Sanitation Infrastructure	To plan, construct and maintain water and sanitation infrastructure	ES
		KFA 20: Landfill Sites & Transfer Stations	To plan, construct and maintain landfill sites and transfer stations	ES
		KFA 21: Municipal & Public Facilities	To plan, construct and maintain municipal and public facilities	ES
KPA 7: Services & Customer Care	To deliver inclusive and excellent services to the community	KFA 22: Water & Sanitation	To provide sustainable, reliable and affordable water and sanitation services to all residents	ES
		KFA 23: Electricity	To provide sustainable, reliable and affordable electricity to all residents	ES
		KFA 24: Cleansing & Waste Management	To provide sustainable, reliable and affordable waste disposal services to all residents	COMM
KPA 8: Economic Growth & Development	To facilitate sustainable economic empowerment for all communities within Midvaal and through the development of partnerships and innovation	KFA 25: LED & Capacity Building	To facilitate and promote local economic growth	DP
		KFA 26: Spatial & Dev. Plan	To develop an effective spatial framework to promote development in the municipality, focussed on enabling and aligning development objectives	DP

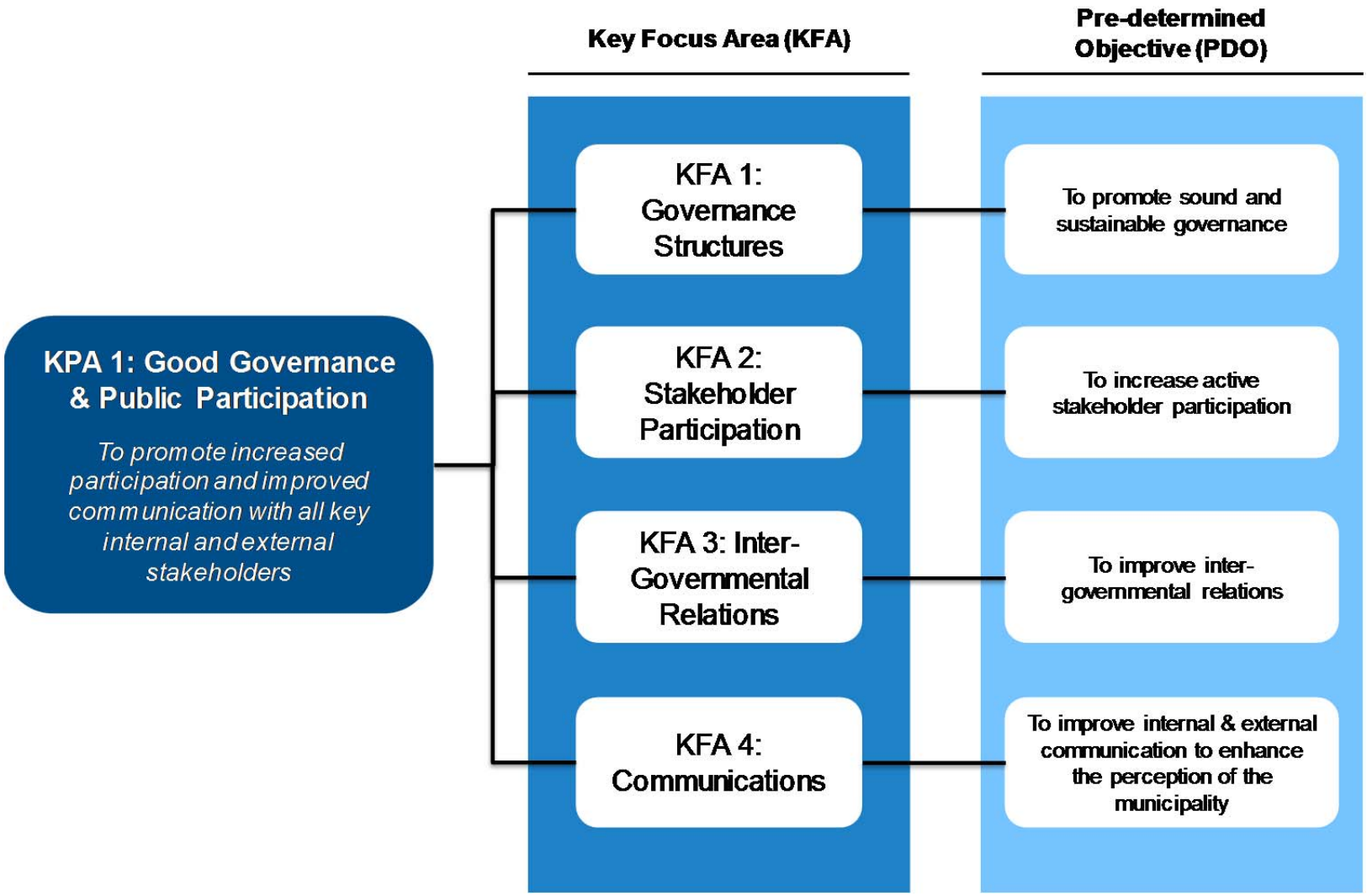


Figure 33 - KPA 1 Schematic

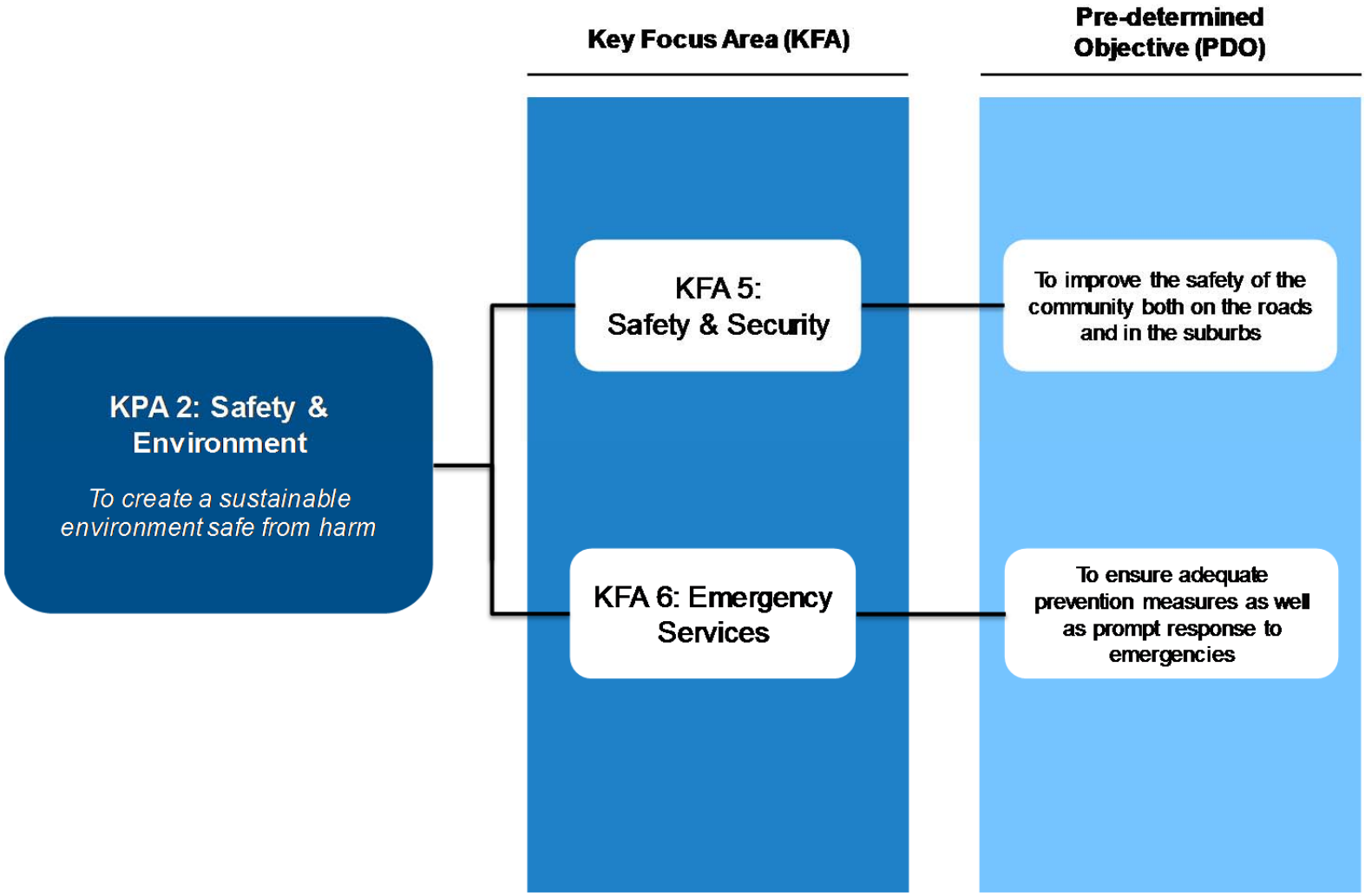


Figure 34 - KPA 2 Schematic

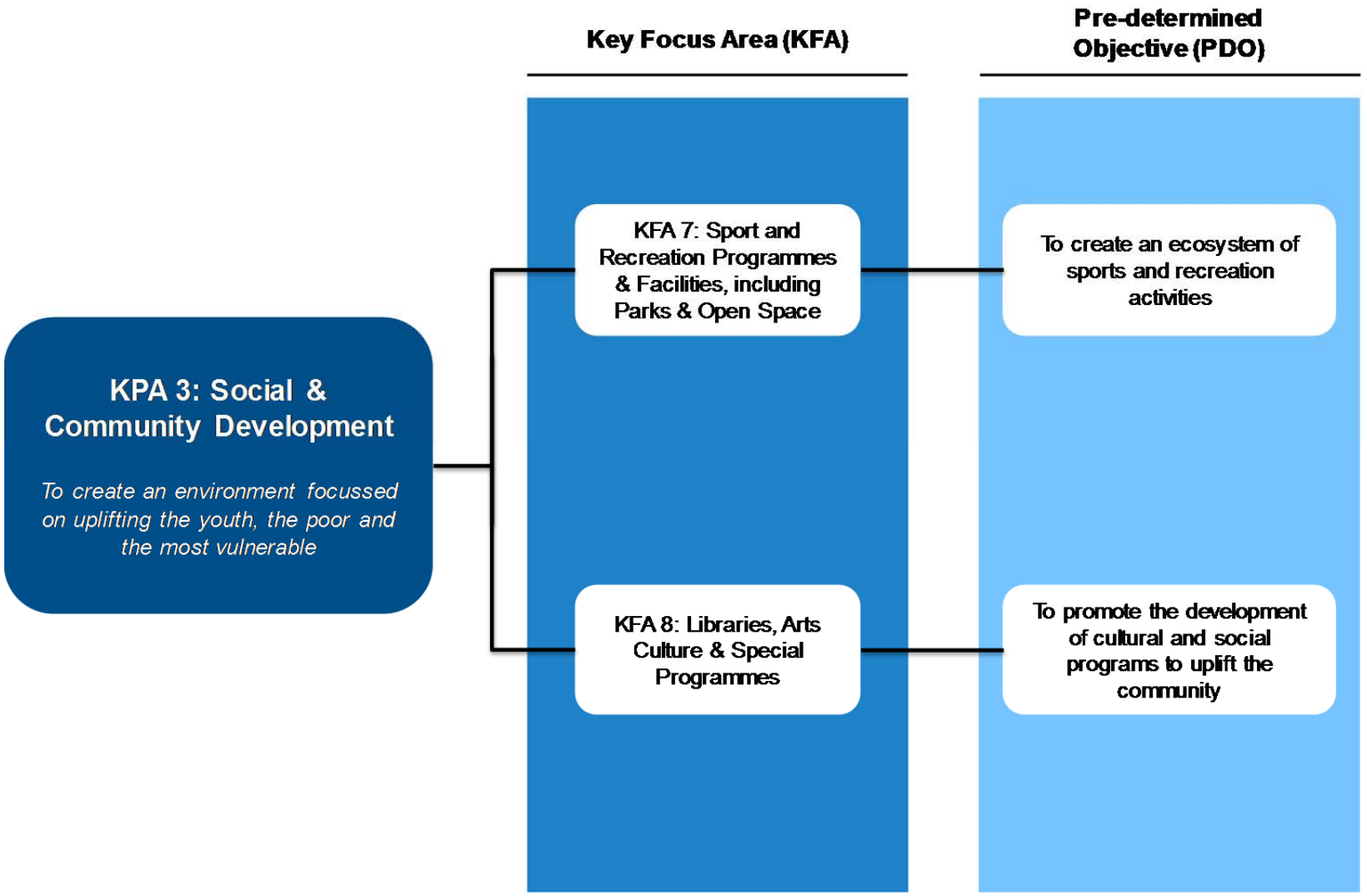


Figure 35 - KPA 3 Schematic

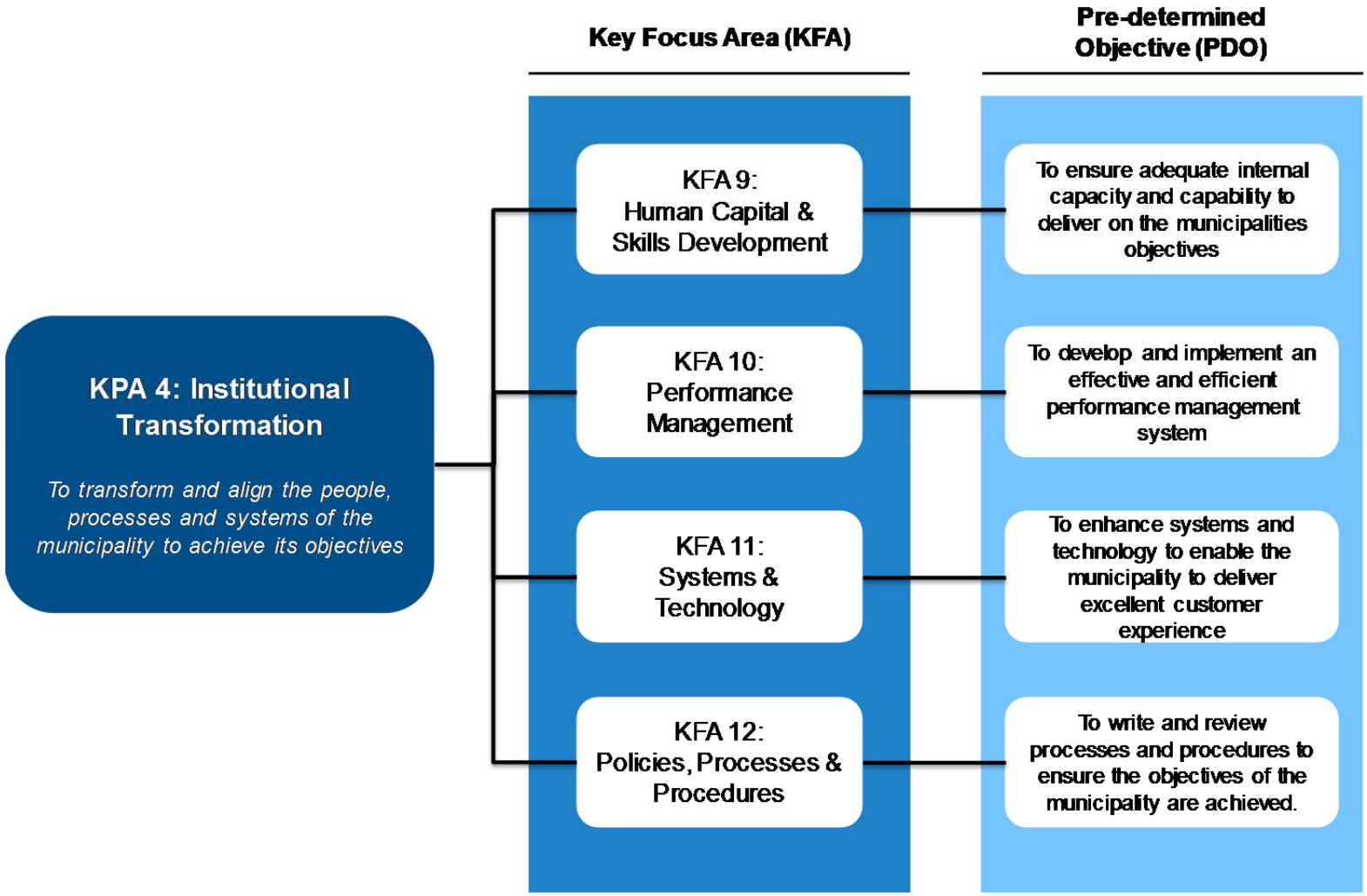


Figure 36 - KPA 4 Schematic

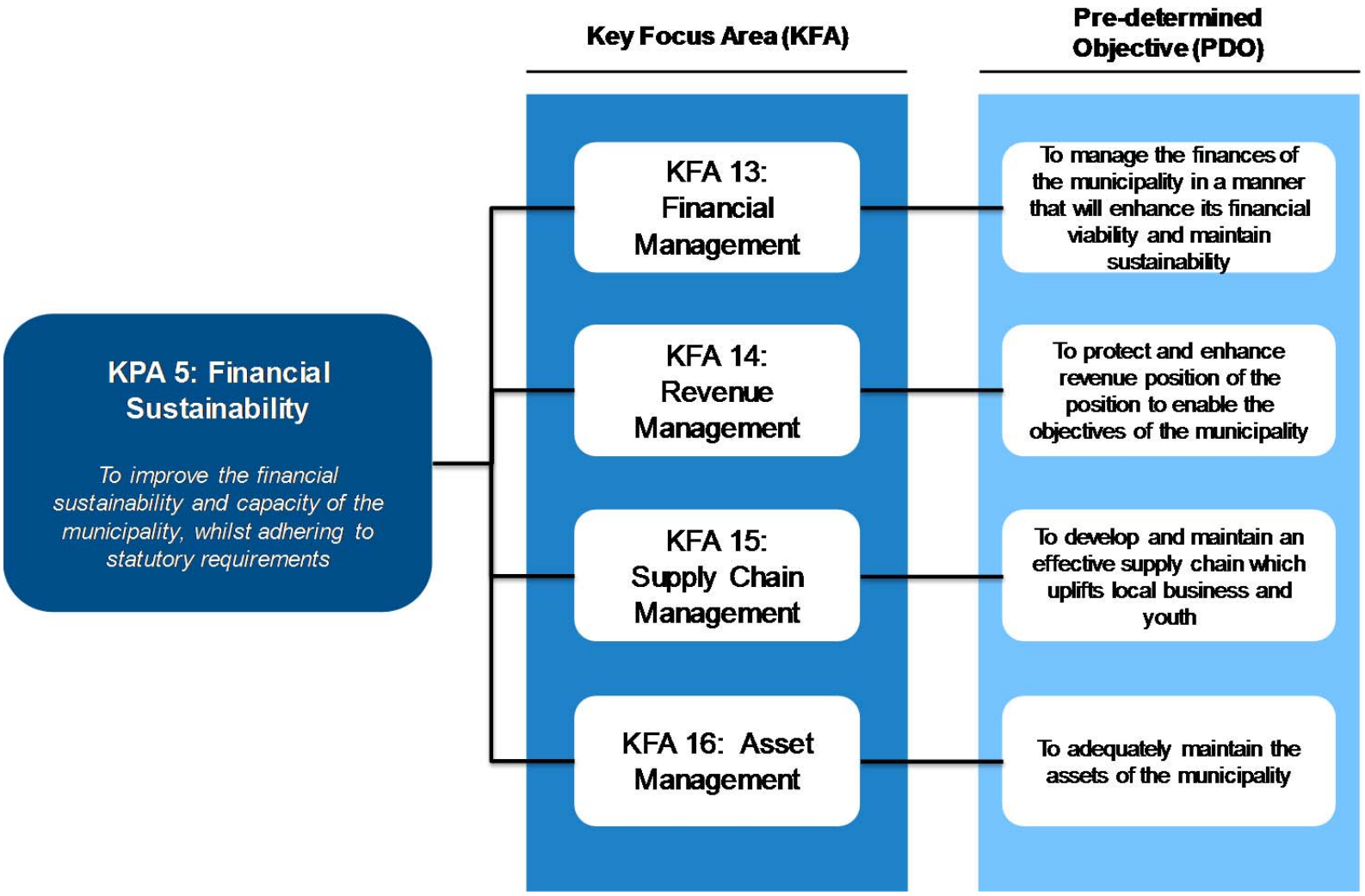


Figure 37 - KPA 5 Schematic

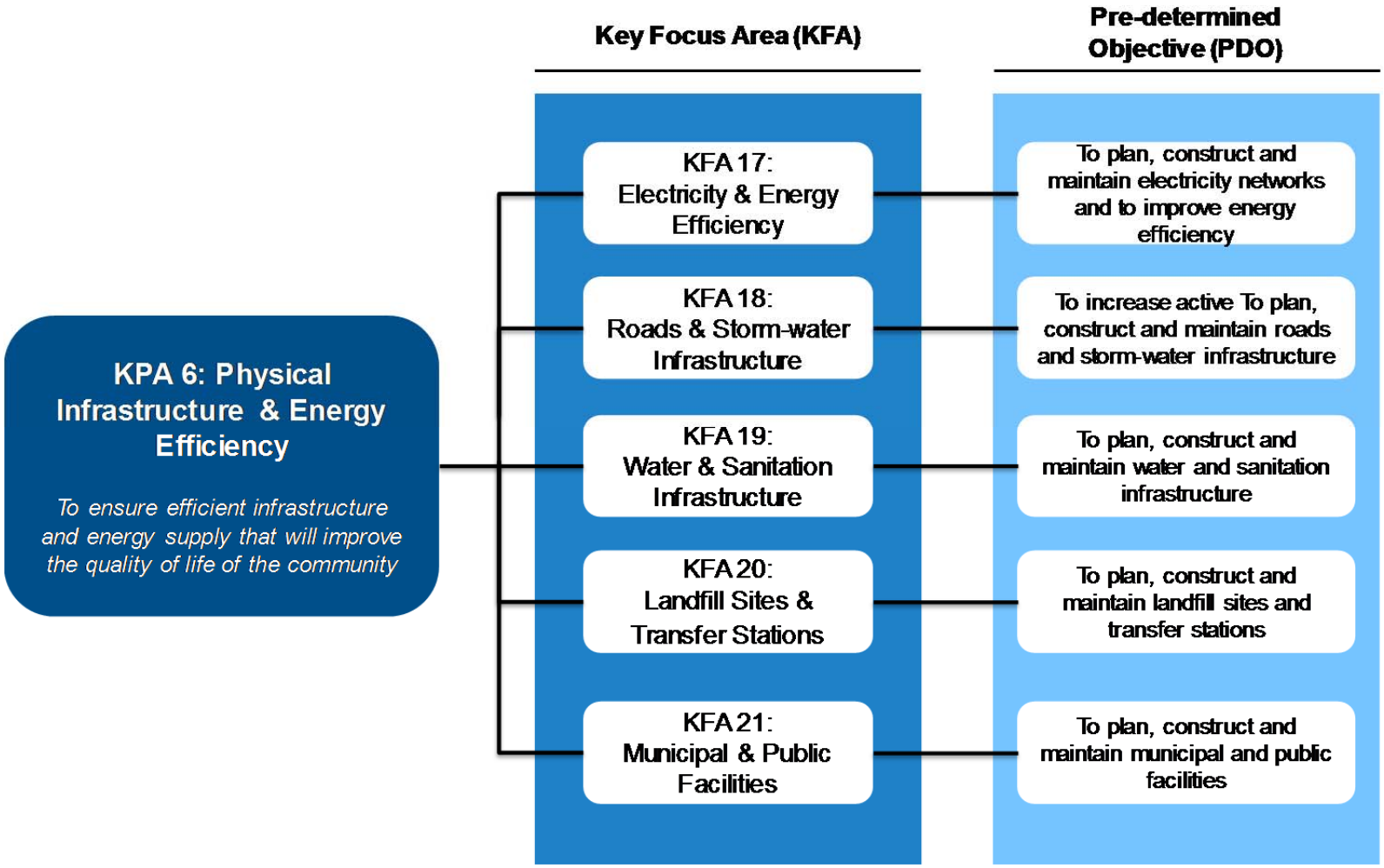


Figure 38 - KPA 6 Schematic

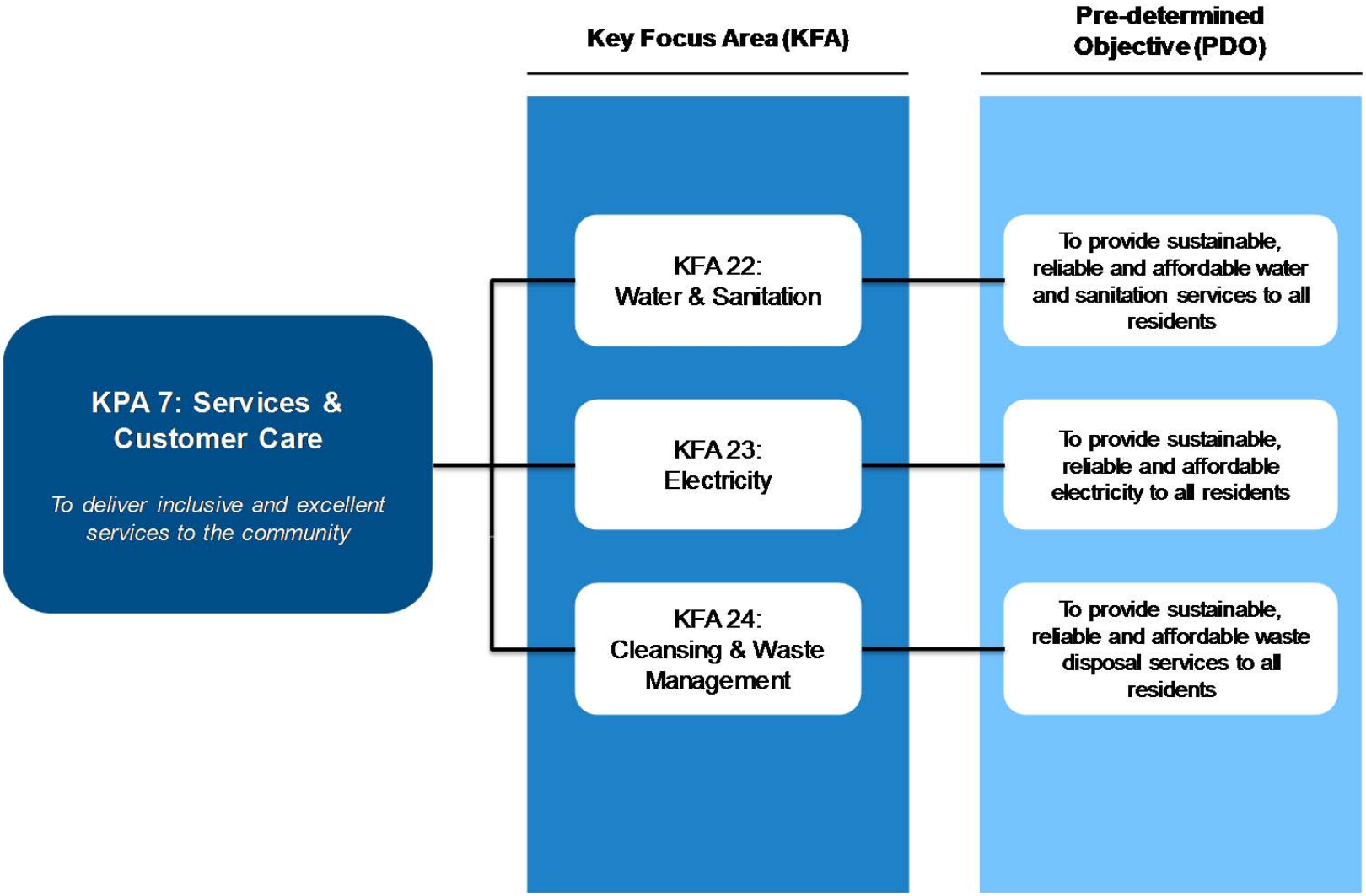


Figure 39 - KPA 7 Schematic

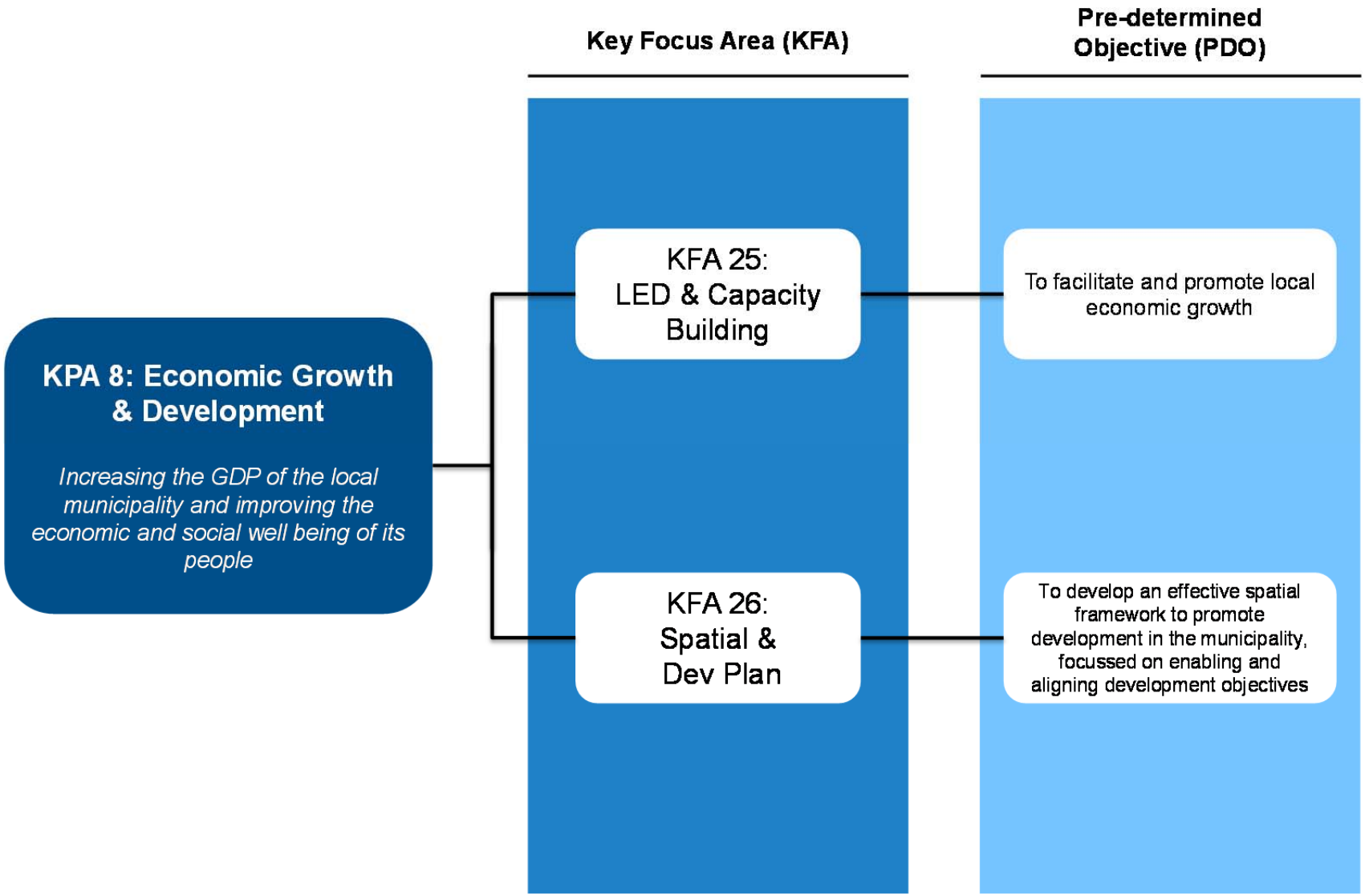


Figure 40 - KPA 8 Schematic

4. Support Plans

4.1. Financial Plan

4.1.1. Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to outline a comprehensive multi-year financial plan that will ensure long-term financial sustainability for Midvaal. The financial plan is essential to ensure that the municipality continues to implement its mandate effectively without impairing its capital base and to move towards self-sufficiency in meeting the growing demands of service delivery.

The multi-year financial plan is prepared for a planning period of five years, paying particular attention to infrastructure investment which is an important developmental component of the IDP. Through this plan Midvaal will focus on greater financial health and sustainability making collaboration of capital investment projects with other levels of government and private sector investors much easier. It is of utmost importance that Midvaal stimulates the macro-economic environment to attract the private sector to investment in Midvaal. Through this approach Midvaal will enhance its ability to have access to much needed financial resources to invest in new as well as to maintain its current infrastructure assets.

This plan will also focus on the expansion of Midvaal's revenue sources in relation to its costs to ensure that the municipality stays a financial viable and sustainable going concern. Midvaal must utilise available financial resources in an effective, efficient and economical way to ensure that outputs have the desired outcomes as set out in Chapter 3 of the IDP. The financial strategies detailed in this plan must contribute to the achievement of these objectives.

It is important to note that this multi-year financial plan will cover key focus areas over the next five years and even longer. However, due to the fact that budgets in terms of National Treasury's Municipal Budget and Reporting Regulations only covers a planning period of the next financial year and the two outer financial years thereafter; budget information supplied in this chapter will only cover the next three financial years.

A discussion will now follow on key focus areas consisting of a financial framework, financial strategies, financial policies, budget assumptions, operating revenue, operating expenditure, capital expenditure, capital expenditure funding and a concluding statement.

4.1.2. Financial Framework

It must be noted that not all municipalities are the same and this should be kept in mind when assessing the financial health of and the setting of benchmarks for a municipality. A municipality can be categorised into a developed or a developing municipality. Midvaal can be categorised as a developing or growing municipality.

Developing municipalities will require significant additional resources and funding to conduct the growth that is expected of them. With the demands for growth come risks that need to be managed. The priority from the financial perspective is the viability and sustainability of the municipality. This financial plan and related strategies will need to address a number of key areas in order to achieve this goal. The areas which have been identified are detailed below.

- ***Revenue adequacy and certainty***

It is essential that Midvaal has access to adequate sources of revenue from its own operations and intergovernmental transfers to enable it to carry out its functions. It is furthermore necessary that there is a reasonable degree of certainty with regard to the source, amount and timing of revenue. The 2018 DORA has laid out the level of funding from National Government that will be received for the 2018/2019 to 2020/2021 financial years and these amounts have been included in the budget.

It is important to track the respective sources of revenue received by the municipality as they can be quite different and can vary substantially depending upon the phase that the municipality is in. Knowledge of the sources of funds will illustrate the municipality's position more accurately, its ability to secure loans relative to its income and its borrowing capacity.

- ***Cash / liquidity position***

Cash and cash management is vital for the short- and long-term survival and good management of any organisation. This is also the case with Midvaal. The appropriate benchmarks (formulas aligned to National Treasury MFMA Circular 71) which can assist in assessing the financial health of the municipality are:

  - The **current ratio**, which expresses the current assets as a proportion to current liabilities. A current ratio in excess of one to one (1:1) is considered to be healthy.

The annual liquidity ratio was as follows for the previous years:

30 June 2013	1.49:1
30 June 2014	1.75:1
30 June 2015	1.80:1
30 June 2016	1.70:1
30 June 2017	2.09:1
30 June 2018 (projected)	2.00:1

These improved liquidity levels are the result of a revised cash management strategy implemented in the last budget cycles. The operating budget needs to produce yearly operating surpluses to improve our cash back reserves position and all collectable revenue needs to be collected on an ongoing basis.

The target for the next five years is to have a liquidty ratio of at least 1.8:1 at the end of each financial year.

  - Debtor's turnover ratio (net debtors), which have a great impact on the liquidity of the Municipality. This ratio measures the time it takes the municipality to recover its outstanding debts.

The debtor's turnover ratio ratio was as follows for the previous years:

30 June 2013	64 days
30 June 2014	70 days
30 June 2015	67 days

30 June 2016	55 days (reduction due to increased provision for bad debt due to indigent policy change)
30 June 2017	57 days
30 June 2018 (projected)	60 days

Midvaal will attempt to reduce the debtor's turnover ratio to less than 60 days over the medium term to long-term.

- The collection rate has a great impact on the liquidity of the municipality, and has been averaging at 93% in the past. Due to the current economic climate, it is anticipated that the collection rate will remain under pressure for the MTREF period.

30 June 2013	94%
30 June 2014	92%
30 June 2015	93%
30 June 2016	93%
30 June 2017	93.76%
30 June 2018 (projected)	94%

Collection rates are under pressure as the increasing tariffs and the cost of services become more unaffordable to households. It is expected that the collection rate will remain in excess of 94% over the medium term. All debt older than 90 days have been provided for. The non-collectable portion are provided for in the operating budget as a debt impairment expense.

- ***Sustainability***

Midvaal ensures that its budget is fully funded. As there are limits on revenue, it is necessary to ensure that services are provided at levels that are affordable; and, that the full costs of service delivery are recovered. However, to ensure that households which are too poor to pay for even a portion of their basic services at least have access to these basic services; there is a need for the subsidisation of these households through an indigent support subsidy.

- ***Effective and efficient use of resources***

In an environment of limited resources, it is essential that the municipality make maximum use of the resources at its disposal by using them in an effective and efficient manner. Efficiency in operations and investment increases poor people's access to basic services as more services can be rendered with the scarce resources. For this reason, the operating budget is compiled without including any fat in the budget – only absolutely necessary allocations are given consideration.

- ***Accountability, transparency and good governance***

The municipality is accountable to the people who provide the resources, for what they do with these resources. The budgeting process and other financial decisions are thus open to public scrutiny and participation. In addition, the accounting and financial reporting procedures are designed so that it minimises opportunities for corruption. In addition, accurate financial information is produced within acceptable time-frames.

- ***Equity and redistribution***

The municipality must treat people fairly and justly when it comes to the provision of services. In the same way the municipality should be treated equitably by national and provincial government when it comes to inter-governmental transfers. The "equitable share" from national government will be used primarily for targeted subsidies to indigent households. In addition, the municipality will continue to cross-subsidise between high- and low-income consumers within a specific service or between services. Unfunded mandates remain a financial burden to Midvaal's customer base due to national and provincial transfers not following the functions that Midvaal perform on behalf of government.

- ***Development and investment***

In order to deal effectively with backlogs in services, there is a need for the municipality to maximise its investment in municipal infrastructure. Due to our financial constraints the underlying policies encourage the maximum degree of private sector investment.

- ***Macro-economic investment***

As the municipality plays a significant role in the economy of Gauteng, it is essential that it operates efficiently within the national and provincial macro-economic framework. Midvaal's financial and developmental activities should therefore support national and provincial fiscal policy.

- ***Borrowing***

The strong capital market in South Africa (commercial banks and other lending institutions like the DBSA, etc.) provides an additional instrument to access financial resources. However, the municipality may not borrow to balance its operating budget and to finance any operating expenditure. Midvaal has a borrowing policy in place that ensures the municipality borrows in a responsible way. In order to have access to this market, the municipality will continue to maintain accurate and appropriate financial accounting and reporting systems. We will have to ensure that we generate enough cash to honour repayment commitments.

The manner in which the municipality manages debt or takes on new debt to finance investment activities will have a significant impact on the solvency and long-term viability of the municipality. Midvaal aims at a maximum borrowing level of external loans that will not exceed 40% of the total operating revenue over the short- and medium term. New borrowings are recommended for the 2018/2019 financial year as well as the outer years of the budget. The borrowings will be used to finance new infrastructure as well as new operational vehicles.

4.1.3. Financial Strategies

With the above framework as a background, strategies and programmes have been identified and form part of the financial plan to achieve the desired objective and that is the financial viability and sustainability of the municipality.

- ***Revenue raising strategies***

The following are some of the more significant programmes that have been identified:

(a) The annual review and implementation of the credit control and debt collection policy. This policy and the relevant procedures detail all areas of customer care, credit control and debt collection of amounts billed to customers, including procedures for non-payment, etc.

(b) The annual review and maintenance of a uniform tariff policy. This policy will ensure that fair tariffs are charged in a uniform manner throughout the municipal area.

(c) The annual review and maintenance of an indigent policy. This policy defines the qualification criteria for an indigent household and the level of free basic services enjoyed by indigent households.

(d) The annual review and maintenance of a property rates policy. This will ensure that a fair rates policy and an updated valuation roll are applied to the entire municipal area and will aim to ensure that all properties are included in the municipality's records. Furthermore, the policy will ensure that valuations are systematically carried out on a regular basis for all properties. It must be noted that a new valuation roll has been compiled during the year for implementation as from 1 July 2018.

(e) The writing-off of irrecoverable debt. Prescribed debt will be considered for write off on an annual basis.

- ***Asset management strategies and programmes***

The following are some of the more significant programmes that have been identified:

(a) The ongoing maintenance of an integrated asset management system. This programme involves the ongoing updating of a suitable integrated asset management system. It also includes the capturing of all assets onto the system, the maintenance of this system and the production of a complete asset register in terms of the GRAP Accounting Standards requirements.

(b) The review and update of asset and risk insurance procedures and the renewal of the insurance portfolio. This programme will involve the identification of risks in conjunction with insurers and all heads of departments. It will also include the review of the existing insurance portfolio (inclusive of self-insurance where appropriate) and the renewal of the insurance policy as per renewal terms.

- ***Financial management strategies and programmes***

The following are some of the more significant programmes that have been identified:

(a) The implementation of the MFMA Regulations – Municipal Standard Chart of Accounts (mSCOA) was implemented on 1 July 2017.

(b) The annual review of the entire organogram of Finance Department, ensuring adequate capacity exist to optimise service delivery.

(c) Integration of all computerised systems and acquisition of hardware and software required. The integration of computerised systems and acquisition of the required hardware and software within the municipality to ensure that information is accurate, relevant and prompt, which in turn will facilitate the smooth running and effective management of the municipality.

(d) Development of a GRAP compliant Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework compliant with National Treasury's Municipal Budget and Reporting Regulations.

(e) Implementation of integrated development planning and budgeting using community consultation processes.

(f) Reviewing and updating of asset, budget and accounting policies and procedures.

(g) Training and development of financial and other staff. The aim of this project will be to constantly ensure that the financial and other staff members receive the training they require to ensure a cost-effective and efficient service to the municipality and its customers and to ensure full compliance with the MFMA Regulations on Minimum Competency Levels.

(h) Enhancing budgetary controls and timeliness of financial data. Building the capacity of the Budget and Treasury Office to ensure that financial information for reporting purposes is generated timeously. It will also include the monitoring and reporting on budget variances.

- ***Capital financing strategies and programmes***

The following are some of the more significant programmes that have been identified:

(a) The annual review and implementation of a borrowing policy. This policy will ensure that any borrowings taken by the municipality will be done in a responsible manner and that the repayment and servicing of such debt will be affordable.

(b) The annual review and implementation of a policy on donor funding.

(c) The development of a capital investment framework.

4.1.4. Financial Policies

- ***General financial philosophy***

The financial philosophy of Midvaal is to provide a sound financial base and the resources necessary to sustain a satisfactory level of municipal services for the citizens of Midvaal.

It is the goal of the municipality to achieve a strong financial position with the ability to withstand local and regional economic impacts; to adjust efficiently to the community's changing service requirements; to effectively maintain, improve and expand the municipality's infrastructure; to manage the municipality's budget and cash flow to the maximum benefit of the community; to prudently plan, coordinate and implement responsible and sustainable community development and growth; and to provide a high level of fire and other protective services to assure public health and safety.

Based on the financial framework, financial strategies and the general financial philosophy statement, the municipality have to develop financial policies that support the above. Midvaal's financial policies shall also address the following fiscal goals:

(a) To keep the municipality in a fiscally sound position in both the long and short term;

(b) To maintain sufficient financial liquidity through regular reviews and adjustments to meet normal operating and contingent obligations;

(c) To apply credit control policies which maximise collection while providing relief to the indigent;

(d) To implement credit control policies that recognise the basic policy of customer care and convenience;

(e) To maintain and protect existing infrastructure and capital assets;

(f) To provide a framework for the prudent use of debt financing; and,

(g) To direct the municipality's financial resources toward meeting the goals of the municipality's Integrated Development Plan.

- ***Budget related policies***

The annual budget is the central financial planning document, directed by the IDP that embodies all revenue and expenditure decisions. It establishes the level of services to be provided by each department. The budget will be subject to monthly control and be reported to Council with recommendations of actions to be taken to achieve the budget goals. The budget will be subject to a mid-year review, which will result in an Adjustments Budget if required.

Adequate maintenance and replacement of the municipality's assets (property, plant and equipment) will be provided for in the annual budget. It will be informed by Council's Asset Management Policy. The municipality will aim to achieve a target of allocating 10% - 12% of the operating budget to repairs and maintenance within a five-year period.

The budget shall balance recurring cash operating expenses to recurring cash operating revenues. The budget will have revenue plans based on realistically expected revenue to be collected and expenditure figures. Plans will be included to achieve maximum revenue collection percentages. More about this when the revenue raising policies are discussed in paragraph below.

- ***Capital infrastructure investment policies***

The municipality will establish and implement a comprehensive three-year capital budget. This budget will be updated annually to ensure that bulk infrastructure services and internal infrastructure services together with the foreseen funding sources are planned in an integrated and coordinated manner.

An annual capital investment budget will be developed and adopted by Midvaal as part of the annual budget. The municipality make all capital improvements in accordance with the IDP. Midvaal also has a Developer Contribution Policy aimed to generate additional funding from developers to assist in the upgrading of bulk infrastructure services.

- ***Revenue policies***

The municipality will estimate annual revenues through a conservative, objective and analytical process based on realistically expected revenue to be collected. The municipality will consider market rates and charges levied by other public and private organisations for similar services in establishing rates, fees and charges. Midvaal will set fees and user charges at a level that fully supports the total direct and indirect costs of operations. Tariffs will be set to reflect the developmental and social policies of Council. These principles will be embedded in a Tariff Policy that will be updated on an annual basis.

Midvaal will maintain a valuation system based on market values of all properties within its boundaries as well as periodically review the cost of activities supported by user fees to determine the impact of inflation and other cost increases. The valuation roll will be reviewed every 5 years. Fees will be adjusted where appropriate to reflect these increases. These principles and the raising of property rates are contained in the Property Rates Policy.

The municipality will continue to identify and pursue grants and appropriations from province, central government and other agencies that are consistent with the municipality's goals and strategic plan and to eradicate unfunded mandates.

- ***Credit control policies and procedures***

Midvaal will follow an aggressive policy of collecting revenues from those who can afford to pay for their services. For this purpose, a Credit Control and Debt Collection Policy has been adopted by Council. As the recoverability of all outstanding debt is questionable, the writing off of prescribed debt are considered by Council on an annual basis.

- ***Supply chain management***

The Supply Chain Management Policy will ensure that goods and services are procured compliant with legislative requirements in a fair, equitable, transparent, competitive and cost effective way. It includes the disposal of goods or assets not needed anymore for basic service delivery and it must be read in conjunction with Council's Disposal of Assets Policy.

- ***Investment policy***

In terms of Section 13(2) of the Municipal Finance Management Act each municipality must establish an appropriate and effective cash management and investment policy. Investments of the municipality shall be undertaken in a manner that seeks to ensure the preservation of capital in the overall portfolio. The portfolio shall remain sufficiently liquid to enable the municipality to meet daily cash flow demands and conform to all state and local requirements governing the investment of public funds. The preservation of principal is the foremost objective of the investment program. Midvaal will continue the current cash management and investment practices, which are designed to emphasise safety of capital first, sufficient liquidity to meet obligations second, and the highest possible yield third. These principles are embedded in the Cash Management and Investment Policies of Council.

- ***Debt management policies***

Midvaal shall issue debt only when necessary to meet a public need and when funding for such capital projects is not available from current revenues, reserves or other sources. Long-term borrowing will be used to finance capital improvements as approved in the municipality's Capital Budget. Capital projects financed through the issuance of debt shall be financed for a period not exceeding the expected useful life of the project. The municipality will not incur debt to finance current operations. Lease-purchase obligations, capital outlay notes or other debt instruments may be used as a medium-term method of borrowing for the financing of vehicles, computers, other specialised types of equipment, or other capital improvements. All these principles are embedded in the Borrowing Policy of Council.

Borrowing should be limited to 40% of the total operating budget rand value. If not, the municipality will become over-borrowed and a risk to banking institutions and this will result in loans over shorter terms and at higher interest rates. This would not be fair to the current customer base.

- ***Asset management policies***

The objective of the asset management policy is to prescribe the accounting and administrative policies and procedures relating to Property, Plant & Equipment (PPE), which are immoveable and moveable assets of Midvaal, and, computer software as well as servitudes which are intangible assets of Midvaal Local Municipality. The principles and policy statements are embedded in the Asset Management Policy of Council.

- ***Accounting policies***

The principals on which Midvaal operate with regard to the presentation, treatment and disclosure of financial information forms part of the Accounting Policy adopted in the compiled annual financial statements.

4.1.5. Budget Assumptions

Based on the financial framework, financial strategies and financial policies the MTREF budget was compiled. Key assumptions relating to the MTREF budget also included the following:

(a) National government grants for the years 2018/19 to 2020/21 are as per the Division of Revenue Act (DoRA) promulgated in 2018.

(b) Provincial government grants for the years 2018/19 to 2020/21 are as promulgated in the Provincial Gazettes.

(c) Inflation has been estimated in line with NT Budget Circular 89, with the CPI projected to be 5.2% in 2018/2019 and 5.5% for the two outer years.

(d) The salary bill cost-of-living increase budgeted for 2018/19 amounts to 7% with CPI plus 0.5% increases for the next two indicative years (estimated at 6%).

(e) Bulk electricity purchases increased with 7.32% for the 2018/19 financial year and projected at 8% for the next two indicative years.

(f) Bulk water purchases increased with 12.2% for the 2018/19 financial year. A 10% increase was estimated for the 2019/20 financial year as well as for the 2020/21 year.

(g) A new valuation roll has been prepared for implementation on 1 July 2018. A revenue increase for property rates of 10% has been factored into the tariff for the 2018/19 financial year with 10% and 8% for the two outer years.

(h) Electricity tariffs will increase with 6.84% for the 2018/19 financial year. A 7.4% increase has been budgeted for the next two financial years.

(i) Water tariffs increase with 9.5% for the 2018/19 financial year and a projected 8.5% and 8.2% respectively for the two outer years.

(j) Sanitation and refuse tariffs increase with 9.5% for the 2018/19 financial year and a projected 8% and 6% respectively for the two outer years.

The budget is based on current service levels with provision for growth in property rates and other services for the Savanna City Development.

4.1.6. Operating Revenue

In order to serve the community and to render the services needed, revenue generation is fundamental to financial sustainability. The reality is that we are faced with developmental backlogs and poverty challenging our revenue generation capacity. The needs (being capital or operational of nature) always exceed the available financial resources. This becomes more obvious when compiling the annual budget and comparing it with the community's needs as recorded in the IDP. This is a worldwide problem and therefore available financial resources should be utilised where it delivers the biggest impact on outcomes that will improve the quality of life of our local communities.

The operating revenue will now be discussed and analysed.

- **Operating revenue by source**

The operating revenue for 2018/2019 is budgeted at R1 110 301 817, which is an increase of 4.9% from the 2017/2018 adjusted budget.

Provision has been made to supply all households serviced by the Council with 4kl of water free of charge and not 6kl as in the past. As from 1 July 2017, only registered indigent households (inclusive of deemed indigent households) receive 6kl free water per month and all other household will receive only 4kl. It is intended to phase out the provision of free basic water from non-indigent household in totality by end of the 2019/2020 financial year. 4kl of free basic water will be provided in the 2018/2019 financial years, 2kl in the 2019/2020 financial year and no free basic water as from 1 July 2020.

The Income Budget has been compiled based on projected billing, however provision has been made for a 95% collection rate through the provision of funds for the impairment of debtors.

The revenue per department and per funding source are as follows:

Income Summary Report: Income per Department (Municipal Standard Classification)				
Income	**Adjusted Budget**	**2018/2019**	**2019/2020**	**2020/2021**
Municipal Manager	-	-	-	-
Council	5 724 000	5 754 000	6 300 000	6 300 000
Corporate Services	2 313 336	1 806 371	1 914 753	2 020 064
Financial Services	210 034 332	262 395 201	284 905 930	303 031 682
Development & Planning	2 900 329	3 788 657	4 015 977	4 236 856
Community Services	132 221 326	122 619 965	131 937 098	142 331 151
Engineering Services	666 055 623	678 155 533	734 100 094	788 708 918
Savanna City	39 111 007	35 782 090	51 345 015	55 569 197
TOTAL INCOME	**1 058 359 953**	**1 110 301 817**	**1 214 518 867**	**1 302 197 868**

Income Summary Report: Income per Fund				
Income	**Adjusted Budge**	**2018/2019**	**2019/2020**	**2020/2021**
Capital Monetary Energy Efficiency and Demand S	8 000 000	8 000 000	20 082 000	25 600 000
Capital Monetary MIG	37 789 000	31 201 000	31 786 000	33 402 000
Capital Monetary WSIG	15 000 000	15 000 000	15 000 000	15 825 000
Capital Monetary Developers Contributions	13 447 605	10 001 017	21 170 847	23 088 746
Disposal of PPE	200 358	20 000	21 200	22 366
Equitable Share	86 316 000	97 192 000	107 139 000	118 616 000
Fines Penalties and Forfeits	50 183 157	50 184 709	53 195 792	56 121 560
Interest, Dividends and Rent on land	7 245 000	7 528 500	7 829 010	8 121 005
Operational Revenue	2 764 702	2 360 264	2 501 880	2 639 481
Property Rates	200 314 942	219 283 645	241 184 132	260 115 964
Rental from Fixed Assets	1 404 000	1 300 000	1 378 000	1 453 790
Sale of goods and Rendering of services	20 583 007	506 200	536 572	566 084
Service Charges Electricity	331 567 087	353 725 859	379 741 268	398 551 497
Service Charges Waste	38 958 477	42 428 977	43 429 712	43 498 297
Service Charges Waste Water	38 080 362	42 678 558	40 518 843	37 052 800
Service Charges Water	185 633 058	205 259 646	226 885 244	249 996 672
Transfer DAC	9 303 000	11 050 000	10 200 000	15 000 000
Transfer Health Subsidy	6 069 714	6 364 541	6 681 903	7 069 466
Transfers EPWP	1 119 000	1 181 000	-	-
Transfers FMG	1 550 000	1 550 000	1 550 000	1 550 000
Transfers from District Environmental Health	2 831 484	3 485 901	3 687 464	3 907 140
TOTAL INCOME	**1 058 359 953**	**1 110 301 817**	**1 214 518 867**	**1 302 197 868**

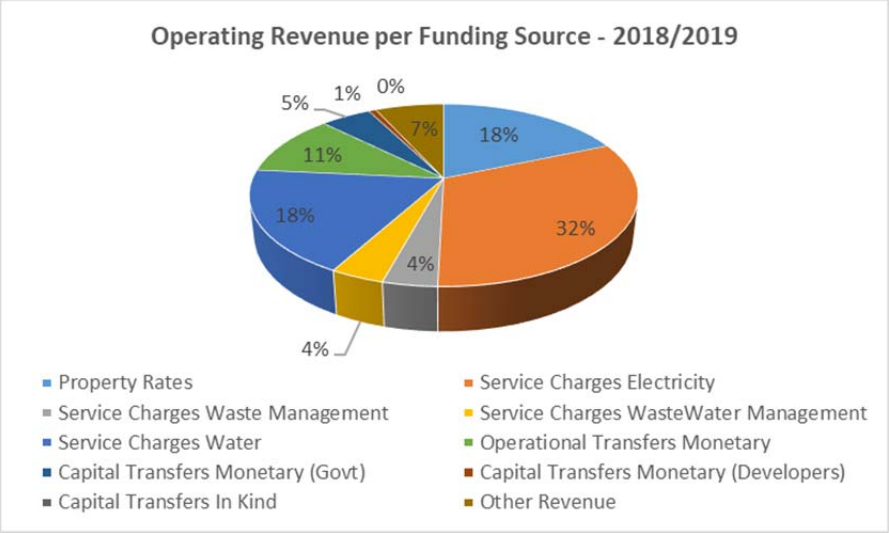


Figure 4.1: Operating Revenue Distribution for the 2018/19 Financial Year

- ***Analysis of projected operating revenue***

Property Rates – all properties are rated in terms of the Municipal Property Rates Act and levied accordingly. Residential properties benefit from a residential reduction in their rate in that the first R150 000 of their property values are exempted from property rates. This benefit is accounted for as Income Foregone. A new valuation roll will be implemented on 1 July 2018.

Service Charges for Services – this category comprises sale of Electricity, Water, Sanitation and Solid Waste (Refuse Collection). This is the main municipal services and accounts for 58% of the operating income of Council.

Operating Grants and Subsidies have been budgeted for as per the Division of Revenue Act. The Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant (RBIG) intended for the construction of the regional sewer network is an indirect grant (project to be implemented by Rand Water) and is thus not included in the budget.

Developer Contributions are expected for the MTREF period and the bulk of this will be utilised for the provision of infrastructure for new developments.

4.1.7. Operating Expenditure

The operating expenditure for 2018/2019 is budgeted at R1 109 784 186 (an increase of 5.36% from the 2017/2018 adjusted budget). This includes a provision for salary increases of 6%, increase in repairs and maintenance expenditure of 8.3%, general expenditure of 0% and contracted services of 0%. Bulk purchases has been increased as follows:

Water Purchases from Randwater – 12.2%
Electricity Purchases from Eskom – 7.32%

The expenditure per department and per category are as follows:

Expenditure Summary Report: Expenditure per Department (Municipal Standard Classification)				
Expenditure	**Adjusted Budget**	**2018/2019**	**2019/2020**	**2020/2021**
Municipal Manager	9 521 636,00	5 706 011,00	5 964 415,00	6 304 806,00
Corporate Services	78 299 966,00	83 390 016,00	87 374 646,00	92 195 462,00
Financial Services	95 369 923,00	71 917 268,00	77 810 842,60	84 869 993,00
Development & Planning	29 992 223,00	32 056 256,00	33 565 009,00	35 371 450,00
Community Services	192 906 321,00	209 839 495,00	220 228 286,00	232 053 361,00
Engineering Services	621 080 251,00	675 186 636,00	718 260 460,00	765 556 682,00
Savanna City	26 184 011,00	31 688 504,00	33 692 154,00	36 123 778,00
TOTAL EXPENDITURE	**1 053 354 331,00**	**1 109 784 186,00**	**1 176 895 812,60**	**1 252 475 532,00**

Expenditure	Adjusted Budget	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021
Salaries and Allowances				
Senior Managers	9 857 787	10 365 999	10 987 960	11 647 234
Municipal Staff	241 808 813	278 226 515	294 920 106	312 615 313
Councillors Allowances	11 453 117	12 389 536	13 132 906	13 920 880
Contracted Services				
Outsourced Services	53 306 963	47 611 749	48 014 004	50 669 622
Consultants and Professional Services	26 736 674	23 821 535	24 655 287	26 011 331
Contractors	61 811 557	64 307 818	66 409 228	70 061 745
Operational Cost	58 922 876	54 895 333	57 213 070	60 278 882
Inventory	13 654 704	13 637 979	14 284 844	15 070 516
Bulk Purchases				
Electricity	231 424 506	252 565 802	270 667 676	291 527 414
Water	102 500 001	120 647 660	133 379 520	149 488 014
Interest, Dividends and Rent on Land	21 369 488	25 943 453	27 861 830	23 584 130
Operating Leases	-	-	-	-
Bad Debt Written Off	81 827 143	87 815 258	93 634 867	99 087 417
Transfers and Subsidies	21 436 602	286 520	296 548	312 858
Depreciation and Ammortisation	117 244 100	117 244 100	121 347 642	128 021 766
Loss on Sale of Assets				
TOTAL EXPENDITURE	**1 053 354 331**	**1 109 759 258**	**1 176 805 488**	**1 252 297 122**

- ***Operating expenditure by type***

The detail of the operating budget is contained in the Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework for the period 2018/2019 – 2020/2021.

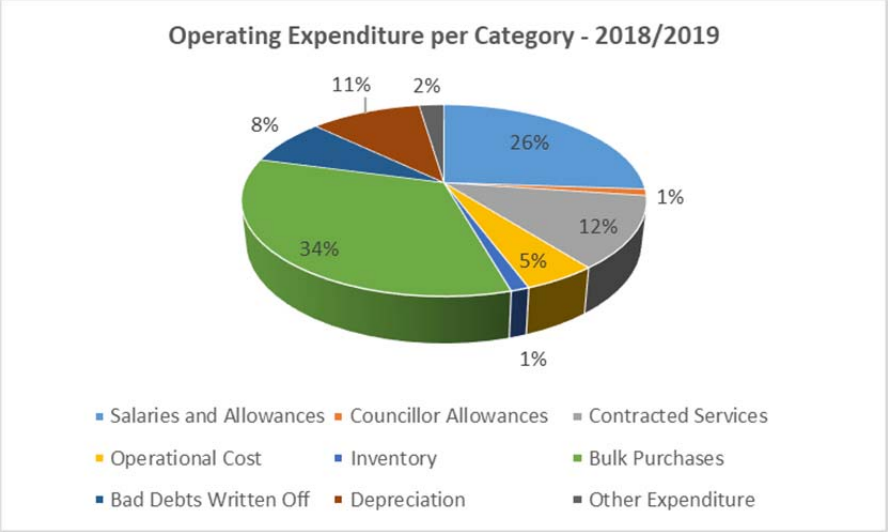


Figure 4.2: Operating Expenditure Distribution for the 2018/19 Financial Year

- ***Analysis of operating expenditure***

The main sections of the expenditure in the operating budget are the following: -

- **Salaries**

The increases in this includes a projected general salary increase of 7% to all staff members, provision for new positions as well as the funding of critical vacant positions. The total salary package of the Council amounts to 27% of the total expenditure.

- **Bulk Purchases**

This category was increased with the tariff increases for Rand Water and Eskom.

The Council has little control over the abovementioned expenditure – bulk purchases represent 34% of the expenditure budget.

- **Depreciation**

Depreciation accounts for 11% of the expenditure budget. Depreciation is the systematic expensing of the value of an asset as it is used up and does not relate to any cash payment made (nor is the money owed to anyone for that matter). A road can last for 40 years and every year 1/40th of the road is "used up" and that must be shown as an expenditure item called depreciation. The intention is to set these funds aside so that there is cash available at the end of the useful life of the asset to replace the asset. This budget also provides for offset depreciation. This is done to avoid increasing rates and taxes to provide for assets that were revalued with the implementation of GRAP 17. This will be reviewed as part of the long term financial plan to ensure that there is a balance between amounts provided for asset renewals and affordability of rates and taxes.

- **Repairs and Maintenance**

With the implementation of mSCOA, repairs and maintenance will no longer be shown as a separate line item, but the expenditure will be classified according to the nature of the expenditure (i.e. salaries, materials, contractors, etc.) with a project segment showing that the expenditure is related to repairs and maintenance. This new categorisation has led to the budget for repairs and maintenance now being 10% of the operating budget.

Figure 4.3 below illustrates the relationship between Depreciation and Repairs and Maintenance:

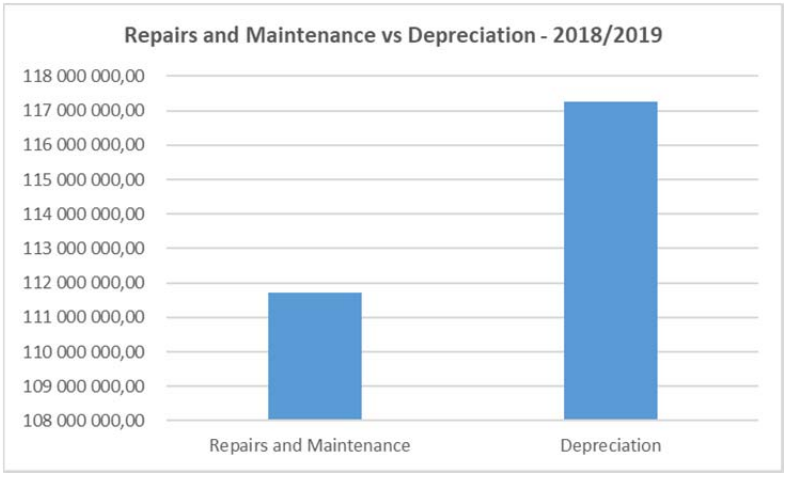


Figure 4.3: Repairs and Maintenance vs Depreciation

4.1.8. Capital Expenditure

A three (3) year capital budget has been prepared which has been based on the IDP document.

- ***Capital expenditure per Department***

Figure 4.4 below depicts the capital budget per department.

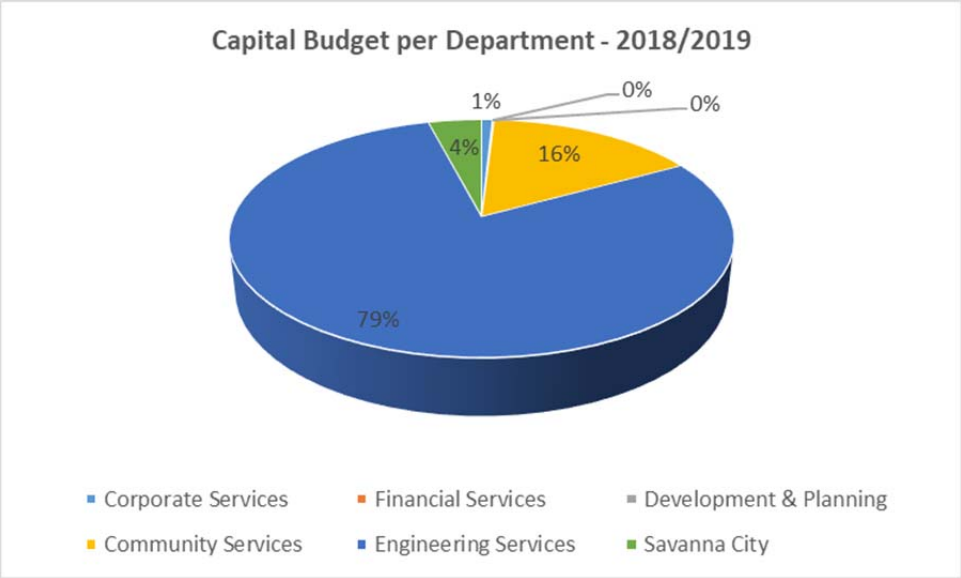


Figure 4.4: Capital Expenditure per Department for the 2018/2019 financial year

- ***Analysis of capital expenditure***

The capital amount proposed for 2018/2019 amounts to R108 082 000.

Midvaal mainly spends its capital expenditure on infrastructure services and for the 2018/19 financial year (79%) of the capital budget is allocated to the Engineering Services department.

The following major capital projects are included in the draft capital budget:

DEPARTMENT	SOURCE OF FUNDING	Sub-item: Project description	2018-2019
Engineering	MIG	Sicelo/Highbury (Valley Settlements) Reservoir	15 000 000
Engineering	External Loans	Road resurfacing	8 000 000
Engineering	INEP	Sicelo new bulk electrical supply line	8 000 000
Engineering	Water Service Infrastructure Grant	Aged Bulk Water Pipe Replacement	6 850 000
Engineering	MIG	Sicello North Outfall Sewer	4 360 000
Engineering	MIG	Gravel To Tar	4 281 000
Engineering	External Loans	Major arterials rebuilding	4 000 000
Community Services	Accumulated Surplus	Adjustment to Provision for landfill site rehab asset	3 000 000
Community Services	MIG	Lakeside Sport Centre	2 800 000
Engineering	MIG	Mamello Sewage Scheme augmentation	2 667 000
Engineering	Water Service Infrastructure Grant	Pressure management infra, Pipes, Valves and Bulk Water Meters	2 500 000
Engineering	CRR	Water loss programme	2 230 000
Community Services	HP	1 x 30 m3 Tipper trucks for transfer station	2 200 000
Engineering	Developer Contributions	Cable Feeders To Consolidate Emfuleni Connections	2 000 000
Engineering	External Loans	Construction of gravel roads	2 000 000
Engineering	Water Service Infrastructure Grant	Bulk water meters	2 000 000
Engineering	Water Service Infrastructure Grant	Installation of domestic water meters (Lakeside)	2 000 000

4.1.9. Capital Expenditure Funding

The capital budget will be funded as follows:

Capital Summary Report: Capital Expenditure per Fund					
Non Current Assets (Capital)	**Adjusted Budget**	**Year to Date**	**2018/2019**	**2019/2020**	**2020/2021**
Capital Annuity Loans	47 650 000,00	24 039 001,36	22 650 000,00	23 500 000,00	27 000 000,00
Capital Leases	14 310 000,00	8 841 717,94	10 000 000,00	9 800 000,00	12 940 000,00
Capital Operational Revenue	21 549 751,00	8 590 999,08	12 289 000,00	15 190 000,00	14 305 000,00
Capital Monetary INEP	8 000 000,00	6 587 171,36	8 000 000,00	20 082 000,00	25 600 000,00
Capital Monetary MIG	36 389 000,00	20 154 158,25	29 773 000,00	30 286 000,00	31 802 000,00
Capital Monetary WSIG	15 150 000,00	10 468 691,75	15 000 000,00	15 000 000,00	15 825 000,00
Capital Monetary Developers Contributions	14 747 605,00	10 635 538,86	8 150 000,00	19 720 000,00	21 530 000,00
Capital Monetary DAC	3 038 000,00	938 247,49	4 300 000,00	4 380 000,00	4 530 000,00
TOTAL CAPITAL	**160 834 356,00**	**90 255 526,09**	**110 162 000,00**	**137 958 000,00**	**153 532 000,00**

The National Treasury benchmark of 39% - 40% of the capital budget to be spent on renewal projects were taken into account and the impact of proposed projects on the operational budgets of future years was evaluated. It is not sustainable to construct facilities where there are not sufficient operating funds available to operationalize the facilities and as such no facilities that cannot be operationalized with the current available resources were budgeted for.

The capital expenditure funding trends are set out in Figure 4.5 below. The detailed capital budget is contained in the Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework for the period 2018/2019 – 2020/2021.

In Figure 4.5 below it is clear that grants and borrowings are becoming the main sources of funding of capital expenditure.

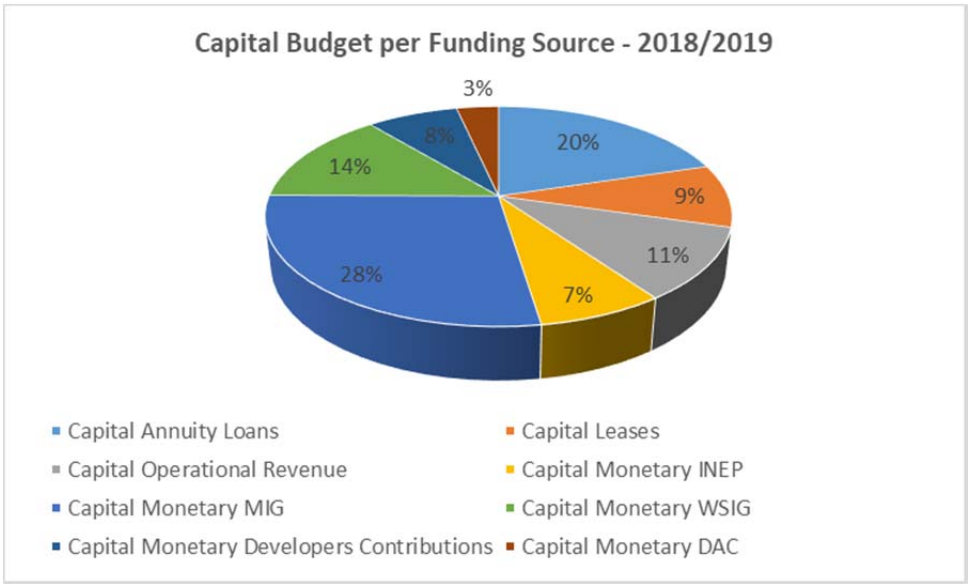


Figure 4.5: Capital Expenditure per Funding Source for the 2018/2019 financial year

External borrowing as a funding source must be capped at 40% of total operating expenditure. If not, Midvaal will become over-borrowed and the municipality will become a risk for borrowing agencies and this will certainly lead to higher borrowing interest rates. In Figure 4.5 below it is clearly shown that Midvaal has not yet reached its external borrowing limit in terms

of this indicator – however, the impact of borrowings on the affordability of tariffs must be considered when considering new borrowings.

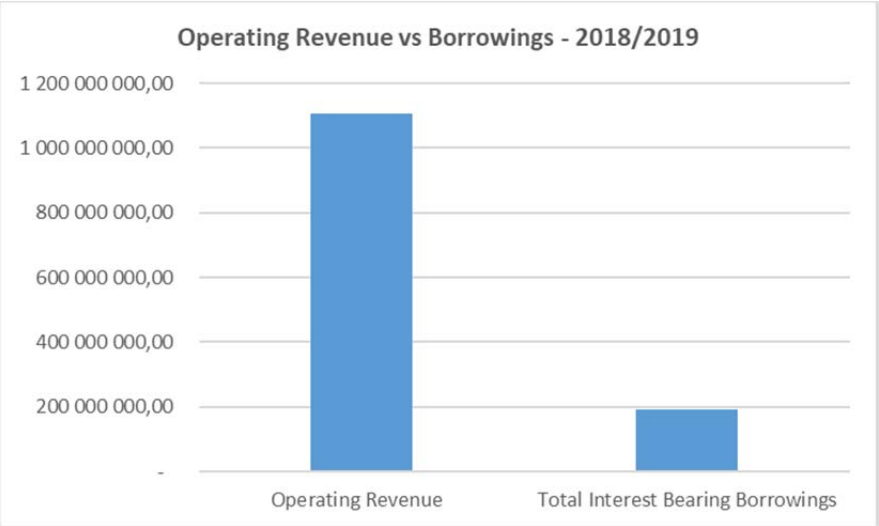


Figure 4.6: External Borrowings vs Total Operating Revenue

The detailed capital budget for the next three years are contained in the MTREF.

4.1.10. Conclusion

The continued improvement and development of an effective financial planning process aids the actualisation of fulfilling its facilitating role to capacitate the community to build a prosperous future for all. This Financial Plan with its financial framework, financial strategies and financial policy framework contribute to ensuring that Midvaal remains financially viable and sustainable and that quality municipal services are provided economically to all communities within its area of jurisdiction.

The multi-year Financial Plan contains realistic and credible revenue and expenditure forecasts which should provide a sound basis for improved financial management and institutional development as well as service delivery improvements and implementation. The strategy towards cash backing and cash funded budgets will certainly ensure the sustainability of the Municipality over the short-, medium- and long-term.

***HR Vision**:*
Providing a fair, equal and unbiased human resources function to all employees. Maintain a good employer/employee relationship and develop a human resources component that exceeds organisational expectations and improves productivity through focusing on training and ensuring a safe working environment.

4.2. Human Resource Support Plan

4.2.1. Introduction

As a progressive and learning institution, Midvaal Local Municipality's HR directorate strives to enhance the mandate of the organisation through effective HR policies, procedures and processes. The main goal of the strategy is to ensure that the directives are aligned to the Vision & Mission Statement of Council, the objectives identified in the Integrated Development Plan and aligned to the Service Delivery Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP).

Human Resources is an ever evolving vocation and continuous revision of the HR strategy ensures that the organisation is better equip to address the increasing challenges and changes within the operating environment.

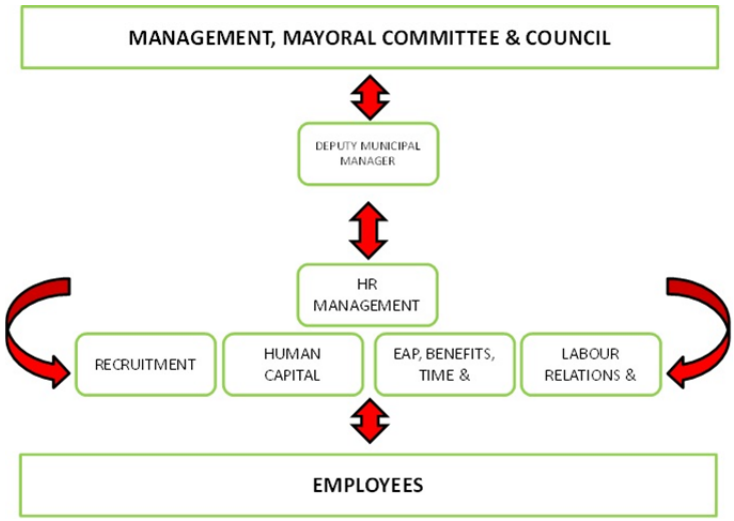
In order to address some of these changes, Midvaal Local Municipality has to be flexible enough to respond to the ever changing environment and keep abreast with developments within the labour market and labour environment so as to truly become an employer of choice. This entails a progressive mind shift from the current local government environment and applying best practice initiatives across all sectors within the South African economy. A new approach to old business should be adopted so as to remain relevant and a progressive organisation.

4.2.2 Human Resources and Overview

The Human Resources Strategy is aligned to the municipality's five year Integrated Development Plan and focuses primarily on Key Performance Area No. 4 – Institutional Transformation.

In order to perform and achieve the outcomes associated with the KPA and KFA's and aligned to the vision and mission statement of the organisation, Human Resources strives to achieve its vision by monitoring its performance through its SDBIP.

The Human Resources Directorate operates within the internal and external environment of the organisation and serves as a link between all internal



stakeholders within the organisation.

4.3 Operating Context

4. 3.1 External Environment

Strategic Human Resources Management recognises the legislative, economic, social and political factors that create and govern the external environment in which the municipality operates.

4.3.2 Internal Environment

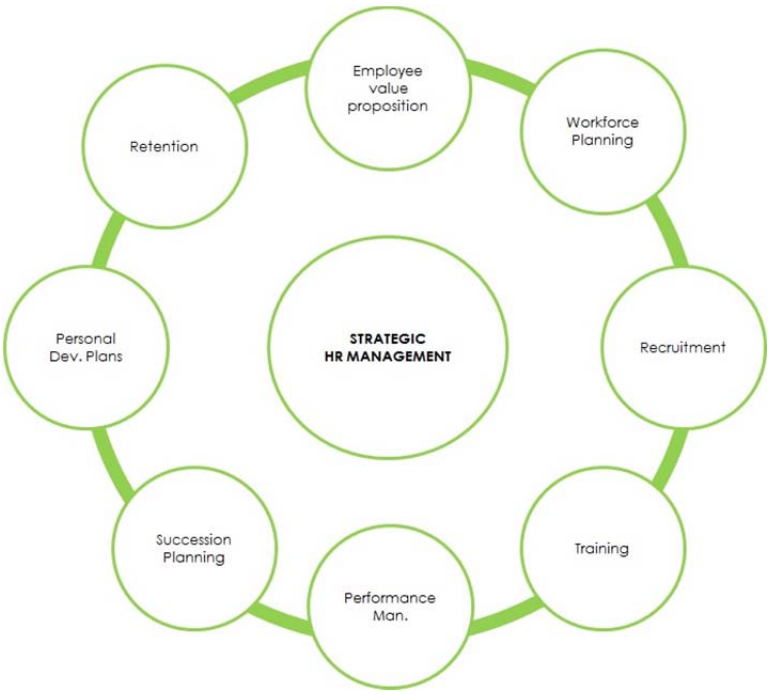
Human Resources is a centralised function that operates within a complex and dynamic framework where a range of external challenges intersect with the unique culture of the organisation. Its role is to provide advice and support to the Executive on related human resources issues. However the Human Resources function is not only applicable to the Executive, its role is also to advise and support staff.

Within this framework, effective human resources management processes are required to facilitate continual staff learning and development, improve leadership capacity and encourage consultation and collaboration with all stakeholders. Such processes are central to achieve the intended outcomes, as they enhance cultural change which adds to institutional equity and diversity, lead to higher staff morale, commitment, trust and a willingness to embrace change and high productivity.

Staff, with the help of an effective Human Resources Strategy, can work together to achieve the vision, mission and objectives of the organisation. Through effective management of staff, planning, coaching, reviewing performance and rewarding employees for good performance a truly strategic human resources approach can assist in achieving ultimate results and ensure that the municipality remains the best.

4.4 Strategic Direction for Human Resources

The goal is to have a revised HR Strategy that sets a clear direction. The strategy will also highlight the shared responsibility and accountability of its implementation among management at all levels, employees and Human Resources specifically. The objectives are to ensure that the strategy supports all strategic objectives of the organisation and responds to HR needs. In order to achieve the objectives, Midvaal requires a



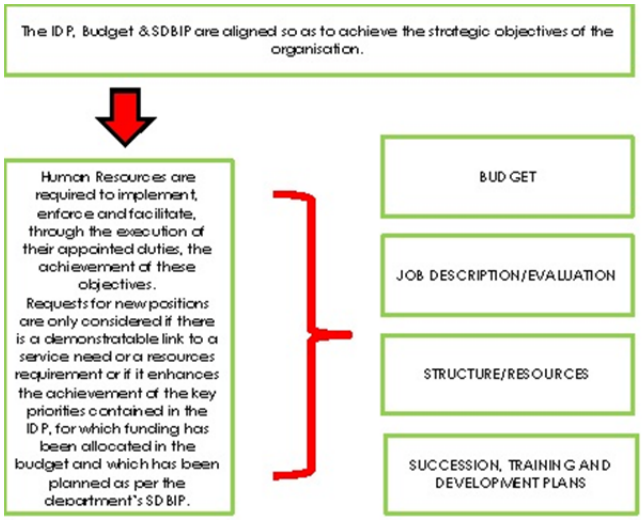
workforce that is more flexible, high performing and fully trained to accept and execute their professional challenges.

A high quality organisation is dependent upon the quality, reputation and productivity of its staff. The Human Resources Directorate will continue to engage in regular analysis and planning to ensure its services address the long term needs of the organisation.

The Strategic Direction of HR is also greatly influenced by the outcomes of the Annual Mayoral Strategic Sessions, Key Performance Indicators and other programmes/projects that are reviewed on an annual basis.

In this way the HR function supports the administrative structure in achieving the political priorities and objectives.

4.4.1 Staff Establishment



Midvaal Local Municipality reviews the Staff Establishment on an annual basis. The Staff Establishment, as governed by legislation is linked to a multi-year budget and projects changes over a period of three years. These changes include new employees, resources needed as well as the financial implications thereof.

In developing the Staff Establishment, the requests for new positions are considered only if there is a demonstrable link to a service need or a resource requirement, or if it enhances the achievement of the key priorities as contained in the Council's Integrated Development Plan (IDP), for which funding has been allocated in the budget and which has been planned as per the departments' Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plans (SDBIPs).

Positions included in the Staff Establishment add to the workforce plan and should have a job description highlighting the duties and requirements for positions. Job Evaluations are considered for newly created positions and the organisational structure is amended accordingly following the approval of the Staff Establishment. The strategic link between the Staff Establishment and the HR Strategy is contained in the succession plan, training and development and personal development plans of employees. This ensures that there is business continuation and that employees are capacitated to execute their duties effectively.

The comprehensive report on the Staff Establishment for the municipality is tabled for consideration and approval with the respective financial budget for each year of the multi-year budget.

4.4.2 Workforce Planning

The HR Strategy will allow the municipality to create a workforce that is representative of the national demographics of the country. It aims to ensure a mix of internal and external talent with the necessary skills and expertise to carry out the organisation's primary service delivery operations.

With talent acquisition annual skills audits are performed so as to maintain learning organisation standards and to ensure that staff are enabled to perform their assigned tasks.

This strategy serves as an effective planning tool for staffing, HR planning and career development of existing employees.

4.4.3 Recruitment

Recruitment and retention of high quality staff in a competitive labour market is of vital importance to the municipality. As the workforce ages, there is a concentration of staff in the older age groups and a relatively small proportion of younger academic candidates. Successful Human Resources Management will require effective recruitment and retention strategies that take into account the following:

- There will be increased competition for limited number of quality staff in an increasingly changing competitive environment in which budget constraints may affect staffing, development and retention.
- Well-being in the workplace has become increasingly important. The current restrictive regulatory environment, over which the Council has no influence, will further constrain the supply of quality of staff. Together with increased expectations and higher levels of accountability and reporting, including the salaries distinction between metropolitan and local municipalities (which adds to the restrictive environment), local government as a sector has the potential to become less competitive within the market.
- Remuneration of municipal staff, at the local level should receive attention as the current salary components does not allow for talent acquisition at the extent required. Professionals do not apply for vacancies due to earning more competitive salaries outside the municipal area.
- Gender balance and diversity should be given consideration in the context of a fair and transparent appointment process so as to promote equal opportunity for all.
- Retirements will be accompanied by continued growth and demand for staff.

4.4.4 Performance Management

Although HR is not primarily responsible for Performance Management within the municipality, it cannot be excluded from the process. Information relating to deviations and or short-comings identified during the performance assessments of staff has a direct impact on training and development of staff.

4.4.5 Continual Learning

A rapidly changing knowledge base in the workplace, rapidly developing information technologies and the competitive environment and an increasing level of liaison with the community requires a high level of skill and knowledge on the part of staff. This can be developed only by a commitment to lifelong learning by each employee and will require access to a comprehensive range of staff development opportunities.

The Human Capital section will have a crucial role in determining and coordinating the learning and development of staff so as to achieve a multi-skilled, versatile, high performing workforce capable to fulfil the municipality's mandate.

4.4.6 Creating an equitable and diverse workplace and enhancing change Management

Diversity amongst staff which reflects the broader South African community has the benefit of building a workforce culture to advance important social, moral and human rights and commitments to equity and diversity. A diverse staff will improve the quality of decision making and is incorporated into its accountability framework. This commitment is not only important in terms of social justice but it is an important attraction and retention strategy.

4.4.7 Staff

Employees have a personal responsibility to participate in the implementation of the HR Strategy and to ensure its success. They have obligations reciprocal to those of managers.

Employees can encourage, mainly by adherence to sound policies, processes and procedures, a work environment that is professional, competent and to influence the overall morale of employees.

4.4.8 Creating a safe and supportive workplace culture

Physically and psychologically safe work environments and safe work practices are key aspects of the organisation's risk management strategy. Midvaal has a high commitment to safety, not only for its own employees, but also for contractors and visitors. To maintain Midvaal as an employer of choice requires a positive, inclusive and high performance culture marked by cooperation and respect, and where the work environment promotes work/life balance for staff. The maintenance of such a workplace culture, also requires consistent and fair, but firm discipline and the giving of due attention to grievances. The HR function strives to achieve these outcomes.

4.5 Values

Human Resources is determined to provide a quality integrated service by creating a safe, healthy and supportive environment where its own staff are valued, respected and able to realise their full potential.

In so doing Human Resources aspires to maintain a positive attitude and sense of perspective.



4.6 Goals and Objectives

4.6.1 Goal 1: Support the talent development of employees through professional development, career development, and improved performance management.

OBJECTIVES:

- Invest in professional development programs to improve leadership capabilities, job skills and employee productivity.
- Develop comprehensive career management tools, job enrichment strategies and mentoring programs so as to capacitate employees.
- Provide organisational consulting services to staff to enhance and improve organisational and individual performance.

4.6.2 Goal 2: Promote the achievement of work/life balance and wellness in employees

OBJECTIVES:

- Inform employees about the importance of education, awareness, self-care and behavioural change in improving wellness and productivity.
- Collaborate with individuals and departments to deliver a broader range of wellness programs and services for improved physical and mental health.
- Assess the on-going need amongst employees based on analysis.

4.6.3 Goal 3: Deliver Human Resources Services and programs which are highly valued by employees

OBJECTIVES:

- Target employee communications more effectively to meet employee information needs.
- Streamline HR Service processes and improve access to employee information.
- Develop a Human Resources Scorecard as an overall assessment and performance enhancement tool.
- Plan new office location so as to provide a conducive and productive working environment for improved service and program delivery.

4.6.4 Goal 4: Foster a diverse, inclusive and positive working environment

OBJECTIVES:

- Conduct regular organisational climate assessments and collaborate management to improve the work climate.
- Educate staff on the prevention of harassment and discrimination and productive ways to resolve conflict.
- Insure the promotion of diversity and non-discrimination.
- Assess and address reasons as to why talented employees leave the organisation and attempt to retain such individuals.

4.6.5 Goal 5: Foster a diverse, inclusive and positive working environment

OBJECTIVES:

- Identify more proactive recruiting solutions.
- Develop recruitment strategies focused on recruitment priorities.

4.7 Risk and Challenges

The HR Strategy carries a number of inherent risks, these include: lack of resources to support the implementation of the different HR initiatives; inadequacies of current processes and procedures; lack of commitment to its implementation from all enablers; changing priorities and managing expectations.

The success however is completely dependent on the combined efforts of everyone within the organisation. The implementation of the strategy will have to be prioritised according to available resources and financial aid.

5. Performance Management

5.1. Introduction

Effective performance management is fundamental to the delivery of excellent local services. Local government has achieved improvements in recent years, however, councils are recognising that they need to continue to develop and embed their approaches if they are to achieve further improvements.

Integrated Development Planning and Performance Management were introduced to realise the developmental role of local government. Whilst the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) provides a framework for strategic decision-making, performance manage-ment must ensure that the desired results are achieved during implementation to ensure the correctness of the strategic direction of the objectives, strategies and projects put forward by the IDP.

Performance management is a strategic approach to management, which equips leaders, managers, workers and stakeholders at different levels with a set of tools and techniques to:

- regularly plan;
- continuously monitor;
- periodically measure; and
- review performance,

of the organisation in terms of indicators and targets for:

- efficiency;
- effectiveness; and
- impact.

A Performance Management System (PMS) entails a framework that describes and represents how the municipality's process of performance planning, monitoring, measurement review, reporting and improvement will be conducted, organised and managed, including determining the different role players. This policy document guides the development of a PMS for the Midvaal Local Municipality (MLM). It also forms the basis of aligning the IDP with the operational SDBIPs, performance areas and performance indicators of the various departments of the MLM.

5.2. Legislative and policy framework

Legislative enactments which govern performance management in municipalities are found in various documents. As outlined in Section 40 of the Municipal Systems Act of 2000, MLM must establish mechanisms to monitor and review its Performance Management System (PMS) so as to measure, monitor, review, evaluate and improve performance at organisational, departmental and employee levels.

Section 34 of the MSA furthermore point out that the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) has to be reviewed on an annual basis, and that during the IDP Review process the Key Performance Areas, Key Performance Indicators and Performance Targets are reviewed and that this review will form the basis for the review of the municipal PMS and Performance Agreements of Senior Managers.

The Performance Management System is informed by the following legislation and policies:

- The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act 108 of1996 and as amended;
- Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000 as amended;
- Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, Act 117 of 1998;
- Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), Act 56 of 2003;
- Local Government: Municipal Planning &Performance Management Regulations, 2001 (R.796)
- Local Government: Municipal Performance Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers directly accountable to Municipal Managers, 2006;
- National Treasury: Framework for Managing Programme Performance Information, 2007;
- National Treasury: MFMA Circular 63 (Annual Report: Guidelines - update);
- National Treasury: MFMA Circular 13 (Services Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan);
- National Treasury: MFMA Circular 32 (The Oversight Report);
- Batho Pele White Paper.

Other legislation that impacts on and relates to performance management includes:

- Labour Relations Act, Act 66 of 1995: Code of Good Practice;
- Basic Conditions of Employment Act, Act 75 of 1997;
- Employment Equity Act, Act55 of 1998;
- The Skills Development Amendment Act, Act 31 of 2003;
- Promotion of Access to Information Act, Act 2 of 2000.

Although it is not considered necessary to go into detail in respect of all the legislation it is important to give a brief overview of the most important legislative provisions set out in:

- The Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000 as amended;
- The Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations of 2001;
- The Municipal Finance Management Act, Act 56 of 2003;
- The Municipal Performance Regulations of 2006 for Municipal Managers and Managers directly Accountable to Municipal Managers.

Summaries of the provisions relating to organisational performance management are therefore set out hereunder:

The Municipal Systems Act, 32 of 2000

Chapter 6 of the Municipal Systems Act (2000) as amended provides briefly that a municipality must:

1. Develop a performance management system (PMS);
2. Promote a performance culture;
3. Administer its affairs in an economical, effective, efficient and accountable manner;
4. Set Key Performance Indicators (KPI's) as a yardstick for measuring performance;
5. Set targets to monitor and review the performance of the municipality based on indicators linked to their IDP;
6. Monitor and review performance at least once per year;
7. Take steps to improve performance;
8. Report on performance to relevant stakeholders;
9. Publish an annual performance report on performance of the municipality forming part of its annual report as per the provisions of the Municipal Finance

Management Act of 2003;

10. Incorporate and report on a set of general (sometimes also referred to as national) indicators prescribed by the National Minister of Provincial and Local Government;
11. Conduct an internal audit of all performance measures/indicators on a continuous basis;
12. Have their annual performance report audited by the Auditor-General; and
13. Involve the community in setting indicators and targets and in reviewing municipal performance.

Sections 55 to 58 of the Municipal Systems Act further outline the provisions on the employment and functions of the Municipal Manager and Managers directly accountable to the Municipal Manager.

The Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations of 2001

In summary the Regulations provide that a municipality's Performance Management System must:

1. Entail a framework that describes and represents how the municipality's cycle and process of performance management, including measurement, review, reporting and improvement, will be conducted;
2. Comply with the requirements of the Municipal Systems Act; and
3. Relate to the municipality's employee performance management processes and be linked to the municipality's IDP.

A municipality must:

1. Set key performance indicators (KPI's) including input, output and outcome indicators in consultation with communities;
2. Annually review its Key Performance Indicators;
3. Set performance targets for each financial year;
4. Measure and report on the relevant nationally prescribed key performance outcome;
5. Measure and report on the six national local government KPA's;
6. Report on performance to Council at least twice a year;
7. As part of its internal audit process audit the results of performance measurement;
8. Appoint a performance audit committee; and
9. Provide secretarial support to the said audit committee.

The Municipal Finance Management Act, 56 of 2003 (MFMA)

The Municipal Finance Management Act also contains various important provisions relating to performance management. In terms of the Act all municipalities must:

1. Annually adopt a service delivery and budget implementation plan with service delivery targets and performance indicators;
2. When considering and approving the annual budget, set measurable performance targets for revenue from each source and for each vote in the budget;

3. Empower the Executive Mayor or Executive Committee to approve the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan and the Performance Agreements of the Municipal Managers and the Managers directly accountable to the Municipal Manager; and
4. Compile an annual report, which must, amongst others things, include the municipality's performance report compiled in terms of the Municipal Systems Act.

The Municipal Systems Act and the Municipal Finance Management Act require that the PMS be reviewed annually in order to align itself with the reviewed Integrated Development Plan (IDP). In consequence of the reviewed organisational performance management system it then becomes necessary to also amend the scorecards of the Municipal Manager and Section 56-Managers in line with the cascading effect of performance management from the organisational to the departmental and eventually to employee levels.

The Municipal Performance Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers Directly Accountable to Municipal Managers of 2006

This legislation regulates the management of the Section 56 employees of a municipality by providing an outline of employment contracts, performance agreements, performance plans, employee development, empowerment, measures/indicators and performance evaluation processes. These regulations further provide criteria for performance assessment and the 5-point rating upon which performance of an individual need to be scored during the assessment and evaluation.

5.3. Objectives of performance management

A municipality's PMS is the primary mechanism to monitor, review and improve the implementation of its IDP and to gauge the progress made in achieving the objectives as set out in the IDP**. The PMS process plan includes the following objectives that the system should in addition fulfil:**

Facilitate Increased Accountability

The performance management system should provide a mechanism for **ensuring increased accountability** between the local community, politicians, the Municipal Council and the municipal management team.

Facilitate Learning and Improvement

The PMS should **facilitate learning** in order to enable the Municipality to improve delivery.

Provide Early Warning Signals

It is important that the system ensure decision-makers are **timeously informed** of performance related risks, so that they can facilitate intervention, if necessary.

Facilitate Decision-making

The performance management system should provide appropriate management information that will allow efficient, effective and informed decision-making, particularly on the **allocation of resources.**

The objectives are also for the performance management system to serve as a primary mechanism to monitor, review and improve the implementation of the MLM's IDP. Performance management is viewed as a tool that improves the overall performance of the municipality.

5.4 Performance management framework

The Municipality must develop, as part of the performance management system (PMS), a framework which will deal with the "how" to work with performance information. A performance management framework is the way the Municipality collects, presents and uses its performance information. It is a practical plan, made up of mechanisms and processes, for the Municipality to collect, process, arrange and classify, examine and evaluate, audit, reflect on and report performance information. These mechanisms and processes work in a cycle which must be linked to the Municipality's normal planning (IDP and otherwise) and the annual budgeting cycle.

5.4.1 Components of Performance Management Framework

The annual process of managing performance at organisational level in the MLM involves the steps as set out in the diagram below:

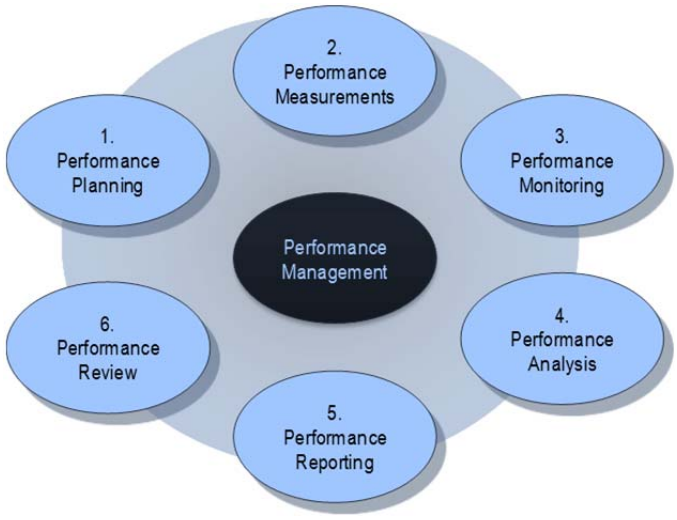


Figure 41 Components of Performance Management Framework

5.4.2 Clarifying Roles and Responsibilities of Stakeholders and Role-players

It is important to understand the duties, roles and responsibilities of the different stakeholders and role-players in the various processes that together constitute the framework of the PMS. It is important that the accountabilities and relationships and priorities of the various stakeholders are set to ensure that there is a complete

understanding of the participation, consultation and involvement of all stakeholders for maximum inputs into, and success of the PMS.

The PMS is a component of municipal governance and management systems that is aimed at ensuring that the performance of the Municipality is developmental, while complementing the planning and budgeting processes as an integral part of organisational and individual management. It involves a wide variety of stake-holders, all of whom play a vital and integral part in the overall success of the PMS. There are a variety of tasks that have been identified as being an integral part of the PMS. The schedule hereunder sets out the tasks, which should not be seen as a chronological sequence of occurrences and events. The tasks, together with the appropriate stakeholders/role-players (with their roles and responsibilities), are the following

STAKEHOLDERS / ROLE-PLAYERS	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES	
1. Developing and sanctioning the performance management process		
Mayoral Committee	Ratify and adopt the PMS Policy	
2. Developing measures / indicators		
Officials	1. Provide the IDP documentation and (when appropriate) the PMS documentation of the previous reporting period	
	2. Provide inputs into the process with reference to the available resources within their respective departments	
	3. Document the measures/indicators	
	4. Provide the schedule of measures/indicators to relevant stakeholders	
Councillors	Provide inputs into the process with reference to the needs and requirements of their constituents and the communities	
	Engage with the officials to ensure maximum utilisation of the resources taking into account the budgetary guidelines and possible limitations	
Local Community and Stakeholders	Provide inputs into the process with reference to their specific needs and requirements	
3. Setting targets		
Officials	1. Provide inputs into the process with reference to the available resources within their respective departments	
	2. Document the targets	
	3. Provide and publicise the schedule of targets to the relevant stakeholders	

Councillors	1. Provide inputs into the process with reference to the needs and requirements of their constituents and the communities	
	2. Engage with the officials to ensure maximum utilisation of the resources taking into account the budgetary guidelines and possible limitations	
Local Community and Stakeholders	Provide inputs into the process with reference to their specific needs and requirements	
4. Linking measures/indicators and targets to performance commitments of staff		
Municipal Manager	1. Prepare performance agreements with agreed and approved measures/indicators and targets	
	2. Ensure that the measures/indicators and targets in the performance agreements of senior managers are linked with his/her agreement	
	3. Ensure that all senior managers performance agreements are published	
	4. Provide inputs into senior managers performance agreements	
	5. Ensure that the measures/indicators and targets of the departments and sub-ordinates are linked with the senior managers agreements	
Mayoral Committee	Ratify and adopt the performance agreements	
5. Monitoring and Evaluation		
Executive Mayor	Monitor and evaluate (according to agreed schedule) the measures/indicators and targets of the Municipal Manager	
Municipal Manager	1. Monitor and evaluate (according to the agreed schedule) the measures/indicators and targets of senior managers	
	2. Ensure that the results are documented and publicised to the relevant stakeholders	
6. Information collection, processing and analysis		
Councillors	1. Provide inputs into the process with reference to the needs and requirements of their constituents and the communities	
	2. Ensure with the council officials that all information is made available	
	3. Examination, scrutiny and critical analysis of measures/indicators, targets, outputs and outcomes	

Officials	Collect, process and provide the relevant and appropriate information from their respective departments/sections	
Local community and Stakeholders	Provide inputs into the process with reference to their specific needs and requirements	
7. Auditing of information		
Performance Management Manager	1. Collect and process relevant and appropriate information from departments	
	2. Examination, scrutiny and critical analysis of information from departments	
Performance & Audit Committee	Examination, scrutiny and critical analysis of information from departments	
Auditor-General	1. Collect and process the relevant and appropriate information from the Municipality	
	2. Examination, scrutiny and critical analysis of information from the Municipality	
8. Audit reporting		
Internal Auditor	Provide an independent audit report to the Performance & Audit Committee	
Performance & Audit Committee	Provide an independent audit report to the Municipal Manager and Mayoral Committee	
9. Reporting		
Municipal Manager	Provide approved, relevant and appropriate information and re-ports to National- and Provincial Government; and the Auditor-General.	
10. Report to Community		
Municipal Manager	Ensure that the results are documented and publicised to the relevant stakeholders	
11. Review of performance management and setting of new measures/indicators and targets		
Officials	1. Provide inputs into the process with reference to the available resources within their respective departments	
	2. Document the measures/indicators and targets	
	3. Provide and publicise the schedule of revised measures/indicators and targets to relevant stakeholders	
Councillors	1. Provide inputs into the process with reference to the needs and requirements of their constituents and the communities	

	2. Engage with the officials to ensure maximum utilisation of the resources taking into account the budgetary guidelines and possible limitations in the light of the revised **measures/indicators** and targets	
Local community and Stakeholders	Provide inputs into the process with reference to their specific needs and requirements in the light of the revised measures/indicators and targets	

5.4.3 Setting Measures/indicators and Targets

The setting of measures/indicators and targets happens during the IDP process and is linked to the strategic objectives of the IDP. Performance measures/indicators and targets are used to show how the Municipality is performing on its objectives. This stage comprises setting measures/indicators and targets, and then gathering data and information on these measures/indicators to assess the progress of the Municipality. Performance measurement allows the MLM to com-pare their actual performance to their intended performance, and against nationally defined minimum standards. It will also, in time, allow for the comparison of their performance against that of other Municipalities.

Performance targets are the planned level of performance or the milestones the municipality sets for itself for each indicator identified. Baseline measurements and service standards must be identified, which will serve as the measurement of the chosen indicator(s) at the start of the period. In setting targets, it is important to know how the MLM is performing at the current moment. This step also tests whether the chosen indicator is in fact measurable and whether there are any problems. The targets need to be realistic, measurable and be commensurate with available resources and capacity. The public need to be consulted on their needs and expectations in setting a target. Politicians need to give clear direction as to the importance of the target and how it will address the public need.

Targets should be informed by the development needs of communities and the development priorities of the municipality. The municipality must for each financial year set performance targets for each of the key performance indicators set by it. A performance target must be practical and realistic. It must measure the efficiency, effectiveness, quality and impact of the performance of the municipality. It must also identify administrative components, structures, bodies or persons for whom a target has been set. It is important that the set target is commensurate with available resources and the MLM's capacity. Finally targets need to be consistent with the municipality's development priorities and objectives set out in its IDP.

In order to measure progress in terms of a target during monitoring and evaluation (as discussed below), intermediate milestones, if applicable, should be specified with the same criteria as for performance targets.

The following general key performance indicators are prescribed in Section 10 of the Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations, 2001 and must be reported on annually:

1. The percentage of households with access to basic level of:

    a. Water,

    b. Sanitation,

    c. Electricity; and

    d. Solid waste removal.

2. The percentage of indigent households with access to free basic services;

3. The percentage of a municipality's capital budget actually spent on capital projects identified for a particular financial year in terms of the municipality's integrated development plan;

4. The number of jobs created through municipality's local economic development initiatives including capital projects;

5. The number of people from employment equity target groups employed in the three highest levels of management in compliance with a municipality's approved employment equity plan;

6. The percentage of a municipality's budget actually spent on implementing its workplace skills plan; and

7. Financial viability as expressed by ratio's that measure:

    a. Debt coverage;

    b. Outstanding service debtors to revenue; and

    c. Cost coverage.

National Government further has agreed on 12 outcomes as a key focus of work between now and 2014. These outcomes have been expanded into high-level outputs and activities, which in turn formed the basis of a series of performance agreements between the President and relevant Ministers. Whilst all of the outcomes can to some extent be supported through the work of local government, Outcome 9 (A responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system) and its 7 outputs are specifically directed at local government:

- **Output 1:** Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning and support;
- **Output 2:** Improving access to basic services;
- **Output 3:** Implementation of the Community Work Programme;
- **Output 4:** Actions supportive of the human settlement outcome;
- **Output 5:** Deepen democracy through a refined Ward Committee model;
- **Output 6:** Administrative and financial capability; and
- **Output 7:** Single window of co-ordination.

A Key Performance Indicator (KPI) qualifies the main aspect that needs to be achieved and thus measure the progress being made in achieving the objectives. It should therefore specify the object or deliverables to be achieved and the means by which it will be measured. Depending on the nature of such KPI, it may also include specifications regarding the quantity and standards of the object, and usually includes the timing or projected phasing of delivery. Key Performance Indicators may be both strategic and operational in nature. The KPI's must be relevant to the competencies of Local Government.

The number of indicators should serve the purpose of providing an adequate view of performance. For this reason there should not be too few to skew the picture nor be too many to make it costly and unmanageable. A balanced set of indicators that cover most areas should preferably be used. Indicators should also be set for all entities and service providers when service delivery agreements are entered into. Such indicators are to be informed by the relevant KPIs.

The municipality will use indicators as a communication tool between all levels of staff, and between the administration and Council. It will also serve to identify the gaps between IDP strategies and the operational plans of the various departments. All indicators should be measurable, simple, precise, relevant, adequate and objective.

Types of Indicators

The following types of indicators will be used:

Input Indicators

These are indicators that measure what it costs the municipality to purchase the essentials for producing desired outputs (economy), and whether the municipality achieves more with less, in resources terms (efficiency) without compromising quality. The economy indicators may be the amount of time, money or number of people it took the municipality to deliver a service.

Output Indicators (measures/indicators of success)

These are the indicators that measure whether a set of activities or pro-cesses yields the desired products or deliverables. They thus measure effectiveness – i.e., doing things correctly, and are typically associated with operational KPI's. They are usually expressed in quantitative terms.

Outcome Indicators

These are the indicators that measure the impact or net effect of the pro-ducts or services of the products/programmes in terms of the achievement of the overall objectives. These indicators are strategically the most important to determine. It is thus about the relationship between outputs and outcomes and measures/indicators if the outputs succeed in achieving the desired outcomes or improvements, i.e. doing the right things. The municipality does not always have full and complete control over those aspects that are measured by outcome indicators. It thus measures/indicators the influence it has on conditions or developments in the area. As it is the strategic objectives of the IDP that should determine the desired

outcomes of activities, it is important to determine if the outputs over which we have control, are the correct ways with which to address such issues..

Identification of Indicators

The following aspects will be considered when identifying indicators:

1. Key Performance Areas (KPAs), Key Focus Areas (KFAs), strategic objectives and development objectives set in the IDP;
2. The activities, projects, programmes and processes identified in the IDP for achieving the developmental objectives as well as the ear-marked resources; and
3. Whether data and baseline information is available for its measurement in the MLM area.

Setting of Key Performance Indicators (KPIs)

Key performance indicators must be set in respect of each of the development priorities and objectives referred to in Section 26(c) of the Municipal Systems Act. It must also be ensured that key performance indicators inform the indicators set for all its administrative units and employees as well as every municipal entity and service provider with whom the municipality has entered into a service delivery agreement.

The following **SMART** criteria will apply for the determination of KPIs and targets:

S - Specific
M - Measurable
A - Achievable
R - Relevant
T - Time-framed

National Key Performance Indicators (KPIs)

General KPIs are prescribed in terms of Section 43 of the Municipal System Act (2000) and Outcome 9. The MLM takes cognisance of these indicators and will report on them as is required by the Act.

Review of KPIs and Targets

The MLM will review its key performance indicators and targets annually as part of the performance review process or whenever it amends its IDP in terms of Section 34 of the Municipal System Act (2000).

Amendment of KPIs and Targets

The MLM will amend its Key Performance Indicators and Targets in line with the Adjustments Budget.

5.4.4 Performance Planning

The performance of the MLM is to be managed in terms of its IDP and the process of compiling an IDP and the SDBIP, and the annual review of the IDP thereof constitutes the process of planning for performance.

It should be noted that the last component of the process is that of performance review and the outcome of such a review process must inform the next cycle of IDP compilation/review by focusing the planning processes on those areas in which the MLM has underperformed.

5.4.5 Performance Measurement

Performance measurement refers to the formal process of collecting and capturing performance data to enable reporting to take place for each key performance indicator and against the target set for such indicator. The setting of measures/ indicators and targets happens during the IDP process and is linked to the strategic objectives of the municipality. To ensure the integrity of the indicators and targets set, baseline information based on backlog and current performance should be used as the basis for setting sound measures/indicators and targets. Performance measurement allows the MLM to compare their actual performance in relation to backlog and current (baseline) performance.

5.4.6 Performance Monitoring

Performance monitoring is an ongoing process by which a Manager accountable for a specific indicator and target as set out in the SDBIP continuously monitors current performance against predetermined objectives (PDOs). The aim of the monitoring process is to take appropriate and immediate interim (or preliminary) action where the indication is that a target is not going to be met by the time that the formal process of performance measurement, analysis, reporting and review is due.

5.4.7 Performance Analysis

Performance analysis involves the process of making sense of measurements/indicators. It requires interpretation of the measurements as conducted in terms of the previous step to determine whether targets have been met and exceeded and to project whether future targets will be met or not. Where targets have not been met performance analysis requires that the reasons therefore should be examined and corrective action recommended. Where targets have been met or exceeded, the key factors that resulted in such success should be documented and shared so as to ensure organisational learning.

The executive management should also ensure that quality performance reports are submitted to the Mayoral Committee and that adequate response strategies are proposed in cases of poor performance.

5.4.8 Performance Reporting

In-year Performance Reporting and Review

The submission of the performance reports on scorecards to the Mayoral Committee for consideration and review of the performance of the MLM as a whole is the next step in the process. The first such report is a major mile-stone in the implementation of any PMS and it marks the beginning of what should become a regular event namely using the performance

report as a tool to review the Municipality's performance and to make important political and management decisions on how to improve.

As indicated earlier it is recommended that the performance report on organisational and SDBIP scorecards be submitted to the Mayoral Committee for consideration and review on a quarterly basis. The reporting should therefore take place in October (for the period July to end of September- quarter 1 of the financial year), January (for the period October to the end of December – quarter 2), April (for the period January to the end of March - quarter 3) and July (for the period April to the end of June - quarter 4).

The review in January will coincide with the mid-year performance assessment as per Section 72 of the MFMA. The said section determines that the accounting officer must by 25 January of each year assess the performance of the municipality and thereafter report to the Executive Mayor/National Treasury and Provincial Treasury such assessment in respect of inter alia its service delivery performance during the first half of the financial year and the service delivery targets and performance indicators as set out in its SDBIP.

The Mayoral Committee in reviewing the performance report on organisational and departmental scorecards submitted to it will have to ensure that targets committed to in the scorecard have been met, where they have not, that satisfactory and sufficient reasons have been provided by executive management and that the corrective action being proposed is sufficient to address the reasons for poor performance. If satisfied with the corrective action as proposed, these must be adopted as formal resolutions, minuted and actioned accordingly.

Annual Performance Reporting and Review

On an annual basis a comprehensive report on the performance of the MLM also needs to be compiled. The requirements for the compilation, consideration and review of such an annual report are set out in chapter 12 of the MFMA. In summary it requires that:

1. All municipalities for each financial year compile an annual report;
2. The annual report be tabled within seven months after the end of the financial year (However, in terms of a National Treasury directive municipalities are required to approve the first draft of an annual report during August);
3. The annual report immediately after it has been tabled be made public and that the local community be invited to submit representations thereon;
4. The municipal Council consider the annual report within nine months after the end of the financial year and adopt an oversight report containing the council's comments on the annual report;
5. The oversight report as adopted be made public;
6. The annual report as tabled and the Council's oversight report be forwarded to the Auditor-General, the Provincial Treasury and the department responsible for local government in the Province; and
7. The annual report as tabled and the Council's oversight report are sub-mitted to the Provincial legislature.

The oversight report to be adopted provides the opportunity for full Council to review the performance of the MLM. The requirement that the annual report once tabled and the oversight report be made public similarly provides the mechanism for the general public to review the performance of the MLM.

The Council may also resolve that annually a public campaign be embarked upon to involve the citizens of the MLM in the review of municipal performance over and above the legal

requirements of the Municipal Systems Act and the MFMA. Such a campaign could involve all or any combination of the following methodologies:

- Various forms of media including radio, newspapers and billboards could be used to convey the annual report;
- The public may be invited to submit comments on the annual report via telephone, fax and e-mail;
- Public hearings could be held in a variety of locations to obtain input of the annual report;
- Making use of existing structures such as ward and/or development committees to disseminate the annual report and invite comments; and
- Hosting a number of public meetings and road-shows at which the annual re-port could be discussed and input invited.

The following table is derived from the legislative framework for performance management and summarises for ease of reference and understanding the various performance reporting as it applies to the MLM:

REPORT TYPE	DESCRIPTION
Quarterly IDP and SDBIP Reporting	The SDBIP is a key management, implementation and monitoring tool, which provides operational content to the end-of-year service delivery targets, set in the budget and IDP. It determines the performance agreements for the municipal manager and all top managers, whose performance can then be monitored through Section 71 monthly reports, and evaluated through the annual report process. The SDBIP information on revenue will be monitored and reported monthly by the municipal manager in terms of Section 71(1)(a) and (e). *For example, if there is lower than anticipated revenue and an overall cash shortage in a particular month the municipality may have to revise its spending downwards to ensure that it does not borrow more than anticipated*. More importantly, such information requires the municipality to take urgent remedial steps to ensure it improves on its revenue collection capacity if the municipality wants to maintain its levels of service delivery and expenditure. Section 1 of the MFMA, Act 56 of 2003 states that the SDBIP as a detailed plan approved by the mayor of a municipality in terms of service delivery should make projections for each month of the revenue to be collected, by source, as well as the operational and capital expenditure, by vote. The service delivery targets and performance indicators need to be reported on quarterly (MFMA, 2003).

Mid-year Budget and National and Provincial Report	Section 72 of the MFMA requires the accounting officer to prepare and submit a report on the performance of the municipality during the first half of the financial year. The report must be submitted to the mayor, National Treasury as well as the relevant Provincial Treasury. As with all other reports this is a crucial report for the Council to consider mid-year performance and what adjustments should be made, if necessary.
Performance Report	Section 46 of the Municipal Systems Act states that a municipality must pre-pare for each financial year, a performance report that reflects the following: – The performance of the municipality and of each external service provided during that financial year; – A comparison of the performances referred to in the above paragraph with targets set for and performances in the previous financial year; and – Measures/indicators to be taken to improve on the performance. The performance report must be submitted at the end of the financial year and will be made public as part of the annual report in terms of chapter 12 of the MFMA. The publication thereof will also afford the public the opportunity to judge the performance of the municipality against the targets set in the various planning instruments.

Annual Report	Every municipality is required by Section 121 of the MFMA and National Treasury Circular 63 to prepare an annual report for each financial year, which must include: – the annual financial statements of the municipality or municipal entity as submitted to the Auditor-General for audit (and, if applicable, consolidated annual financial statements); – the Auditor-General's audit report on the financial statements; – an assessment by the accounting officer of any arrears on municipal taxes and service charges; – particulars of any corrective action taken or to be taken in response to issues raised in the audit reports; – any explanations that may be necessary to clarify issues in connection with the financial statements; – any information as determined by the municipality; – any recommendations of the municipality's performance audit committee; – an assessment by the accounting officer of the municipality's performance against the measurable performance objectives for revenue collection and for each vote in the municipality's approved budget for the relevant financial year; – the annual performance report prepared by a municipality; and – any other information as may be prescribed.
Oversight Report	The council of a municipality must consider the municipality's annual report (and that of any municipal entity under the municipality's control), and in terms of Section 129 of the MFMA, within two months from the date of tabling of the annual report, must adopt an oversight report containing the council's comments, which must include a statement whether the council: – has approved the annual report with or without reservations; – has rejected the annual report; or – has referred the annual report back for revision of those components that can be revised. In terms of Section 132 of the MFMA, the following documents must be sub-mitted by the accounting officer to the provincial legislature within seven days after the municipal council has adopted the relevant oversight report: – the annual report (or any components thereof) of each municipality and each municipal entity in the province; and – all oversight reports adopted on those annual reports.

Schedule for Performance Reviews

The performance of the employee in relation to his/her Performance Agreement must be reviewed in accordance with the following schedule.

Quarterly performance appraisals shall be conducted for all contracted/permanent employees no later than two weeks after the end of the last month of the quarter for which the appraisal is being done.

First Quarter	July to September	3rd week in Oct
Second Quarter	October to December	3rd week in Jan
Third Quarter	January to March	3rd week in April
Fourth Quarter	April to June	3rd week in Jul

The quarterly appraisal shall be performed:

1. Between the employee and his/her immediate superior.
2. The appraisal shall be based on actual achievement of the indicators agreed for each deliverable or target.
3. The employer must keep a record of the quarterly assessment meetings.
4. Performance feedback must be based on the employer's assessment of the employee's performance and supporting Portfolio of Evidence (PoE).

The employer will be entitled to review and make reasonable changes to the provisions of the performance plan from time to time for operational reasons on agreement between both parties.

5.5. Performance Management Process

5.5.1 Municipal Level

The MLM organisational performance management system can be defined as the planning process whereby the MLM set the strategic agenda, vision and mission, as well as strategic objectives and development objectives for the upcoming financial year/s, and the desired performance results. Performance management at organisational level involves various phases:

Phase 1: Planning

The Integrated Development Planning process and the Performance Management Process should appear to be seamlessly integrated. The IDP fulfils the planning stage of performance management. Performance management fulfils the implementation management, monitoring and evaluation of the IDP process.

Phase 2: Priority Setting

In setting priorities, the municipality should *inter alia* consider the following:

1. An assessment of development in the municipal area, identifying development challenges and the status quo of the underdeveloped areas;
2. A long term development vision for the municipality to address its development challenges;
3. A set of KPAs, strategic objectives and development objectives, based on identified needs, achievable in the current term of office, that would contribute significantly to the achievement of the development vision for the area;
4. A set of internal transformational objectives;
5. Additional projects and programmes identified in contributing to the achievement of the above objectives;
6. A financial plan and medium term income and expenditure framework that is aligned to the priorities of the municipality; and
7. A spatial development framework.

To be useful in the management of performance, the IDP must provide very clear indicators by which to measure the achievement of the objectives and unambiguous targets for those indicators.

Phase 3: Setting Objectives

All components of the IDP need to be translated into a set of clear and tangible development objectives (PDOs). This is a crucial stage in ensuring that there is clarity on the IDP and that the suitable indicators are found. A clear and concise construction of statement of objectives is needed. The statement requires a tangible, measurable and unambiguous commitment to be made. It is often useful to have a clear timeframe attached to this commitment in objective statement.

Phase 4: Setting Key Performance Indicators

KPIs are measurements that tell us whether progress is being made in achieving our objectives. Indicators should describe performance dimension considered key in measuring performance. The ethos of performance management as implemented in local governments and captured in the Municipal Systems Act and Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations rely centrally on the use of Key Performance Indicators.

Phase 5: Setting Targets

The municipality should have clear objectives for its IDP and identified appropriate indicators. Targets are purely objectives or milestones for what we intend an indicator to measure at various timeframes. Performance targets are planned level of performance or milestones the MLM sets for itself for each indicator identified. Targets are usually expressed in quantity or time terms.

Phase 6: Monitoring

Monitoring is a continuous process of measuring, assessing, analysing and evaluating the performance of the organisation and departments with regard to KPIs and targets. Mechanisms, systems and processes for monitoring should provide for reporting at least twice per annum to the MLM council and the community, it should enable detection of early indication of under-performance and provide for corrective measures/indicators.

Phase 7: Review

Review includes assessment of the system itself, the framework, targets, and performance targets of departments and performance measurement of employees. It identifies the strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats of the municipality in meeting key performance indicators, performance targets and general key performance indicators. It also measures/indicators the economy, efficiency, effectiveness in the utilisation of resources and impact in so far as performance indicators and targets set by the MLM are concerned.

Performance improvement and adjustment is based on review. The MLM should ensure that the community participates in review.

The organisational performance management processes have the following phases:

1. Performance planning;
2. Performance monitoring & reporting,
3. Performance reviewing (evaluation & assessment); and
4. Performance auditing.

5.5.2 Individual Level

The Employee performance management system can be defined as the process through which the planned performance objectives as defined in the IDP are cascaded into the

employee's Annual Performance Plans, thus allowing for the planning, coaching and monitoring, reviewing and rewarding of performance, and the enhancement of development, at the level of the individual employee. The process comprises of four phases.

Phase 1: Planning

This is about **jointly identifying individual performance expectations and gaining the employee's commitment in achieving these expectations.** This also entails the identification of KFA's and indicators, the establishment of year-end targets and the planning for the phasing in of the year-end target into quarterly targets (cumulatively and quarterly).

Phase 2: Performance Coaching

This is the phase of continuously tracking and improving performance, through feedback and reinforcement of key results and competencies. This is done with a view to timely detect performance relapses and to simultaneously introduce speedy remedial actions. A prescribed record sheet is used to record evidence and remedies.

During this phase, on a quarterly basis, the actual performance must be determined and be judged against the quarterly obligation as well as the cumulative performance and the standards that have been set in advance. During this phase it is also important to provide and present any evidence proving performance.

Although actual measurements are done each quarter, formal performance reviews only are to be done half yearly and year-end provided the documented performance in the first and third quarter is satisfactory.

Phase 3: Reviewing

This phase involves jointly assessing performance against expectations (planned vs. actual performance) at mid-year and year-end. **The Manager/Supervisor is to set up formal quarterly reviews to assess the relevance of the objectives and the Employee's performance against the objectives and a formal final review in June.**

<u>The process for reviewing performance is as follows:</u>

- The evaluated employee to submit all required PoE to the manager;
- The evaluated employee to prepare for the formal review by scoring him/herself against the agreed objectives and KPIs and targets;
- The evaluated employee to submit the PoE;
- The assessor/panel and evaluated employee will meet to finalise the formal performance review and agree on the final scores.
- The assessor/panel to prepare final scores of the evaluated employee's performance.

Should the evaluated employee not agree with the outcome of his/her performance results, they may follow the dispute procedure as outlined in the Regulations for Section 57 employees and other employees to follow the MLM dispute resolution process.

The assessor/panel and evaluated employee must prepare and agree to a Personal Development Plan (PDP). This only needs to be done at the final review in June in conjunction with the annual skills efficiency analysis re-view.

The Evaluation Panel for reviewing performance

According to the Municipal Performance Management Regulations, 2006, Regulation 27(4)(d) stipulates that:

For purposes of evaluating the Municipal Manager:

- Executive Mayor;
- Chairperson or delegated member of the Performance & Audit Committee;
- Members of the Mayoral Committee (MC);
- Mayor and/or municipal manager from another municipality; and
- One ward committee member as nominated by the Executive Mayor.

For purposes of evaluating the annual performance of managers directly accountable to the municipal managers:

- Municipal Manager;
- Chairperson or delegated member of the Performance & Audit Committee;
- Relevant Member of the Mayoral Committee (MMC); and
- Municipal Manager from another municipality.

For purposes of evaluating the annual performance of managers and specialists, an evaluation panel constituted of the following persons must be established:

- Head of Department (Implementation phase)
- Supervisor /Line Manager;
- Employee; and
- PMS specialist.

Phase 4: Year-End Review and Rewarding

This phase establishes the link between performance and reward. It aims to direct and reinforce effective work behaviours by determining and allocating equitable and appropriate rewards to employees. Permanent employees will initially be awarded **non-financial rewards** for good performance and ultimately financial rewards will be determined through the National Collective Bargaining process at South African Local Government Bargaining Council (SALGBC).

5.6 Performance Auditing

5.6.1 The Role of Internal Audit in terms of Performance Management

The MFMA requires that the Municipality must establish an internal audit section which service could be outsourced depending on its resources and specific requirements. Section

45 of the Municipal Systems Act stipulates that the results of the Municipality's performance measures/indicators must be audited by the said internal audit section as part of the internal auditing process and annually by the Auditor-General.

The Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations stipulate that the internal audit section must on a continuous basis audit all performance and the auditing must include an assessment of the following:

- The functionality of the municipality's performance management system;
- Whether the municipality's performance management system complies with the Act; and
- The extent to which the municipality's performance measurements are reliable in measuring the performance of municipalities by making use of indicators.

Functionality

Function could be defined as a proper or expected activity or duty or to perform or operate as expected. This could also be applied to the operation of any system such a PMS. The internal audit section must therefore on a regular basis audit whether the PMS of the MLM is functioning as developed and described in this framework.

Compliance

The MLM PMS must comply strictly with the requirements of the Systems Act, Regulations and the MFMA. The MLM's internal audit unit, at least on a quarterly basis, verifies that the PMS complies with the said legal requirements.

Reliability

To rely could be defined as to trust or depend (upon) with confidence. Reliability in the context of PMS refers to the extent to which any performance measures/indicators reported upon could be seen as being reliable, e.g. if the performance target was to build 500 houses and it is reported that the target has been met or exceeded, it must be established whether the information is factually correct or only an estimation or even worse, purposeful misrepresentation.

Undertaking a reliability audit will entail the continuous verification of performance measures/indicators and targets reported upon. This will require that the MLM sets in place a proper information management system (electronically or otherwise) so that the internal audit section is able to access information regularly and to verify its correctness. The MLM's internal auditor must submit quarterly reports on the audits undertaken to the Municipal Manager and the Audit Committee.

5.6.2 Performance & Audit Committee

The MFMA and the Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations require that the municipal council establish an audit committee consisting of a minimum of three members, where the majority of members are not employees of the municipality. No Councillor may be a member of an audit committee. Council must also appoint a chairperson who is not an employee. The Regulations gives municipalities the option to establish a separate performance audit committee whereas the MFMA provides only for a

single audit committee. The operation of this audit committee when dealing with performance management is governed by Section 14 (2 - 4) of the Regulations which require that the audit committee must:

1. Review the quarterly reports submitted to it by the internal audit unit;
2. Review the municipality's PMS and make recommendations in this regard to the Council of the Municipality; and
3. At least twice during a financial year submit an audit report to the municipal Council;

In order to fulfil their function a performance audit committee may, according to the MFMA and the Regulations,

1. Communicate directly with the council, municipal manager or the internal and external auditors of the municipality concerned;
2. Access any municipal records containing information that is needed to perform its duties or exercise its powers;
3. Request any relevant person to attend any of its meetings, and, if necessary, to provide information requested by the committee; and
4. Investigate any matter it deems necessary for the performance of its duties and the exercise of its powers.

5.7 General Performance Management Issues

There are some general issues related to performance management that require consideration in implementing the PMS of the Municipality.

5.7.1. Managing Poor Performance

Should an employee not achieve the predetermined objectives (PDOs), indicators and targets in his/her performance agreement, the manager and the employee should agree on corrective measures. (It is inappropriate that an employee is informed of his/her non-performance at the formal performance review). Employees **must** be given feedback throughout the year.

Early Warning Mechanisms

The municipality's 1st quarter performance report should be used as an early warning mechanism to determine whether the annual developed objectives, KPIs and targets will be achieved. The departments should review mechanisms to improve its performance and indicate to the internal audit and Performance & Audit Committee how they intend to improve performance.

Addressing Poor Performance

The management of poor performance should be seen as a corrective process, focusing on addressing issues that lead to performance related problems. Counselling is seen as the first corrective process, which should include the following:

- Identify and agree on the problem;

- Describe the impact of the poor performance;
- Establish reasons for performance;
- Decide and agree on what actions are required, and set the necessary timeframes; and
- Resource the agreed actions.

5.7.2. Reward and Recognition

Non-Financial Rewards

Non-financial reward is based on recognising high performance in ways other than financial reward.

Such recognition could be based on the following three approaches:

- ***Informal -*** These are spontaneous and can be implemented with minimal planning and effort, e.g. calling an employee into the office and thanking him/her for a job well done and not discussing anything else.
- ***Awards for specific achievements and activities -*** These are tailored to reward specific achievements and behaviours desired most in the organisation, e.g. long service awards, monthly awards, etc.
- ***Formal –*** *If t*he municipality has formal recognition programmes, some may be used to formally acknowledge (in public) significant contributions by individuals and teams, e.g. annual mayor's awards for excellence, etc.

Non-financial reward is based on recognising high performance in ways other than financial reward.

Such recognition could be based on the following three approaches:

- ***Informal -*** These are spontaneous and can be implemented with minimal planning and effort, e.g. calling an employee into the office and thanking him/her for a job well done and not discussing anything else.

- ***Awards for specific achievements and activities -*** These are tailored to re-ward specific achievements and behaviours desired most in the organisation, e.g. long service awards, monthly awards, etc.

- ***Formal –*** *If t*he municipality has formal recognition programmes, some may be used to formally acknowledge (in public) significant contributions by individuals and teams, e.g. annual mayor's awards for excellence, etc.

Performance Bonuses

Although the regulations provide for performance bonuses the Midvaal Local Municipality has resolved not to award bonuses.

The annual performance score of an individual is calculated based on the SDBIP results and core competencies rating added together to give a total score. This total score is converted

by the assessment-rating calculator (in terms of the Regulations) for performance management and bonus purposes.

Paragraph 32 of the Regulations provides that a performance bonus ranging from ***5 % to 14 %*** of the all-inclusive remuneration package may be paid to an employee in recognition of outstanding performance. In determining the performance bonus the relevant percentage is based on the overall rating, calculated by using the applicable assessment-rating calculator; provided that:

- a score of 130 % to 149 % is awarded a performance bonus ranging from **5 % to 9 %;** and
- a score of 150 % and above is awarded a performance bonus ranging from **10 % to 14 %.**

In the case of ***unacceptable performance*** (score between 0 – 99 %), the employer shall:

- provide systematic remedial or developmental support to assist the employee to improve his or her performance; and
- after appropriate performance counselling and having provided the necessary guidance and/or support and reasonable time for improvement in performance, and performance does not improve, the employer may consider steps to terminate the contract of employment of the employee on grounds of un-fitness or incapacity to carry out his or her duties.

Allocation of Bonus

The table below provides for the threshold for the allocation of bonus and institution of poor performance management measures/indicators depending on the level of performance expressed in percentages in line with the regulations above.

The third column also provides actual thresholds for the payment of bonus with the fourth column, entitled Rewards or Corrective Action, providing the actual bonus quantum in proportion to the actual performance score with the determined thresholds.

Key terminology used in the Regulations is outstanding performance and unacceptable performance. A performance score of 130% and above will constitute "outstanding performance". A performance score between 100 – 129 % is deemed as "not fully satisfactory" and no bonus will be considered. A performance score between 0 – 99 % is deemed as "unacceptable" and will be dealt with in terms of the Poor Performance Management Programme.

Rating	Terminology	Percentage
5	Outstanding performance	150% and above
4	Performance significantly above expectations	146% - 149%
		141% - 145%
		136% - 140%
3	Fully effective	130% - 135%

2	Performance not fully satisfactory	100% - 129%
1	Unacceptable performance	0% - 99%

Where a manager acted in a position for a period longer than 3 months pro-rata bonuses may be considered. This will be within the discretion of the Municipal Manager (in the case of managers reporting to him/her) and Executive Mayor (in the case of the Municipal Manager).

5.7.3 Dispute Mechanism

The procedure for dealing with substandard performance is prescribed in Regulation 16 of the Disciplinary Regulations for Senior Managers.

The Municipal Performance Management Regulations for Section 57 managers provide clear guidelines for performance disputes relating to the performance agreements of the municipal manager and managers directly accountable to the municipal manager. Below is the process of dispute as it relates for Section 57 employees performance agreements as stipulated in the said regulations.

Any disputes about the nature of the Employee's performance agreement, whether it relates to key responsibilities, priorities, methods of assessment and/ or any other matter provided for, shall be mediated by:

- In the case of the municipal manager, the MEC for local government in the province within thirty (30) days of receipt of a formal dispute from the employee, or any other person designated by the MEC ; and
- In the case of managers directly accountable to the municipal manager, the executive mayor or mayor within thirty (30) days of receipt of a formal dispute from the employee;

In the event that the mediation process contemplated above fails, the relevant clause of the Contract of Employment shall apply.

The following process relates to dispute relating to employees below Section 57- employees:

- Conducting performance counselling in case of poor performance;
- If counselling does not yield results, employees are put on performance improvement process with action plan and clear timelines; and
- If performance does not improve, disciplinary process will be initiated, as per the mentioned Disciplinary Regulations.

5.7.4 Integrating PMS with the Council's existing Management Cycle

Leading practice indicates that PMS stand the best chance to succeed if it is integrated with the current management cycle of the Municipality. The purpose of such a cycle would be to guide the integration of important processes such as the strategic planning or development

process in terms of the IDP methodology, the annual budget process and the formal process of evaluating and assessing Council's performance in terms of the approved PMS and this framework and it is recommended that the Municipality develop and adopt a similar cycle that is suitable to its own circumstances and requirements.

ACRONYMS

CCR	Core Competency Requirement
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
KFA	Key Focus Area
KPA	Key Performance Area
KPI	Key Performance Indicator
LED	Local Economic Development
MMC	Member of the Mayoral Council
MFMA	Municipal Financial Management Act
MPAC	Municipal Public Accounts Committee
MSA	Municipal Systems Act
PA	Performance Appraisal
PMS	Performance Management System
SALGA	South African Local Government Association
SALGBC	South African Local Government Bargaining Council
MLM	Midvaal Local Municipality
NTFMPPI	National Treasury Framework for Managing Programme Performance Information

DEFINITIONS

Activity	It is an action or task that is performed with the intension of achieving the Key Focus Areas (KFAs)
Baseline	It is the actual results of a project, programme or activity achieved during the previous financial year(s)
Driver	It is the person who takes ownership to execute a project, programme or activity
Employee	A person employed by the MLM as a Municipal Manager or as a Manager directly accountable to the Municipal Manager, and all other personnel employed permanently by the municipality

Employer	The MLM as represented by the Executive Mayor or the Municipal Manager, as the case may be
Employment Contract	A contract as contemplated in Section 56 of the Municipal Systems Act, as amended
MLM	Midvaal Local Municipality
Key Focus Area (KFA)	It is those areas in which the municipality must perform to ensure that the Key Performance Areas are achieved
Key Performance Area (KPA)	It is the performance area in which the municipality must perform to achieve its Mission and Vision
Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	It defines how performance will be measured along a scale or dimension (e.g. number of houses, km of road, percentage increase, etc.) to achieve the strategic objectives and KPAs
National Key Performance Area (NKPA)	This is a key area of focus determined at National level and is mandatory to all municipalities in South Africa
National Key Performance Indicator (NKPI)	This is a key indicator determined at national level and is mandatory for all municipalities in South Africa to regularly report on
National Outcomes	This refers to the 12 outcomes determined by National Government of which Outcome 9 is focussing specifically on local government
Performance Agreement	An agreement as contemplated in Section 56 of the Municipal Systems Act, as amended
Performance Indicator	It defines how performance will be measured along a scale or dimension (e.g. number of houses, km of road, percentage increase, etc.) to achieve the Key Focus Areas (KFAs)
Policy	Basic performance management principles by which the municipality is guided
Portfolio of Evidence (PoE)	It is a file with a clear “paper trail” that serves as proof of the execution of a specific project, programme or activity. (It can include documents, pictures or any other form of evidence)
Programme	A sequence of scheduled activities and / or projects executed with the intension of achieving the Key Focus Areas (KFAs)
Project	It is an initiative that is executed over a specific period of time with a de-fined beginning and end with the intension of achieving the Key Focus Areas (KFAs). (It can be capital intensive or any other project)
Strategic Objective	It translates the Key Performance Area (KPA) into an outcome statement
Strategy	A plan of action designed to achieve the MLM’s Vision
System	Detailed method and procedures formulated to carry out performance management
Target	It completes the performance indicator with actual numbers, percentages, rand values, etc. To be achieved over a specific period of time.

6. ANNEXURES:

A: Annexure A: List of Unfunded Projects

B: Midvaal Spatial Development Framework 2018/2019

C: Disaster Management Plan

D: IT Disaster Recovery Plan

E: MEC Comments

F: Response to MEC Comments

ANNEXURE A: LIST OF UNFUNDED PROJECTS MIDVAAL LOCAL MUNICPALITY'SPROJECTS

Annexure A: Unfunded Midvaal L. Municipality Projects

ID/Ref Nr.	Key Focus Area (KFA)	Description of Capital Projects, Programmes and Activities	Capital Projects (CP), Programmes (P) and Activities (A)	Type of Indicator (Input (I), Output (O), Outcome (OC),	Department	Targets		Delivery:	Funding Source	Ward
						17/18	18/19	Internal / External		
2/6/A/CS/395	**KPA 2/KFA 6: Environmental Management**	Eradication of alien and invader plants	A	O	CS			External unfunded	GDARD	**All**
2/8/A/P/269	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	EMS Offices	A	O	CS	2	2	External	Gauteng Department of Health	**4, 5, 7 & 12**
2/8/CP/P/285	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	Swift water Trailer	CP	O	CS			Internal	MLM	**All**
2/8/CP/P/286	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	Lecture room	CP	O	CS			Internal	MLM	**All**
2/8/CP/P/287	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	Lecture Room furniture	CP	O	CS			Internal	MLM	**All**
2/8/CP/P/288	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	Wall around Fire station	CP	O	CS			Internal	MLM	**All**
2/8/CP/P/296	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	BARGE VAALMARINA	CP		CS					**1**
2/8/CP/P/397	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	DOORNKUIL FIRE SATION	CP		CS					**11**
2/8/P/P/398	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	MARKING OF FIRE HYDRANTS IN EXT 4	P		CS					**14**
2/8/A/P/280	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	Vaal Marina Fire Station Water Use License	A	O	CS			External DWA		**1**
2/8/CP/P/281	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	Water Rescue Boat	CP	O	CS	0		Internal	MLM	**1**
2/8/CP/P/282	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	Medium Fire pumper Vaal Marina	CP	O	CS	0		Internal	MLM	**1**
2/8/CP/P/283	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	Radio repeater Vaal Marina	CP	O	CS	0		Internal	MLM	**1**
2/8/CP/P/284	**KPA 2/KFA 8: Emergency Services**	Furniture Vaal Marina	CP	O	CS	0		Internal	MLM	**1**
2/9/P/ES/277	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Paved drop-off area at Meyerton School	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**9**
2/9/CP/P/289	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	LDV for trade licensing	CP	O	CS	1	1	Internal	MLM	**All**
2/9/CP/P/392	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Traffic Calming measures at schools (Painting/Signs/Speed	CP	O	CS	100.00%	100.00%	Internal	CRR	**All**

2/9/CP/P/394	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Speed measures (Speed enforcement/painting, street names/signs, speed humps)	CP	O	CS	0.00%		Internal	CRR	**1,3,8,,9,10 ,11, 12 & 14**
2/9/P/P/271	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Fully equipped road block trailer	P	O	CS	0	0	Internal	MLM	**All**
2/9/9/9/272	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Technical team cabster	CP	O	CS	0	0	Internal	MLM	**All**
2/9/P/P/274	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Acqusition of Fire arm	P	O	CS	0	0	Internal	MLM	**All**
2/9/P/9/401	**KPA 6 /KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Improved security at Danie Mclean Park	P	O	CS	100% completion				**3**
2/9/CP/P/402	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	BUS LANE / BUS STOP AREA ALONG EWELME ROAD	CP	O	CS		100% completion	Internal	CRR	**15**
2/9/CP/P/404	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	BUS SHELTERS IN IFFLEY / REGATTA STREET	CP	O	CS		100% completion			**15**
2/9/P/P406	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	LARGE NAME BOARDS FOR THE CBD	P	O	CS		100% completion			**9**
2/9/P/P/408	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	PALISADE FENCING ALONG JOHAN LE ROUX –SICELO	P	O	CS					**10**
2/9/CP/407	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	INFORMAL TRADING SHELTERS	CP	O	CS					**12**
2/9/CP/P/408	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	SECURITY SYSTEM CCTV	CP	O	CS	100% completion of phase	100% completion of phase			**13**
2/9/CP/P/409	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	TRAFFIC CALMING CIRCLE AT ENTRANCE TO MEYERTON EXT 6	CP	O	CS					**14**
2/9/CP/P/	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Enhancement of staffing and equiping of existing VaalMarina Police Station	CP		CS					**1**
2/9/A/P/	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Enforcement of building by-laws	A		D&P					**1**
2/9/CP/P/	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Erection of enclosures	CP		CS					**3**
2/9/P/P/	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Erect big Street names on Main streets and "No Hawkers" signs in the CBD	P		CS					**9**
2/9/P/P/	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Enforce by-laws for Shops	P		D&P					**9 & 10**

3/10/CP/D/292	**KPA 3 / KFA 10: Sustainable Human Settlements (Housing)**	Acquisition of White House and Implementation of development plan		O	ES, D&P, Corp	R 20 000 000		External	NDPG	**8**
3/10/P/P/293	**KPA 3 / KFA 10: Sustainable Human Settlements (Housing)**	Savanna City Co-funding	CP	O	ES, Fin			External	Nat Treasury	**11**
3/10/CP/D/394	**KPA 3 /KFA 10: Sustainable Human Settlements (Housing)**	Land for development	CP	O	D&P					**7**
3/10/CP/D/396	**KPA 3 /KFA 10: Sustainable Human Settlements (Housing)**	REMOVAL OF ILLEGAL LAND INVASIONS	P	O	D&P					**4 & 13**
3/12/CP/S/409	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	UPGRADING DE DEUR LIBRARY	CP	O	CS	In process. Project to be completed by 30 June 2018		External	MLM	**11**
3/12/CP/S/410	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	LIBRARY AT OHENIMURI	CP	O	CS		100% Funding spend	External	UNFUNDED	**11**
3/13/CP/S/411	**KPA 3/KFA 13: Cemeteries**	UPGRADING OF CEMETRIES	CP	O	CS					**All**
3/13/CP/S/	**KPA 3/KFA 13: Cemeteries**	Cemetery	CP		CS					**1**
3/14/P/S/295	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	Number of registered ECD's developed & maintained	P	O	CS	23		Internal	DSD	**All**
3/14/P/S/296	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	% of unregistered ECD's developed & maintained	P	O	CS	All unregistered ECD's		Internal	DSD	**All**
3/14/P/S/297	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	Upgrading and development plans for unregistered ECD's	P	O	CS	Upgrade of 50% of unregistered ECD facilities		Internal	DSD	**All**
3/14/CP/S/413	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	YOUTH DEVELOPMENT PLAN	CP	O	Midvaal Youth Dev. Forum					**8 & 10**

3/14/CP/CS/	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	Mobile Library for Mamello	CP		CS				UNFUNDED	**1**
3/14/CP/CS/	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	New ECD	CP		CS					**6**
3/14/CP/CS/	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	Health and Recreational Facilities	CP		CS					**7**
3/14/CP/CS/	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	Indoor Gym for Ward 10	CP		CS					**10**
5/22/CP/E/300	**KPA 5/KFA 22: Asset Management (Incl Fleet Asset management**	Double cab (HP)	CP	I	ES			Internal	Loan	**All**
5/22/CP/E/301	**KPA 5/KFA 22: Asset Management (Incl Fleet Asset management**	1 x LDV	CP	I	ES			Internal	CRR	**All**
5/22/CP/S/303	**KPA 5/KFA 22: Asset Management (Incl Fleet Asset management**	Water Tanker (HP)	CP	I	ES			Internal	Loan	**All**
5/22/CP/S/304	**KPA 5/KFA 22: Asset Management (Incl Fleet Asset management**	Replacement of waste fleet	CP	I	ES			Internal	External Loans	**All**
5/22/CP/S/305	**KPA 5/KFA 22: Asset Management (Incl Fleet Asset management**	240lt bins	CP					Internal	CRR	**All**
5/22/CP/S/306	**KPA 5/KFA 22: Asset Management (Incl Fleet Asset management**	Skip Bins	CP	I	CS	450000 (tender submitted to BEC)	450 000	Internal	CRR	**All**
5/22/CP/S/307	**KPA 5/KFA 22: Asset Management (Incl Fleet Asset management**	Street litter Bins	CP	I	CS	100000(contract awarded to be spent this financial year)	120000	Internal	CRR	**All**

6/23/CP/E/355	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Solar Water Heating	CP	O	ES					**6,8 &10**
6/23/CP/E/308	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Mamello Township Electrical supply	CP	O	ES			External	DoE Grant	**1**
6/23/CP/E/309	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Sicelo Main sub and 88kV Line	CP	O	ES			External		**8 & 10**
6/23/CP/E/310	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Vaal Marina Substation upgrade	CP	O	ES			External	CRR	**1**
6/23/CP/E/311	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Prepayment PLC meters	CP	O	ES			External	CRR	**All**
6/23/CP/E/312	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Upgrade Martiens Oosthuizen Network	CP	O	ES	R 100 000		Internal	CRR	**3**
6/23/CP/E/313	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Eskom connection fee Sicelo substation	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**8 & 10**
6/23/CP/E/314	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Sectionalises for overhead lines	CP	O	ES	R 300 000		Internal	CRR	**All**
6/23/CP/E/315	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Upgrade RI 3 Substation Riversdale	CP	O	ES			External	CRR	**13**
6/23/CP/E/316	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Upgrade S10 Substation Sicelo	CP	O	ES			External	CRR	**8 & 10**
6/23/CP/E/317	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Upgrade S16 Substation Sicelo	CP	O	ES			External	CRR	**8 & 10**
6/23/CP/E/318	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Upgrade O5 Substation Ophir	CP	O	ES			External	CRR	**5 & 11**
6/23/CP/E/319	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Replace Rothdene LV overhead line to underground	CP	O	ES	R 200 000		Internal	CRR	**3**
6/23/CP/E/320	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	TLB	CP	O	ES			External	CRR	**8 & 10**
6/23/CP/E/322	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Feeder Supply to S16	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**8 & 10**
6/23/CP/E/323	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Replace LV Line to underground in Oranje Rivier Street and upgrade area voltage	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**13**
6/23/CP/E/325	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Feeder Supply to Rothdene	CP	O	ES	R 4 000 000		Internal	CRR	**3**
6/23/CP/E/326	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Feeder line to Riversdale	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**13**

6/23/CP/E/327	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Smart Metering in Industrial area	CP	OC	ES	R 5 000 000		External	CRR	**9**
6/23/CP/E/328	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Upgrade Overhead Lines in Chrissiesfontein	CP	O	ES	R 3 500 000		Internal	CRR	**13**
6/38/CP/E/331	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	High Mast Lights in Sicelo	CP	O	ES	R 1 300 000		Internal	Grant	**8 & 10**
6/23/CP/E/332	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	High Mast Lights along Johan Le Roux and Noldick	CP	O	ES	R 3 500 000		External	CRR	**9**
6/23/CP/E/337	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Upgrade HT & LT Overhead Lines in Ophir Estates	CP	O	ES	R 2 250 000		Internal	CRR	**5 & 11**
6/23/CP/E/338	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Ohenimuri - Upgrade of Network	CP	O	ES		R 3 000 000	Internal	CRR	**11**
6/23/CP/E/341	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Sicelo reticulation Network Erf 78 (Dept of Energy)	CP	O	ES			External	Grant	**10**
6/23/CP/E/342	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Replace 11 kV overhead line Springbok Road	CP	O	ES	R 1 800 000		Internal	CRR	**5**
6/23/CP/E/343	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	New Streetlights on all Major roads and Gravel roads	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**All**
6/23/CP/E/344	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Festive Decorating Lights	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**9**
6/23/CP/E/348	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Feeder to Glen Donald	CP	O	ES			Internal		**2, &13**
6/23/CP/E/352	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Bronk Lane Lighting	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**7**
6/23/CP/E/354	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Electrical network to be upgraded in Walkers fruit farms	CP	O	ES			External	Eskom	**7**
6/23/CP/E/356	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Electricity to settlements in Alewynspoort and Elandsfontein	CP	O	ES					**7**
6/23/CP/E/358	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	OPHIR ESTATES - UPGRADE HT & LT OVERHEAD LINES + STREET LIGHTS	CP	O	ES					**5 & 11**
6/23/CP/E/362	**KPA 6/KFA 23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	UPGRADE HT & LT OVERHEAD LINES - CHRISSIESFONTEIN	CP	O	ES					**13**

6/38/CP/E/334	**KPA 6/KFA23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	High Mast Lights Bantu Bonke	CP	O	ES			External	Grant	**1**
6/38/CP/E/340	**KPA 6/KFA23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Duncanville Streetlight upgrade	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**2**
6/38/CP/E/349	**KPA 6/KFA23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Vaal Marina upgrade of HT and LV overheadlines	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**1**
6/38/CP/E/351	**KPA 6/KFA23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Rissiville Ext 6 Electrification: Network strengthening	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**2**
6/24/CP/E/357	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Construction of K154 between R 59 and N1	CP	O	ES	100% of funded phase completed		External	Gautrans	**5, 7 & 12**
6/24/CP/E/358	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Vaal Marina Alternative Access	CP	O	ES		100% Complete R15 000 000	Internal	CRR	**1**
6/24/CP/E/360	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Upgrade Bantu Bonke Roads	CP	O	ES		100% Complete R1 000 000	Internal	Grant	**1**
6/24/CP/E/361	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Upgrade Vaal Marina Access	CP	O	ES	50% Complete R4 000 000		External	MIG	**1**
6/24/CP/E/362	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	HoK, Golfpark, Meyerton Cycle Path	CP	O	ES	50% Complete R1 000 000	50% Complete R1 000 000	External	CRR	**14 & 15**
6/24/CP/E/364	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Storm-water Sicelo	CP	O	ES	40% Complete R2 000 000		External	CRR	**8 & 10**
6/24/CP/E/365	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Establishment Quarry	CP	O	ES	67% Complete R500 000		Internal	CRR	**All**
6/24/CP/E/366	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Storm-water Master Plan	CP	O	ES			Internal	CRR	**All**
6/24/CP/E/414	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	SHIPLAKE, WARGRAVE, RUGBY, HERON GRAVEL TO TAR	CP	O	ES					**15**
6/24/CP/E/415	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	EATON ROAD TO BE UPGRADED (ENG91)	CP	O	ES					**15**
6/24/CP/E/417	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	PEDESTRIAN SUSPENSION BRIDGE - WEIR	CP	O	ES					**15**
6/24/CP/E/418	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	PAVING OF PAVEMENTS ALONG JAPLOW STREET	CP	O	ES					**15**
6/24/CP/E/419	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	PAVING OF PAVEMENTS ALONG PRETORIUS STREET	CP	O	ES					**15**

6/24/CP/E/420	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	PAVING OF PAVEMENTS ALONG IFFLEY STREET	CP	O	ES					**15**
6/24/CP/E/421	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	STORMWATER MANAGEMENT SYSTEM: LAKESIDE	CP	O	ES					**6**
6/24/CP/E/422	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	GRAVEL TO TAR ON ALL ROADS	CP	O	ES					**All**
6/24/CP/E/423	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Tarring of Eye-of-Africa service road	CP	O	ES					**7**
6/24/CP/E/428	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	PAVING ON PAVEMENTS IN CBD	CP	O	ES					**9**
6/24/CP/E/429	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	CONSTRUCTION OF A SPINE ROAD / JOHAN LE ROUX INTERSECTION - SICELO		O	ES	**R 10 000 000**				**10**
6/24/CP/E/432	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	STORMWATER MANAGEMENT SYSTEM		O	ES					**10**
6/24/CP/E/434	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	OPHIR ESTATES GRAVEL TO TAR – OHIO ROAD	CP	O	ES					**11**
6/24/CP/E/359	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Pierneef road Widening	CP		ES		100% Complete R6 000 000	Internal	Loan	**14**
6/24/CP/E/363	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Storm water HoK East	CP	O	ES	33% Complete R1 000 000	33% Complete R1 000 000	External	CRR	**15**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Road resurfacing and potholes fixing	CP		ES					**1**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Fixing of Anchovy Road	CP		ES					**1**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Pavements and curb stones on all tared roads	CP		ES					**1**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Upgrade of Road Infrastructure around the solid waste disposal site	CP		ES					**1**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Upgrade of Hefer Street	CP		ES					**2**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Fixing of Potholes in Rothdene and Kookrus	CP		ES					**3**

6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Upgrading of Viljoen street, View avenue, Dolly and Rabbie avenue	CP		ES					**3**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Erect a Stormwater drainage system on Verwoed Road	CP		ES					**3**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Bicycle lanes in CBD	CP		ES					**9**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Road widening of M61	CP		ES					**12**
6/24/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Bicycle lanes in Pierneef road	CP		ES					**14**
6/25/CP/E/368	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Sedibeng Regional Sewer Scheme	CP	O	ES	100% of funded pase complete		External		**All**
6/25/CP/E/370	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Water Reticulation around Eye of Africa	CP	O	ES		100% Complete R6 500 000	Internal	CRR	**7**
6/25/CP/E/371	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Bulk Water Risiville/Uitvlucht/McKay	CP	O	ES		100% Complete R7 500 000	Internal	CRR	**1 & 2**
6/25/CP/E/372	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Bulk Sewer Risiville/Uitvlucht/McKay	CP	O	ES		100% Complete R25 000 000	Internal	CRR	**2**
6/25/CP/E/373	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Extension Sewer Lines HoK	CP	O	ES		100% Complete R10 000 000	Internal	CRR	**15**
6/25/CP/E/374	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Vaal Marina Bulk Services	CP	O	ES		100% Complete R60 000 000	Internal	CRR	**1**
6/25/CP/E/377	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Sewer Master Plan	CP	O	ES			External	CRR	**All**
6/25/CP/E/378	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Tedderfield Water Connection	CP	O	ES			External	CRR	**7**
6/25/CP/E/382	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Upgrade of Services Ohenimuri	CP	O	ES	100% Complete R25 000 000		External	CRR	**11**
6/25/CP/E/383	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Upgrade of Services De Deur	CP	O	ES	100% Complete R25 000 000		External	CRR	**11**

6/25/CP/E/441	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Potable water to settlements in Alewynspoort and Elandsfontein	CP	O	ES					**7**
6/25/CP/E/444	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	OPHIR ESTATES SEWER SYSTEM (ENG31)	CP	O	ES		**R 50 000 000**			**11**
6/25/CP/E/446	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	ABLUTION FACILITIES FOR KHAYELITSHA INFORMAL SETTLEMENT	CP	O	ES					**12**
6/25/CP/E/447	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	UPGRADING OF WATER AND SEWER NETWORK IN KLIPWATER	CP	O	ES					**12**
6/25/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Upgrading and Installation of stormwater drainage systems in Vaal Marina	CP		ES					**1**
6/25/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Emptying of French Drains (Boitumelo and Kayelitsha)	CP		ES					**5 &12**
6/25/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Public Sanitation facilities in the CBD	CP		ES					**9**
6/25/CP/E/448	**KPA 6/KFA 23, 24, 25: Services Infrastructure**	DE DEUR SERVICES	CP	O	ES					**11**
6/26/CP/S/	**KPA 6/KFA 26: Landfill Sites and Transfer Stations**	Transfer Station	CP	OC	CS	0	0	Internal/unfunded	MIG	**Various**
6/26/CP/S/	**KPA 6/KFA 26: Landfill Sites and Transfer Stations**	Transfer Station: Lakeside Estates	CP	OC	CS	0	0	Internal/unfunded	MIG	**6**
4/27/CP/F/496	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	HENLEY ON KLIP : PAY POINT IN AREA	CP		F			Internal	CRR	**15**
4/27/CP/E/499	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	MULTI PURPOSE CENTRE	CP		CS		100% Funding spend	External		**4,11, 12 & 15**
4/27/CP/E/500	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	PAY POINT IN AREA	CP		F			Internal	CRR	**8**
4/27/CP/E/501	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	PAY POINT FOR PENSIONERS & RATES AND TAXES	CP		F			Internal	CRR	**11**

4/27/CP/E/505	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	SKILLS DEVELOPMENT CENTRE	CP		CS					**11**
2/27/CP/P/291	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Fence next to Erna Church	CP	O	ES		100% Complete R80 000	Internal	CRR	**14**
6/27/A/P/510	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	PALISADE FENCE – BANTU BONKE CEMETERY	CP		CS					**1**
6/27/A/P/511	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	YOUTH DEVELOPMENT CENTRE	CP		Midvaal Youth Dev. Forum	1		External	Grant	**1, 4, 8, 10 & 15**
6/27/A/P/514	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	COMPUTER CENTRE AT BANTU BONKE SCHOOL	CP		CS				UNFUNDED	**1**
6/27/A/P/516	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	BEAUTIFY ENTRANCES	P		CS			Internal	UNFUNDED	**15**
6/27/A/P/517	**KPA 6/KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	CUTTING OF LARGE TREES AT 3 WAY STOP AT HENLEY STATION	P		CS			Internal		**15**
6/27/A/P/529	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	GREENING PROJECT / TREE PLANTING PROJECT	P	OC	CS					**6 & 15**
6/27/A/P/533	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Library	CP		CS	100% funding spend		External	UNFUNDED	**7**
6/27/A/P/534	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	COMMUNITY HALL	CP		ES (EPWP)					**8**
6/27/A/P/535	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	SPORTS AND RECREATION FACILITIES	CP		CS					**1,4, 5,7,8,11,12 &15**
6/27/A/P/536	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	LIBRARY	CP		CS		100% Funding Spend	External	UNFUNDED	**8**
6/27/A/P/537	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	SOUND SYSTEM FOR MULTI PURPOSE CENTRE			CS					**10**
6/27/A/P/547	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	LIBRARY	CP		CS		100% funding spent	External	UNFUNDED	**12**
6/27/A/P/553	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	MEYERTON SPORTS CLUB PHASE 2 – PALISADE & PAVING	CP		CS					**14**
6/27/A/P/	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Cutting of overgrown Trees on road verges and private stands	P		CS					**3**

6/27/A/P/	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Land for Places of Worship	A		D&P					**8 & 10**
6/27/A/P/	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Recreational facilities in Meyerton Park	A		CS					**9**
6/27/P/CS/	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Cut down overgrown trees in Homestead Apple Orchards	P		CS				SEASONAL/CONTINUOUS PROCESS	**11**
7/30/A/SS/557	**KPA 7/KFA 30: Cleansing & Waste Management**	REFUSE BINS	A		CS		1000000			**6**
7/30/A/SS/559	**KPA 7/KFA 30: Cleansing & Waste Management**	SKIP BINS / REFUSE BINS	CP		CS		2000000			**8 & 10**
7/30/A/P/562	**KPA 7/KFA 30: Cleansing & Waste Management**	Wash bay: Cleansing Depot	CP	OC	CS		300000	Internal/unfunded	CRR	**All**
6/30/A/CS/	**KPA 7/KFA 30: Cleansing & Waste Management**	Clear rubble in Arthur Road in Ohenimuri	A		CS					**11**
8/32/P/D/393	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	AGRICULTURAL PROJECT / SMALL SCALE FARMING	P		D&P					**6, 11 &12**
8/32/P/SS/394	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	SKILLS DEVELOPMENT CENTRE	P		CS					**6 & 9**
8/32/P/D/401	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	SKILLS DEVELOPMENT CENTRE	P		CS					**12**
8/32/CP/D/393	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	WHITEHOUSE PRECINCT DEVELOPMENT	CP		D&P					**8 & 10**
8/32/A/D/391	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	Informal Trading Policy to guide establishment of traders stalls	A	O	D&P			External		**1,4,5,6,7,8,9,10 ,11,12,13 & 15**
8/32/P/D/392	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	Skills Development Centre	P	IM	D&P ENG/CS					**6,8,10,11**
8/32/CP/D/	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	Allocate communal land for livestock	CP		D&P					**10**
2/9/P/P/	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Warning signs and Sign visibility	P		CS					**1**
6/25/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Upgrade of water pipes	CP		ES					**1**
6/23/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/KFA23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	Electricity Upgrades	CP		ES					**1**
3/14/CP/CS/	**KPA 3/ KFA 14: Libraries, Arts Culture and Special Programmes (gender, elderly, youth and people living with disabilities) incl. ECD**	Library	CP		CS				UNFUNDED	**1**

6/27/CP/CS/	**KPA 6/KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Municipal Court	CP		Corp					**All**
2/9/CP/P	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Bus Shelter: Meyerton High School	CP		CS					**3**
6/25/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Windsor Circle: Water connection and paving	CP		ES					**3**
2/9/CP/P/	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Traffic Circle at Corgi Motors	CP		CS					**3**
2/9/CP/P/	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Streetnames at Gravel roads	CP		CS					**ALL**
6/27/CP/CS/	**KPA 6/KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Maintanance of Rothdene Town Hall	CP		Corp				CONTINUOS	**3**
6/23/A/ES/	**KPA 6/KFA23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	High Mast Lighting at Daleside Train Station	A		ES					**4**
6/23/A/ES/	**KPA 6/KFA23: Electricity & Energy Efficiency**	High Mast light between Bosduif and Kingfischer in Meyerton Park	A		ES					**5 & 9**
6/25/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Reservoir for Daleside Water Supply	CP		ES					**4**
6/27/A/CS/	**KPA 6/KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Plastic Benches by the Dam	A		CS				UNFUNDED	**1**
6/26/CP/S/	**KPA 6/KFA 26: Landfill Sites and Transfer Stations**	Transfer Station: Blackwood	CP	OC	CS	0	0	Internal/unfunded	MIG	**2**
6/24/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Stormwater drainage system in Van eeden street	CP		ES					**2**
6/27/CP/CS/	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Erection of water sprinklers on all parks	CP		CS				CONTINUOS	**2**
6/27/CP/CS/	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Revamp of the Park next to the Shopping complex	CP		CS				UNFUNDED	**2**
6/27/CP/S/	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Fencing of parks in Risiville	CP		CS				UNFUNDED	**2**
6/24/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Vehicle bridge on ring road giving direct access to Meyerton	CP		ES					**1**
6/30/P/P/	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Access control at Danie Mclean Park	P		CS					**3**
6/25/P/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Upgrade of the sewer pump station	P		ES					**3**
6/25/CP/CS/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Phase 2 sewer Network	CP		ES					**6 & 11**

8/32/P/D/	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	Abet Facility In Lakeside estate	P		D&P/CS/Corp					**6**
6/25/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/KFA 23, 24, 25: Services Infrastructure**	Bulk Services for Extensions 4 and 5	CP		ES					**8**
6/27/CP/CS/	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Removal of Blue Gum trees in Extensions 4 and 5	CP		CS				UNFUNDED	**8**
6/24/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Pedestrian Bridge on Station Road over R59 freeway	CP		ES					**8**
3/10/CP/D/	**KPA 3/ KFA 10: Sustainable Human Settlements**	Procurement of Private Land for Housing and Community Facilities	CP		D&P					**8**
3/11/CP/CS/	**KPA 3/ KFA 11: Sport and Recreation programmes and facilities, including Parks and open space**	Shelter for the community gym	CP		CS				Outdoor gym provided. No shelter needed	**10**
6/24/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Nyala Street storm water system	CP		ES					**10**
3/11/CP/CS/	**KPA 3/ KFA 11: Sport and Recreation programmes and facilities, including Parks and open space**	Swings and play equipment for the Sicelo Multipurpose centre	CP		CS				UNFUNDED	**10**
8/33/CP/D/	**KPA 8/ KFA 33: Spatial and Development Plan**	Inclusion to the Urban Development Boundary	CP		D&P					**5 & 12**
6/25/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Upgrade the sewer and water line	CP		ES					**13**
6/24/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Upgrade the stormwater drainage network	CP		ES					**13**
6/24/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Water use licence for Upgrade of Eisenhower Bridge	CP		ES	R 400 000				**12**
6/24/CP/ES/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Upgrade Eisenhower Bridge	CP		ES	R 6 000 000				**12**
6/25/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Extension of waterborne sewer	CP	O	ES					**All**
6/25/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Additional resevoir to service Eye of Africa and surrounds	CP	O	ES					**7 & 12**
6/25/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Water Treatment Works for the Northern Portion of Midvaal (including all bulk and link services)	CP	O	ES					**4,5,7 & 12**
6/25/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 25: Water and Sanitation Infrastructure**	Bulk water supply	CP	O	ES					**4,5,7 & 12**
5/22/CP/CS/	**KPA 5/KFA 22: Asset Management (Incl Fleet Asset management**	Wheelie Bins	cp	o	CS					**4**

6/25/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Access Roads	CP	O	ES					**4,5,7 & 12**
6/25/CP/E/	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	Brodening of View Avenue-Rothdene	CP	O	ES					**3**

ANNEXURE A: LIST OF UNFUNDED PROJECTS

PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT'S PROJECTS

Annexure A: Unfunded Provincial Department's Projects

ID/Ref Nr.	Key Focus Area (KFA)	Description of Capital Projects, Programmes and Activities	Capital Projects (CP), Programmes (P) and Activities (A)	Type of Indicator (Input (I), Output (O), Outcome	Department	Targets		Delivery:	Funding Source	Ward
						17/18	18/19	Internal / External		
2/9/P/P/290	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Satellite Police Stations	A	O	SAPS			External		**5, 7, 8**
2/9/P/ES/275	**KPA 2/KFA 9: Municipal Law Enforcement**	Traffic Lights at Walkerville and Eikenhof intersections	CP	O	GAUTRANS			External	CRR	**7**
3/10/CP/D/395	**KPA 3 /KFA 10: Sustainable Human Settlements (Housing)**	General Housing Project	CP	O	DHS					**4,7,8 ,10 & 12**
5/22/CP/S/305	**KPA 5/KFA 22: Asset Management (Incl Fleet Asset management**	240lt bins	CP					Internal	CRR	**All**
6/24/CP/E/433	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	PEDESTRIAN BRIDGE OVER R 59		O	GAUTRANS					**10**
6/24/CP/E/437	**KPA 6/ KFA 24: Roads & Storm Water Infrastructure**	R550 BRIDGE OVER THE R59 TO BE UPGRADED	CP	O	GAUTRANS					**12**
4/27/CP/E/497	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SCHOOLS	CP		Dept of Educ.					**1, 4 , 6, 7, 8, 10 &12**
4/27/CP/E/498	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	CLINIC	CP		Dept of Health					**1,4, 6, 7,8,10, 12, 13 & 15**
4/27/CP/E/502	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	DISABILITY CENTRE	CP		GDSD					**6, 11 & 12**
4/27/CP/E/503	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	FORMAL TAXIRANK IN DE DEUR	CP		SDM					**11**
4/27/CP/E/504	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	OHENIMURI MULTI PURPOSE CENTRE	CP		SRAC					**11**
4/27/CP/E/507	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	BUYSCELIA OR BOLTONWOLD : CLINIC / DAY CLINIC	CP		Dept of Health		100% completed			**4**
6/27/P/P/388	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	Formalized taxi rank and formal bus & Taxi Shelters	P		SDM			External	Sedibeng	**4,6, 7, 9, 10, 12 & 15**
6/27/A/P/515	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	STREET TELEPHONE BOOTHS	CP		Telkom					**1**

6/27/A/P/520	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	TRAIN STATION AT LAKESIDE TO BE UPGRADED	CP		PRASA					**6**
6/27/A/P/521	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	FENCING OF RAILWAY AT LAKESIDE	CP		PRASA					**6**
6/27/A/P/522	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	LAKESIDE - PEDESTRIAN BRIDGE OVER RAILWAY	CP		PRASA					**6**
6/27/A/P/524	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	OLD AGE HOMES	CP		GDSD	1		External	DSD	**6, 7,8, 11, 12, 10 & 14**
6/27/A/P/526	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	PENSION SERVICE POINT	CP		GDSD					**6**
6/27/A/P/541	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	POST OFFICE	CP		SA Postoffice					**12**
6/27/A/P/543	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	UPGRADE MAGISTRATE COURT TO MULTI PURPOSE CENTRE/COMMUNITY HALL	CP		D P W		100% Budget spent	External	MIG/DAC	**12**
6/27/A/P/545	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	RESTORATION OF OLD COURT BUILDING OPPOSITE KLIPRIVIER POLICE STATION	CP		D P W					**12**
6/27/A/P/	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	PEDESTRIAN BRIDGE OVER RAILWAY LINE IN DALESIDE	A		PRASA					**4**
8/32/P/D/397	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	SMALL SCALE AGRICULTURAL PROJECT			GDARD					**10**
8/32/P/D/400	**KPA 8/ KFA 32: Local Economic Development & Capacity Building**	AGRICULTURAL SCHOOL	P		Dept of Educ.					**12**
4/17/CP/CS/	**KPA 4/KFA 17: Systems and technology**	Broadband	CP		Telkom					**All**
6/27/A/P/540	**KPA 6/ KFA 27: Municipal and public facilities (Incl. Sport & Recreation)**	UPGRADE MEYERTON TAXI RANK	CP		SDM					**9**

ANNEXURE B: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

MIDVAAL
LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK



FINAL REPORT

MAY
2018

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

LEGAL AND POLICY CONTEXT

This document comprises the 2017 Midvaal Spatial Development Framework which was reviewed as part of the 2017/18 Midvaal IDP review process in terms of the provisions of the Municipal Systems Act. The Midvaal Spatial Development Framework was also compiled to comply with the content requirements for a Municipal Spatial Development Framework as defined in Section 21 (a) to (p) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA).

The Midvaal SDF should also be read (where applicable) in conjunction with the following development policies and more detailed local/ precinct plans for specific areas within the municipal area:

- Vaal Dam/ Vaal Marina Development Guidelines
- Accommodation Policy
- Midvaal Nodal Policy
- Midvaal Density Policy
- Midvaal Economic Analysis
- Midvaal Migration Plan
- Strategic Development Plan for R59 Corridor
- R59 Urban Design Framework
- De Deur Precinct Plan
- Walkerville Precinct Plan
- Doornkuil Precinct Plan
- Tedderfield Precinct Plan
- Elandsfontein Precinct Plan
- Sicelo Precinct Plan
- Central Business District Precinct Plan
- Waterval Precinct Plan

SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS: KEY FEATURES

The following is a brief summary of some of the key features and structuring elements identified from the situational analysis:

- The study area has strong regional linkages to major economic cores like Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and the Vereeniging-Vanderbijlpark complex. These include routes R59 and R82, and the Vereeniging-Germiston railway line.
- Midvaal is predominantly rural, with urban development predominantly consolidated along routes R59 and R82 in the north-western parts of the municipal area.

- Meyerton is the highest order town in the area with a relatively large business and residential component. Smaller settlements and agricultural holdings in the surrounds act as service centres to the surrounding local communities.
- The local population is relatively well educated, and unemployment levels are low compared with provincial and national averages.
- The strongest economic drivers in Midvaal are: Manufacturing (29.5%), Financial and Business Services (18.5%), Trade (14.5%), and General Government Services (9.4%). There are indications that the Manufacturing sector is declining; there is thus a need to diversify the Midvaal economy.
- The urban areas and agricultural holdings exhibit the highest population growth rates.
- The official backlog with regards to informal settlements and backyard units (according to Census 2011) was determined to be 5546.
- The population is projected to grow between 3288 and 4681 people per annum for the next six (6) years. The related projected household growth is between 1034 and 1472 housing units per annum.
- The total housing supply of existing housing projects is calculated at 23 825 units comprising 8858 middle and high income units and 14 994 subsidised units which is sufficient to meet current and projected demand beyond the year 2020.

SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

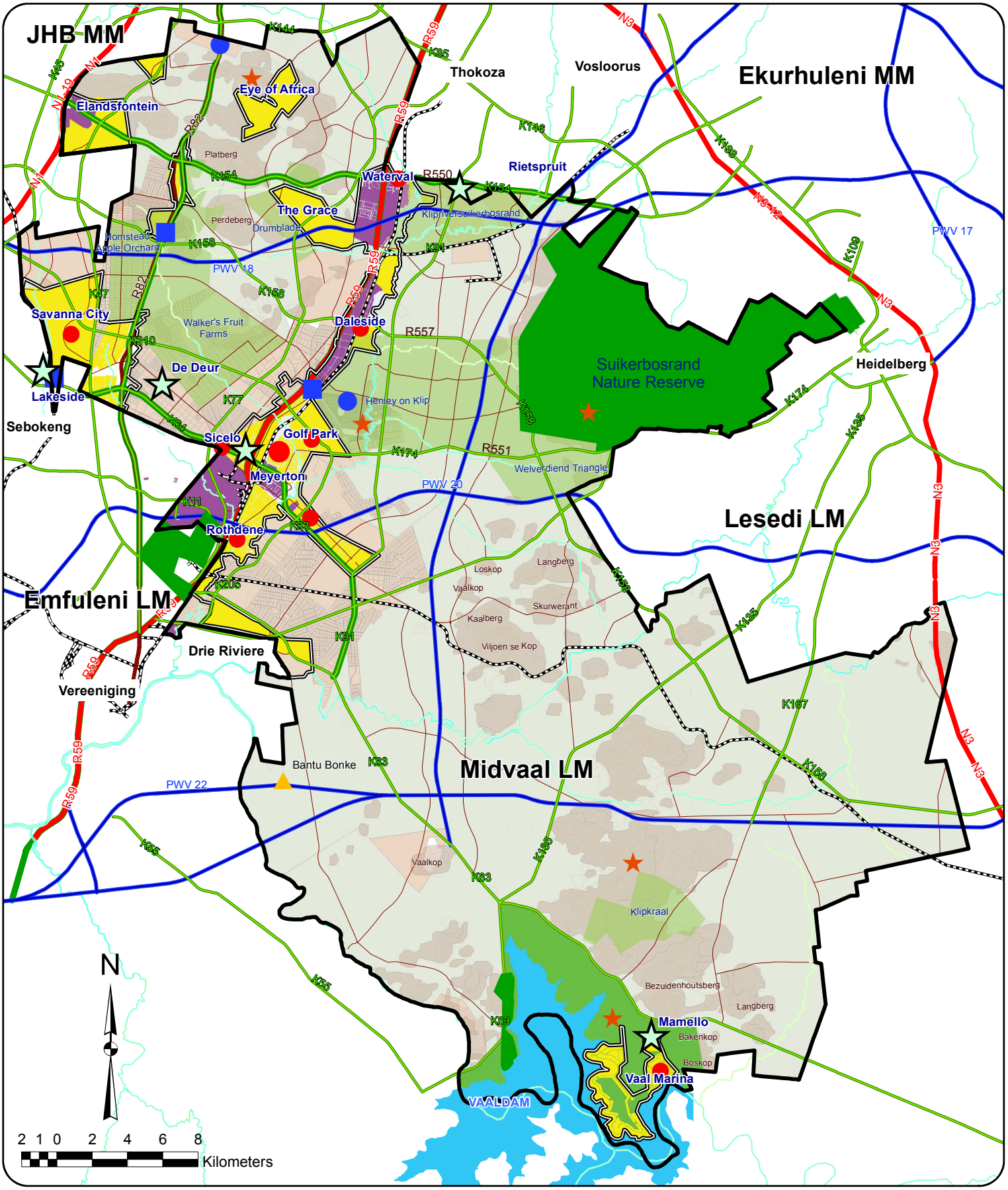
The Midvaal SDF (see Figure 1 overleaf) is based on a number of Development Principles associated with the various functional and structuring elements identified within the Midvaal area. These Principles form the individual layers which the SDF comprises, and these are incrementally consolidated to form one Integrated Spatial Development Framework for the Midvaal area.

The ten Development Principles (and associated themes) are summarised below:

- **Environmental Management**: To protect and actively manage the natural environmental resources in the Midvaal Municipal Area in order to ensure a sustainable equilibrium between agricultural, tourism, industrial/ manufacturing and mining activities, as well as urbanisation pressures in the area.
- **Agricultural Production**: To facilitate and enhance agricultural production in the municipal area by actively protecting all land earmarked for agricultural purposes, and to target agricultural holdings for innovative small scale farming and agro processing.
- **Tourism Promotion**: To promote tourism development through the active utilization of tourism resources available like the Vaal Dam, the Ridges Precincts, and the Nature Reserves in the area.
- **Corridor Development**: To pre-actively plan, design and facilitate the establishment of a Development Corridor along the R59 freeway.

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK - COMPOSITE

Midvaal SDF 2018/2019



Legend

- Economic Development Centres
- Railway Stations
- Rural Node
- Neighbourhood Node
- Core Area
- MPCC
- Agri Village
- Tourism Precincts
- Proposed PWV Roads 2010
- Proposed K Routes 2010
- Rivers
- R82 Road
- Railway Line
- Existing Main Roads
- Secondary Roads Existing
- Priority Regional Network
- 20m Contours
- Urban Development Boundary
- Midvaal Boundary
- River Buffers
- Nature Reserves
- Conservancies
- Industrial-Commercial
- Residential
- Vaal Dam
- Tourism
- Ridges
- Agricultural Holdings
- R59 Corridor
- Agriculture

A24

- **Nodal Development (Economic and Social Facilities)**: To facilitate the development of a hierarchy of sustainable Activity Nodes in partnership with stakeholders to ensure equitable access to social infrastructure, and to promote Local Economic Development in the urban and rural parts of the municipality.
- **Movement Network**: To capitalise on the strategic location of the municipality by way of regional and provincial linkages, and to establish an internal movement network comprising a hierarchy of roads which include a comprehensive public transport network and services.
- **Industrial, Commercial, Mining Activity**: To promote the development of a diverse range of industrial, commercial and mining activities in the Midvaal area through partnerships with the private sector, and with specific focus along the R59 Corridor and at the designated nodal points.
- **Human Settlement Development**: To provide for a wide range of bonded and subsidised housing typologies and tenure alternatives within clearly defined Strategic Development Areas, and to continuously manage residential densification by way of the Midvaal Density Policy.
- **Compact City**: To delineate an Urban Development Boundary to encourage consolidated urban development and to protect high potential agricultural land and sensitive environments.
- **Targeted Engineering Infrastructure Investment**: To prioritise the bulk of short to medium term upgrading/provision of engineering services to nodal areas within the Urban Development Boundary.

KEY PERFORMANCE AREA ALIGNMENT

The MLM Performance Framework is composed of Key Performance Areas (KPA's) which are the areas of focus required for the Municipality to achieve its strategic objectives. MLM has developed eight KPA's, the definitions of which are presented below:

KPA	Definition
KPA 1: Good Governance and Public Participation	To promote increased participation and improved communication with all key internal and external stakeholders
KPA 2: Safety and Environment	To create a sustainable environment safe from harm
KPA 3: Social and Community Development	To create and environment focussed on uplifting the youth, the poor and the most vulnerable
KPA 4: Institutional Transformation	To transform and align the people, processes and systems of the municipality to achieve its objectives
KPA 5: Financial Sustainability	To improve the financial sustainability and capacity of the municipality, whilst adhering to statutory requirements
KPA 6: Physical Infrastructure and Energy Efficiency	To ensure efficient infrastructure and energy supply that will improve the quality of life of the community
KPA 7: Services and Customer Care	To deliver inclusive and excellent services to the community
KPA 8: Economic Growth and Development	Increasing the GDP of the local municipality and improving the economic and social well-being of its people

The SDF review process seeked to align with the KPA's (where possible) and specifically contributes to achieving the following:

Sustainable Environment: All critical and high biodiversity areas and high potential agricultural land are protected from urbanisation by way of the implementation of an urban development boundary.

Social and Community Development: Nodal points have been identified at optional locations for the provision of social facilities and services which would enhance the livelihood of vulnerable communities. Priority areas have also been identified for the delivery of housing to these communities and the road network is designed to ensure easy access to services and job opportunities.

Financial Sustainability: The urban development boundary demarcates priority areas where urban development will be accommodated over the next few years. This ensures that all land within the boundary is optimally utilised through processes of infill development and densification which also makes the provision of engineering services more cost efficient. This will enhance the capacity of the MLM to provide services in priority areas (Spatial Targeting).

Infrastructure and Energy Efficiency: The Urban Development Boundary is a Growth Management Tool which assists the municipality in providing infrastructure in an efficient way (incremental upgrading and expansion).

Economic Growth and Development: The Midvaal SDF identified a number of Development Nodes and the R59 Development Corridor which will form the backbone to future economic development in the municipal area.

Precinct Plans for the priority nodes and the R59 Development Corridor indicated optimum sites for future Business, Commercial and Industrial development in close proximity to all major residential areas in the MLM.

The MLM SDF also identified the preferred location for future Agri-Hub development (to provide more residents access to the formal economy), and all high potential agricultural land is reserved for exclusive agricultural use.

Several strategically located areas for enhanced tourism development have also been identified.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1 INTRODUCTION 5

1.1 BACKGROUND 5
1.2 SPLUMA PRINCIPLES 6
1.3 PREPARATION AND CONTENTS OF SDF 7

2 STUDY OBJECTIVES, METHODOLOGY AND REPORT STRUCTURE 9

2.1 STUDY OBJECTIVES 9
2.2 METHODOLOGY 9
2.3 REPORT STRUCTURE 10

3 VISION AND KPI ALIGNMENT 10

4 NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL POLICY CONTEXT AND DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES 12

4.1 NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN (NDP, 2011) 12
4.2 MEDIUM TERM STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK 13
4.3 THE INDUSTRIAL POLICY ACTION PLAN (IPAP) 14
4.4 NATIONAL COMPREHENSIVE RURAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME (CRDP, 2009) 15
4.5 GAUTENG CITY REGION (GCR) 17
4.6 GAUTENG TMR PROGRAMME 17
4.7 GAUTENG INTEGRATED URBAN DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (IUDF) 18
4.8 GAUTENG PROVINCIAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2030 19
4.9 GAUTENG 25-YEAR INTEGRATED TRANSPORT MASTER PLAN (GITMP25, 2013) 20
4.10 SEDIBENG DISTRICT REGIONAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (RSDF) 21
4.11 NEIGHBOURING MUNICIPALITIES' SDFS 23
4.12 CONCLUSIVE SUMMARY 24

5 SPATIAL ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS 27

5.1 REGIONAL CONTEXT: SEDIBENG DISTRICT 27
5.2 INSTITUTIONAL CONTEXT 28
5.2.1 WARDS AND REGIONS 28
5.2.2 LAND USE MANAGEMENT 28
5.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC PROFILE, LOCAL MIGRATION PATTERNS AND POPULATION PROJECTIONS 29
5.3.1 SOCIO-ECONOMIC PROFILE 29
5.3.2 MIDVAAL MIGRATION PATTERNS 32
5.3.3 POPULATION PROJECTIONS 34

5.4 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES 36
5.4.1 HYDROLOGY AND TOPOGRAPHY 36
5.4.2 GEOLOGY 36
5.4.3 AGRICULTURAL POTENTIAL 36
5.4.4 NATURE RESERVES AND CONSERVANCIES 36
5.4.5 BIODIVERSITY 37
5.4.6 GAUTENG PROVINCIAL EMF GUIDELINES 37
5.5 MUNICIPAL SPATIAL STRUCTURE 40
5.5.1 LAND USE COMPOSITION AND DISTRIBUTION 40
5.5.2 TRANSPORT NETWORK 43
5.6 HOUSING PROFILE 45
5.6.1 DWELLING TYPE 45
5.6.2 HOUSING DEMAND 46
5.6.3 HOUSING PROJECTS IN PROCESS (SUPPLY) 47
5.7 COMMUNITY FACILITIES 50
5.8 ENGINEERING SERVICES 52
5.8.1 WATER AND SANITATION 52
5.8.2 ELECTRICITY 57
5.8.3 SOLID WASTE 57
5.9 ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT POTENTIAL 58
5.9.1 MIDVAAL MACRO ECONOMY 58
5.9.2 MIDVAAL LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT (LED) STRATEGY 59
5.10 SYNTHESIS AND CONCLUSIVE SUMMARY 61

6 SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 64

7 IMPLEMENTATION 91

7.1 IMPLEMENTATION MONITORING AND EVALUATION GUIDELINES 91
7.2 CAPITAL INVESTMENT FRAMEWORK AND IMPLEMENTATION PROGRAMME 93
7.3 ALIGNMENT WITH MIDVAAL LUMS 97
7.4 CONCLUSION: ALIGNMENT WITH SPLUMA PRINCIPLES 97

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: National Development Plan 2030
Figure 2: CRDP Concept
Figure 3: Gauteng Spatial Development Framework
Figure 4: GITMP25: 2037 Road Network
Figure 5: Sedibeng DM Spatial Concept
Figure 6: Emfuleni SDF 2017
Figure 7: Lesedi Spatial Development Framework
Figures 8a and b: CoJ Spatial Development Framework
Figure 9: Regional Context
Figure 10a: Gauteng Formal Workers (2010)
Figure 10b: Gauteng SDF Approach (2037)
Figure 11: Institutional Context
Figure 12: Population Dynamics (2001 to 2011)
Figure 13: Topography, Hydrology, Dolomite
Figure 14: High Potential Agriculture
Figure 15: Protected Areas
Figure 16: Biodiversity
Figure 17: Gauteng EMF
Figure 18: Spatial Structure, Land Use and Road Network
Figure 19: Sedibeng DM HSP – Midvaal Local Municipality
Figure 20: The Grace Township
Figures 21and 22: Savanna City
Figure 23: Community Facilities
Figure 24a and b: Water Reticulation Network
Figures 25a and b: Sanitation
Figures 26a and b: Electricity
Figure 27.1: Environmental Management Zones
Figure 27.2: Regional Open Space and Dolomite
Figure 28: Agriculture
Figure 29: Tourism
Figure 30: R59 Corridor Development
Figure 31: Hierarchy of Activity Nodes
Figure 32.1: Existing Movement Network
Figure 32.2: Strategic Road Network
Figure 32.3: Priority Public Transport Network
Figure 33: Industrial/ Commercial
Figure 34: Residential
Figure 35: Composite
Figure 36: Water Infrastructure Strategy
Figure 37: Sanitation Infrastructure Strategy
Figure 38: Midvaal LM SDF Implementation Strategy

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Flagship Projects GDS 1 and 2
Table 2: Sedibeng District and Local Municipalities Population: 2011-2016
Table 3: Core Assumptions of Population Growth Scenarios
Table 4: Towns in the MLM Area
Table 5: Agricultural Holdings in the MLM Area
Table 6: MLM Housing Backlog (Census 2011)
Table 7: Status Quo of Approvals and Serviced Sites: Savannah City
Table 8: Subsidised Housing Projects
Table 9: Housing Supply and Demand Summary
Table 10: Community Facilities
Table 11: Percentage Contribution to GVA per Sector per Region, 2006 and 2011
Table 12: Midvaal LM Land Use Budget, 2020
Table 13: Twenty Year Demand Forecast Space Demand (Baseline Scenario)
Table 14: Typical Retail Centre Classification
Table 15: SDF Related Capital Investment Programme

LIST OF DIAGRAMS

Diagram 1: Highest Level of Education (population segment aged 20 years and older)
Diagram 2: Average Annual Household Income of MLM compared with Gauteng, 2014
Diagram 3: Midvaal LSM Profile, 2011
Diagram 4: Total population growth per scenario between 2014 and 2020
Diagram 5: Total household growth per scenario between 2014 and 2020
Diagram 6: Dwelling Type – Midvaal LM (2011 vs 2016)

LIST OF ACRONYMS

CBD	-	Central Business District
CIF	-	Capital Investment Framework
COGTA	-	Department of Cooperate Governance and Traditional Affairs
CRDP	-	Comprehensive Rural Development Programme
DFA	-	Development Facilitation Act
DIDS	-	District Industrial Development Strategy
DITP	-	District Integrated Transport Plan
DM	-	District Municipality
DMA	-	Department of Mineral Affairs
DRDLR	-	Department of Rural Development and Land Reform
DTI	-	Department of Trade and Industry
EMF	-	Environmental Management Framework
EMP	-	Environmental Management Plan
EPWP	-	Expanded Public Works Programme
ESKOM	-	Electricity Supply Commission (ESCOM)
GDP	-	Gross Domestic Product
GDRP	-	Gross Domestic Regional Product
GLA	-	Gross Leasable Area
GVA	-	Gross Value Added
ICC	-	International Convention Centre
IDP	-	Integrated Development Plan
IGR	-	Inter Government Relations
KM	-	Kilometres
LED	-	Local Economic Development
LM	-	Local Municipality
LSDF	-	Local Spatial Development Framework
LUMS	-	Land Use Management Systems
MLL	-	Minimum Living Level
MLM	-	Midvaal Local Municipality
MPCC	-	Multi-Purpose Community Centre
MSA	-	Municipal System Act
NATMAP	-	National Transportation Master Plan
NDP	-	National Development Plan
NR	-	Nature Reserve
NSDP	-	National Spatial Development Perspective
PGDS	-	Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
RDP	-	Rural Development Programme
RIDS	-	Regional Industrial Development Strategy
SANRAL	-	South African National Road Agency
SARCC	-	South African Rail Commuter Corporation
SDF	-	Spatial Development Framework
SMME	-	Small Medium and Micro Enterprises
SPLUMA	-	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act
WMAs	-	Water Management Areas
WWTWs	-	Waste Water Treatment Works

REVIEW OF MIDVAAL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (SDF)

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Background

In terms of Chapter 5 of the Municipal Systems Act which was promulgated in 2000, each local authority in South Africa is required to compile an Integrated Development Plan for its area of jurisdiction. In Section 26 of the Municipal Systems Act it is furthermore stated that the core components of an Integrated Development Plan are the following:

a) the **municipal council's vision** for the long term development of the municipality with special emphasis on the municipality's most critical development and internal transformation needs;
b) an **assessment of the existing level of development** in the municipality, which must include an identification of communities which do not have access to basic municipal services;
c) the **council's development priorities and objectives** for its elected term, including its local economic development aims and its internal transformation needs;
d) the **council's development strategies** which must be aligned with any national or provincial sectoral plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation;
e) a **spatial development framework** which must include the provision of basic guidelines for a land use management system for the municipality;
f) the **council's operational strategies**;
g) applicable **disaster management plans**;
h) a **financial plan**, which must include a budget projection for at least the next three years; and
i) the **key performance indicators and performance targets** determined.

It is evident from the above (paragraph (e)), that the formulation of a Spatial Development Framework is a key component of an IDP by law. Midvaal Local Municipality responded to this legislative requirement by formulating a Spatial Development Framework in 2010/11 as part of its IDP, and it was reviewed again during 2014. The 2014 Midvaal SDF will now be reviewed in line with the provisions of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (SPLUMA) and in order to cater for changing development dynamics in the Midvaal Municipal area since 2014.

1.2 SPLUMA Principles

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (2013) puts forward principles to influence spatial planning, land use management and land development. It also provides for national and regional land use frameworks as well as provincial and municipal frameworks, implying that a package of plans will be undertaken from national to municipal level to direct land use management, while providing for uniform regulation of land use management.

The general principles endorsed by SPLUMA is that spatial planning, land use management and land development must promote and enhance Spatial Justice, Spatial Sustainability; Efficiency; Spatial Resilience, and Good Administration as summarised below:

Spatial Justice	
(i)	past spatial and other development imbalances must be redressed through improved access to and use of land;
(ii)	spatial development frameworks and policies at all spheres of government must address the inclusion of persons and areas that were previously excluded, with an emphasis on informal settlements, former homeland areas and areas characterised by widespread poverty and deprivation;
(iii)	spatial planning mechanisms, including land use schemes, must incorporate provisions that enable redress in access to land by disadvantaged communities and persons;
(iv)	must include all areas of a municipality and specifically include provisions that are flexible and appropriate for the management of disadvantaged areas, informal settlements and former homeland areas;
(v)	must include provisions that accommodate access to secure tenure and the incremental upgrading of informal areas; and
(vi)	a Municipal Planning Tribunal considering an application before it, may not be impeded or restricted in the exercise of its discretion solely on the ground that the value of land or property is affected by the outcome of the application.
Sustainability	
(i)	promote land development that is within the fiscal, institutional and administrative means of the Republic;
(ii)	ensure that special consideration is given to the protection of prime and unique agricultural land;
(iii)	uphold consistency of land use measures in accordance with environmental management instruments;
(iv)	promote and stimulate the effective and equitable functioning of land markets;
(v)	consider all current and future costs to all parties for the provision of infrastructure and social services in land developments;
(vi)	promote land development in locations that are sustainable and limit urban sprawl; and

(vii)	result in communities that are viable.
Spatial Efficiency	
(i)	land development optimises the use of existing resources and infrastructure;
(ii)	decision-making procedures are designed to minimise negative financial, social, economic or environmental impacts; and
(iii)	development application procedures are efficient and streamlined.
Spatial Resilience	
(i)	Flexibility in spatial plans, policies and land use management systems are accommodated to ensure sustainable livelihoods in communities most likely to suffer the impacts of economic and environmental shocks.
Good Administration	
(i)	all spheres of government ensure an integrated approach to land use and land development that is guided by the spatial planning and land use management systems as embodied in this Act;
(ii)	all government departments must provide their sector inputs and comply with any other prescribed requirements during the preparation or amendment of spatial development frameworks;
(iii)	the requirements of any law relating to land development and land use are met timeously;
(iv)	the preparation and amendment of spatial plans, policies, land use schemes as well as procedures for development applications, include transparent processes of public participation that afford all parties the opportunity to provide inputs on matters affecting them; and
(v)	policies, legislation and procedures must be clearly set in order to inform and empower members of the public.

1.3 Preparation and Contents of SDF

As far as the compilation methodology and minimum content of a Spatial Development Framework are concerned, the SPLUMA stipulates as follow:

Municipal Spatial Development Framework	
Preparation of Municipal Spatial Development Framework	
(1)	The Municipal Council of a municipality must by notice in the *Provincial Gazette* adopt a municipal spatial development framework for the municipality.
(2)	The municipal spatial development framework must be prepared as part of a municipality's integrated development plan in accordance with the provisions of the Municipal Systems Act.
(3)	Before adopting the municipal spatial development framework contemplated in subsection (1) and any proposed amendments to the municipal spatial development framework, the Municipal Council must—

(a)	give notice of the proposed municipal spatial development framework in the *Gazette* and the media;
(b)	invite the public to submit written representations in respect of the proposed municipal spatial development framework to the Municipal Council within 60 days after the publication of the notice referred to in paragraph *(a)*; and
(c)	consider all representations received in respect of the proposed municipal spatial development framework.
Contents of Municipal Spatial Development Framework	
(a)	give effect to the development principles and applicable norms and standards set out in Chapter 2;
(b)	include a written and spatial representation of a five-year spatial development plan for the spatial form of the municipality;
(c)	include a longer term spatial development vision statement for the municipal area which indicates a desired spatial growth and development pattern for the next 10 to 20 years;
d)	identify current and future significant structuring and restructuring elements of the spatial form of the municipality, including development corridors, activity spines and economic nodes where public and private investment will be prioritised and facilitated;
(e)	include population growth estimates for the next five years;
(f)	include estimates of the demand for housing units across different socio-economic categories and the planned location and density of future housing developments;
(g)	include estimates of economic activity and employment trends and locations in the municipal area for the next five years;
(h)	identify, quantify and provide location requirements of engineering infrastructure and services provision for existing and future development needs for the next five years;
(i)	identify the designated areas where a national or provincial inclusionary housing policy may be applicable;
(j)	include a strategic assessment of the environmental pressures and opportunities within the municipal area, including the spatial location of environmental sensitivities, high potential agricultural land and coastal access strips, where applicable;
(k)	identify the designation of areas in the municipality where incremental upgrading approaches to development and regulation will be applicable;
(l)	identify the designation of areas in which— ((i) more detailed local plans must be developed; and (ii) shortened land use development procedures may be applicable and land use schemes may be so amended;
(m)	provide the spatial expression of the coordination, alignment and integration of sectoral policies of all municipal departments;
(n)	determine a capital expenditure framework for the municipality's development programmes, depicted spatially;
(o)	determine the purpose, desired impact and structure of the land use management scheme to

(p)	apply in that municipal area; and include an implementation plan comprising of— (i) sectoral requirements, including budgets and resources for implementation; (ii) necessary amendments to a land use scheme; (iii) specification of institutional arrangements necessary for implementation; (iv) specification of implementation targets, including dates and monitoring indicators; and (v) specification, where necessary, of any arrangements for partnerships in the implementation process.

2 STUDY OBJECTIVES, METHODOLOGY AND REPORT STRUCTURE

2.1 Study Objectives

Primary Objective: The main objective of the project is to develop a Spatial Development Framework for the Midvaal Municipality which will update/ enhance the existing municipal SDF (2014). The new SDF will address spatial, environmental and economic issues confronting the urban and rural areas of the Municipality, and incorporate all new information and plans applicable to the Midvaal area. The SDF will also facilitate implementation of the IDP and all government intentions to fight poverty and facilitate rural development in the rural parts of the Midvaal Municipality.

2.2 Methodology

The study commenced during October 2016 following a presentation on the proposed study objectives, methodology and deliverables to the Project Steering Committee established by the Midvaal Local Municipality.

The months of October and November 2016 were dedicated towards the visioning assessment and analysis of all Status Quo information, and in December 2016 the project team submitted the Vision and Status Quo information (draft Status Quo Report) to the Project Steering Committee. All departments had an opportunity to provide comments and to add to the information available. The Draft Status Quo report was then amended based on the comments and additional information made available.

The next phase entailed the formulation of draft Development Proposals for the MLM SDF based on the information obtained. The Draft SDF Report was submitted to the Municipality and distributed to the various departments and other stakeholders for their comments by early March 2017. The Draft

Report was amended based on the comments received, and the Final Report was delivered to the MLM by early May 2017.

2.3 Report Structure

Section 3 comprises an overview of the Issues identified in the latest Midvaal LM IDP, and highlights the spatial implications thereof before linking this to the Vision of the SDF.

Section 4 represents an analysis of the national, provincial, district and local policy environment that form the basis for a normative based spatial planning approach (**Section 4.1**).

Sections 5.1 – 5.9 provide a multi-disciplinary analysis of the current situation regarding the regional and local context of the MLM area. From this situational analysis a list of development opportunities and constraints were identified and summarised as a Synthesis in Section 5.10 of the document.

Section 6 contains the proposed Spatial Development Framework for the Midvaal Local Municipality, based on a set of Development Objectives with a Spatial Plan and Development Strategy.

Section 7 delineates the Way Forward in terms of an Implementation Programme comprising a list of SDF related Priority Projects earmarked for future Implementation in the MLM area.

3 VISION AND KPI ALIGNMENT

The **Vision** for the Midvaal Local Municipality reads as follow:

"To inclusively serve the needs of our community".

Mission

The Midvaal Local Municipality will execute its vision through the following:

1. Adopting a **mind-set of innovation** to revolutionise the way we operate;
2. **Leveraging partnerships** to realise our full potential;
3. **Driving sustainability** within the local ecosystem;
4. **Growing the economy** in the Midvaal LM, premised on incubating entrepreneurship, socio-economic growth and environmental responsibility;
5. Providing **excellent and standardised service delivery** for all;
6. Prioritizing the **upliftment of our youth**;
7. Being **ethical and proactive** local municipality;
8. Elevating the Midvaal LM to be the **best and most attractive municipality** in the country.

Performance Framework

The MLM Performance Framework is composed of Key Performance Areas (KPA's) which are the areas of focus required for the Municipality to achieve its strategic objectives. MLM has developed eight KPA's, the definitions of which are presented below:

KPA	Definition
KPA 1: Good Governance and Public Participation	To promote increased participation and improved communication with all key internal and external stakeholders
KPA 2: Safety and Environment	To create a sustainable environment safe from harm
KPA 3: Social and Community Development	To create and environment focussed on uplifting the youth, the poor and the most vulnerable
KPA 4: Institutional Transformation	To transform and align the people, processes and systems of the municipality to achieve its objectives
KPA 5: Financial Sustainability	To improve the financial sustainability and capacity of the municipality, whilst adhering to statutory requirements
KPA 6: Physical Infrastructure and Energy Efficiency	To ensure efficient infrastructure and energy supply that will improve the quality of life of the community
KPA 7: Services and Customer Care	To deliver inclusive and excellent services to the community
KPA 8: Economic Growth and Development	Increasing the GDP of the local municipality and improving the economic and social well-being of its people

The SDF review process seeked to align with the KPA's (where possible) and specifically contributes to achieving the following:

Sustainable Environment: All critical and high biodiversity areas and high potential agricultural land are protected from urbanisation by way of the implementation of an urban development boundary.

Social and Community Development: Nodal points have been identified at optional locations for the provision of social facilities and services which would enhance the livelihood of vulnerable communities. Priority areas have also been identified for the delivery of housing to these communities and the road network is designed to ensure easy access to services and job opportunities.

Financial Sustainability: The urban development boundary demarcates priority areas where urban development will be accommodated over the next few years. This ensures that all land within the boundary is optimally utilised through processes of infill development and densification which also makes the provision of engineering services more cost efficient. This will enhance the capacity of the MLM to provide services in priority areas (Spatial Targeting).

Infrastructure and Energy Efficiency: The Urban Development Boundary is a Growth Management Tool which assists the municipality in providing infrastructure in an efficient way (incremental upgrading and expansion).

Economic Growth and Development: The Midvaal SDF identified a number of Development Nodes and the R59 Development Corridor which will form the backbone to future economic development in the municipal area.

Precinct Plans for the priority nodes and the R59 Development Corridor indicated optimum sites for future Business, Commercial and Industrial development in close proximity to all major residential areas in the MLM.

The MLM SDF also identified the preferred location for future Agri-Hub development (to provide more residents access to the formal economy), and all high potential agricultural land is reserved for exclusive agricultural use.

Several strategically located areas for enhanced tourism development have also been identified.

4 NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL POLICY CONTEXT AND DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES

Development in South Africa (and by implication the Midvaal Municipality) is broadly guided and directed by a wide range of legislation. Some legislation is discipline specific e.g. housing, transport and environment, while others are more generic in nature, focusing on comprehensive development processes, alignment of multi-sectoral planning processes and proposals, and the legal requirements pertaining to contents of such plans compiled.

The following is a brief summary of national and provincial policy guidelines which are applicable to the Midvaal LM and which need to be adhered to in the reviewed Midvaal SDF:

4.1 National Development Plan (NDP, 2011)

The **National Development Plan: Vision for 2030** reports that in urban areas in-migration, especially by the young and poor, increases pressure on services and transport, complicated by apartheid-fragmented geography. Economic growth has been slower than the demand for employment. In particular accommodation faces challenges, including financing for lower end housing and its incorporation into the market, and slow progress on rental accommodation (CRU and Social Housing) and upgrading of informal settlements.

In urban areas, key NDP recommendations include:

- Upgrading all informal settlements on suitable, well-located land by 2030;
- Increased urban densities to reduce sprawl and costs;

- Investments to shift jobs and investment to the urban townships on the peripheries;
- Substantial investments in safe, reliable and affordable public transport and better co-ordination among the various modes;
- A comprehensive review of the grant and subsidy regime for housing to ensure diversity in product and finance options and spatial mix;
- A focused strategy on the housing gap market, involving banks, subsidies and employer housing schemes;
- The development of spatial compacts.

In the rural areas, the National Development Plan reports that general productivity has been declining and outmigration to cities and towns has been accelerating. The rural landscape is characterised by rural densification without associated infrastructure and governance arrangements, ill located land-reform initiatives from the perspective of viable farming, or access to markets, and many of these initiatives are in conflict with other imperatives such as mining or preserving biodiversity.

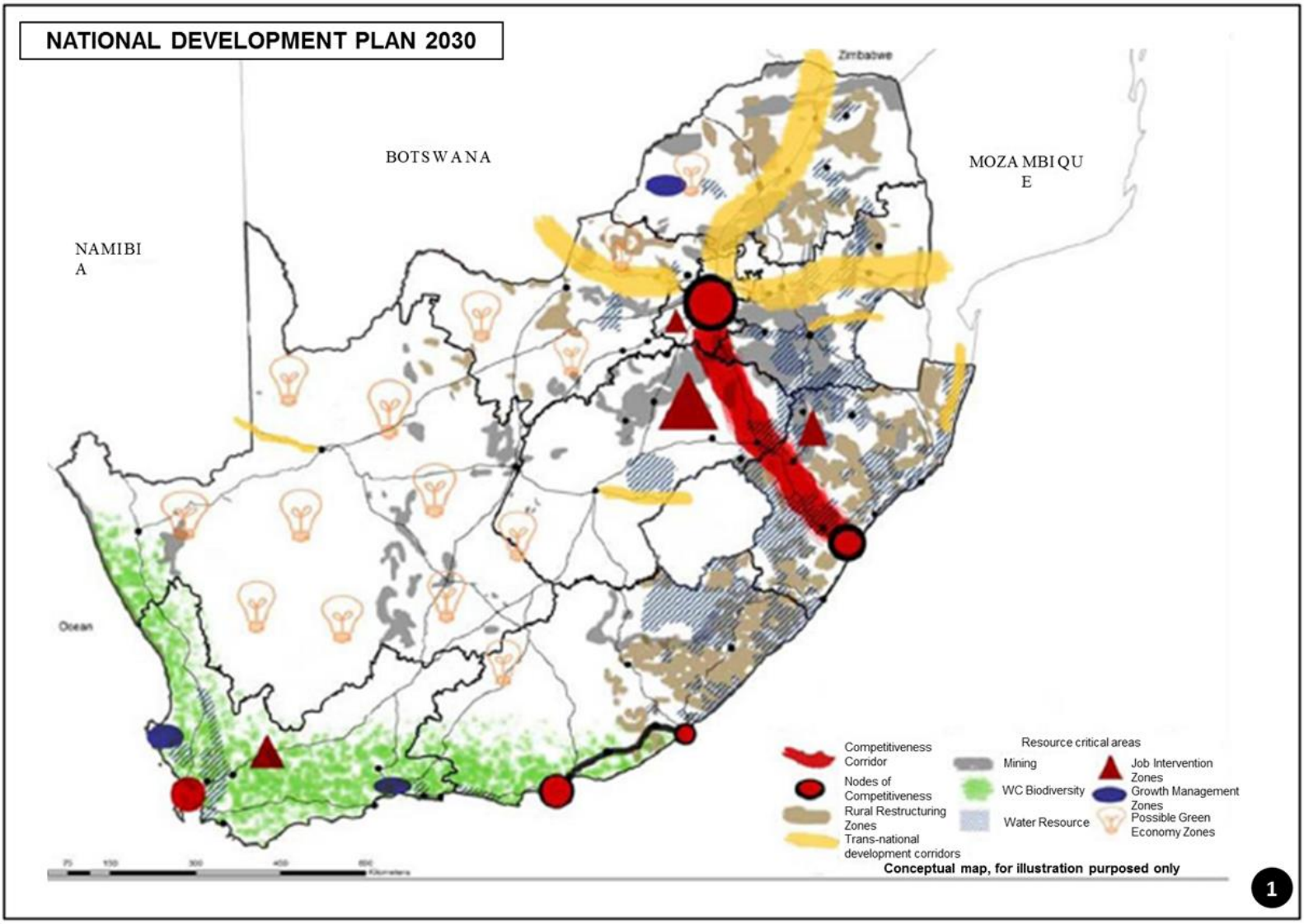
The NDP suggest that rural interventions will differentiate less dense marginal areas primarily needing appropriate service provision from more viable and denser areas with transport and market access, including:

- Innovative, targeted and better co-ordinated provision of infrastructure (including ICTs) and services provision supported by the spatial consolidation of rural settlements to enhance densities and associated service delivery;
- Prioritising agricultural and rural development along mobility corridors, to build local economies and contribute to national food security;
- Identification of non-agricultural opportunities such as tourism and mining, especially with a “green” focus’;
- Promoting small-town development as nodes of rural development;
- Mechanisms to make land markets work more effectively for the poor, especially women.

The national spatial development interventions that emanated from the NDP are illustrated on **Figure 1**. Those relevant to Midvaal are namely that Gauteng was identified as a national **Node of Competiveness** which strongly associates with the Maputo Development Corridor; and that the southern parts of Gauteng Province were earmarked as a **Job Intervention Zone**.

4.2 Medium Term Strategic Framework

The Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) is Government’s strategic plan for the 2014-2019 electoral term. It has two over-arching strategic themes – radical economic transformation and improving service delivery.



CRDP CONCEPT

AGRARIAN TRANSFORMATION

- Land
- Livestock
- Cropping
- Commodity
- Markets

Agrarian transformation is the rapid fundamental change in the relations of land, livestock, cropping & community.

RURAL DEVELOPMENT AGENCY

RURAL DEVELOPMENT

- Economic infrastructure
- Social Infrastructure
- Public Amenities and Facilities
- ICT infrastructure
- Human Settlements

LAND REFORM

- Land tenure
- Redistribution
- Restitution
- Strategic land reform interventions

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE: SOCIAL COHESION AND DEVELOPMENT

2

To give effect to these two key pillars, the MTSF is structured around fourteen (14) *Priority Outcomes* which cover the focus areas identified in the NDP and Government's electoral mandate as listed below:

- Quality basic education;
- A long and healthy life for all South Africans;
- All people in South Africa are and feel safe;
- Decent employment through inclusive growth;
- A skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path;
- An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network;
- Vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all;
- Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life;
- Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government;
- Protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources;
- Create a better South Africa and contribute to a better Africa and a better world;
- An efficient, effective and development-oriented public service;
- A comprehensive, responsive and sustainable social protection system;
- A diverse, socially cohesive society with a common national identity.

The successful achievement of the above objectives is reliant on Good Administration and co-operative governance among all spheres of government which is Principle 5 of SPLUMA.

4.3 The Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP)

The Industrial Policy Action Plan 2012/13 to 2014/15 or the 'Revised IPAP2' as it has become known builds on the National Industrial Policy Framework (NIPF), IPAP1 (2007/08 IPAP) and IPAP2 (2011/12 IPAP). Successive iterations of IPAP seek to scale up key interventions over a rolling three-year period, with a 10 year outlook on desired economic outcomes.

As a backdrop to IPAP, the NIPF has the following core objectives:

- To facilitate diversification beyond the economy's current reliance on traditional commodities and non-tradable services that require the promotion of value-addition, characterised particularly by the movement into non-traditional tradable goods and services that compete in export markets and against imports;
- To ensure long-term intensification of South Africa's industrialisation process and movement towards a knowledge economy;
- To promote a labour-absorbing industrialisation path, with the emphasis on tradable labour-absorbing goods and services and economic linkages that create employment;
- To promote industrialisation characterised by the increased participation of historically disadvantaged people and marginalised regions in the industrial economy; and

- To contribute towards industrial development in Africa with a strong emphasis on building the continent's productive capacity and secure regional economic integration

Significant achievements in implementing transformative industrial policy actions plans at the sectoral level and the development of stronger transversal platforms set the basis for further strengthening of industrial policy interventions. Special emphasis will be placed on three sectors that are particularly well placed for scaling up through leveraging market growth and associated upgrading of supply capacity and capabilities. These are:

- **"Green" industries**: In particular, the manufacture of components for the 17.8 GW renewable energy generation programme and the production of solar heaters and components, and a range of other goods and services that arise from the requirements of higher energy efficiency in the economy;
- **Agro-processing**: In particular, the expediting of regulatory and support mechanisms to create a large-scale bio-fuels industry, the identification and promotion of export market opportunities to major net food-importing countries; and investment, production development and standards support.
- **Metal fabrication, capital and transport equipment**: Significant opportunities arise from the leveraging of large public procurement in rail and electricity, the provision of associated investment and upgrading support, and exploitation of opportunities arising from mining capital equipment investment in South Africa and on the rest of the continent.

Those key sectors most relevant to Midvaal would be:

- "Green" and energy-saving industries
- Agro-processing, linked to food security and food pricing imperatives
- Creative and cultural industries linked to tourism in the Province
- Business process services
- Electro-technical and ICT

4.4 National Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP, 2009)

The CRDP is aimed at being an effective response to poverty alleviation and food insecurity by maximizing the use and management of natural resources to create "vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities".

The vision of the CRDP is to be achieved through a **three-pronged strategy** based on:

1. A coordinated and integrated broad-based **Agrarian Transformation**;
2. Strategically increasing **Rural Development** through infrastructure investment; and
3. An improved **Land Reform Programme**.

Seeing as Midvaal essentially forms part of the rural hinterland of Gauteng Province, the objectives of each of the three strategic thrusts thought applicable to the formulation of a SDF for Midvaal are as follows (see **Figure 2**):

1. Agrarian Transformation

- Facilitating the establishment of rural and agro-industries, cooperatives, cultural initiatives and vibrant local markets.
- Increased production and sustainable use of natural resources by promoting farming and related value chain development (exploring all possible species for food and economic activity).

2. Rural Development

- Access to community and social infrastructure, especially well-resourced clinics.
- Focusing on the development of new and the rehabilitation of existing infrastructure.
- Improving and developing infrastructure conducive to economic development – e.g. distribution and transportation infrastructure, agricultural infrastructure, water and electricity infrastructure, market and storage infrastructure, retail infrastructure, and telecommunications infrastructure.
- Improving and developing infrastructure conducive to social development – e.g. sanitation infrastructure, health infrastructure, sports and recreation infrastructure, and educational infrastructure (especially ABET centres).

3. Land Reform

- Promoting restitution, tenure reform, and redistribution in a sustainable manner.
- Increased access to land by previously disadvantaged people.
- Establishing Agri-villages for local economic development on farms.
- Up-to-date information pertaining to land claims.
- Providing reliable and efficient property (deeds) registration systems.
- Contributing to economic growth and housing development by providing government and private agents with essential land information in order to engage in planning as well as economic transactions.
- Providing spatial planning information and services to local municipalities and other public or private institutions that may require these services for development purposes.

The entire Gauteng Province is a CRDP focus area. The four priority areas in the Province include Bantu-Bonke in Midvaal, Devon (Lesedi), Hekpoort (West Rand) and Kwa-Sokhulumi (City of Tshwane).

Bantu-Bonke is a hydroponics project in the southern extents of Midvaal which provides jobs for about 20 people. The farm produces cucumber, green pepper, tomato and spinach. The main buyers of their crops are Johannesburg, Pretoria, Klerksdorp, Vereeniging and Springs Fresh Produce markets.

New phases are being planned for Bantu-Bonke, including chicken farming and a piggery, which would involve GDARD purchasing more land around the existing hydroponics farm.

4.5 Gauteng City Region (GCR)

The Gauteng City has a long-term vision of building a Metropolitan System of Governance, realised through working in a seamless way and characterised by high levels of coordination and integrated planning.

The GCR's vision is:

"an integrated city region, characterised by social cohesion and economic inclusion; the leading economy on the continent underpinned by smart, sustainable and social-economic development".

The Sedibeng District in which Midvaal Local Municipality is located, has been identified as the southern development corridor and is expected to contribute to the region through the creation of new industries, economic nodes and cities.

The Development of the GCR is anchored on the Transformation, Modernisation and Re-Industrialisation programme as listed on section 4.6 below.

4.6 Gauteng TMR Programme

The Gauteng Provincial Government administration has adopted ten pillars aimed at radical socio-economic and political transformation towards the modernisation and re-industrialisation of the province's economy. The ten pillars are as follow:

- **Radical economic transformation**: Revitalising township economics and strengthening key economic sectors: Agro Processing, Aquaculture, Hydroponics, Automotive.
- **Decisive spatial transformation**: Focusing on agriculture and agro-processing in Midvaal area.
- **Accelerated social transformation**: Emphasis on Education, Health and Safety.
- **Transformation of the state and governance**: Including establishment of one-stop Thusong Service Centres.

- **Modernisation of the economy**: Focusing on massive expansion of ICT Energy Security, Blue Economy Projects, Water Harvesting.
- **Modernisation of the public service and the state**: Expand access to e-governance.
- **Modernisation of human settlements and urban development**: New Post-Apartheid Cities, Greening, Modernisation (ICT) and Basic Services, Inner City Revitalisation.
- **Modernisation of public transport and other infrastructure**: BRT, Freight Hubs, Aerotropolis.
- **Re-industrialising Gauteng as our country's economic hub**: Focusing on Transport Sector, Health Sector and Agro Processing.
- **Taking a lead in Africa's new industrial revolution**: Gateway to Africa, Intra Africa Trade, BRICS.

4.7 Gauteng Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF)

The main objective of the Gauteng Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF, 2014) is to address the need for integrated urban development focussing on the following four imperatives:

- Economic imperative: High poverty in cities, yet cities and towns can help to create jobs more cost-effectively due to the efficiencies and potential they offer by virtue of their scale, diversity and density of activity and population.
- Inclusion imperative: The need to be more tolerant and supportive of survival strategies of poor households (informality).
- Spatial imperative: Reverse inefficient and exclusionary practices, and spatial segregation in cities and towns.
- Institutional imperative: Establish proper governance systems and strengthen intergovernmental collaboration to effectively manage urban areas.

The Midvaal SDF should be aligned with the above imperatives and the following nine policy levers which emanate from it:

1. Integrated Urban Planning and Management
2. Integrated Transport and Mobility
3. Integrated and Sustainable Human Settlements
4. Integrated Urban Infrastructure
5. Efficient Land Governance and Management
6. Inclusive Economic Development
7. Empowered Active Communities
8. Effective Urban Governance
9. Sustainable Finances

4.8 Gauteng Provincial Spatial Development Framework 2030

The Gauteng Spatial Development Framework 2030 is based on the following six Spatial Objectives:

- **Liveability**: Focus on the creation of settlements in which people live their lives in a way that is worthy of human beings, that enables contentment, personal growth and healthy social interactions.
- **Concentration**:
  - Allow the concentration of (i) opportunities in key nodes and along key 'connectors' and (ii) of public investment in and around these nodes or connectors.
  - Focus on the integration between land use and public transport around nodes and along connectors according to the nature of these two structural elements.
  - Bring more people closer to a greater number of opportunities in the areas of concentration through increased densities, implying a need for affordable and lower income housing as well.
- **Connectivity**: Ensure connectivity between nodes and connectivity from surrounding areas, for example lower density neighbourhoods, major industrial zones, or the rural hinterland, to areas of concentration, which implies a hierarchy of movement routes.
- **Conservation**: Allow for the maintenance of healthy natural environments, ecosystems and biophysical processes which support life and which must be allowed to continue without significant change.
- **Diversity**: Make provision for and allow the development of various types of environment that are linked to the spatial characteristics of that particular geographic location. All areas in the province should not be the same. Different zones would be suitable for different types of development and housing types, which in turn would also be able to accommodate different income groups and lifestyles. The overall design of cities must suit all income groups and lifestyles and offer a multitude of equally accessible and convenient choices (i.e. everyone, depending on their personal preferences and not on the income group they belong to, should be able to choose between urban or suburban lifestyle, high or low density neighbourhood, public or private transport, etc.).
- **Viability**: Maximise residents' access to goods, services and opportunities within a region, and ensure the optimal use of available land, services and facilities in the region in a manner that can be sustained over time.

The Gauteng Spatial Development Framework 2030 is furthermore based on four (4) key spatial development strategies (that engage the six spatial objectives in varying degrees of relevance), namely:

- Building an Integrated Network;
- Capitalising on Proximity;
- Managing Settlement Development and Growth; and
- Creating a Viable and Productive Hinterland.

These four strategies ultimately make up the composite Gauteng Spatial Development Framework 2030 as depicted on **Figure 3**.

From Figure 3 the following are directly relevant to the MLM:

- Incremental development of the strip of land between R82 and N1 that traverses the Midvaal area to the west;
- Consolidation and expansion of the urban footprint along the R59 corridor;
- Proposed infill development between the R59 corridor and the City of Johannesburg to the north;
- The southern extents of Midvaal were identified as one of a number of provincial agricultural hubs;
- Proposed extensive agriculture in the remaining northern extents of the LM;
- Development of the Vaal Marina as a tourism/ cultural node.

4.9 Gauteng 25-Year Integrated Transport Master Plan (GITMP25, 2013)

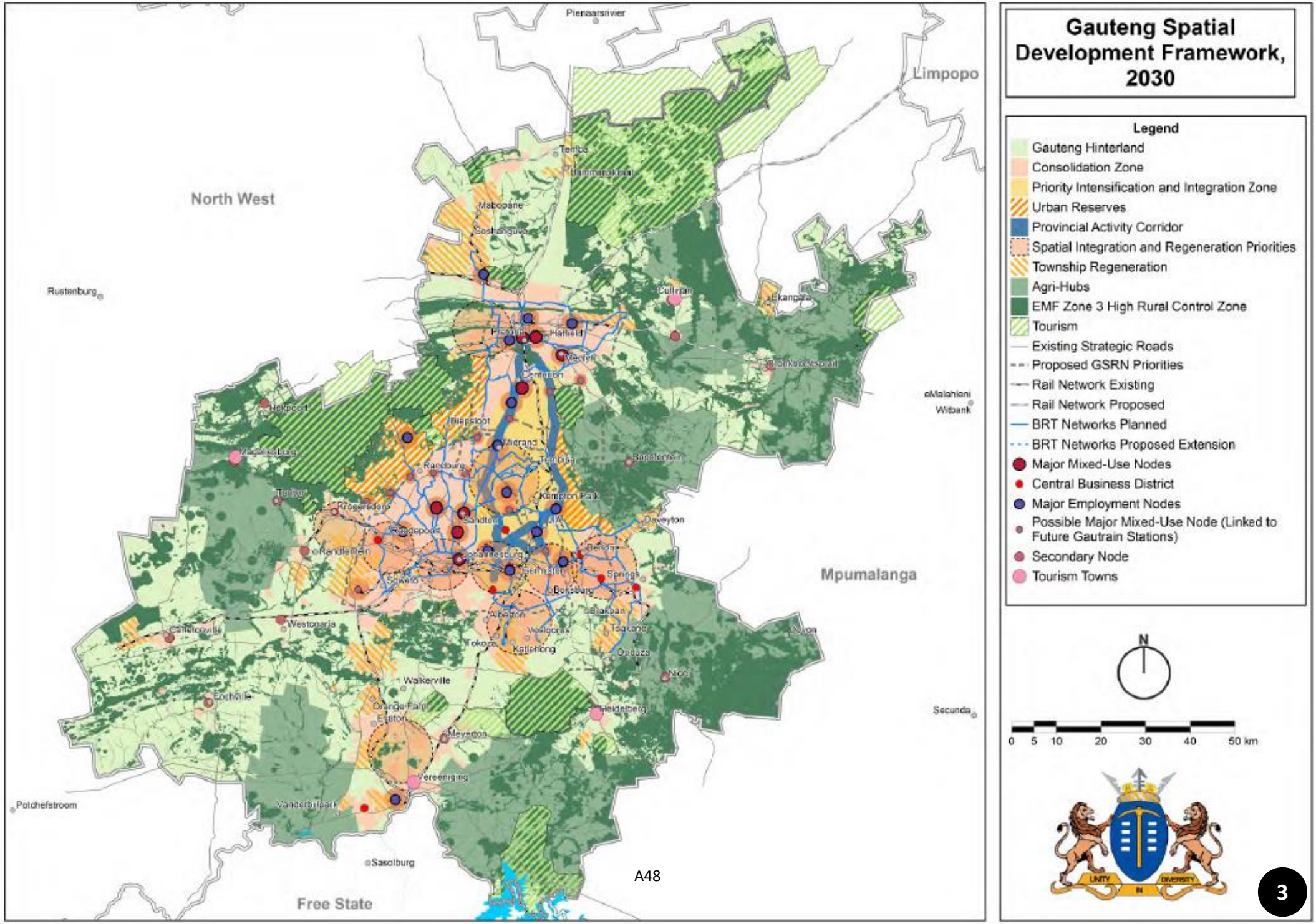
The Gauteng Integrated Transport Master Plan (GITMP25) aims to deliver a **world class and sustainable transport system** that supports Gauteng's economic, social, cultural, and environmental goals. It provides a planning framework which assists government at all three levels to develop a comprehensive transport system over the next 25 years. It further empowers the Gauteng Department of Roads and Transport (GDRT), in collaboration with other spheres of government, to plan, regulate and develop an integrated and efficient transport system for the province that serves the general public interest. It also strives to embody the principles of an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network that prioritises public transport.

The founding **principles** for the GITMP25 are:

- Integration of land use with transport, as well as integration of networks, modes and services;
- Being "smart" by using scarce resources more effectively and application of suitable technology;
- Social inclusion and beneficiation; and
- Promotion of a more sustainable Gauteng City Region (GCR).

GITMP25 is furthermore centered around the following ten interventions of which the first three relate to land use:

INTEGRATED TRANSPORT INTERVENTIONS	
Land Use Development	
1	Subsidised housing provision within urban core areas
2	Facilitating local economic development outside the urban core
3	Land use densification in support of public transport
Strategic Public Transport Network	
4	Reinforcing passenger rail network as the backbone of the system
5	Extending the integrated rapid and road-based public transport networks


Gauteng Spatial Development Framework, 2030
Legend
Gauteng Hinterland
Consolidation Zone
Priority Intensification and Integration Zone
Urban Reserves
Provincial Activity Corridor
Spatial Integration and Regeneration Priorities
Township Regeneration
Agri-Hubs
EMF Zone 3 High Rural Control Zone
Tourism
Existing Strategic Roads
Proposed GSRN Priorities
Rail Network Existing
Rail Network Proposed
BRT Networks Planned
BRT Networks Proposed Extension
Major Mixed-Use Nodes
Central Business District
Major Employment Nodes
Possible Major Mixed-Use Node (Linked to Future Gautrain Stations)
Secondary Node
Tourism Towns
N
0 5 10 20 30 40 50 km
Limpopo
North West
Mpumalanga
Free State
Pienaarsrivier
Rustenburg
Potchefstroom
Sasolburg
Secunda
eMalahleni
Witbank
Soshanguve
Mabopane
Hammanskraal
Cullinan
Ekangala
Hatfield
Centurion
Hekpoort
Magaliesburg
Randburg
Roodepoort
Sandton
Kempton Park
Benoni
Springs
Boksburg
Vereeniging
Vanderbijlpark
Meyerton
Heidelberg
Walkerville
Vestonaria
Carletonville
Eochville
Orange Farm
Evaton
Tokoza
Katlehong
Daveyton
Nigel

A48

6	Capacity building in the transport industry
Freight Transport	
7	Strengthening intermodal freight hubs
Road Transport	
8	Travel demand management
9	Mainstreaming non-motorised transport
10	Continued provincial wide mobility

Key to the GITMP25 is the focus on public transport with the rail system being the backbone of the network (in line with NATMAP). This is in order to enable a shift from private vehicles to reduce congestion, enhance public transport efficiency and promote sustainability of the province as a whole. GITMP25 proposes that public transport be the catalyst towards social integration of society and be applied as such in the Gauteng City Region.

Freight rail and the movement of freight from road to rail is a key departure point, which includes the focus on the development of major rail-based freight logistic hubs, located on the periphery of the core urban areas. This is to reduce extensive heavy vehicle freight traffic moving through core urban areas, taking up road space and adding to congestion. PWV18 is particularly relevant to the study area (refer to **Figure 4**).

Importantly, route K154 forms part of the Ennerdale-Chamdor Corridor/ east-west linkage that is vital to open up the southern parts of the Province and stimulate local economic development. The section up to Klipriver has already been constructed; while the section from Klipriver to Walkerville has been prioritised in the GITMP25. This link will eventually be further extended to a proposed interchange onto the N1 national freeway at Elandsfontein in Midvaal, before extending westward into the City of Joburg MM and up to Chamdor in Mogale City.

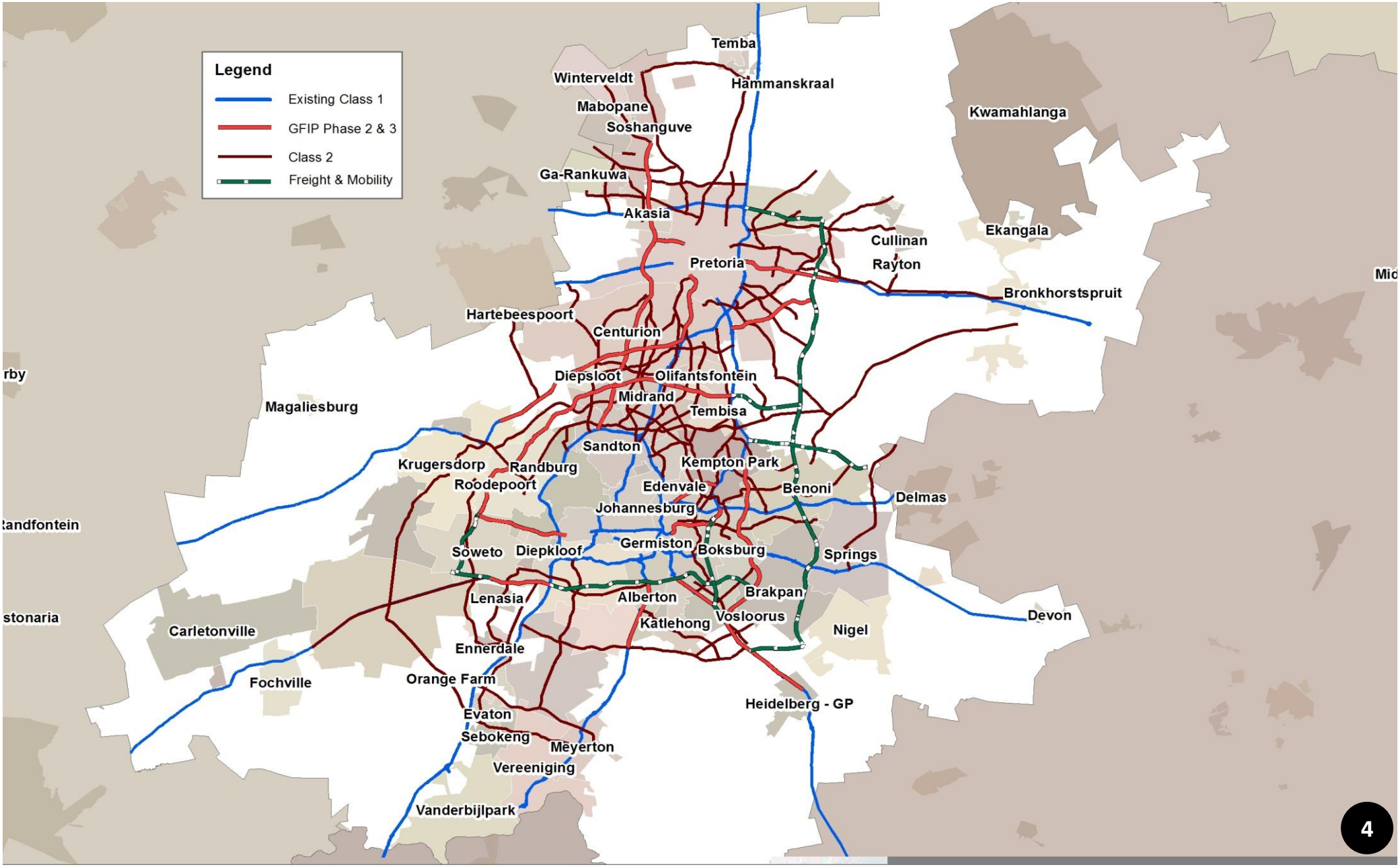
4.10 Sedibeng District Regional Spatial Development Framework (RSDF)

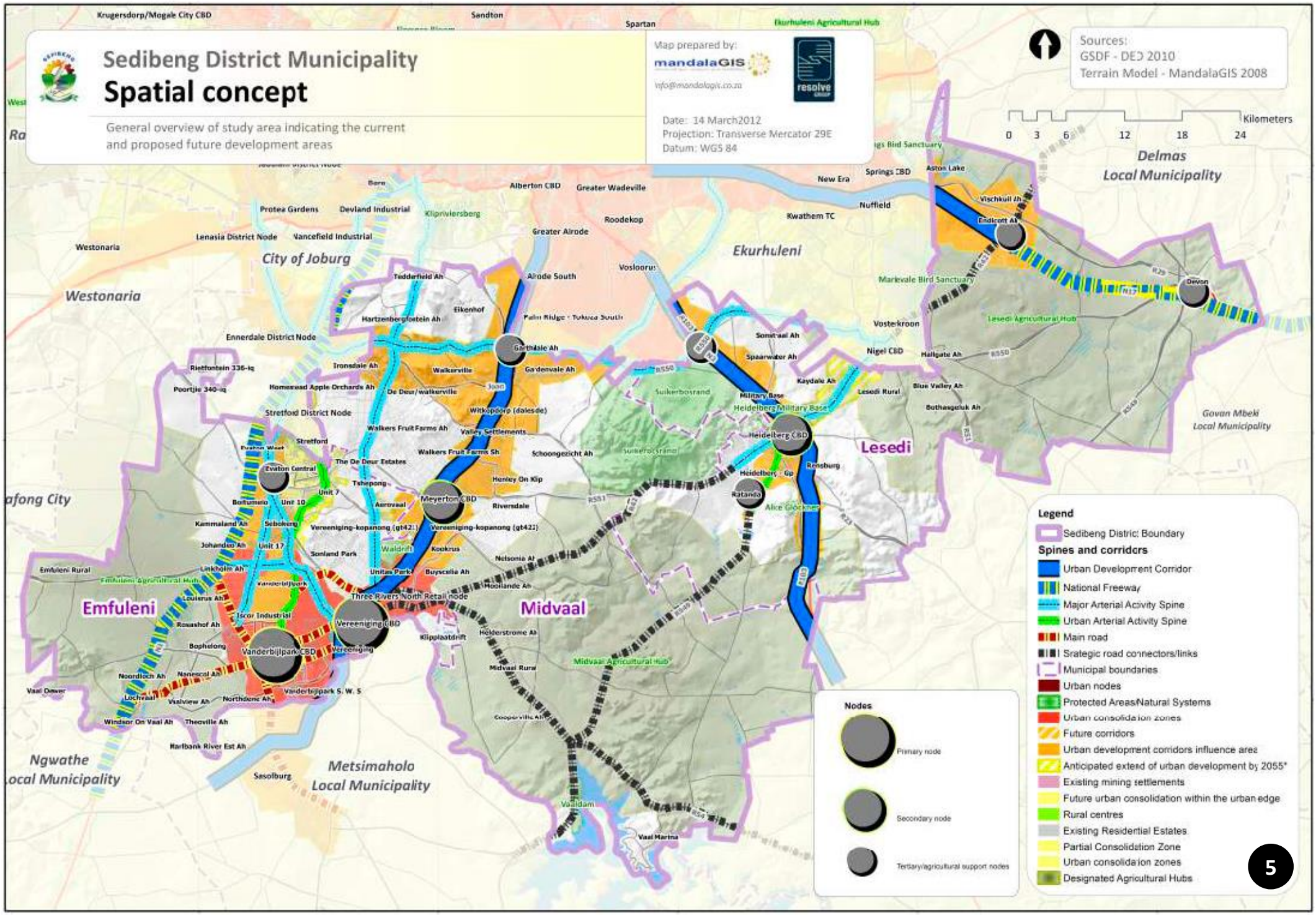
The Sedibeng DM RSDF is a legislative mechanism to address the developmental challenges of the district municipality and to give an overview of the desired spatial form to be achieved in the long term.

The key structuring elements in the Sedibeng District were divided into six (6) elements/ categories and are as follows (also refer to **Figure 5**):

- *Primary Nodes*: Vereeniging and Vanderbijlpark CBDs.
- *Secondary Nodes*: **Meyerton** and Heidelberg
- *Tertiary Nodes*: Vischkuil/ Endicott, Devon/ Mpumelelo, the Nampak/ Everite area, Sebokeng (vicinity of the hospital/ rank) and Evaton (along the Golden Highway).
- *Zone of Opportunity*: At the intersection of N3 and R42 (mixed retail development).

GITMP25: 2037 Road Network




Sedibeng District Municipality
Spatial concept
General overview of study area indicating the current and proposed future development areas
Map prepared by:
mandalaGIS
info@mandalagis.co.za
resolve
Date: 14 March2012
Projection: Transverse Mercator 29E
Datum: WGS 84
Sources:
GSDF - DED 2010
Terrain Model - MandalaGIS 2008
Kilometers
0 3 6 12 18 24
Delmas Local Municipality
Ekurhuleni
City of Joburg
Westonaria
Lesedi
Midvaal
Emfuleni
Ngwathe Local Municipality
Metsimaholo Local Municipality
Govan Mbeki Local Municipality
Krugersdorp/Mogale City CBD
Sandton
Spartan
Ekurhuleni Agricultural Hub
Alberton CBD
Greater Wadeville
Springs CBD
Nigel CBD
Heidelberg CBD
Heidelberg Military Base
Meyerton CBD
Vereeniging CBD
Vanderbijlpark CBD
Three Rivers North Retail node
Midvaal Agricultural Hub
Lesedi Agricultural Hub
Markevale Bird Sanctuary
Legend
Sedibeng District Boundary
Spines and corridors
Urban Development Corridor
National Freeway
Major Arterial Acivity Spine
Urban Arterial Activity Spine
Main road
Srategic road connectors/links
Municipal boundaries
Urban nodes
Protected Areas/Natural Systems
Urban consolidation zones
Future corridors
Urban development corridors influence area
Anticipated extend of urban development by 2055*
Existing mining settlements
Future urban consolidation within the urban edge
Rural centres
Existing Residential Estates
Partial Consolidation Zone
Urban consolidation zones
Designated Agricultural Hubs
Nodes
Primary node
Secondary node
Tertiary/agricultural support nodes
5

- *Development Corridors*: **R59 freeway** (between Meyerton/ Vereeniging), N17 Freeway (intersection N17/R24 and N17 /R550), and N3 Freeway (intersections with R23, R42 and R550).
- *Mobility Corridors*: Route R54 (between Sebokeng and Vereeniging), **Route R82** (between Vereeniging and De Deur) and Route R42.

The Sedibeng District Municipality seeks to address past spatial planning imbalances by bringing services and economic opportunities close to previously disadvantaged areas. This initiative is supported by the proposed consolidation of development in a conurbation including Vanderbijlpark, Vereeniging, Meyerton and Sebokeng (refer to the red on Figure 6b).

Table 1: Midvaal-related flagship projects emanating from the SDM SDF (2014-2017)

Project Title	Description	Strategic Importance of Projects	Implementation Agent	Municipality
Ensure the development of the R59 Corridor	Corridor with well-established road and rail infrastructure. Various developments along the corridor to be promoted and facilitated, especially light industrial and manufacturing. Residential development at higher densities should also be promoted to increase feasibility of public transport.	• Economic growth and diversity • Increased job opportunities • Increased public transport	Private Sector developments, municipality to provide infrastructure	Midvaal Local Municipality
Savannah City	Integrated Housing project with 18 000 households proposed. The first development in SA where township has been linked to financial and urban management model. 20% (3738 houses) of the development (18 691 mixed housing) will be dedicated to low-cost housing.	• Densification in areas close to economic activities • Social inclusion • Create densities to support public transport	A developer driven project by Basil Rad in partnership with Old Mutual.	Midvaal Local Municipality
Klipriver Business Park and Graceview	The home of Heineken Brewery, Pick n Pay will be constructing a distribution centre of 300 000m², currently busy constructing a trailer manufacturing company measuring 30 000m².	• Major investment in area • Consolidation of development corridor and optimal use of engineering services	Private Sector	Midvaal Local Municipality

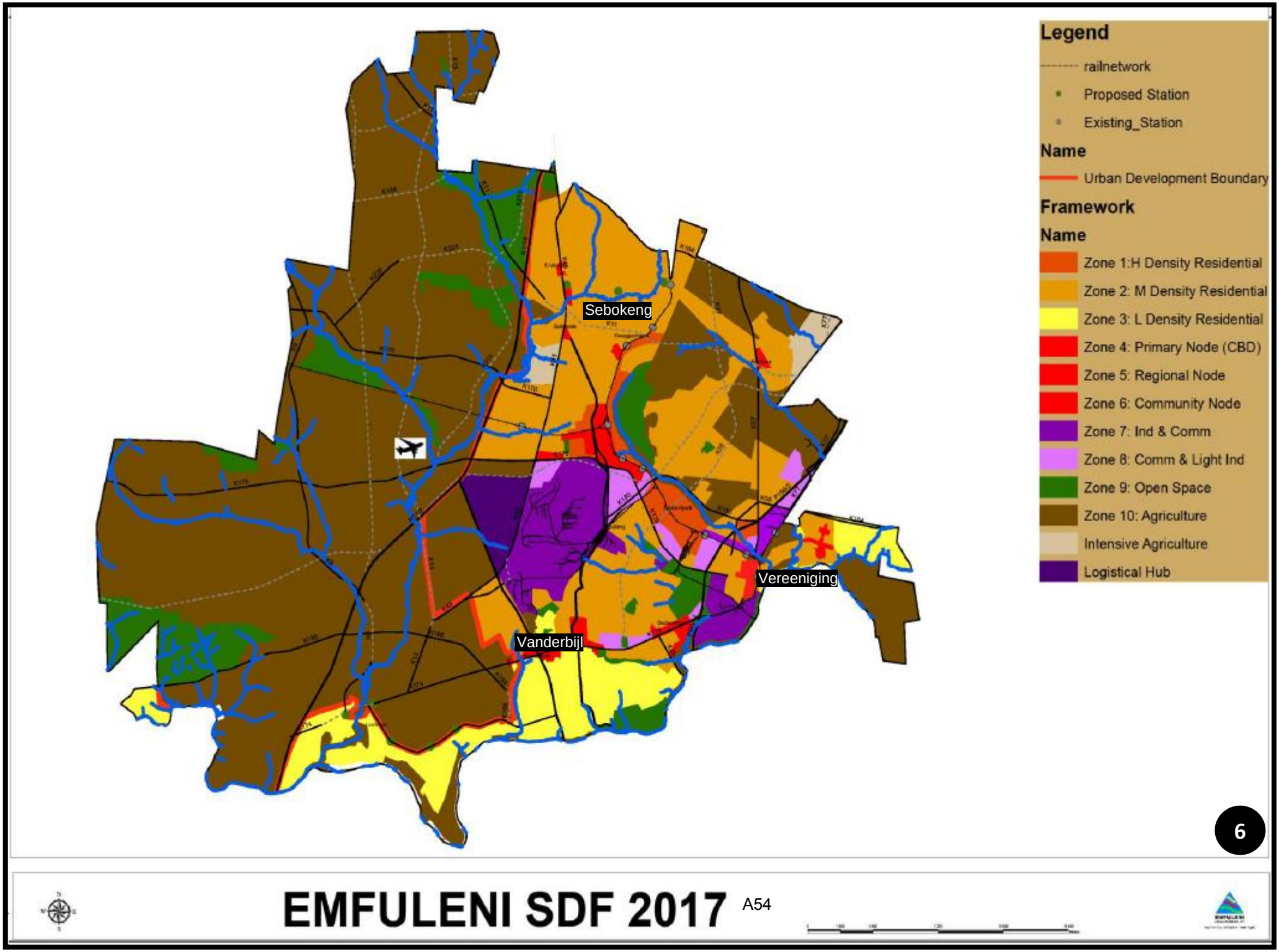
		• Job creation opportunities • Increased rates base		
Sicelo Precinct	Construction of mobility spine roads. Creating safe road crossing intersections. Establishment of informal trading in the area.	• Upgrading/ consolidation of area • Increased accessibility	Public Sector	Midvaal Local Municipality
Meyerton Waste Treatment Works	Due to current capacity constraints sewer network to be upgraded.	• Increased capacity. • Attracting development. • Legal compliance. • Approval of housing development applications.	Public Sector	Midvaal Local Municipality

4.11 Neighbouring Municipalities' SDFs

4.11.1 Emfuleni Local Municipality

The development concept drafted for Emfuleni aimed to strengthen the role of the ELM as the southern anchor of the greater Emfuleni-Johannesburg-Tshwane axis. The ELM Development Framework is illustrated on **Figure 6**. The proposals relevant to the MLM include:

- The following regional linkages were noted as part of the strategic road network:
  - K53 (Golden Highway) and P156/ R59 freeway, which connects Johannesburg and Germiston to the Vanderbijlpark CBD and the Vereeniging CBD respectively;
  - K83, which connects Evaton to Meyerton via the planned Savanna City development;
  - Vereeniging-Meyerton-Germiston freight railway line, utilised for industrial and commercial development.
- Limited commercial/ light industrial development is supported to the north of Vereeniging, bordering onto the MLM.
- Medium density infill development is encouraged between Vereeniging and Sebokeng, some of which might spill over to Midvaal.
- High density residential development was also proposed adjacent to De Deur in the MLM.
- Agriculture and intensive agricultural activities are supported in certain areas along the eastern border of the LM, though the bulk of agricultural activities are consolidated in the west.
- To give effect to the River City Concept, the SDF supports developing the precinct along the Vaal River in the south as a tourism destination.


Legend
railnetwork
Proposed Station
Existing_Station
Name
Urban Development Boundary
Framework
Name
Zone 1:H Density Residential
Zone 2: M Density Residential
Zone 3: L Density Residential
Zone 4: Primary Node (CBD)
Zone 5: Regional Node
Zone 6: Community Node
Zone 7: Ind & Comm
Zone 8: Comm & Light Ind
Zone 9: Open Space
Zone 10: Agriculture
Intensive Agriculture
Logistical Hub
Sebokeng
Vereeniging
Vanderbijl
6
EMFULENI SDF 2017
A54

4.11.2 Lesedi Local Municipality

The Lesedi LM SDF (2012) is illustrated on **Figure 7**. Midvaal shares the western border of Lesedi LM; the proposals that affect the study area are briefly discussed below:

- Lesedi is a predominantly rural area with two urban nodes, namely Heidelberg/ Ratanda and Devon/ Impumelelo.
- Route R42 to Vereeniging traverses the study area and was earmarked as a tourism corridor.
- The Blesbokspruit, Suikerbosrant River and their various tributaries should be regarded as ecologically sensitive areas and be protected.
- Lesedi LM shares the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve with the MLM. The Reserve was earmarked as one of two ecological focus areas in the LLM. According to the SDF the Reserve should be conserved and promoted as eco-tourism and recreational centres. An ecological transition (buffer) area should be created around the resource.
- To the south the Lesedi municipal area also comprises a ridges precinct, similar to the ridges in Midvaal. The ridges and Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve act as a buffer to urban development from Lesedi (specifically Heidelberg) spilling over into Midvaal LM.

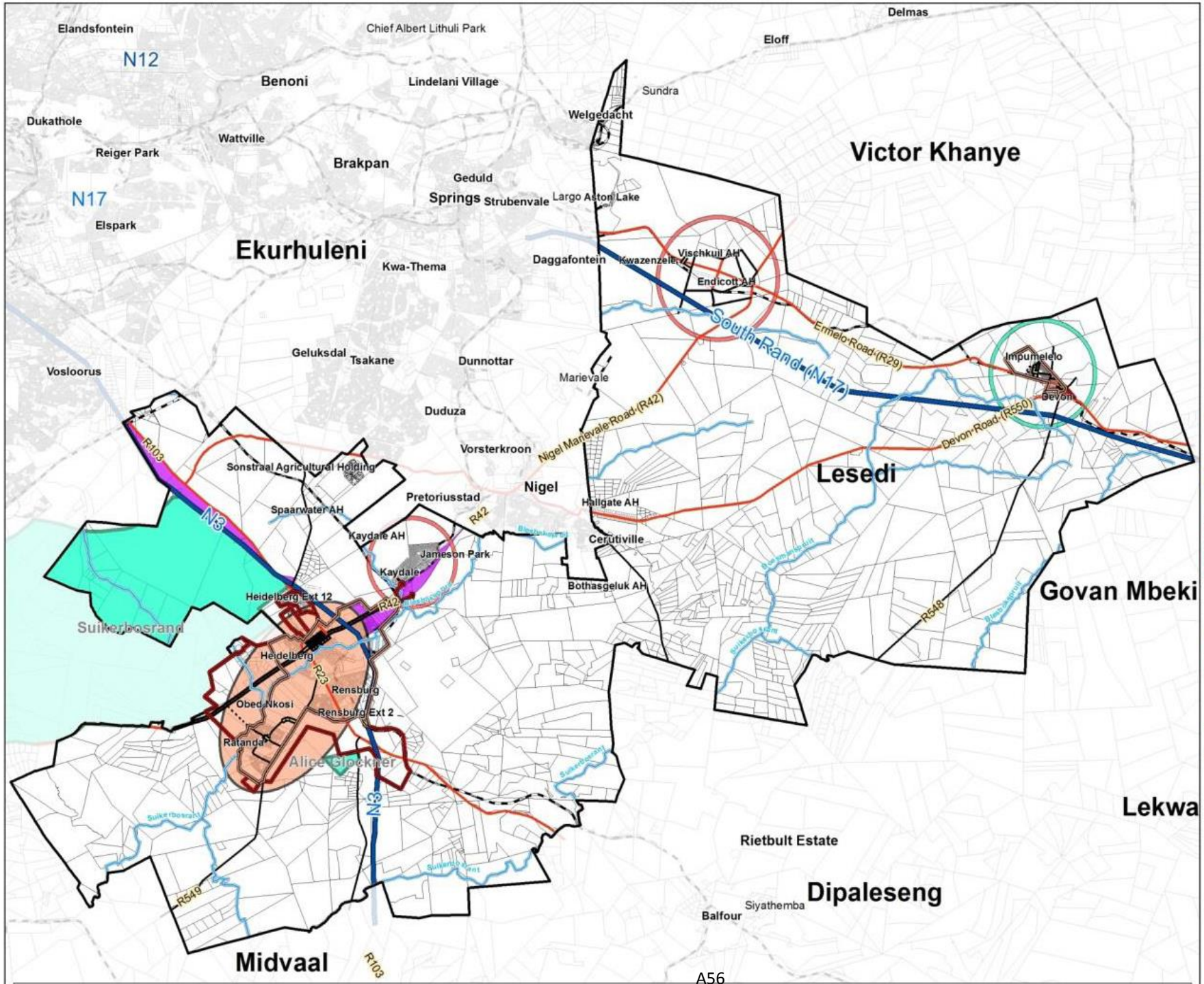
4.11.3 City of Johannesburg Metropolitan Municipality

The City of Johannesburg SDF 2010-11 is graphically illustrated on **Figures 8a** and **8b** and the relevant directives that affect the Midvaal LM are discussed below:

- The most prominent inter-municipal linkages between the City of Johannesburg (CoJ) and Midvaal LM are namely the R59 (Golden Highway), R82 (Old Vereeniging Road) and the railway line linking Germiston with Ekurhuleni Metro.
- It was proposed that the bulk of investment be consolidated along the N1 and R59 corridors and in the surrounding urban complex.
- Incremental consolidation of the Lenasia, Ennerdale, Orange Farm low income urban conurbation in the south-west of the City is likely to spill over to the MLM in time.
- The Klip River conservation area acts as a buffer between the CoJ and Midvaal in the vicinity of Tedderfield and Eikenhof. This south-eastern part of the City of Johannesburg area of jurisdiction was earmarked for conservation and/or agriculture.

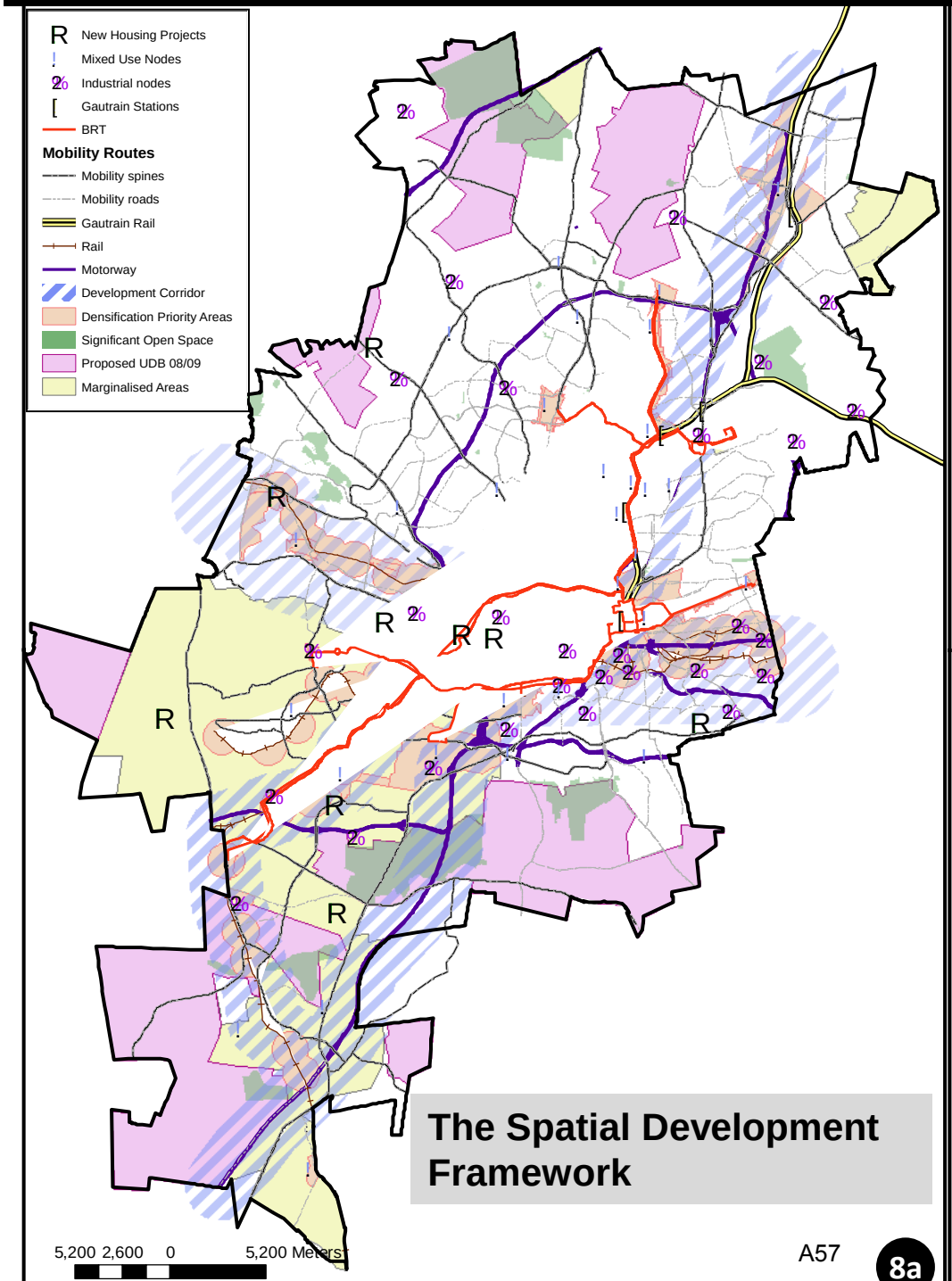
4.12 Conclusive Summary

Municipalities throughout South Africa are finding it increasingly difficult to provide its inhabitants not only with cost-effective and equitable infrastructure, but also with sufficient social infrastructure and economic opportunities. For this reason, development in South Africa is guided and directed by a range of national, provincial and local development policies, as discussed. The most **prominent**


Elandsfontein
Chief Albert Lithuli Park
Delmas
Eloff
N12
Benoni
Lindelani Village
Sundra
Welgedacht
Dukathole
Wattville
Reiger Park
Brakpan
Victor Khanye
Geduld
N17
Springs
Strubenvale
Largo Aston Lake
Elspark
Ekurhuleni
Kwa-Thema
Daggafontein
Kwazenzele
Vischkuil AH
Endicott AH
South Rand (N17)
Ermelo Road (R29)
Geluksdal
Tsakane
Dunnottar
Marievale
Impumelelo
Devon
Vosloorus
Duduza
Nigel Marievale Road (R42)
Devon Road (R550)
Vorsterkroon
Sonstraal Agricultural Holding
Nigel
Lesedi
R103
Pretoriusstad
Hallgate AH
Spaarwater AH
N3
R42
Kaydale AH
Cerutiville
Jameson Park
Kaydale
Bothasgeluk AH
Govan Mbeki
Heidelberg Ext 12
Suikerbosrand
R548
Heidelberg
R23
Rensburg
Obed Nkosi
Rensburg Ext 2
Ratanda
Alice Glockner
Lekwa
Rietbult Estate
Dipaleseng
Siyathemba
Balfour
R549
Midvaal
R103
Overall Spatial Structure
Heidelberg Aerodrome
Railway Line
River
River Buffer
Cadastre
Lesedi Local Municipality
Movement
Proposed Road
Main Local Road
Regional Mobility Road
Activity Route
Activity Street
National Road
Structuring Elements
Corridor
Primary Node
Agricultural Node
Service Centre
Heidelberg Airport
Nature Reserve
Urban Edge
Outside Edge
Inside Edge
Sources:
-DRDLR
LESEDI LM SPATIAL DEVELOMENT FRAMEWORK
0
5
10 Kilometers
N
Prepared by:
Akanya Development Solutions
2012
Akanya
www.akanyads.co.za

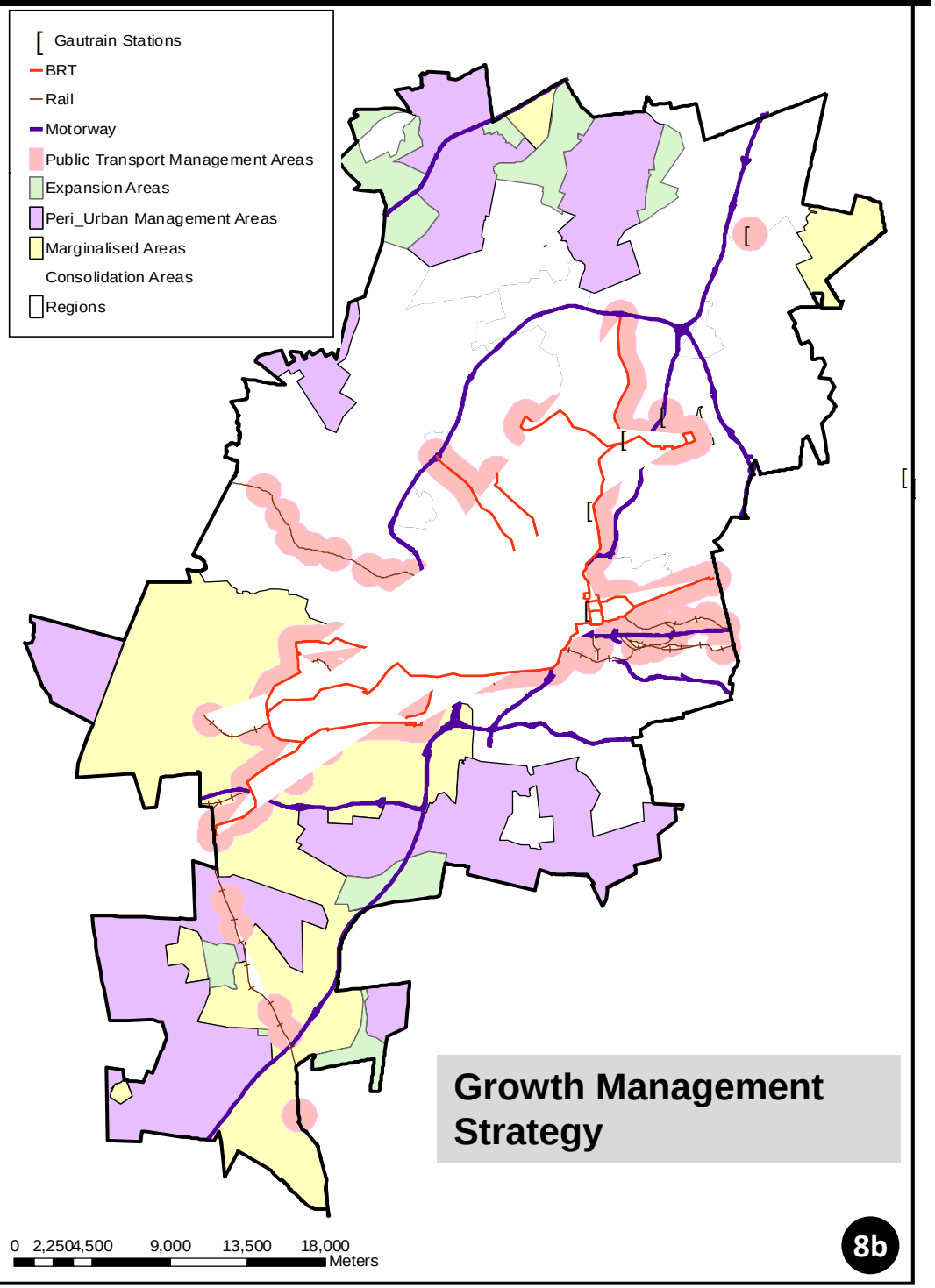
7

CoJ Spatial Development Framework



The Spatial Development Framework

8a



Growth Management Strategy

8b

development directives emerging from the various developments policy documents, which should inform the development of an SDF for the MLM includes:

• **National Development Plan (NDP)**
- Gauteng Province was identified as a core economic area of the country in terms of highly diversified economic activities. ***Urban Areas*** - Upgrading of informal settlements; - Urban densification within existing urban fabric and along development corridors; - Extensive provision and prioritisation of public transport; - Job creation and urban renewal in former township areas; - Diverse range of subsidised housing typologies and densities, and focusing on filling the housing "gap market" in terms of bonded housing. ***Rural Areas*** - Spatial consolidation of rural settlements to increase densities and enhance sustainability; - Innovative (green), targeted and coordinated infrastructure delivery; - Prioritise rural development along mobility corridors and at strategic intersections; - Rural nodal development and revitalisation of small towns; - Diversification of rural economy towards mining, tourism and local business.
• **Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF)**
- Respond to development imperatives as set out by National Outcomes, focusing especially on youth, job creation, equity, public transport, internet access, access to basic services, and industrial development.
• **Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP)**
- "Green" and energy-saving industries; - Agro-processing, linked to food security and food pricing imperatives; - Creative and cultural industries linked to tourism in the Province; - Business process services; - Electro-technical and ICT.
• **Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP)**
- Seeks to advance rural development through a three-pronged approach: Agrarian Transformation, Targeted Infrastructure Provision and Tenure Reform; - The entire Gauteng Province is a CRDP focus area – including all rural parts of Midvaal.
• **Gauteng Global City Region Strategy**
- The Midvaal local economy, though located peripherally, forms part of the greater Gauteng City-Region, with the R59 freeway forming a vital part of the regional movement network. - The MLM should be prepared for in-migration related to (real or perceived) better work and education opportunities, higher levels of access to good housing and essential household

infrastructures, and proximity to urban amenities.

- **Gauteng Provincial SDF (GSDF)**

  - Contain urban development within the existing Gauteng urban footprint;
  - Prioritise development along the major public transport network in the Province (Gautrain, PRASA rail and BRT networks);
  - Utilise well-located vacant land within the existing urban footprint for infill development;
  - The following strategic development initiatives are directly relevant to the MLM:
    - Incremental development of the western parts of the municipality in the strip of land between route R82 and N1 (from De Deur towards Elandsfontein);
    - Consolidation and expansion of the urban footprint along the R59 corridor;
    - Proposed infill development between the R59 corridor and the City of Johannesburg to the north;
    - The south-eastern extents of Midvaal were identified as one of three agricultural hubs in the SDM;
    - Proposed extensive agriculture in the remaining northern extents of the LM;
    - Development of the Vaal Marina and Suikerboschrand Nature Reserve as Provincial Tourism/ Cultural Nodes.

- **GITMP25**

  - Promote the rail system as the backbone of the Provincial movement network, including the Vereeniging-Meyerton-Germiston freight railway line;
  - Utilise public transport as a catalyst towards social integration of society;
  - Densification along public transport corridors should maintain net densities of at least 80 units per hectare.

- **Sedibeng GDS 2**

  - Meyerton was identified as a Secondary Development Node in the District, and the Primary Node along the R59 corridor;
  - R59, R82 and Route R550 were identified as Development Corridors;
  - The Vaal Marina was prioritised for development;
  - The Midvaal LM should consider also focusing on the sectors identified for future diversification and intensification within Gauteng Province as a whole, namely:
    - Smart Industries (including ICT, Pharmaceuticals);
    - Trade and Services (including Finance and Film);
    - Tourism
    - Agriculture (agri-processing and bio-tech);
    - Manufacturing (steel related industries, automotive parts and components, beer and malt);
    - Infrastructure expansion and investment.

- **Sedibeng RSDF**

  - Identified Meyerton as a Secondary Node in the District.
  - Identified the R59 freeway between Meyerton and Vereeniging as a Development Corridor, as well as the R82 between Vereeniging and De Deur.
  - Other development nodes in Midvaal include the Vaal Marina and Savanna City.
  - Highlights the need for diversification of economic base of the District.
  - The important economic sectors identified were namely:
    - Manufacturing (SASOL, Heineken, Liquid Fuel Mass Storage Hub, Coca-Cola South

Africa, BHP Billiton Manganese Metalloys plant in Meyerton, DCD ringrollers in Vereeniging) o Industrial and commercial development (especially in the Vereeniging-Vanderbijlpark-Evaton/Sebokeng triangle), Heineken Brewery (Klipriver), Samancor (Meydustria) o Tourism (Suikerbosrant Nature reserve and Vaal Dam area) o Agriculture (Maize Triangle Scheme, and area between Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve and Klipriver).
• **Emfuleni SDF**
- K83 that links Evaton and Meyerton via Savanna City earmarked as strategic regional link; - Vereeniging-Meyerton-Germiston freight railway line is strategic link; - Proposed medium density infill development between Vereeniging and Sebokeng, and proposed high density residential development adjacent to De Deur in the MLM; - Intensive agriculture activities proposed along the remainder of the eastern border of Emfuleni LM.
• **Lesedi SDF**
- Route R42 to Vereeniging earmarked as a tourism corridor; - Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve to be conserved and promoted as eco-tourism and recreational centre; - The ridges in the south of Lesedi act as a buffer to urban development from Heidelberg spilling over to Midvaal.
• **City of Joburg SDF**
- Strategic linkages between the CoJ and MLM are namely the R59, R82 and the railway line linking Germiston and Ekurhuleni; - Proposed N1 and R59 corridors; - Growth of nearby low income conurbation (Lenasia, Ennerdale, Orange Farm) is likely to spill over to the MLM in time.

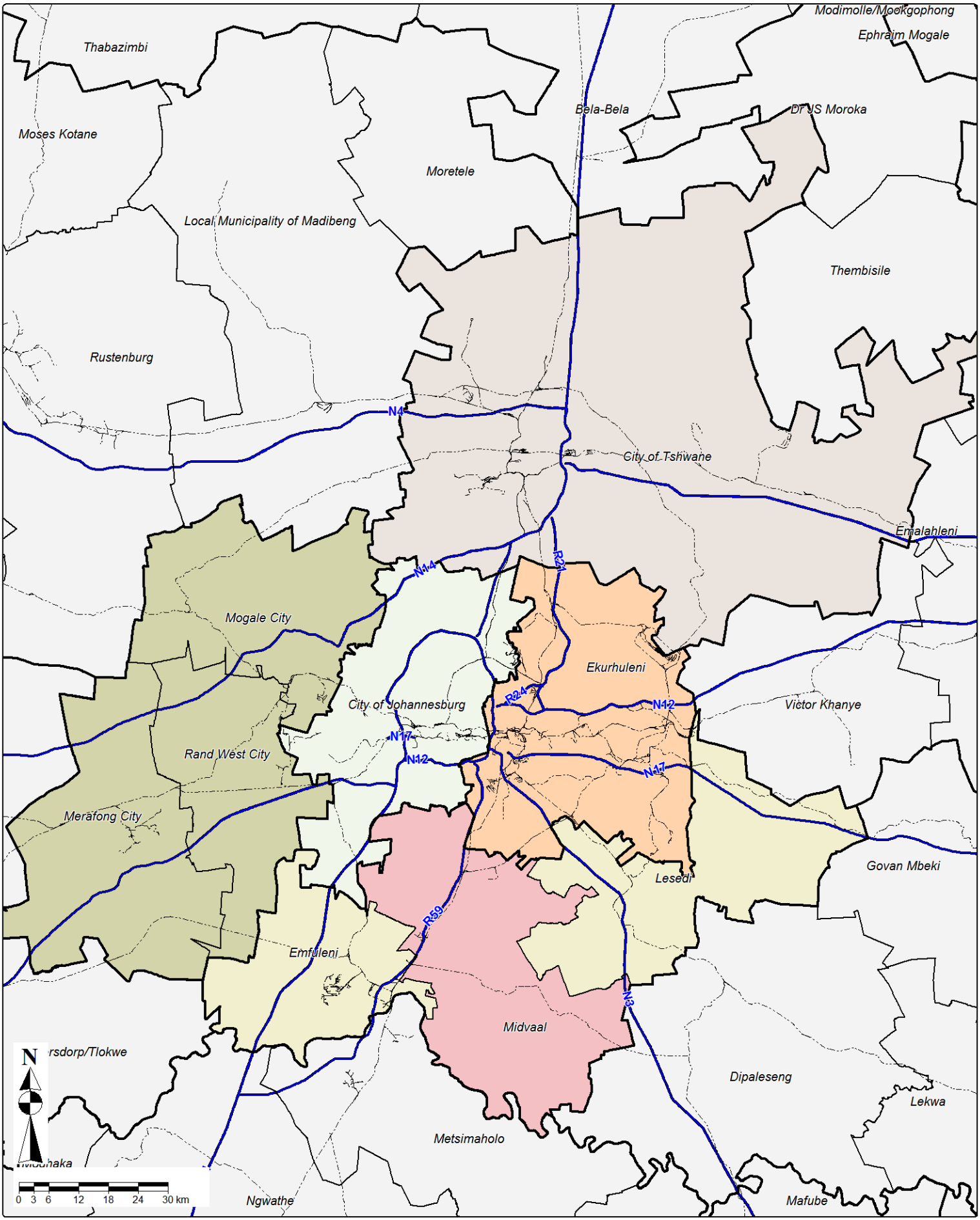
5 SPATIAL ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS

5.1 REGIONAL CONTEXT: SEDIBENG DISTRICT

The Midvaal Local Municipality is one of three local municipalities located in the Sedibeng District Municipality, which constitutes the southernmost local authority in Gauteng Province (**Figure 9**). It is furthermore bordered by the Mpumalanga Province (Dipaleseng LM) to the east and the Free State Province (Metsimaholo LM) to the south.

Figures 10a and 10b illustrate the distribution and relative size and composition of job opportunities in the Gauteng Province in 2010 and projected to 2037 respectively. The Midvaal municipal area is situated south of the main concentration of current and future economic activities in Gauteng. The area between the City of Johannesburg, OR Tambo International Airport (ORTIA) and City of Tshwane (CoT) was identified through the Gauteng Spatial Development Framework as the core

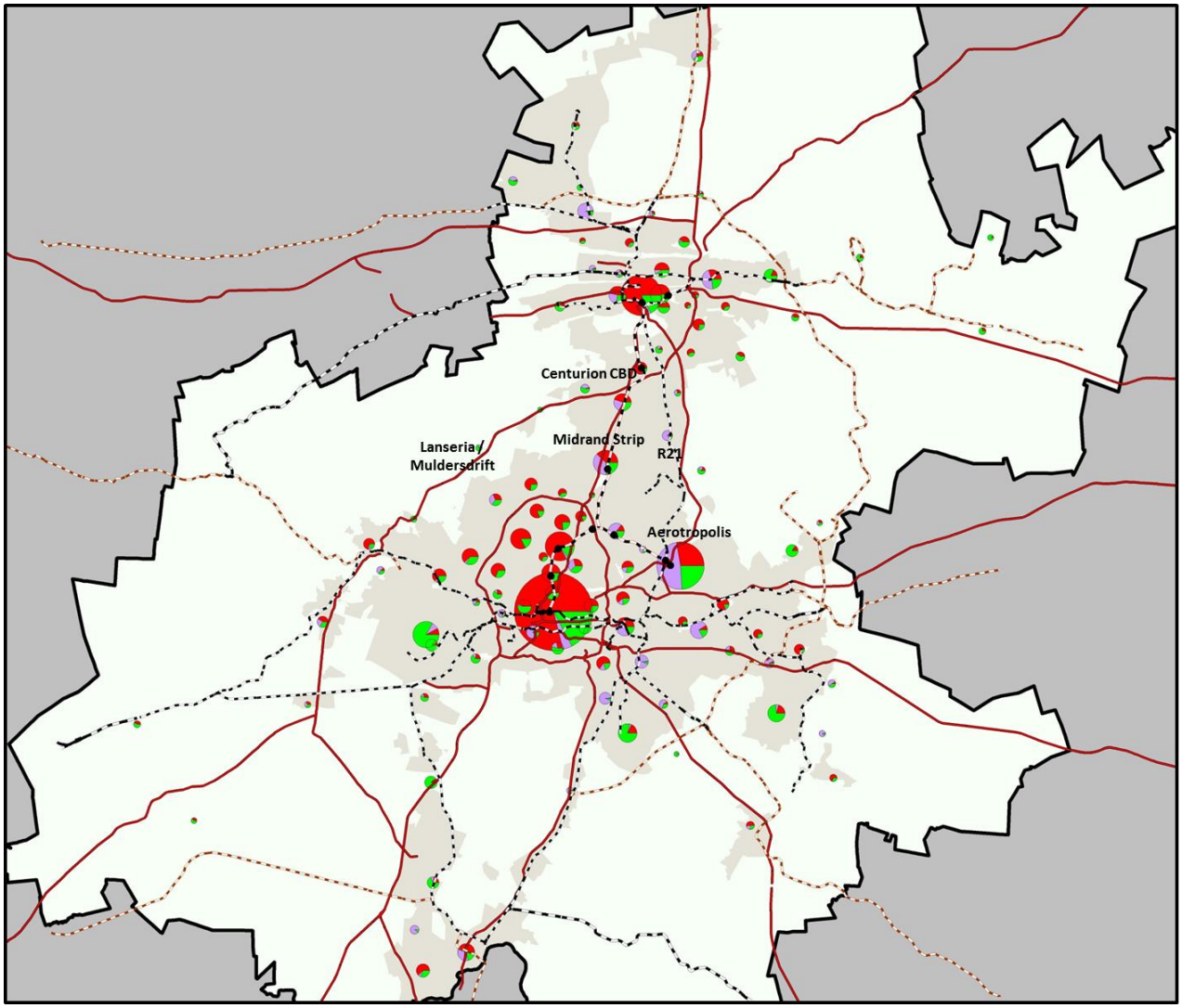
MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Regional Context



City of Tswhane Metro Municipality
West Rand District Municipality
City of Johannesburg Metro Municipality
Ekurhuleni Metro Municipality
Sedibeng District Municipality
Midvaal Local Municipality

A60

9



GAUTENG

GAUTENG 25-YEAR INTEGRATED TRANSPORT MASTER PLAN

GAUTENG FORMAL WORKERS (2010)

FORMAL WORKERS

410 000

265 000

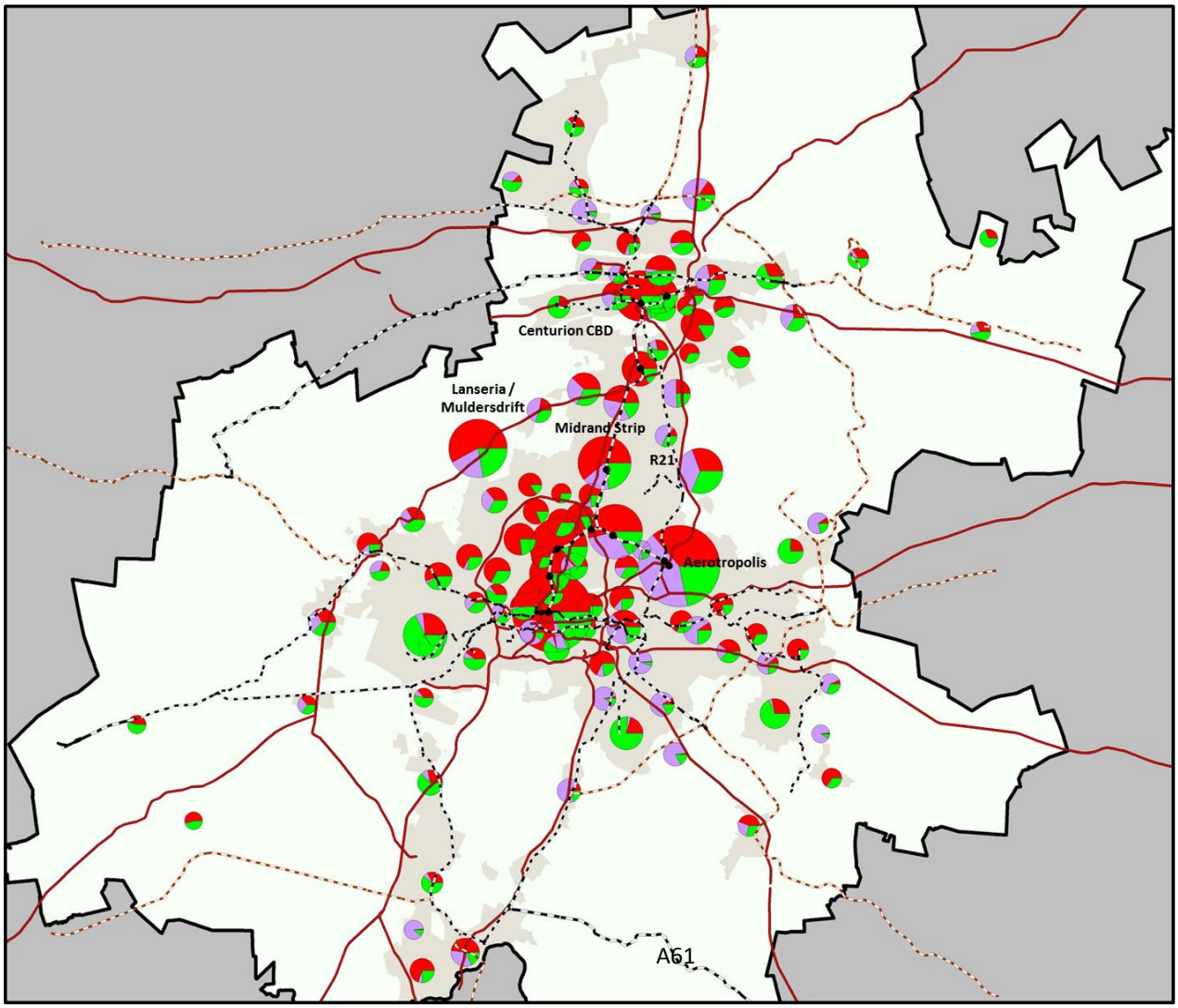
100 000

Retail / Office

Industrial / Commercial

Other Formal Workers

10a



GAUTENG

GAUTENG 25-YEAR INTEGRATED TRANSPORT MASTER PLAN

GAUTENG SDF APPROACH (2037)

FORMAL WORKERS

410 000

265 000

100 000

Retail / Office

Industrial / Commercial

Other Formal Workers

10b

economic focus area in which the bulk of economic development of Gauteng Province is expected to take place in future.

The Emfuleni municipal area constitutes the major centre of economic activity in the southern parts of Gauteng Province but there is a significant lack of economic activity in this region compared to the central and northern parts of Gauteng as evident from Figures 10a and 10b.

5.2 INSTITUTIONAL CONTEXT

5.2.1 Wards and Regions

The Midvaal Local Municipality was established in 2000, when the town of Meyerton split from Vereeniging (Emfuleni Local Municipality) and joined five Rural Area Committees to create the new Midvaal Local Municipality.

The Midvaal LM is a Category B municipality as defined in the Municipal Structures Act and is divided into 15 wards as depicted on **Figure 11**. The rural south-eastern parts of the LM all form part of Ward 1, while the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve is in Ward 4. The agricultural holdings, together with the R82 and associated settlements (in the west) fall within Wards 5, 6, 7 and 11. Finally, the urbanised area along the R59 freeway comprises Wards 2, 3, 8, 9, 10, 13, 14 and 15. Waterval to the north is part of ward 12.

5.2.2 Land Use Management

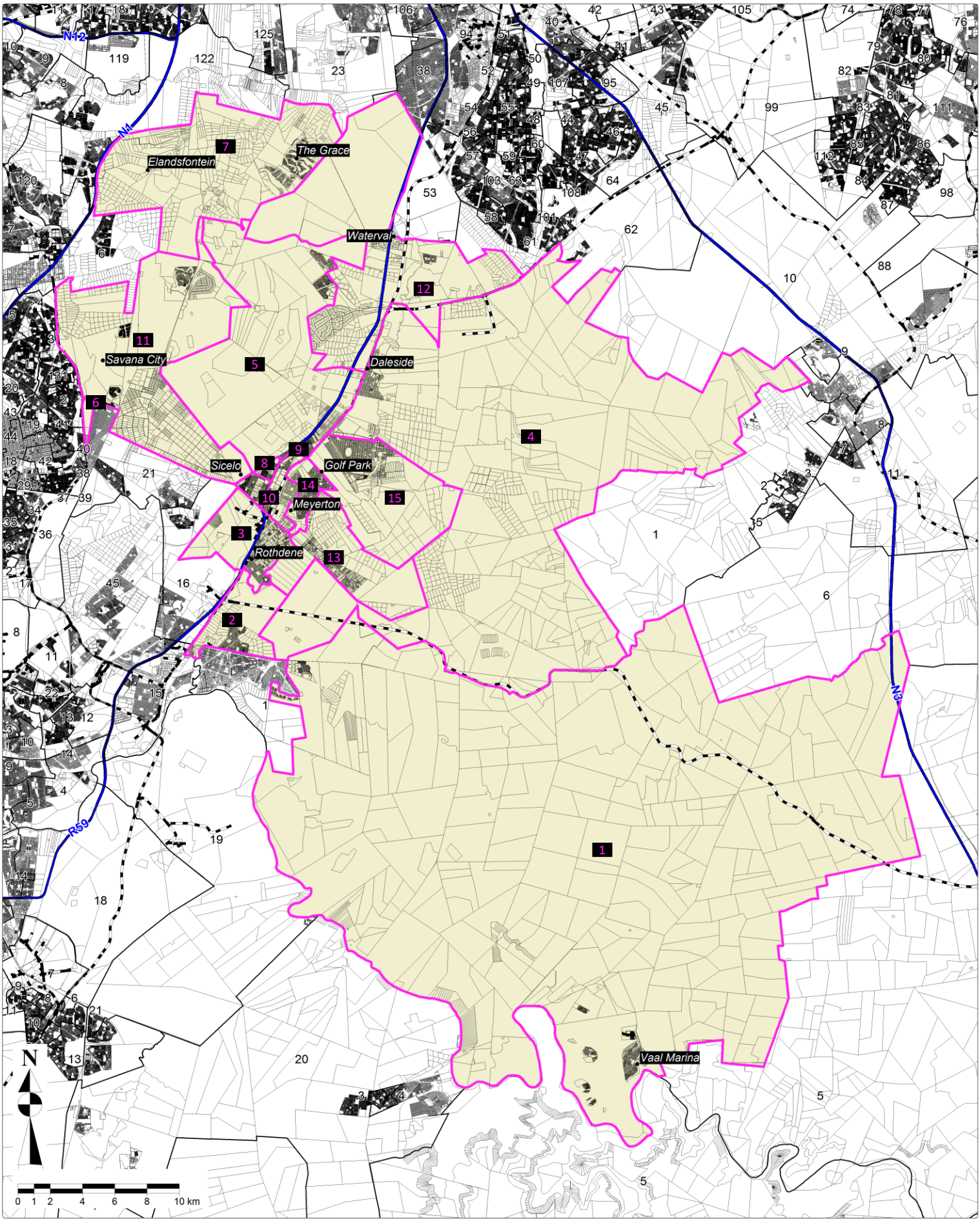
At present the Midvaal Municipality is making use of the following statutory land management documents (Town Planning Schemes):

- Walkerville Town Planning Scheme, 1994;
- Peri-Urban Town Planning Scheme, 1978;
- Randvaal Town Planning Scheme, 1994;
- Meyerton Town Planning Scheme, 1986;
- Vereeniging Town Planning Scheme, 1992;
- Vaal Marina Town Planning Scheme, 1993;
- Eikenhof Integrated Development Framework with specific requirements for Site Development Plans and prescriptions for EIAs and IEM procedures. Proposals for bio-filter purification and bio-filter information are also provided.

The Midvaal LM mainly use the various LUMS for the following purposes:

- To determine the legally registered/ approved development rights on any property within the municipal area;

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Institutional Context



Midvaal Local Municipality
Wards
Cadastral

A63

11

- To compare existing rights with potential rights as depicted in the municipal Spatial Development Framework;
- To determine the most appropriate procedure to follow in acquiring new development rights on a property.

The need for uniform land use management measures and policies throughout the Midvaal area is paramount.

5.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC PROFILE, LOCAL MIGRATION PATTERNS AND POPULATION PROJECTIONS

5.3.1 Socio-Economic Profile

The following section depicts the demographic profile of the MLM, comprising extracts from the Midvaal Economic Development Analysis (Demacon, 2014) and additional information obtained from the Stats SA 2016 Community Survey.

Population and Household Dynamics

As shown on **Table 2** Midvaal is the smallest of the three local municipalities in the Sedibeng District, comprising 12% of the Sedibeng District population. The total municipal population in Midvaal grew from 64 640 in 2001 to 95 301 in 2011, and to 111 612 in 2016. This represents an increment of 30 661 in the 10 years between 2001 and 2011, and an additional 16 311 from 2011 to 2016. The year on year growth for the total population for the past 5 years was 3.21% – representing 3262 people per year (far above the District growth rate which stands at 0.88 for this period).

Table 2: Sedibeng District and Local Municipalities Population: 2011-2016

POPULATION										
	2011				2016				2011-2016	
	Male	Female	Total	% OF Sedibeng	Male	Female	Total	% OF Sedibeng	Increment	Growth Rate (%)
GT421: Emfuleni	354,862	366,800	721,663	79%	361,692	371,752	733,445	77%	11,782	0.32
GT422: Midvaal	49,178	46,123	95,301	10%	57,926	53,685	111,612	12%	16,311	3.21
GT423: Lesedi	51,317	48,203	99,520	11%	58,688	53,784	112,472	12%	12,952	2.48
DC42: Sedibeng	455,358	461,126	916,484	100%	478,306	479,222	957,528	100%	41,044	0.88
Gauteng	6,189,875	6,082,388	12,272,263		6,753,269	6,646,455	13,399,724		1,127,461	1.77

Age Profile and Employment

The age profile of an area provides valuable insight into the working age population of an area and can therefore be translated into whether an area has a large enough working age population to maintain and expand economic activities.

According to Census 2011, approximately 70% of the total Midvaal population falls in the potential economically active population (EAP), implying that a large proportion of the population form part of the potential workforce and require employment opportunities in the Municipality.

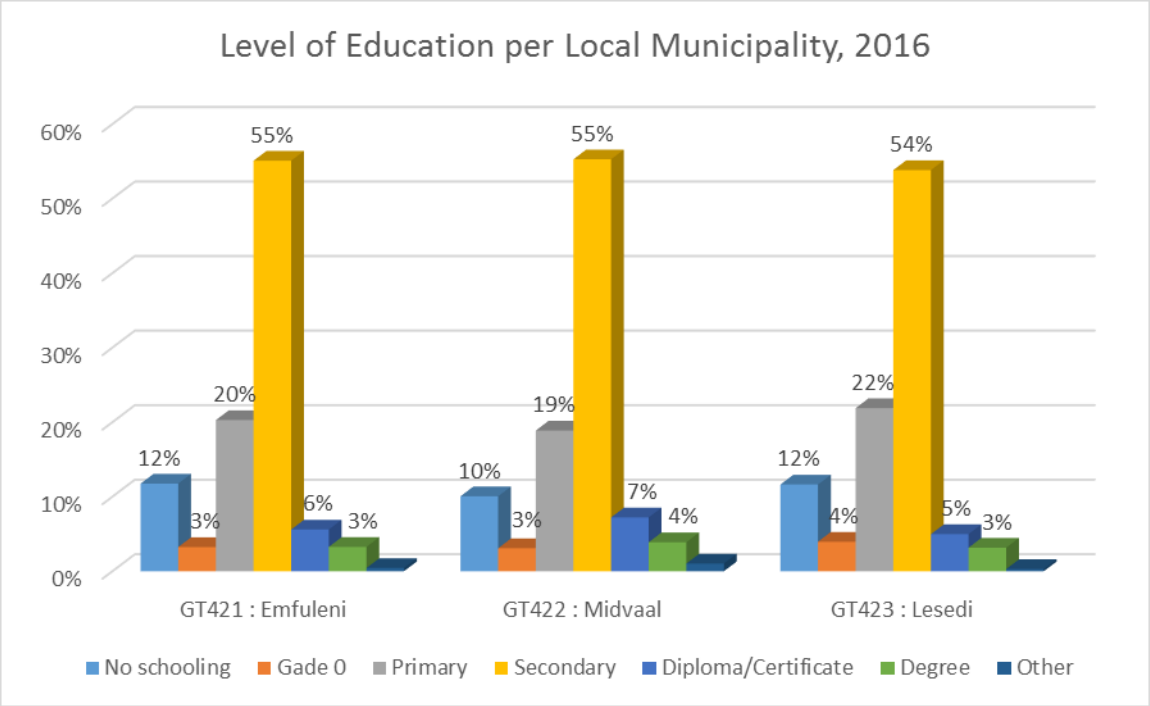
Of the economically active population in Midvaal, 81.2% are employed and 18.8% unemployed.

Level of Education

The highest level of education achieved by the population informs the employment and income potential of the local population. **Diagram 1** overleaf compares the highest level of education for the population in the three local authorities in Sedibeng.

In Midvaal LM, 55% of the population have not completed secondary education (up to Grade 12).

Diagram 1: Highest Level of Education (population segment aged 20 years and older)



Source: Stats SA: 2016 Community Survey

Household Income Distribution

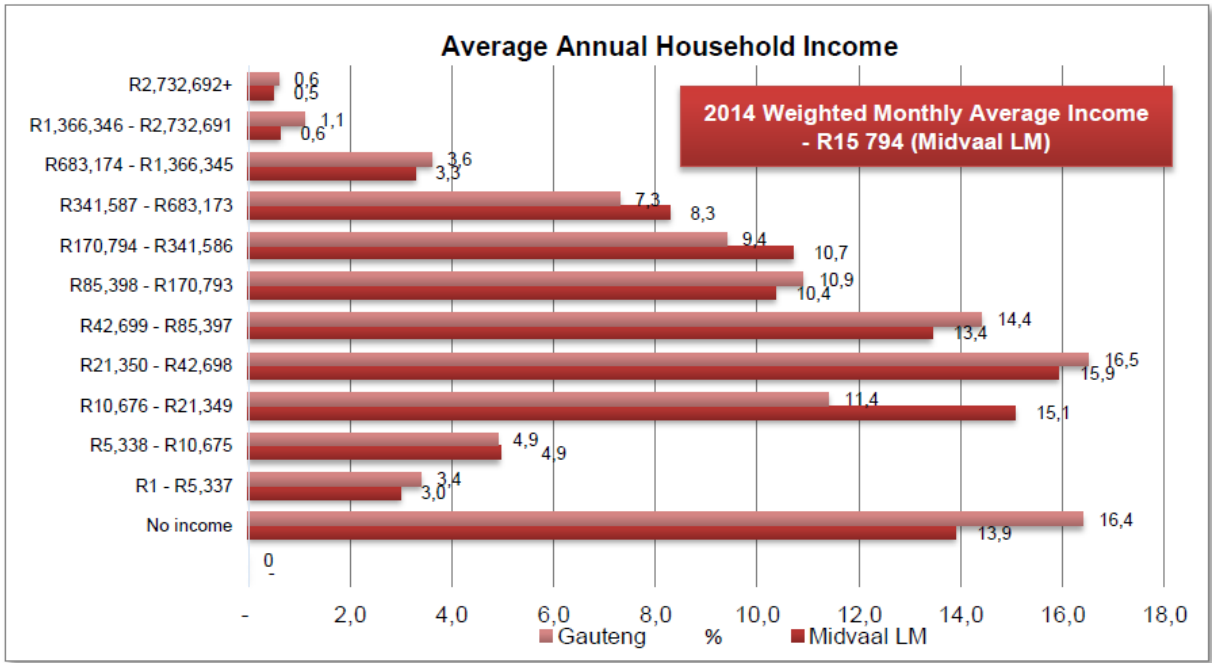
Average household income is a direct indicator of consumer demand for a broad spectrum of economic goods and services and the quantity of additional floor space that could be sustained by a

given consumer market. Average household income, to an extent, also reflects the living standard of a household, and influences aspects such as asset ownership.

Diagram 2 overleaf indicates that the local population is a predominantly low to middle income community.

- The weighted average annual household income in the market area for 2014 amounts to:
  - R189 524 per annum, which translates into R15 794 per month (All LSM groups)
  - R254 234 per annum, which translates into R21 186 per month (LSM 4 to 10+)
- A significant portion of the population in the market area earns no income at all (13.9%).
- The income profile affirms a consumer market with a predominant demand profile for lower to lower-middle-end residential and commercial products.

Diagram 2: Average Annual Household Income of MLM compared with Gauteng, 2014

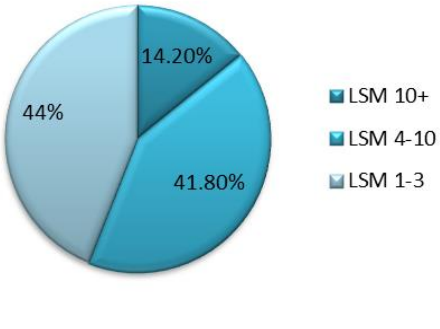


Source: Midvaal Economic Development Analysis, 2014 [Demacon ex Stats SA)

Internal comparison reveals that the Central Region (comprising the R59 corridor and related urban areas) has the highest weighted annual income level in the municipal area, while the Eastern Region (largely rural) has the lowest.

Living Standard Measurement (LSM) Profile

Diagram 3: Midvaal LSM Profile, 2011



Essentially, the Living Standard Measurement (LSM) system is a wealth measure based on standard of living, rather than income alone. As evident from **Diagram 3**, the bulk of households (44.0%) in the MLM are located within the first to third LSM levels (low living standard). This is followed by a large section (41.8%) of the population falling within LSM groups 4-10. A notable section (14.2%) of the Midvaal LM population falls within the LSM 10+ group (very high living standard).

It is worth noting that the LSM profile together with the education levels of the Midvaal LM population serve as a proxy to the promising economic conditions – including employment opportunities – of the municipal area. It was found that the best associations between high living standards, level of education and job opportunities, was namely in the *local government* sector, *financial* sector, and *manufacturing* sector.

5.3.2 Midvaal Migration Patterns

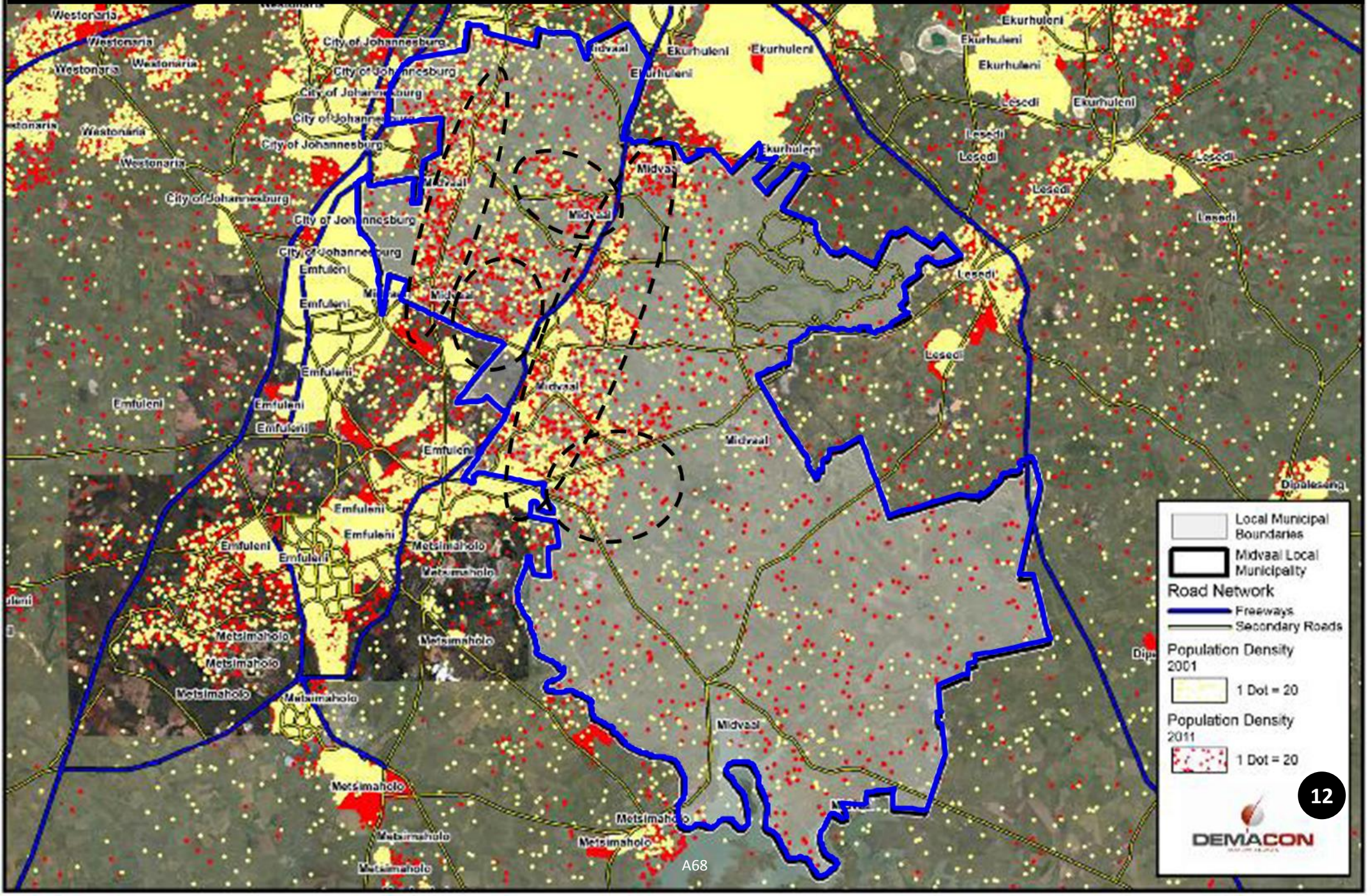
The following section comprises extracts from the Midvaal Migration Plan (2014) which found that approximately 37 000 people migrated to the study area between 2001 and 2011. This translates to about 3 700 people per annum. The total migrant population includes those who relocated domestically and foreigners who relocated from another country.

The majority of migrants in Midvaal Local Municipality (70%) relocated from other regions/ municipalities of Gauteng. Migration from outside South Africa accounted for approximately 11% of migration. Approximately 72% of international migrants to Midvaal Local Municipality migrated from the SADC region. It was also found that the primary age groups that relocate to the area are between 18 and 40 years. Roughly 64% of foreign migrants in Midvaal Local Municipality are males; and almost 90% of foreign migrants are in the potential economically active population.

Of the proportion of domestic population that migrated to Midvaal Local Municipality between 2001 and 2011, 60% constituted black migrants, while 38% were white; while more than 90% of foreign migrants in Midvaal LM were black, and 7% were white.

The bulk of the municipal population are consolidated in the north-western parts of the LM, and specifically along the R82 and R59 freeways, the precinct in between the two freeways, and in and around Meyerton as is evident from **Figure 12**.

Population Dynamics (2001 to 2011)



Furthermore, a comparison between 2001 and 2011 data illustrates that the urban areas (such as Meyerton, Golf Park, Randvaal and Risiville) and nearby agricultural holdings are the focus of the majority of residential growth (indicating urbanisation).

It was determined that people selected Midvaal to relocate to because of a number of reasons including:

- Its central location among major economic nodes.
- The availability of land to relocate to, and the perception that space is limited in major areas such as Johannesburg and Ekurhuleni.
- Perception of employment opportunities because of major construction activities in the municipality.
- Some foreign migrants relocate to the municipality in order to hide from local authorities and avoid prosecution.

Popular Migrant Destinations

The research showed that domestic migration is distributed throughout Midvaal Local Municipality. The foreign migrated population are, however, clustered mainly around the R550 and R59 interchange. It appears that foreign migrants are locating to farms and agricultural holdings, in other words the northern, north-eastern, central and north-western regions of the Municipality; as well as selected areas along the R59 freeway, such as portions between Daleside and Henley-on-Klip, and certain parts of Henley-on-Klip. Foreign migrants are also locating to Sicelo settlement and Balmoral Agricultural Holdings (AH) to the east and Vaal Marina in the south. Relocation to informal settlements on the peripheries of urban areas was also a key choice. Lakeside Estate is an example of new development with migrants relocating to the region to find temporary construction work.

Migration trends indicate the location of migrated population primarily in the central and western regions of Midvaal LM and in formal residential areas and small-holdings in particular. The highest migration rates are in the primary urban and agricultural holdings regions – areas such as Meyerton, Kookrus, Rothdene, Riversdale, Ophir AH, Ohenimuri, Drumblade and Waterval show significant proportions of migrated population for the period 2001 to 2011.

Areas that had migration rates above 50% of the population include Lakeside Estates, Klipview AH, Homestead Apple Orchards, Walkersville Fruit Farms, Ophir, and select sections of Sicelo and Rothdene. These trends show a preference for urban-related migration.

Proposed Approach to Migration Management

According to the MLM Migration Plan, Council must actively direct spatial development and contribute to a compact city as a means of addressing migration pro-actively. This includes the following objectives:

- Accelerate spatial restructuring;
- Improve city fabric to ensure more liveable neighbourhoods;
- Limit the urban development footprint (and consequent spatial impact on the environment);
- Create better economies of scale for engineering and public services (improve urban efficiency);
- Promote integrated mixed land use that provides employment opportunities to residents close to their work.

Secondary principles that were identified include the following:

- Contribute to improved living conditions
- Plan for population growth and social facilities
- Promote social cohesion, inclusion and protection of all population groups
- Develop markets and fight against unemployment
- Develop market-related skills
- Enable migrant contributions to reach economic growth for the well-being of the population
- Environmental conservation, agricultural and sustainable development
- Direct future corridor development through sustainable infrastructure investment
- Streamline migration into development planning

The above objectives and principles should be incorporated in the Midvaal SDF proposals.

5.3.3 Population Projections

The Midvaal Migration Plan documents three scenarios of population growth in the study area, exploring the changes to in-migration and the likely effects on spatial development and the demand for housing and related services in each of the scenarios. The findings are summarised below:

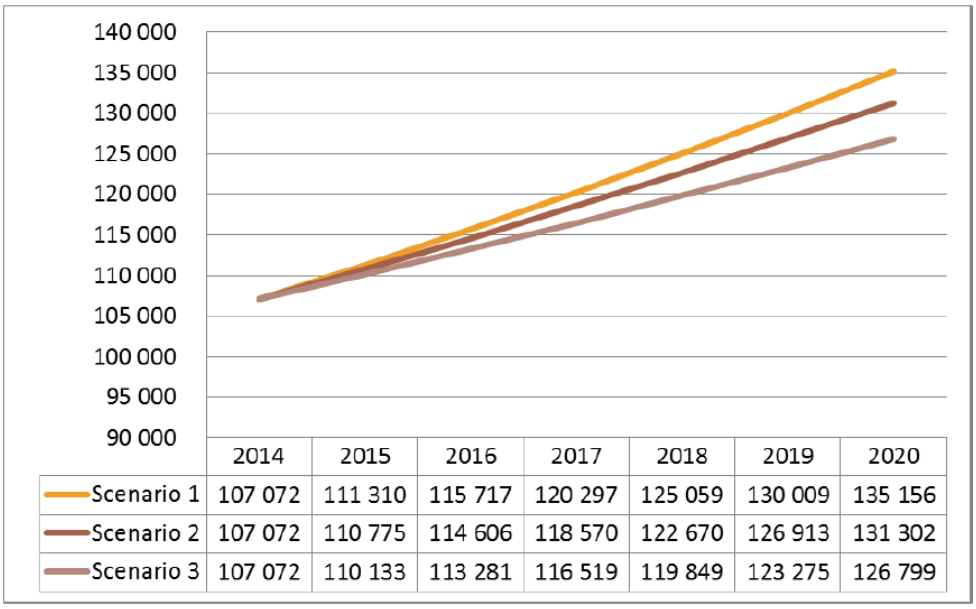
Table 3: Core Assumptions of Population Growth Scenarios

Scenario 1: Continuation of Historical Growth Trends
• Total population growth continues at current trends (4% per annum) • High in-migration patterns • High population gain due to positive net migration • Natural population growth slightly above national average
Scenario 2: Decreased Population Growth
• Total population growth decreases below current trends (3.5% per annum) • In-migration patterns decrease • Reduced population gain owing to decreased positive net migration • Natural population growth slightly above national average
Scenario 3: Substantial Decrease in Population Growth
• Total population growth decreases to approximate growth experienced by the province (2.9% per annum) • In-migration patterns decrease significantly • Population gain owing to positive net migration significantly decreased • Natural population growth slightly above national average

Source: MLM Migration Plan, 2013

The results for the three scenarios are graphically illustrated on **Diagram 4** (population) and **Diagram 5** (households) below.

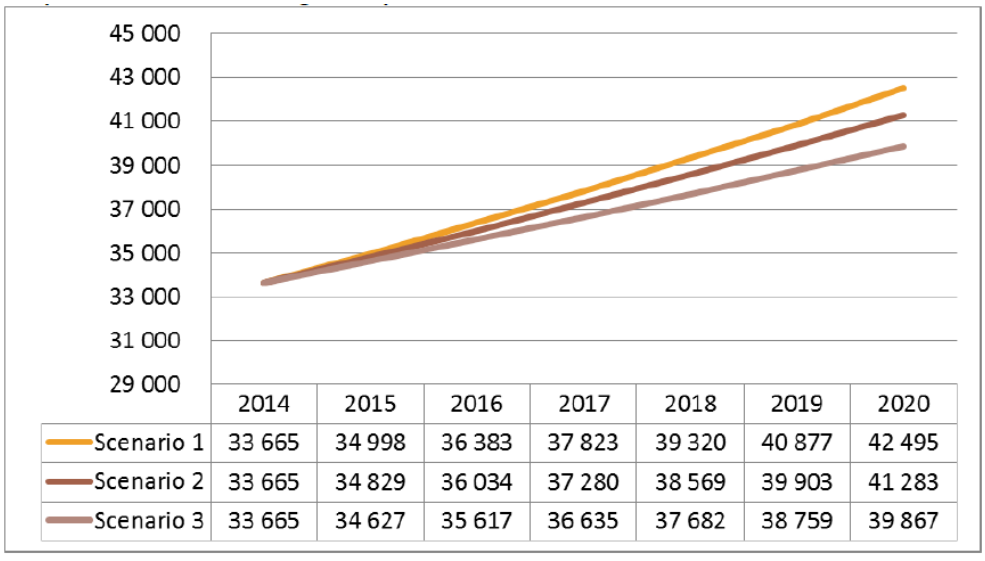
Diagram 4: Total population growth per scenario between 2014 and 2020



	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020
Scenario 1	107 072	111 310	115 717	120 297	125 059	130 009	135 156
Scenario 2	107 072	110 775	114 606	118 570	122 670	126 913	131 302
Scenario 3	107 072	110 133	113 281	116 519	119 849	123 275	126 799

Source: MLM Migration Plan, 2013

Diagram 5: Total household growth per scenario between 2014 and 2020



	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020
Scenario 1	33 665	34 998	36 383	37 823	39 320	40 877	42 495
Scenario 2	33 665	34 829	36 034	37 280	38 569	39 903	41 283
Scenario 3	33 665	34 627	35 617	36 635	37 682	38 759	39 867

Source: Kayamandi Development Services (2014)

MLM Migration Plan, 2013

It is evident from Diagram 4 that the three **population growth scenarios** for Midvaal predict that the population will increase from 107 072 in 2014 (based on Kayamandi's projections of 2011 census data) to between 126 799 and 135 156 in 2020. This indicates an increment of between 19 727 and 28 084 in six (6) years, which translates to growth of between 3288 and 4681 people per annum.

The three scenarios predict **household growth** of between 39 867 and 42 495 by 2020 (Diagram 8). This represents an increment of between 6202 and 8830 households in the period from 2014 to 2020, which translates to between approximately 1034 and 1472 new households per annum.

5.4 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES

5.4.1 Hydrology and Topography

The Klip River with its main tributaries like the Natal Spruit, the Varkensfontein Spruit, as well as the Suikerbosrant River constitute the main drainage system within the northern and central parts of the Midvaal area, while the Vaal River and Vaal Dam are the most prominent features in the southern and south-eastern parts(see **Figure 13**). This network provides for a comprehensive open space system to be incorporated into the future spatial structure of the municipal area.

There are two major ridges precincts located within the Midvaal municipal area. These include the Platberg-Perdeberg complex in the north-western quadrant of the municipal area between Homestead Apple Orchards A.H. and Tedderfield A.H.; as well as the Vaalkop-Skurwerant-Bezuidenhoutsberg-Langberg-Bakenkop complex located in the south-eastern parts of the municipal area between Vaal Marina and the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve.

5.4.2 Geology

The far northern parts of the MLM fall within a massive dolomite belt that passes through the southern extents of the City of Johannesburg. The major areas in Midvaal that are impacted upon by the presence of dolomite are reflected on Figure 13 and includes the northern extents of the R59 corridor. This is a major physical structuring element which affects potential development in the area.

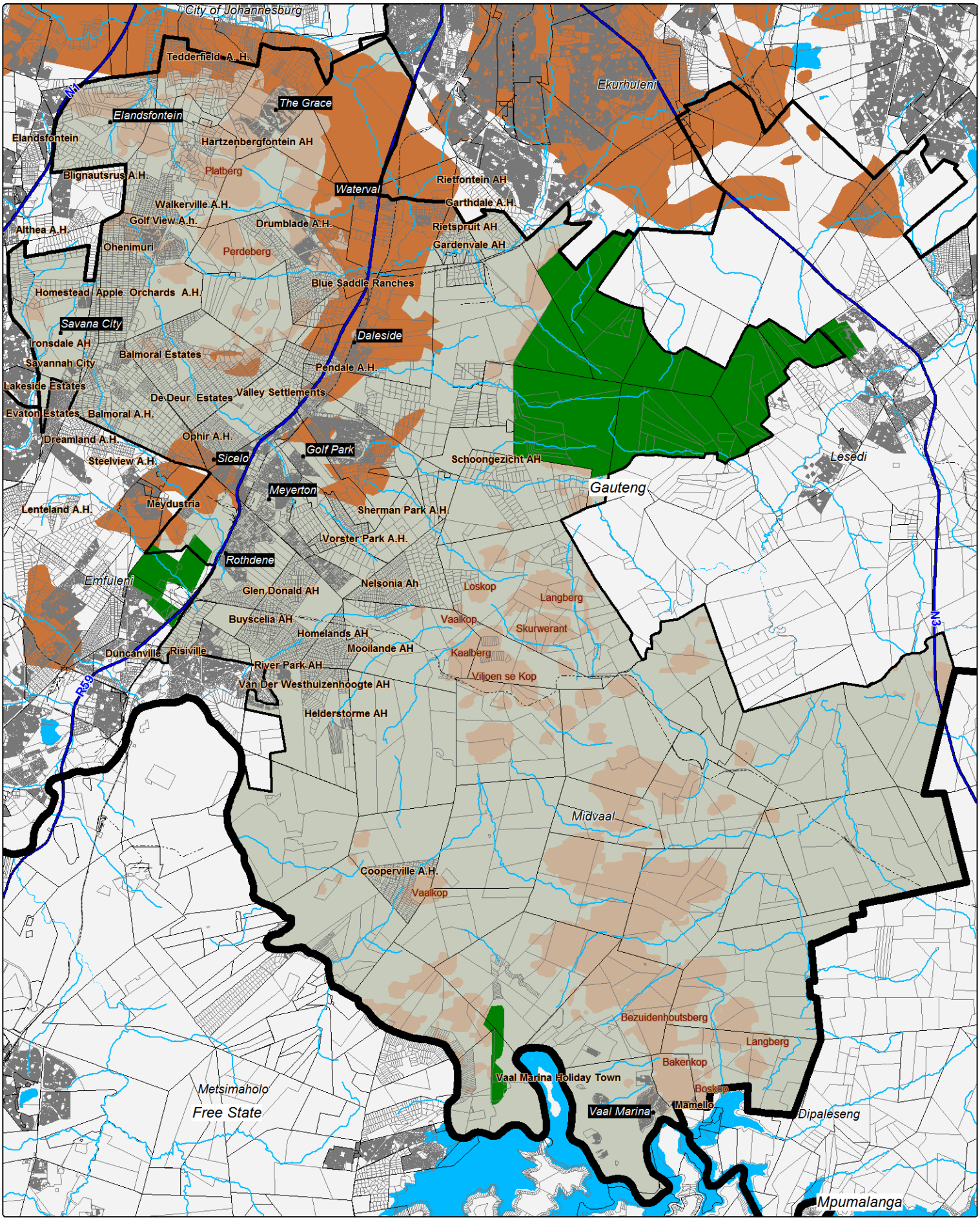
5.4.3 Agricultural Potential

Figure 14 gives an indication of the distribution of high potential agricultural land in the Gauteng Province. It is evident that the municipal area is generally a high potential agricultural area with the largest concentration of high potential land located around Klipriviersberg to the north and in the agri-hub which covers the largest part of the south-eastern extents of the municipality.

5.4.4 Nature Reserves and Conservancies

The Suikerbosrant Provincial Nature Reserve located in the north-eastern part of Midvaal is a major structuring element and is legally protected from development (refer to **Figure 15**). There are also eight registered conservancies in the LM, namely Kliprivier-Suikerboschrand Conservancy,

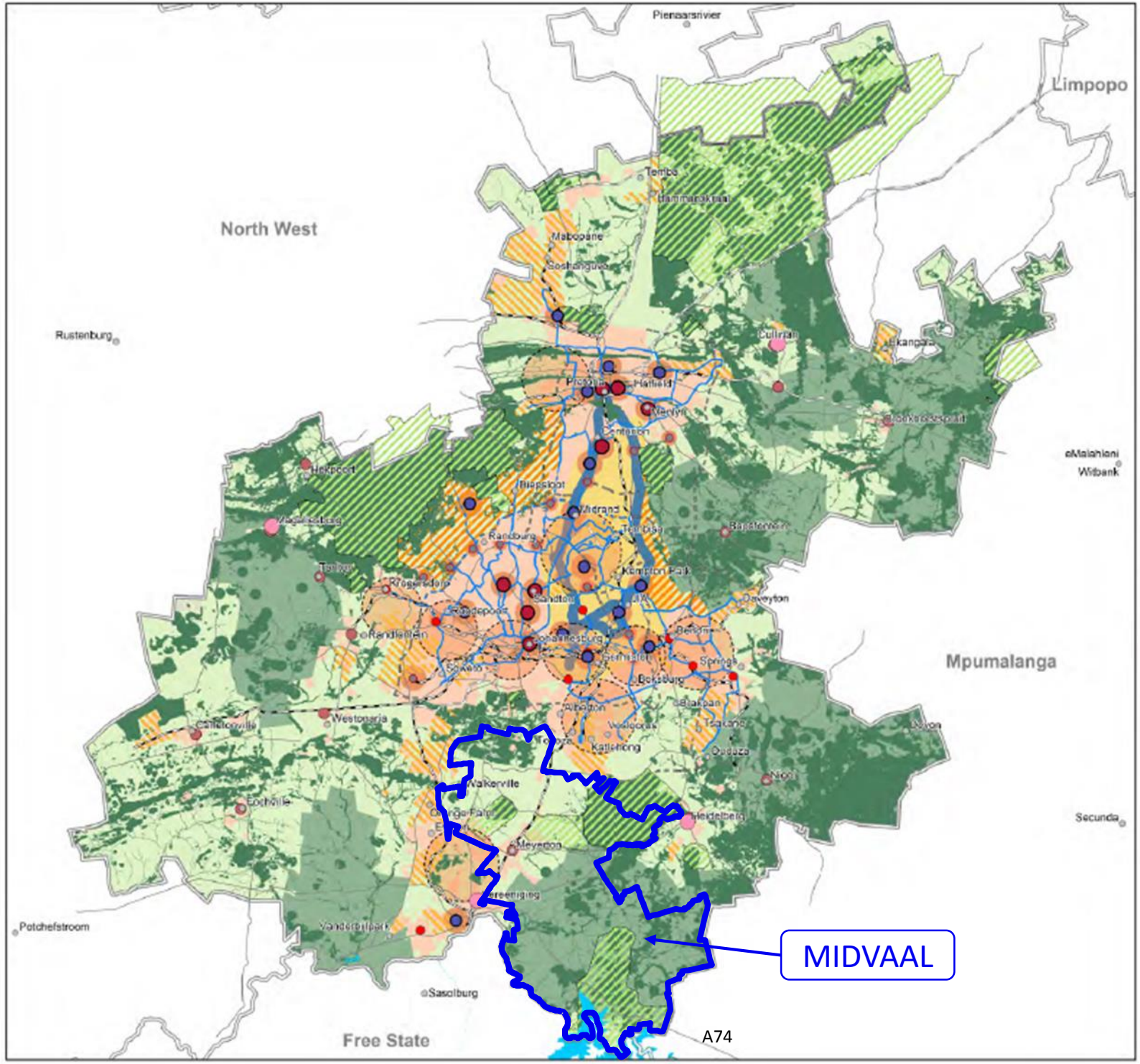
MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Topography, Hydrology, Dolomite



Ridges
Nature Reserves
Dams and Rivers
Dolomite (C Plan V3.3 – 2011)

A73

13



High Potential Agriculture

Legend

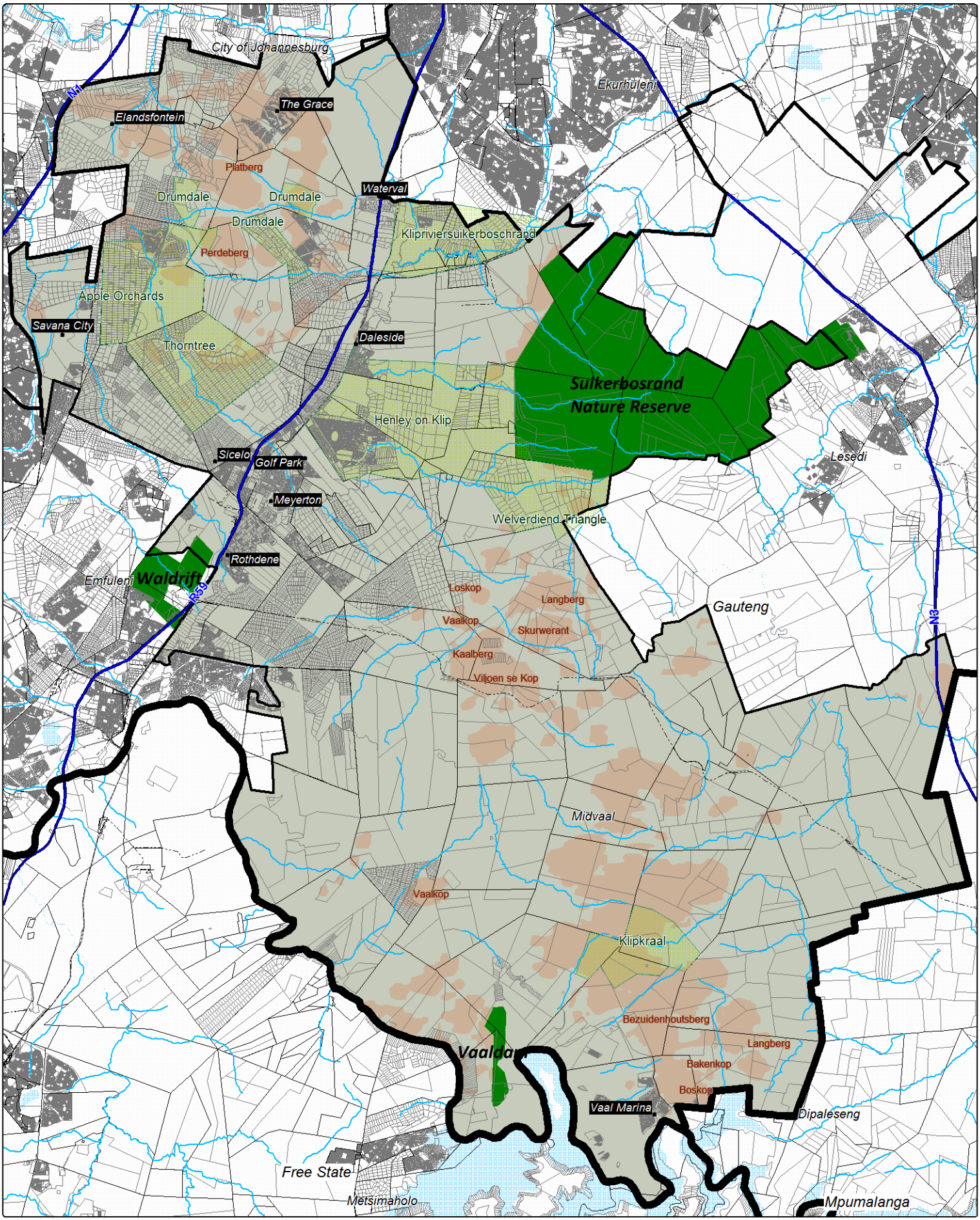
- Gauteng Hinterland
- Consolidation Zone
- Priority Intensification and Integration Zone
- Urban Reserves
- Provincial Activity Corridor
- Spatial Integration and Regeneration Priorities
- Township Regeneration
- Agri-Hubs
- EMF Zone 3 High Rural Control Zone
- Tourism
- Existing Strategic Roads
- Proposed GSRN Priorities
- Rail Network Existing
- Rail Network Proposed
- BRT Networks Planned
- BRT Networks Proposed Extension
- Major Mixed-Use Nodes
- Central Business District
- Major Employment Nodes
- Possible Major Mixed-Use Node (Linked to Future Gautrain Stations)
- Secondary Node
- Tourism Towns

N

0 5 10 20 30 40 50 km

UNITY IN DIVERSITY

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Protected Areas



Ridges
Nature Reserves
Conservancies
Dams and Rivers

15

Welverdiend Triangle Conservancy, Thorntree Conservancy, Henley-on-Klip Conservancy, Drumblade Conservancy, Apple Orchards Conservancy, Klipkraal Conservancy, and Vaaldam Conservancy.

5.4.5 Biodiversity

The Gauteng Conservation Plan (C-Plan 3.3) offers guidance with regards to the location of areas with high biodiversity including ridges and environmental corridors. As is evident from **Figure 16**, much of the north-western extents of the LM up to the R59 freeway, the entire area surrounding the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve in the north-east, the far-eastern corner of the LM, as well as the Vaal Marina precinct adjacent to the Vaal Dam in the south were earmarked as 'important' areas with regards to biodiversity. These precincts should be protected accordingly.

5.4.6 Gauteng Provincial EMF Guidelines

The Draft Gauteng Environmental Management Framework (EMF, 2014) is strongly linked to the Gauteng Spatial Development Framework (GSDF) and has divided the Province into five Environmental Zones, based on the desired prominent land use activity per zone, and related environmental guidelines (refer to **Figure 17**). The five zones are namely:

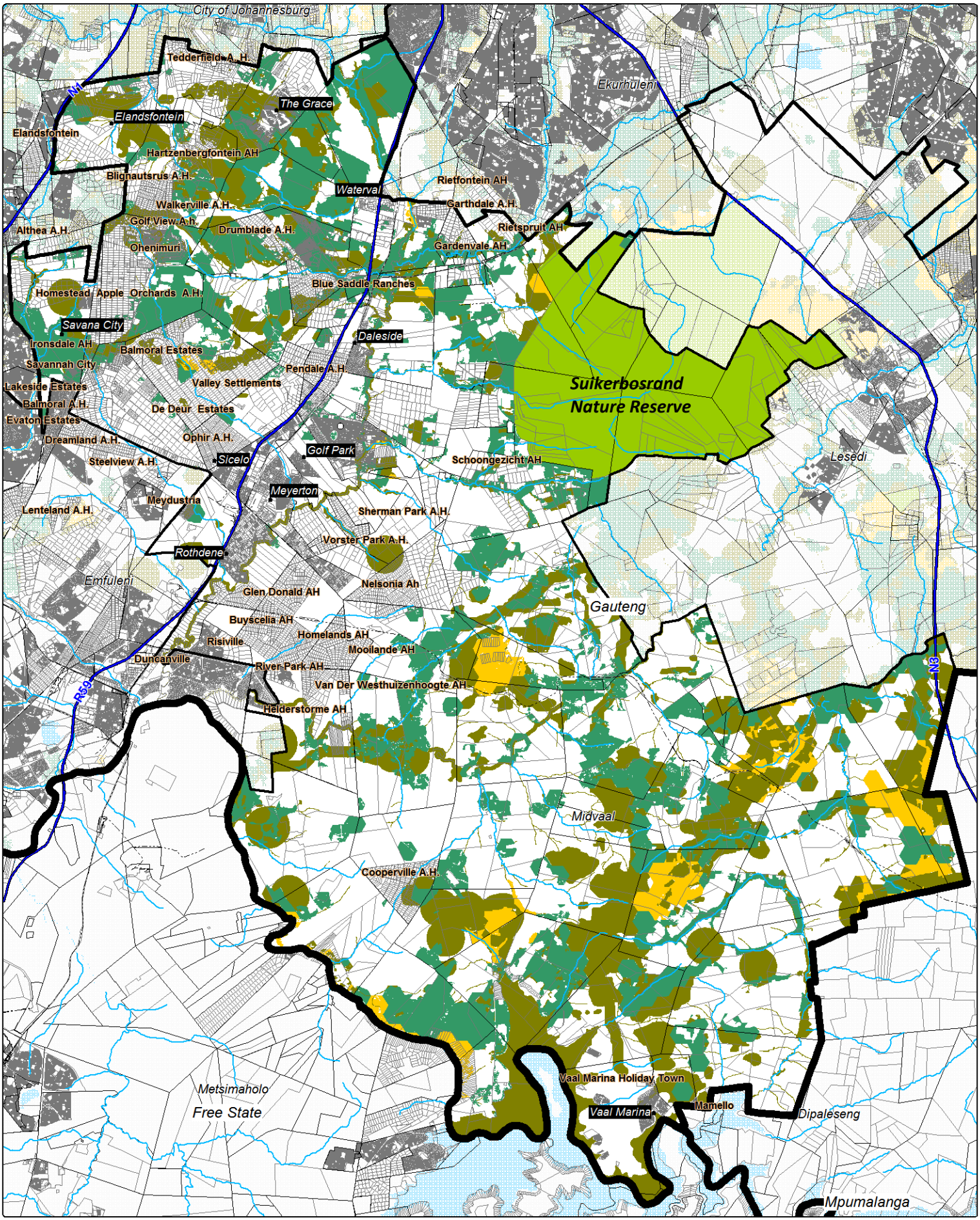
- Zone 1: Urban Development Zone
- Zone 2: High Control Zone (within the Urban Development Zone)
- Zone 3: High Control Zone (outside the Urban Development Zone)
- Zone 4: Normal Control Zone
- Zone 5: Industrial and Large Commercial Focus Zone

The five Zones are briefly summarised in the table below in terms of the intention, composition and conditions of each. Development in Midvaal should adhere to the EMF Guidelines as described.

Two additional categories exist, namely Protected Areas, together with a number of Special Management Zones. The Vaal Dam Special Management Zone and Johannesburg South Special Control Zone are relevant to the study area and are also described below.

Zone 1: Urban Development Zone
Intention
The intention with Zone 1 is to streamline urban development activities in it and to promote infill development, densification and concentration of urban development within the urban development zones as defined in the Gauteng Spatial Development Framework (GSDF). *Certain currently listed activities may be exempted from environmental assessment requirements at the discretion of the competent authority.*
Composition
The Urban Development Zone is composed of the following control areas (as per the GSDF):

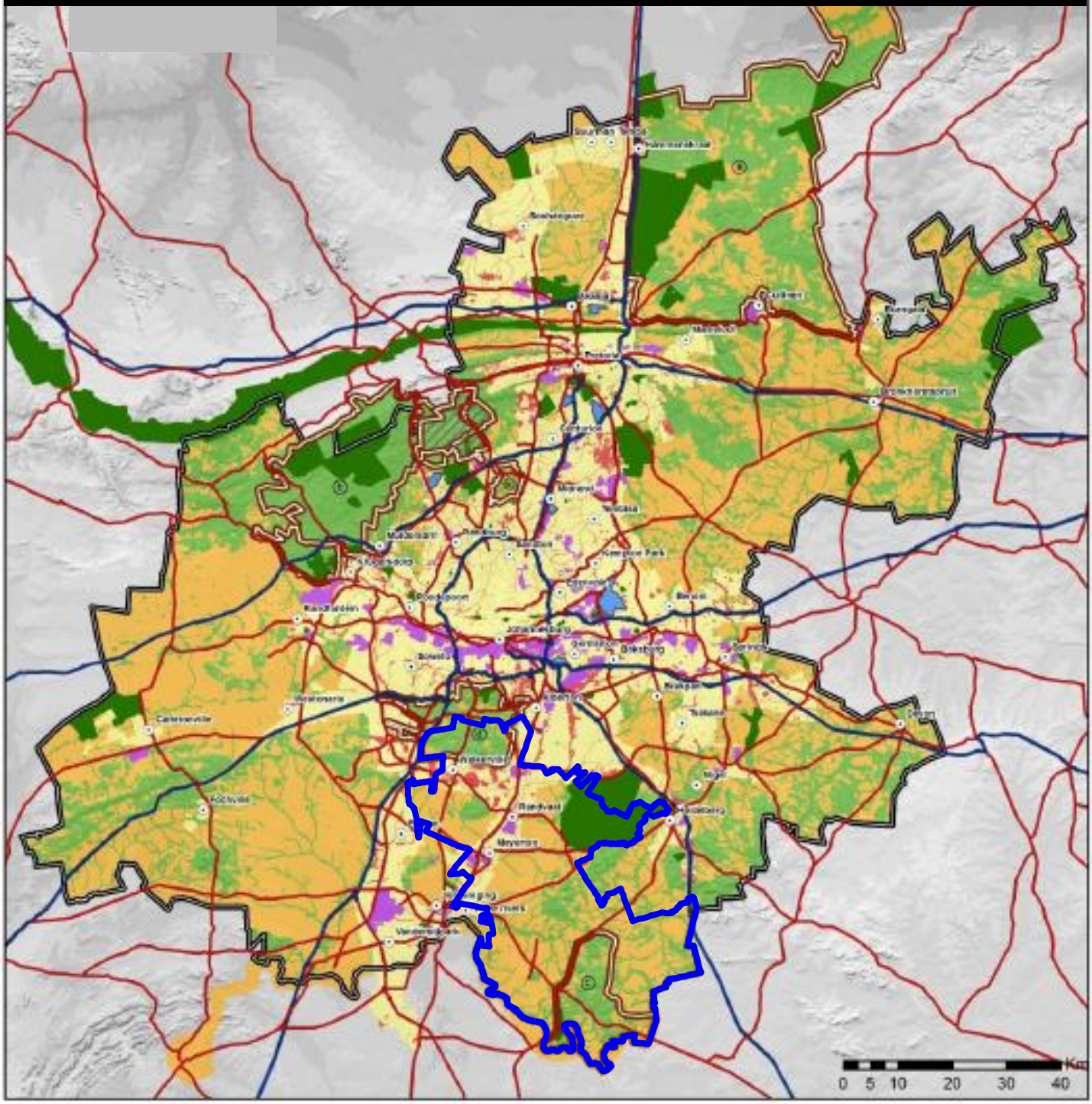
MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Biodiversity



Local Municipality
Cadastral Information
Ecological Support Area
Important Area
Irreplaceable Area
Protected Area
Dams
Rivers

16

Gauteng EMF



DRAFT ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ZONES

- Zone 5 Industrial and large commercial focus zone
- Zone 4: Normal control zone
- Zone 3: High control zone (outside the urban development zone)
- Zone 2: High control zone (within the urban development zone)
- Zone 1: Urban development zone
- Protected Areas
- Special Control Zones
- Proposed Renosterspruit Private Nature Reserve
- Gauteng Provincial Boundary
- Power Stations
- Major Airports

Roads

- National Road
- Arterial Road

Special Control Zones:
(a) Dinokeng
(b) CHKWHS
(c) Vaaldam
(d) Jhb South
(e) Jhb North

Gauteng EMF

N

Source: Gauteng EMF 2014

A78

- LC01: Urban existing developed land;
- LC02: Urban development priority;
- LC03: Rural development priority;
- LC04: Rural and urban development priority.
- ISM01: Conservation and agricultural priorities;
- ISM02: Conservation and urban development priorities;
- ISM03: Conservation, urban development and rural development priorities;
- ISM04: Agriculture and urban development priorities;
- ISM05: Agriculture, conservation and rural development priorities;
- ISM06: Agriculture, conservation and urban development priorities;
- ISM07: Agriculture, conservation, urban development and rural development priorities; and
- ISM08: Agriculture, rural and urban development priorities.

Conditions

- Development in this area must be sustainable in respect to the capacity of the environment and specifically the hydrological system to absorb additional sewage and stormwater loads as a result of increased densities;
- Existing open spaces should be retained as open space for the foreseen increased densities; and
- Apply the South African Guidelines for Sustainable Drainage Systems (Water Research Commission Report, 2012).

Application

- The entire area around the R59 Development Corridor as well as the east-west link from Klip River towards Walkerville, Elandsfontein and Ennerdale are included in this zone. Large scale developments around route R82 in the western parts of Midvaal like Lakeside/De Deur and Savannah City are, however, excluded.

Zone 2: High Control Zone (within the Urban Development Zone)

Intention

Sensitive areas within the urban development zone must be conserved and where linear development (roads etc.) cannot avoid these areas, a proper assessment and implementation of alternatives must be undertaken.

Composition

Sensitive areas within the Urban Development Zone include:

- Conservation priority areas (CBAs);
- Rivers (including 32m buffers);
- Ridges;
- Areas that are sensitive (as determined in the sensitivity assessment); and
- Protected areas.

Application

The ridges located in the Urban Development Zone between Klip River Business Park and Walkerville-Elandsfontein have been included under this category.

Zone 3: High Control Zone (outside the Urban Development Zone)

Intention

Special control zones are sensitive areas outside the urban development zone. These areas are sensitive to development activities and in several cases also have specific values that need to be protected.

Composition

The following areas have been identified in this zone:

- Rivers (including a 32m buffer on each side) and currently undeveloped Ridges that must be conserved;

- The maintenance of current protected areas;
- The creation of the Vaal Dam conservation and recreation area with the focus on grassland conservation and extensive recreation activities;
- The creation of the Johannesburg south conservation, recreation and intensive small scale agriculture area.

Conditions

No listed activities may be excluded from environmental assessment requirements in this zone and further activities may be added where necessary to protect the environment in this zone. Additional requirements (guidelines, precinct plans, etc.) to ensure the proper development of identified areas in this zone, in a manner that will *enhance their potential for conservation, tourism and recreation* may be introduced.

Application

The ridges in the agricultural hub of Midvaal in the south-east, and the ridges in the far-north-western extents of the municipality around Tedderfield and the Klip River Nature Reserve fall under this category.

Zone 4: Normal Control Zone

Intention

This zone is dominated by *agricultural uses* outside the urban development zone as defined in the Gauteng Spatial Development Framework. *No listed activities may be excluded from environmental assessment requirements in this zone.*

Composition

The normal control zone is comprised of the following areas outside the SDF area and special control areas:
LC01, LC02, LC03, LC04, ISM01, ISM02, ISM03, ISM04, ISM05, ISM06, ISM07, ISMO8 [see Zone 1 for details]

Application

All the areas characterised by extensive agriculture in Midvaal are included in this category.

Zone 5: Industrial and Large Commercial Focus Zone

Intention

The intention is to consolidate non-polluting industrial and large scale commercial (warehouses etc.) activities in areas that are already used for such purposes and areas that are severely degraded but in close proximity to required infrastructure (such as old and even current mining areas). *Certain currently listed activities, in addition to those intended for Zone 1 may be excluded from environmental assessment requirements in this zone*.

Conditions

- Development in this area must be sustainable in respect to the capacity of the environment and specifically the hydrological system to absorb additional sewage and stormwater loads of increased densities; and
- Development in this area must *identify any unmapped wetlands*, especially seep areas that may occur on any site and when necessary apply for the required water use licence.

Non-polluting Industrial Promotion Areas where selected activities are to be excluded from EIA processes in addition to those excluded in Zone 1.

Application

This category includes all the industrial/commercial clusters along the R59 Development Corridor.

Protected areas

Each protected area is required to have a management plan in terms of NEM: Protected Areas Act. Compatible, conditionally compatible and undesirable development and land-uses in protected areas

must therefore be determined in the management plan of each.
Vaal Dam Special Management Zone
While the normal EMZ guidelines will apply in this area, additional consideration needs to be given to the following: • Local tourism focused on the domestic market; • Intensive recreation next to the Vaal Dam; • Conservation of grassland habitat in the area; • Rural development that focusses on tourism and recreation; • Recreation.
Johannesburg South Special Control Zone (Klipriviersberg Economic and Ecosystem Development Zone [KEEDZ] project area)
Only a small portion of Midvaal LM falls within this Zone, namely the precinct between the Eye of Africa development/ Kliprivier drainage system and the R59 freeway. The Zone includes the SOJO and KlipSA initiatives. The normal EMZ guidelines will apply in this area but decisions should be taken with due regard of the current initiatives in the area, and in consultation with the City of Joburg and City of Ekurhuleni Metros.

5.5 MUNICIPAL SPATIAL STRUCTURE

5.5.1 Land Use Composition and Distribution

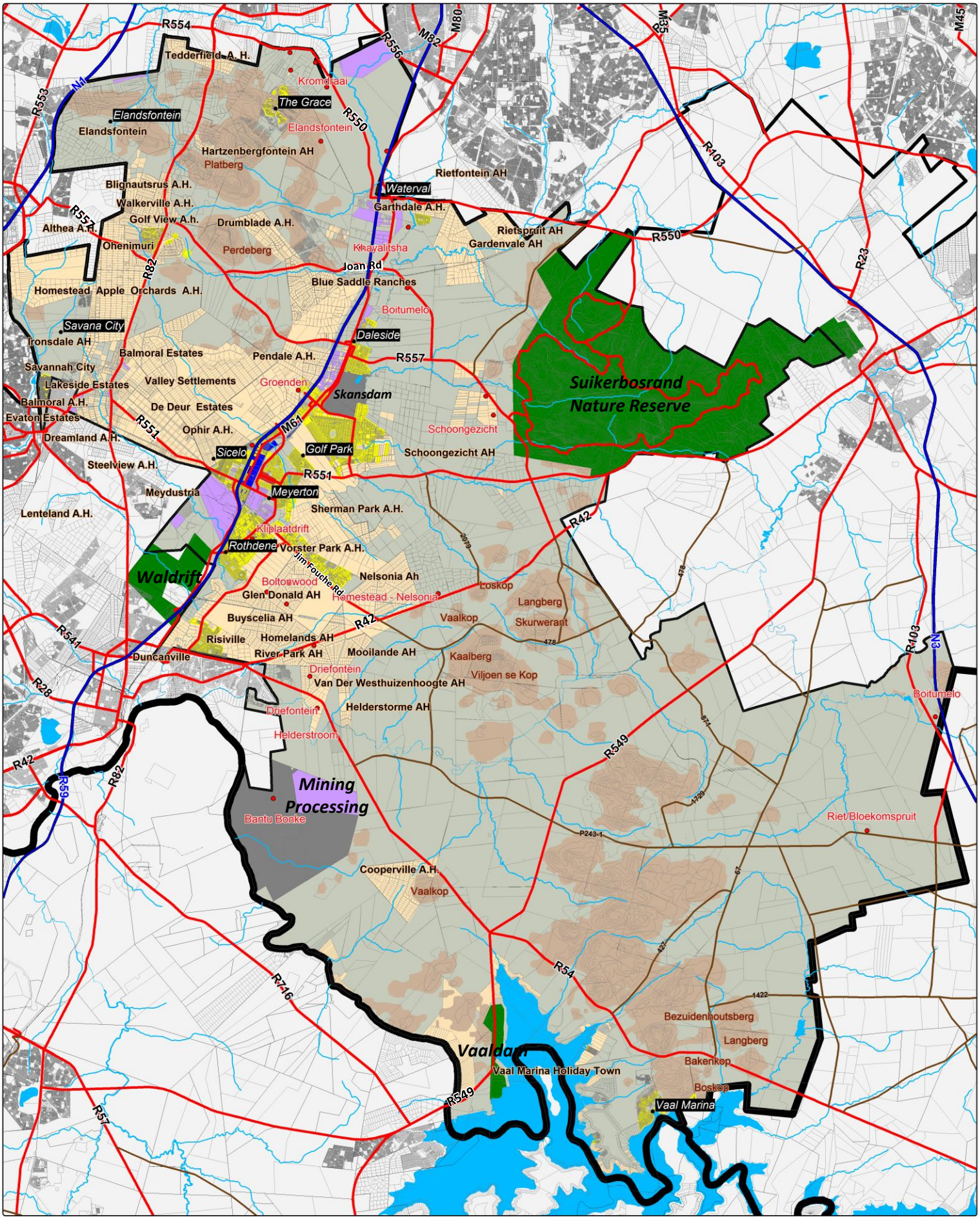
The Midvaal LM is approximately 1722 km^2 in extent and is predominantly rural in nature (**Figure 18**). It comprises extensive commercial farming areas which cover approximately 50% of the total municipal area. There are several natural features impacting on land use development in the municipal areas including the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve; the two clusters of ridges in the municipal area (north and south-east); the Vaal River and Vaal Dam to the south; and the Klip River running parallel to the east of route R59 through the central parts of the municipality.

Urban activities in Midvaal is mainly concentrated along the R59 freeway in the central extents of the municipal area while increased urbanisation pressure is also experienced in the De Deur area along route R82 to the west.

Meyerton town which includes Riversdal, Rothdene, Kookrus and Golf Park – represents the highest order urban complex in the Midvaal area and is located along the southern extents of route R59. Further towards the north along route R59 is Henly-on-Klip, Randvaal, Daleside and Waterval. This strip also comprises a large business and industrial land use component. The Vaal Marina represents the only urban development in the southern extents of the municipal area.

To the west, several small nodal developments occur along route R82 which is a major local transport link between Vereeniging and City of Joburg. These nodes include De Deur, Ohenimuri and Walkerville, and Tedderfield. Savannah City is a new mega city development located adjacent to the

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Spatial Structure, Land Use and Road Network



Extensive Agriculture
Industrial/Commercial
Residential
Rural Residential
Existing Mixed Use
CBD
Mining
Ridges
Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve
Dams and Rivers
Informal Settlements
National Roads
Main Roads
Secondary Roads

north-west of De Deur and which is developed as a functional extension of the larger Evaton-, Sebokeng-Orange Farm residential complex located adjacent to the west thereof.

Residential Settlement Patterns

a) Formal Residential

Midvaal comprises the following formal towns:

Table 4: Towns in the MLM Area

Meyerton	Risiville	The De Deur Estates	Highbury
Vaal Marina	Henley-on-Klip	Ohenimuri	Witkop
Klipwater	Meydustria	Witkop Industrial	Noldick
Eye of Africa	Duncanville	Golf Park	Randvaal
Eikenhof	Riversdale	Lakeside Estates	Rothdene
Klipriviersdorp (Kookrus)	Klipriver Business Park	Meyerton Small Farms	Sybrand van Niekerkpark
Sicelo	Vaal Marina	Vaalview Settlements	

Source: MLM IDP 2014/15

The largest residential township in the MLM are namely Ohenimuri, Lakeside, Meyerton Park, Meyerton Central and Risiville. All of these townships, with the exception of Ohenimuri, consist of large erven (in excess of 2000m² in some instances). A single dwelling house and subsidiary dwelling unit for domestic workers usually occupy these properties. The average stand size in Ohenimuri is 700m².

b) Informal Settlements

Since 2000 (when the MLM was established) numerous informal settlements have established in the municipality. Informal settlements often occur on land not suitable for housing development, such as within the 1:50 and 1:100 year flood line areas or areas with problematic geotechnical conditions (dolomite). The location of the 18 largest informal settlements is indicated with red dots on Figure 18. It is evident that the majority of informal settlements are consolidated along the R59 corridor close to urban areas, though there are a few informal settlements situated on farmland in the deep rural areas.

- **Rural Residential**

Table 5: Agricultural Holdings in the MLM Area

Blignautsrus A.H.	Blue Saddle Ranch	Buyscelia A.H.	Boltonwold A.H.
Cooperville A.H.	Gardenvale A.H.	De Balmoral Estates A.H.	Drumblade A.H.
Garthdale A.H.	Golfview A.H.	Homelands A.H.	Waterval A.H.
Hartzenbergfontein A.H.	Helderstrome A.H.	Mooilande	Homestead Apple Orchards A.H.
Ironside A.H.	McKay Estates	Orchards A.H.	Nelsonia A.H.

New Kentucky A.H.	Ophir A.H.	Shermanpark A.H.	Pendale A.H.
Risiville Small Farms	Riverpark A.H.	Vorsterpark A.H.	Tedderfield A.H.
Valley Settlements A.H.	Vanderwesthuizenshoogte A.H.	Glen Donald A.H.	Schoongezicht A.H.
Walkers Fruit Farms A.H.	Walkerville A.H.		

Source: MLM IDP 2014/15

Rural residential land use occurs in the form of farmhouses and houses on agricultural holdings. These activities are mostly concentrated in the north-western part of the municipal area, and more specifically around route R82 to the west, and along both sides (north and south) of route R42 between De Deur and Meyerton.

- **Smallholdings and Farms**

The agricultural holdings in Midvaal are mostly characterised by a main dwelling unit and subsidiary dwelling units where domestic workers and other labourers stay. Agricultural holdings in the area are used for small, intensive agricultural purposes, secondary industries, or pure residential purposes. Service levels on these agricultural holdings vary.

Farms are usually occupied by a main dwelling house and subsidiary dwelling units for farm labourers. Farms are mostly supplied with electricity by Eskom and provide their own water, sanitation and refuse removal services. Farmers mostly assist farm labourers with these services.

- **Business Nodes**:

The major business node within the MLM is the Meyerton CBD which is situated along the R59 freeway. The smaller nodal points, De Deur and Walkerville, also act as service centres to the surrounding local communities offering limited retail and commercial services.

The De Deur node along route R82 experiences significant pressure for expansion due to extensive residential development towards the west in Ironside, Lakeside and the eastern extensions of Evaton.

- **Industrial**:

Industrial activities are found mainly along the R59 freeway and are clustered in Meyerton, Daleside and Klipriver (R59 and R550 interchange) (refer to Figure 18). Industrial activity ranges from light to heavy and contains major industries such as the Heineken Bottling Plant, Everite and Samancor.

The Route R59 economic corridor currently extends from the Heineken Brewery and Klipriver Business Park to the north through to Samancor in Meydustria to the south and has the potential to expand in both directions. The southern extension of route R59 forms part of the “triangle” between Vereeniging, Vanderbijlpark and Evaton/ Sebokeng which was identified as the Sedibeng District’s economic core (GSDF).

Several smaller commercial activities are also located along route R82 to the west, but these are mainly builders yards/ hardware outlets serving the needs of the large clusters of low income residential areas that are located in close proximity.

- **Mining**:

The Glen Douglas Dolomite mine which is situated near Randvaal to the south of Meyerton, is the only operational mine in the area. Proposals for further mining in the area surrounding Bantu Bonke are being explored by mining companies such as Exxaro.

- **Tourism**:

The MLM has a number of areas with intrinsic potential for tourism, including areas such as the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve and numerous historical and other sites. A major asset with potential for tourism is the Vaal Dam and the precinct along the Vaal River, with potential for inter-provincial collaboration such as the Vaal 21 Initiative. Walkerville has potential for development as a tourism node, offering a range of art and craft shops, galleries, coffee shops and restaurant, and with a strong link to the surrounding agricultural and equestrian culture.

- **Agriculture**:

Agricultural activity in Midvaal comprise commercial farming operations such as crop production (including maize and grain) and animal production (including milk, beef, mutton and lamb, eggs and poultry). The performance of the agricultural sector in the municipal area is very dependent on climatic conditions and may fluctuate from year to year.

The south-eastern extents of the municipality form part of one of the Agri Hubs identified for Gauteng Province, and produces the bulk of the annual agricultural yield in the municipality.

5.5.2 Transport Network

Road Network

The existing road network as depicted on Figure 18 mainly caters for north-south movement through the Midvaal area due to the historic functional relationship between Johannesburg to the north and Vereeniging-Vanderbijlpark to the south thereof. The following are routes of national and/or provincial and local significance in and around the Midvaal area (refer to Figure 18):

- Route R59 which links Vereeniging with Alberton and the N12 in Johannesburg. This route is situated in the central part of Midvaal Local Municipality area and has been marketed as a development/ industrial corridor since the late 1990's;
- The N1 which is the major national north-south route linking Musina in the north to Cape Town in the south and which passes adjacent to the west of the Midvaal area;

- N3 which is the major transport link between Gauteng Province and Ethekwini (Durban) and which passes the Midvaal area a few kilometres to the north-east;
- Route R82, a secondary north-south route linking Vereeniging and Johannesburg via Walkerville and De Deur situated in the western parts of Midvaal. The route runs parallel to and midway between the N1 and the R59 freeways and attracts mixed use development around De Deur, Walkerville and Tedderfield. Gautrans is in the process of incrementally upgrading route R82 from north to south and the section from the City of Joburg up to just past Walkerville has been completed;
- The M61 is a secondary north-south route running parallel to route R59 linking Vereeniging and Alberton via Meyerton, Randvaal and Kliprivier;
- Route R42 runs east-west through Midvaal and links Meyerton to Heidelberg and the N17 in the Lesedi Local Municipality;
- Route R551 is an east-west route between the N1 and the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve. This road merges with route R42 at the Nature Reserve;
- Route R557 is an east-west link between the N3, route R59 and route R82 in Midvaal, linking Waterval and Walkerville to the N3;
- Route R54 links Vaal Marina to Meyerton and to route R82 further to the west; and
- Route R549 functions as the Heidelberg-Vaal Marina-Potchefstroom connector.

The condition of provincial roads in the MLM is generally poor and the routes require upgrading (MLM IDP). Excessive freight transport (overloading) and a lack of maintenance are contributing to the deterioration of provincial road infrastructure.

Stormwater is primarily drained via surface drains and channels which are cleaned annually (MLM IDP). Stormwater runoff is a particular problem in the rural areas where roads are not properly constructed/ maintained. During heavy rains damage is caused to roads by stormwater, rendering the roads unusable and requiring frequent maintenance and repair.

Railway Network

The main railway line in the Midvaal area stretches from north to south parallel to the R59 and connects Vereeniging with Germiston and Johannesburg. This railway is mainly used for freight services in Midvaal. To the west, and running along the far western border of the MLM in the vicinity of Savannah City, is a second line which serves as the main commuter line between Emfuleni municipality and the City of Joburg. There is a secondary railway line from this line, which traverses the area from east to west but it is not operational anymore.

Public Transport

The public transport system in Midvaal is as efficient as it can be at present to deliver a reliable service to all communities. Private transport seems to be the norm in the urban parts of the Midvaal

area while public transport is more commonly used in the rural areas. Route R82 is a major public transport corridor.

Taxis are the most dominant form of public transportation, followed by buses. The low levels of private vehicle ownership correspond with the low-income levels in the disadvantaged communities. This emphasises the need for public transport routes and facilities in the MLM. Population densities in the rural areas are however very low, which is not conducive to effective public transport.

Meyerton Station is the major modal transfer point between rail, bus and taxi in the Midvaal area. There is a need to develop the station and to pay particular attention to the safety of pedestrians crossing the roads between the taxi rank and bus stop. (Construct a pedestrian bridge over the R59 freeway linking Sicelo with the station).

Air Travel

The Aerovaal Airport is the only airport situated within the Sedibeng District. It is located within a proclaimed aeronautical airstrip (the Vereeniging Airport), on the boundary between Midvaal and Emfuleni, outside the jurisdiction of Midvaal (11 km to the north of Vereeniging and 4 km northwest of Meyerton). The airport has two runways and hangar facilities to accommodate approximately 64 aeroplanes.

The viability of rerouting cargo flights from the Johannesburg International Airport to this airport is currently being investigated, to alleviate airspace congestion. This holds tremendous opportunity for the Sedibeng District and particularly Midvaal in light of the proximity of the airport to Meyerton.

The only airfield situated within Midvaal is the Tedderfield Airfield. It is privately owned and is used mostly for recreational purposes by micro lights.

5.6 HOUSING PROFILE

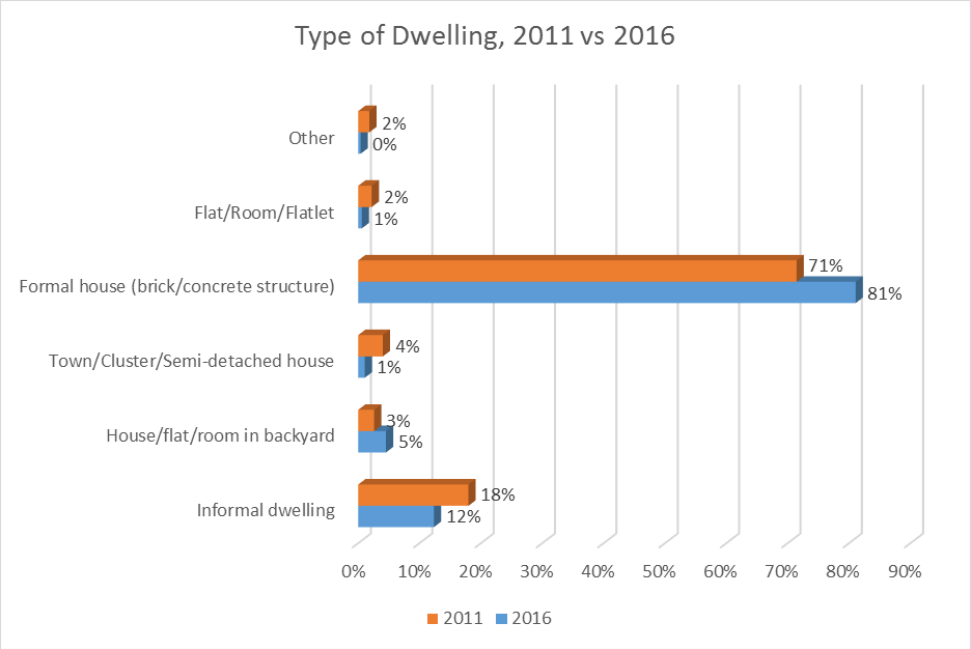
5.6.1 Dwelling Type

Diagram 6 gives an overview of the dwelling type composition in Midvaal LM as documented in the 2016 Community Survey.

It is evident that the dominant dwelling type is a house or brick structure on a separate stand or yard (81%), followed by informal dwellings in informal settlements representing 12% of all housing stock.

Backyard units represent about 5% of housing stock while townhouses and flats represent around 1% each.

Diagram 6: Dwelling Type - Midvaal LM (2011 vs 2016)



5.6.2 Housing Demand

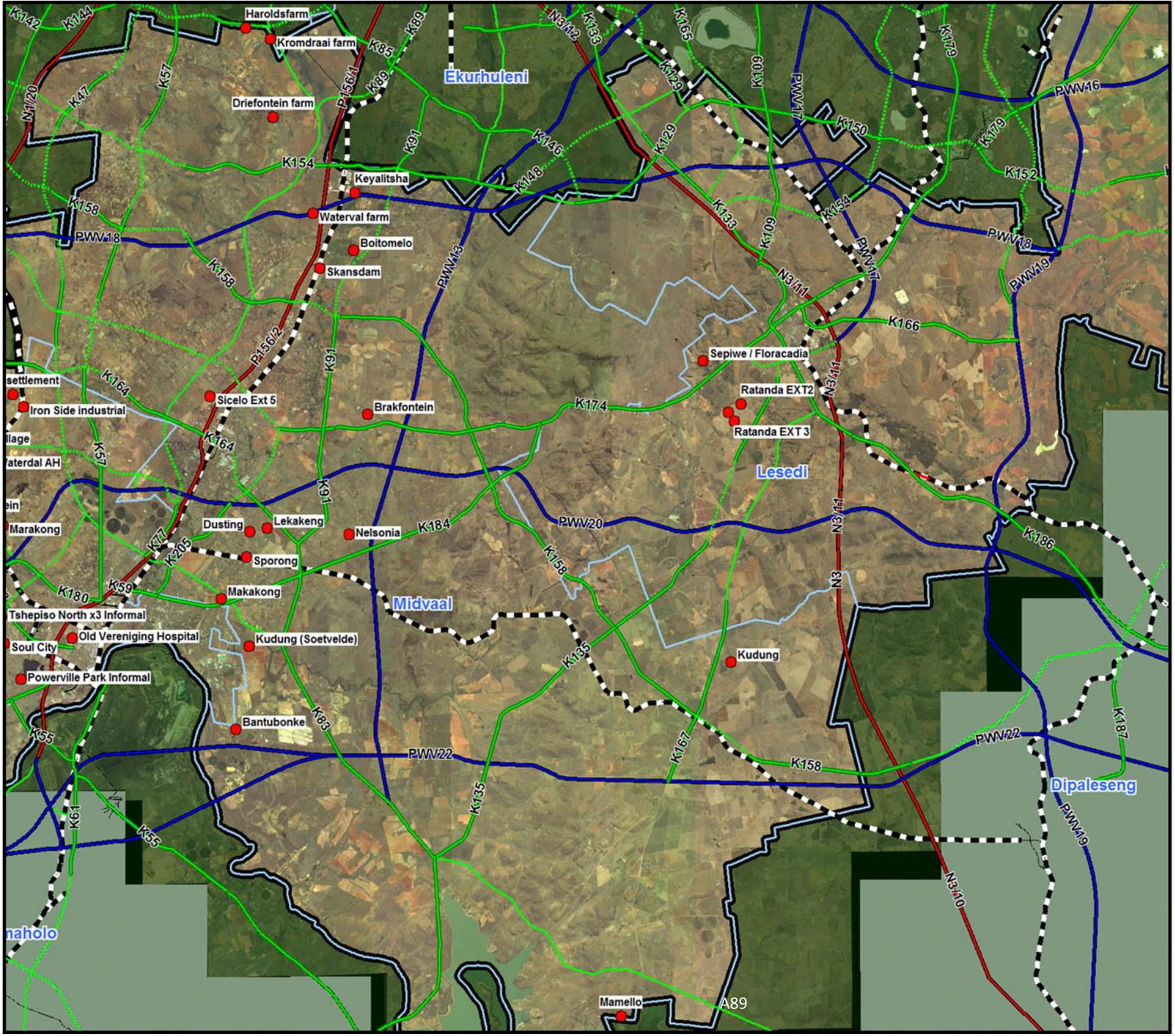
According to the Midvaal Clarification Report on Informal Settlements (Household Survey, 2013), the community survey conducted by the Red Ants Security Services estimated the housing backlog in the municipal area at 5497 units. This figure was however expected to increase once all the informal settlements had been enumerated (refer to **Figure 19** depicting the spatial distribution of informal settlements throughout the Midvaal area).

According to the Census 2011 data, the Municipality's backlog was estimated at **5546**, only slightly higher than the figure from the Red Ants Household Survey (see details below).

Table 6: MLM Housing Backlog (Census 2011)

Category	No. of Structures
Traditional dwelling / hut / structure	150
Informal dwelling / backyard shacks	944
Informal dwellings in informal settlement	4435
Caravan, tents or container	117
Total	**5546**

The Clarification Report concluded that the Census figure (5546) should be considered as the official housing backlog for planning purposes in the MLM.



SEDIBENG

SEDIBENG DM HUMAN SETTLEMENT PLAN

MIDVAAL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

- Informal Settlements

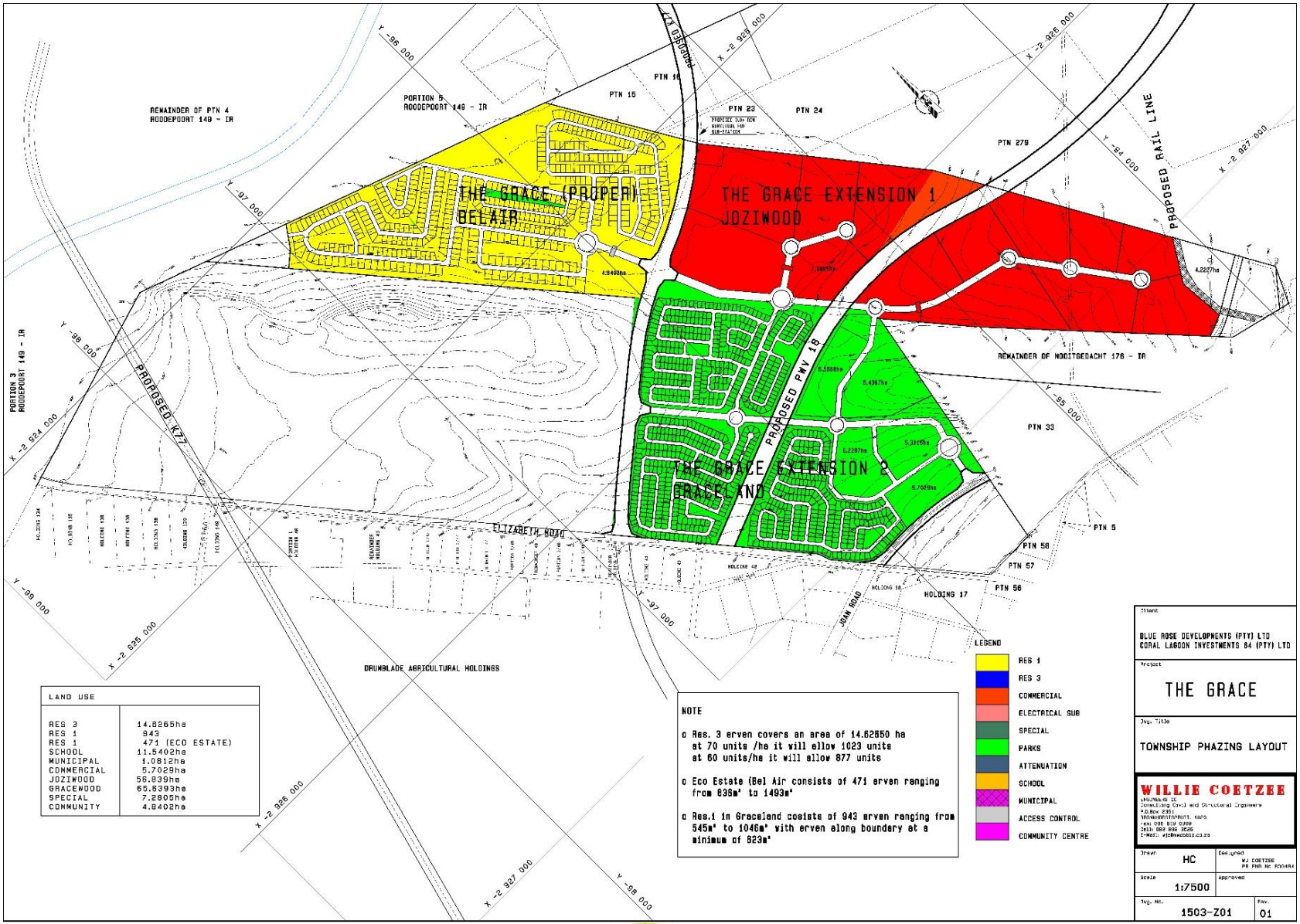
5.6.3 Housing Projects in Process (Supply)

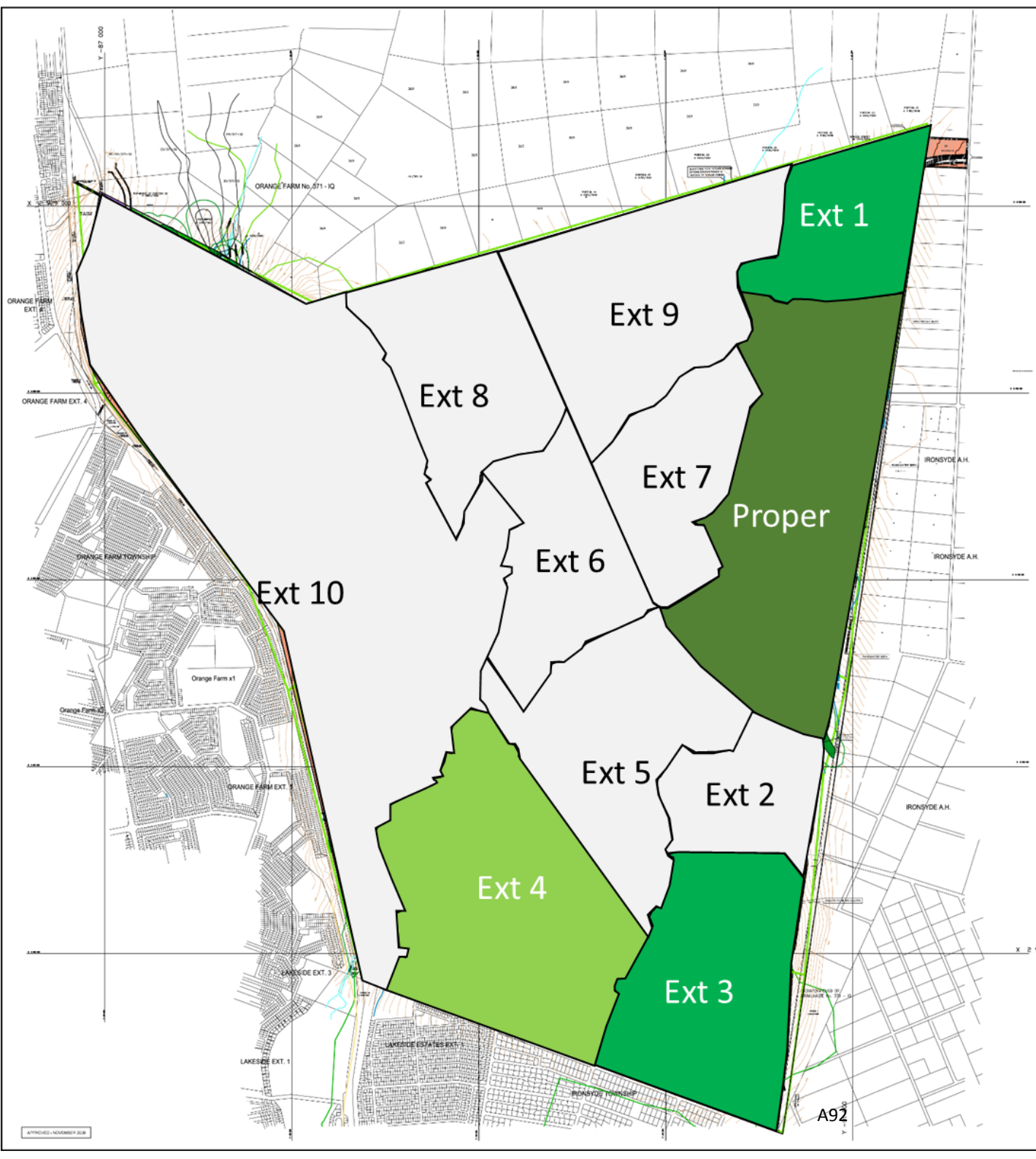
The Midvaal Migration Plan (2014) noted the following new housing projects underway in the study area. These are respectively listed as Private Sector (High and Middle Income) Bonded Housing (Low Income) Projects and Subsidy Housing Projects as noted below:

Middle and High Income Bonded Housing

1. The Grace township (**Figure 20**) is located to the west of Klipriver Business Park. The Grace provides approximately 1414 Res 1 residential units, with a subsidy component for 850 Res 3 Sectional Title units. The development will include mixed use and commercial stands.
2. Two smaller residential developments, Pine Valley and The Grace (referred to as The Grace EoA, to avoid confusion) are currently underway in the Eye of Africa (EoA) Residential Estate. These will consist of approximately 80 stands and are targeted at higher-income residents. They include a golf course, and may be classified as lifestyle estates.
3. Savanna City is the largest and most significant development in Midvaal LM (**Figures 21 and 22**). It borders Orange Farm in the City of Johannesburg. This development comprises 1462 Ha of land. It will offer 18 399 mixed income residential stands (with collective capacity for 19 264 dwelling units), together with various community facility and commercial stands. It is considered the largest development of its kind. More specifically, the development will comprise 5517 RDP houses, 5518 Finance Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP) housing opportunities, 2 635 Residential 3 units, and 4 729 bonded houses. It will also provide numerous fully subsidised housing options. When completed, the township will also include 16 schools, 32 institutional sites, 9 municipal sites and 9 business areas.

Table 7 depicts the status of the various extensions in Savannah City.


THE GRACE (PROPER)
BELAIR
THE GRACE EXTENSION 1
JOZIWOOD
THE GRACE EXTENSION 2
GRACELAND
REMAINDER OF PTN 4
ROODEPOORT 149 - IR
PORTION 5
ROODEPOORT 149 - IR
PORTION 3
ROODEPOORT 149 - IR
PTN 15
PTN 16
PTN 23
PTN 24
PTN 279
PTN 33
PTN 5
PTN 58
PTN 57
PTN 56
HOLDING 17
REMAINDER OF MOOITGEDACHT 176 - IR
PROPOSED RAIL LINE
PROPOSED K77
PROPOSED PWV 18
ELIZABETH ROAD
JOAN ROAD
DRUMBLADE AGRICULTURAL HOLDINGS
LAND USE
RES 3 14.8265ha
RES 1 943
RES 1 471 (ECO ESTATE)
SCHOOL 11.5402ha
MUNICIPAL 1.0812ha
COMMERCIAL 5.7029ha
JOZIWOOD 58.839ha
GRACEWOOD 65.8393ha
SPECIAL 7.2805ha
COMMUNITY 4.8402ha
NOTE
o Res. 3 erven covers an area of 14.82850 ha at 70 units /ha it will allow 1023 units at 60 units/ha it will allow 877 units
o Eco Estate (Bel Air consists of 471 erven ranging from 838m² to 1493m²
o Res.1 in Graceland cosists of 943 erven ranging from 545m² to 1046m² with erven along boundary at a minimum of 823m²
LEGEND
RES 1
RES 3
COMMERCIAL
ELECTRICAL SUB
SPECIAL
PARKS
ATTENUATION
SCHOOL
MUNICIPAL
ACCESS CONTROL
COMMUNITY CENTRE
Client
BLUE ROSE DEVELOPMENTS (PTY) LTD
CORAL LAGOON INVESTMENTS 84 (PTY) LTD
Project
THE GRACE
Dwg. Title
TOWNSHIP PHAZING LAYOUT
WILLIE COETZEE
Drawn HC
Designed WJ COETZEE PR PNR Nr R00484
Scale 1:7500
Approved
Dwg. Nr. 1503-Z01
Rev. 01



??
??
??
??

PROJECT

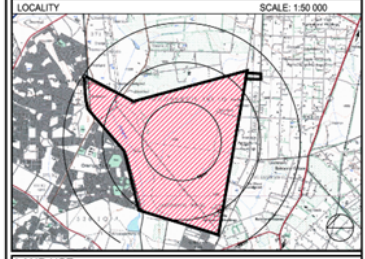
PLAN SHOWING AMENDMENTS TO THE APPROVED

SAVANNA CITY

SITUATED ON RE/1, 9, RE/10, 11, 12, AND RE/18 OF THE FARM DOORNKUIL 369-IQ

LOCAL AUTHORITY : Midvaal Local Municipality
DISTRICT : Sedibeng District Municipality
GEODETICAL SYSTEM : WG 27

LOCALITY — SCALE: 1:50 000



LAND USE

ZONING	LAND USE		No. OF STANDS	AREA OF STANDS & STREETS	% of STANDS
RESIDENTIAL 1 (14000)	RESIDENTIAL (1800)		1023	282,01	19,39
	SEMI-DETACHED		1341	16,37	1,13
RESIDENTIAL 3	HIGH DENSITY RESIDENTIAL SECTIONAL TITLE		11	40,74	2,80
BUSINESS 1	BUSINESS, OFFICES, RESTAURANTS, SHOPS, LIGHT INDUSTRIES & PRIVATE CLUBS		9	34,62	2,39
SPECIAL	SPECIAL: TRANSFER AND ANCILLARY USES, SHOPS AND TRADING		4	14,08	1,03
	STREET AND RAIL PURPOSES		2	3,16	0,22
	PARKING		1	0,94	0,01
	ACCESS CONTROL & GATE HOUSE		20	4,79	3,30
	NON LAND USE: MEDIA, TRANSFER FACILITY, REGIONAL SHOPPING CENTRE, COMMERCIAL, POLICE STATION, GOVERNMENT BUILDINGS, INDUSTRIAL BUILDINGS & OFFICES		7	37,8	2,60
EDUCATIONAL	SCHOOL & CRECHES		11	58,62	4,69
MUNICIPAL	COMMUNITY FACILITY & MUNICIPAL USES		1	1,58	0,12
	GENERAL		6	13,97	0,97
	MUNICIPAL RETENTION PONDS (STORMWATER ATTENUATION)		2	1,53	0,11
			1	1,61	0,11
INSTITUTIONAL	COMMUNITY FACILITY		14	15,14	1,31
	CRECHE		5	4,58	0,31
	CHURCH		8	5,34	0,37
PUBLIC OPEN SPACE	PARKS		68	108,48	7,50
	POWER LINE SERVITUDES (INCLUDING PONDS, RAINDWATER SERVITUDES		18	25,93	1,74
	RETENTION PONDS (STORMWATER ATTENUATION AND MUNICIPAL SERVICES		15	22,24	1,53
	CONSERVATION AREA		7	378,95	26,06
PRIVATE OPEN SPACE	PARKS OR SERVITUDE AREAS		27	14,75	1,01
	RETENTION PONDS (STORMWATER ATTENUATION)		14	16,15	1,09
STREETS	PUBLIC			361,13	25,71
	PRIVATE		16	45,65	3,37
TOTAL			14692	1454,19Ha	100%

GENERAL NOTES

THIS FIGURE ABCDEFGHJKL REPRESENTS OUTSIDE BOUNDARY OF THE SAVANNA CITY BEING APPROXIMATELY 1404,19Ha IN EXTENT.

OUTSIDE FIGURE
GEOTECHNICAL ZONES
1:100 YEARS FLOODLINE
LINE OF NO ACCESS
FARM PORTIONS
ESTATE BOUNDARY
HERITAGE SITES (Graves to be relocated)
WETLAND BOUNDARY AND 30m BUFFER

CLIENT / TOWNSHIP ESTABLISHER

SUGAR CREEK TRADING 101 PTY (LTD)

TOWN PLANNER: L. Groenewald

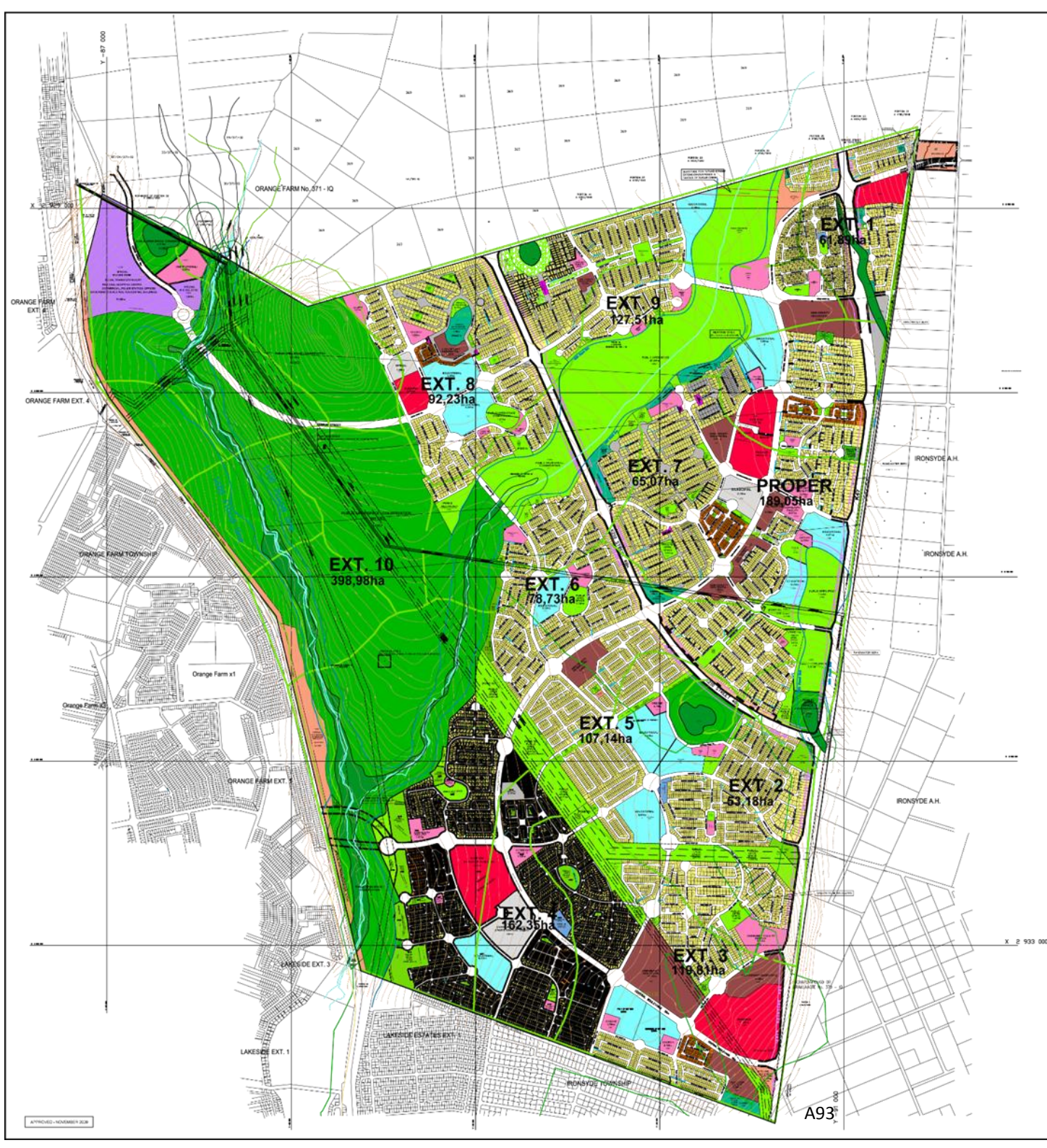
COPYRIGHT RESERVED

SCALE : 1 : 7 500

DRAWING No.
SAV0LAY
A1/18.10.2015

LAYOUT PLAN STATUS:
UPDATED APPROVED PLAN TO LATEST AMENDMENTS

URBAN DYNAMICS
37 EMPIRE STREET
PARKTOWN
P.O. BOX 291803
MELVILLE
2109
TEL: (+27 11) 482-4131
FAX: (+27 11) 482-9069
E-MAIL: www.urbandynamics.co.za



PROJECT

PLAN SHOWING AMENDMENTS TO THE APPROVED

SAVANNA CITY

SITUATED ON RE/1, 9, RE/10, 11, 12, AND RE/18 OF THE FARM DOORNKUIL 369-IQ

LOCAL AUTHORITY :	Midvaal Local Municipality
DISTRICT :	Sedibeng District Municipality
GEODETICAL SYSTEM :	WG 27

LOCALITY — SCALE: 1:50 000







GENERAL NOTES

RESIDENTIAL SITES

The average size of low density sites is 700m²
The minimum size of residential sites is 600m².
Standard dimensions of residential sites are 20m² x 30m².
The minimum width of panhandle accesses is 3m.
No dye via panhandle sheets are allowed.

Access widths of all internal streets are indicated on the plan. Highways on all Class 3 streets are 6metres, and a class 4 streets are 10 x 10m.

Maximum slope on roads is 1:20
Minimum slope on roads is 1:150



CERTIFICATION:
EXTRACT OF OVERALL PLAN

AMENDMENTS

A	LAYOUT AMENDED IN ACCORDANCE WITH COMMENTS AND PANEL MEETING COMMENTS	L. Pullen	14.08.2015
B	UPDATE LAYOUT BASED ON COMMENTS RECEIVED	J. Pienaar	15.10.2015
C	LAND USE TABLE ADJUSTED	J. Pienaar	21.10.2015
D	AMEND PHASING FROM MEYRO CITY TO SAVANNA CITY AND UPDATE LAND USE TABLE	J. Pienaar	29.06.2015
E	CORRECTION OF PHASE 1 BOUNDARY	J. Pienaar	03.06.2015
F	WETLAND AREA ADJUSTED ON INCLUDED & 50m ENVIRONMENTAL BUFFER COMMENCE WITH ENVIRONMENTAL BUFFER AREA AND INCLUDE NORTH WEST CORRIDOR RECONFIGURED	J. Pienaar	04.09.2015
G	AMEND ACCESS AS PER ARQUS GIBS ENGINEERING AND ENVIRONMENTAL EXCLUDE ON SITE CONFIRMED BY ENVIRONMENTALIST. 50 WIDE BUFFER ON AREAS EXTENDED. ZONE 10 RELOCATED AS REQUESTED BY ARQUS GIBS AND ATKINS (COMPANIES)	J. Pienaar	19.08.2015
H			
I	AMEND PHASES ON TITLE	J. P Pienaar	09.06.2015
J	AMEND LAND USE TABLE	J. Pienaar	02.10.2015
K	AREAS ADJUSTED AS PER REVISIONAL LAYOUT PLAN FOR EXTENSION 10 (RE)	J. Pienaar	07.10.2015
L	AMENDMENTS AS PER LAYOUT ACCOMMODATE THE LATEST AMENDMENTS	J. P Pienaar	09.10.2015

LAND USE

ZONING	LAND USE		No. OF STANDS	AREA OF STANDS & STREETS	% of STANDS
RESIDENTIAL 1 (1400)	RESIDENTIAL 1400	1400 - 2000	13203	282,31	19,36
	SEMI-DETACHED	1000 - 1400	1341	16,97	1,13
RESIDENTIAL 3	HIGH DENSITY RESIDENTIAL (SECTIONAL TITLES)	1000 - 1400	15	40,74	2,80
BUSINESS 1	BUSINESS 1 (CBD, RETAIL, SHOPS, OFFICES, SERVICE INDUSTRIES)	1000 - 1400	5	34,62	2,38
SPECIAL	SPECIAL (HOSPITALS AND AMBULANCE USES, SHOPS AND OFFICES)	1000 - 1400	4	14,08	1,00
	STREET AND RAIL PURPOSES	1000 - 1400	2	3,16	0,22
	RAILWAYS	1000 - 1400	1	0,94	0,06
	ACCESS CONTROL & GATEHOUSES	1000 - 1400	20	4,79	3,33
	MIX LAND USE (RETAIL, TRANSPORT FACILITY, REGIONAL SHOPPING CENTRE, OFFICES, SERVICE INDUSTRY, GOVERNMENT BUILDINGS, INSTITUTIONAL BUILDINGS & SPECIAL)	1000 - 1400	2	37,8	2,60
EDUCATIONAL	SCHOOL & FACILITIES	1000 - 1400	11	58,62	4,03
MUNICIPAL	MUNICIPALITY FACILITY & MUNICIPAL UNITS	1000 - 1400	1	1,08	0,12
	GENERAL	1000 - 1400	6	13,97	0,97
	NURSING, RETENTION POND & STORMWATER ATTENUATION	1000 - 1400	2	1,53	0,11
		1000 - 1400	1	1,67	0,11
INSTITUTIONAL	COMMUNITY FACILITY	1000 - 1400	14	19,14	1,31
	CRECHE	1000 - 1400	9	4,58	0,31
	CHURCH	1000 - 1400	8	5,34	0,37
PUBLIC OPEN SPACE	PARKS	1000 - 1400	68	126,48	7,32
	POWER LINE SERVITUDES & PIPELINE SERVITUDES (MAINTAIN AS NATURAL)	1000 - 1400	16	25,53	5,74
	RECREATION PONDS (STORMWATER ATTENUATION AND MUNICIPAL SERVICES)	1000 - 1400	15	22,24	1,53
	CONSERVATION AREA	1000 - 1400	7	378,95	25,96
PRIVATE OPEN SPACE	PARKS ON BUFFER AREAS	1000 - 1400	27	14,75	1,01
	RECREATION PONDS (STORMWATER ATTENUATION)	1000 - 1400	14	15,75	1,08
STREETS	PUBLIC			361,13	23,71
	PRIVATE		10	47,45	3,37
TOTAL			14692	1454,19 Ha	100%

GENERAL NOTES

THE FIGURE ABCDEFGHJKL REPRESENTS OUTSIDE BOUNDARY OF THE SAVANNA CITY BEING APPROXIMATELY 1404,19ha IN EXTENT.

OUTSIDE FIGURE
GEOTECHNICAL ZONES
1:100 YEARS FLOODLINE
LINE OF NO ACCESS
FARM PORTIONS
ESTATE BOUNDARY
HERITAGE SITES (Graves to be relocated)
WETLAND BOUNDARY AND 30m BUFFER

CLIENT / TOWNSHIP ESTABLISHER

SUGAR CREEK TRADING 101 PTY (LTD)

TOWN PLANNER: L. Groenewald

COPYRIGHT RESERVED

SCALE : 1 : 7 500

DRAWING No.
SAV0LAY A1/18.10.2015

LAYOUT PLAN STATUS:
UPDATED APPROVED PLAN TO LATEST AMENDMENTS

URBAN DYNAMICS
37 EMPIRE STREET
PARKTOWN
P.O. BOX 291803
MELVILLE
2109
TEL: (+27 11) 482-4131
FAX: (+27 11) 482-3993
E-MAIL: www.urbandynamics.co.za

Table 7: Status Quo of Approvals and Serviced Sites: Savannah City

	Development / Approval Status	Savannah City											
1	DEVELOPMENT RIGHTS APPROVED	Proper	Ext 1	Ext 2	Ext 3	Ext 4	Ext 5	Ext 6	Ext 7	Ext 8	Ext 9	Ext 10	Node Total
1.1	ROD	yes											**0**
1.2	Township established (COE approved)	3444	1089	1039	3244	3163	1841	1311	1485	1419	1229	0	**19264**
1.3	Section 101												**0**
1.4	Township Register opened	in process	yes	no	yes	yes	no	no	no	no	no	no	**0**
1.5	Township proclaimed	in process	yes	no	yes	yes	no	no	no	no	no	no	**0**
	SUB-TOTAL	**3444**	**1089**	**1039**	**3244**	**3163**	**1841**	**1311**	**1485**	**1419**	**1229**	**0**	**19264**
2	**SERVICE DESIGNS APPROVED**												
2.1	Water	yes	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
2.2	Sewer	yes	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
2.3	Electricity	yes	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
2.4	Roads	yes	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
2.5	Stormwater	yes	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
	SUB-TOTAL	**3444**	**1089**		**3244**	**3163**							**10940**
3	**ENGINEERING SERVICES AGREEMENTS CONCLUDED**												
3.1	Water	No	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
3.2	Sewer	No	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
3.3	Electricity	No	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
3.4	Roads	No	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
3.5	Stormwater	No	yes	No	yes	yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
	SUB-TOTAL		**1089**		**3244**	**3163**							**7496**
4	**PROCUREMENT PROCESS COMPLETED**												
4.1	Water	No	yes	No	yes	Various sections serviced	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
4.2	Sewer	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
4.3	Electricity	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
4.4	Roads	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
4.5	Stormwater	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
	SUB-TOTAL		**1089**		**3244**	**1600**							**5933**
5	**CONTRACTS AWARDED**												
5.1	Water	No	yes	No	yes	Various sections serviced	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
5.2	Sewer	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
5.3	Electricity	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
5.4	Roads	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
5.5	Stormwater	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
	SUB-TOTAL		**1089**		**3244**	**1600**							**5933**
6	**SITES SERVICED**												
6.1	Water	No	yes	No	yes	Various sections serviced	No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
6.2	Sewer	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
6.3	Electricity	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
6.4	Roads	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
6.5	Stormwater	No	yes	No	yes		No	No	No	No	No	No	**0**
	SUB-TOTAL		**1089**		**3244**	**1600**							**5933**

Subsidy Housing

There are four subsidy housing focus areas in the LM, namely in Sicelo near Meyerton, in Mamello close to the Vaal Dam, and in The Grace and Savanna City developments. The six Subsidy Housing projects in process are summarised in the table below:

Table 8: Subsidised Housing Projects

Project	Project Size	Typology	Approved Beneficiaries
The Grace (Application under consideration)	1469 Stands	• Res 3 – ±850 Low Income walk-up units with Sect. title (give-aways) • Other Com. Fac. And mixed use stands	• No • Will target the Kayelitcha, Boitumelo & Piels Farm Informal Settlements
Mamello Ext 1 (New Development)	565 Stands	• 465 low cost houses • 50 give away units with a backyard rental unit	• Beneficiary allocation process to commence soon • Project is to relocate the entire Mamello informal settlement
Sicelo (Erf 204 Meyerton Farms)	430 Stands	• 430 low cost houses	• Yes • 1,800 approved beneficiaries from the Sicelo informal settlement
Sicelo (Erf 78 Meyerton Farms)	+/- 700 Dwelling Units	• 700 Walk-up units with Sectional title	• 700 approved beneficiaries from the Sicelo informal settlement
Sicelo 2 Blocks Upgrading of Informal Settlement Area	± 1000 Units	• ± 1000 Units • Upgrading of basic infrastructure (Incl. electricity)	• Balance of residents not accommodated in other Sicelo Projects (Mainly non-qualifiers)
Savanna City	18,399 Mixed residential stands Other community Facility and mixed use stands	• 5517 fully subsidized houses • 5518 FLISP • 4729 bonded houses • 2635 Res 3 (Rental or Sect. Title)	• No • Open to all residents with preference to the MLM residents.
Total Number of Units	**14 580**		

Source: Household Survey, 2013

Summary: Current and Future Demand

- There are currently 33 665 households in the MLM (2014).
- The official backlog with regards to informal settlements and backyard units (according to Census 2011) was confirmed to be 5546 units.
- The projected additional demand up to 2020 is about 1472 housing units per annum from 2014. There will be a need for an estimated 8830 additional housing units in the MLM by 2020 based on the above.
- Hence, the total demand for 2020 is 14 376 units (8830 increment and 5546 backlog).
- The total future housing supply by 2020 (based on housing projects currently in process) is calculated at 23 438 units (comprising 8858 middle and high income units, and 14 580 subsidised units).
- It can be concluded that there is sufficient projects currently in progress to accommodate the current and projected demand in Midvaal up to 2020 and even beyond. (See **Table 9** below)

Table 9: Housing Supply and Demand Summary

Area	Full Ownership			Rental/Sectional Title		Total
	Bonded	FLISP	Subsidised	Bonded	Subsidised	
The Grace (Blue Rose)	1414				850	2264
Pine Valley	52					52
The Grace (Eye of Africa)	28					28
Savannah City	4729	5518	5517	2635		18 399
Mamello X1			465 + 50		50	565
Sicelo Erf 204			430			430
Sicelo Erf 78			700			700
Sicelo (Two Blocks)			1000			1000
Total	**6223**	**5518**	**8162**	**2635**	**900**	**23 438**
Subsidised		5518	8162		900	14 580
Bonded	6223			2635		8858

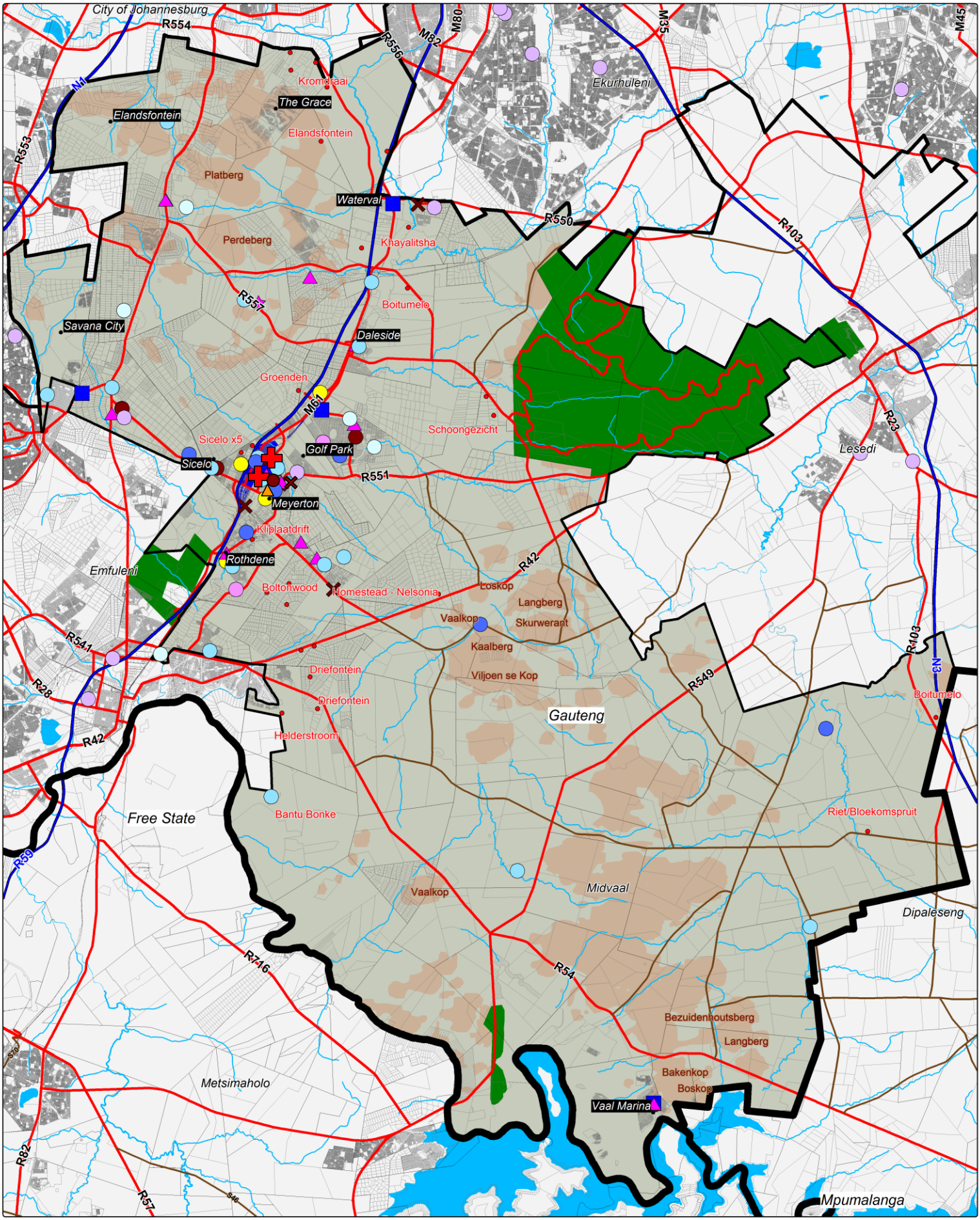
Note: Total demand up to 2020 = 8830 increment + 5546 backlog = 14 376 units.

5.7 COMMUNITY FACILITIES

There are various social facilities located throughout the municipal area which contribute towards the social development of local communities. **Table 10** below and **Figure 23** provide an indication of the quantity and distribution of community services/ facilities in the municipal area. Note that the community facilities on Figure 23 are spaced such that all symbols are visible – they thus do not reflect their exact location but rather indicate spatial trends (clusters etc.).

It is evident that there are concentrations of community facilities in Meyerton, Henley-on-Klip, De Deur and Vaal Marina. There are limited community facilities in the eastern rural areas because facilities are mainly clustered in the urban core areas/ activity nodes along the R59 and R82 corridors, as well as in Vaal Marina.

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Community Facilities



Midvaal Local Municipality
Nature Reserve
Dams and Rivers
Main Roads
Class 3 Roads
Railways
Government/Municipal Office
Magistrate Court
Fire Station
Library
Police Station
Postal Service
Community Halls
A97
Landfill Site
Clinic
Hospital
Cemetery/Crematorium
Combined School
Primary School
Secondary School
Special Needs School

Table 10: Community Facilities

Facility	Quantity
Private hospital	1
Clinic	3
Mobile Clinic	4
Fire station	2
Police station	4
Libraries	6
Thusong Centre	1
Magistrate's Court	1
Municipal Office	2
Landfills	3
Community Halls	7
Post Offices	6
SASSA office (social service)	1
Cemeteries/ Crematoria	3
Primary schools	17
Secondary schools	5
Combined schools	7
Special Education Schools	3

Education

Educational facilities include primary, secondary and combined schools, as well as special needs schools. Access to educational facilities is critically important to local communities as it enables livelihoods and growth in skilled labour.

Primary schools are essential in establishing foundation phase education. Primary schools are distributed throughout the municipality and can be found mostly in the central and western regions, with limited facilities in the eastern region. Secondary schools in the MLM are mainly clustered around Meyerton. Secondary schools also offer training to adults. The three special needs schools are located in Waterval, Meyerton and De Deur. These provide dedicated education for people with disabilities.

There are no Tertiary academic institutions in Midvaal. Given the extent of the agricultural land in Midvaal and surrounds, an Agricultural College will likely benefit the agricultural industry (MLM IDP).

Health

There are no public hospitals in Midvaal, and only one private hospital in Meyerton. Furthermore, there are three clinics, namely in Meyerton, Randvaal and Kookrus. There is also one community day centre and four (4) mobile units in the MLM.

Sport and Recreational Facilities

Midvaal Local Municipality has three (3) quality sporting facilities. This is, however, insufficient to serve the entire municipal area.

Safety and Security

Police stations are distributed throughout the municipal area, with offices in Meyerton, Waterval, De Deur and Vaal Marina.

Disaster Management

Fire stations are important facilities for promoting safety and security in local communities. There are fire stations in Meyerton and Vaal Marina. According to the IDP there is a need for a disaster management centre, and the Vaal Marina fire station needs to be upgraded.

Municipal

The primary municipal offices are situated in Meyerton and there is a regional office in Vaal Marina to provide a direct access point for local communities in the southern parts of the LM (MLM Migration Plan, 2013).

Community Halls

Community halls refer to a combination of town halls and multi-purpose community centres (MPCC). These facilities provide central locations in which to conduct community meetings, and serve as gathering points. There are town halls in Meyerton and Rothdene, with community halls or MPCCs in Vaal Marina, Bantu-Bonke, Lakeside Estate, Henley-on-Klip and Ohenimuri.

Post Offices

Post offices provide access to mail and services such as licence renewals, certification and banking. Post office facilities are distributed throughout the larger urban areas of Midvaal, including Daleside, Meyerton, Henley-on-Klip, De Deur, Walkerville and Vaal Marina.

Libraries

There are six (6) libraries in Midvaal, namely in Meyerton, Henley-on-Klip, Randvaal, Sicelo, De Deur, and Lakeside. There is, however, a need for additional facilities according to the IDP.

5.8 ENGINEERING SERVICES

5.8.1 Water and Sanitation

The standard for water provision in terms of the Reconstruction and Development Plan and Water Supply and Sanitation White Paper is 25 litres per person per day, within 200 metres walking distance. This was confirmed by government's commitment to deliver 6 kilolitres of free water per household per month, which now has to be implemented by municipalities.

Approximately 65% of households in Midvaal Local Municipality have access to piped water inside their dwellings; 18% have access inside their stand/yard; 13% have access to a communal tap; and 4% have no access to water. In total, 96% of households in Midvaal Local Municipality have some sort of piped water source.

Bulk water is supplied to Midvaal Local Municipality by Rand Water, while the local distribution network is mainly focused in the central and western parts of the LM as illustrated on **Figures 24a and 24b**. The network covers all urban areas as well as large parts of the agricultural holdings around routes R59 and R82. Hence, it is mainly farm labourers and residents of informal settlements who do not have access to formal treated water sources (MLM Migration Plan, 2013).

In the past, water reticulation networks in the Municipality were designed and constructed for low intensity land use e.g. agricultural holdings. Capacity of existing systems is thus limited which may inhibit new economic and residential developments. Note also that some sections of the existing water reticulation network still comprise asbestos, and should be upgraded as a priority.

Vast distances between settlements and the largely rural character of the Midvaal area further complicates the provision of water to all parts of the municipal area.

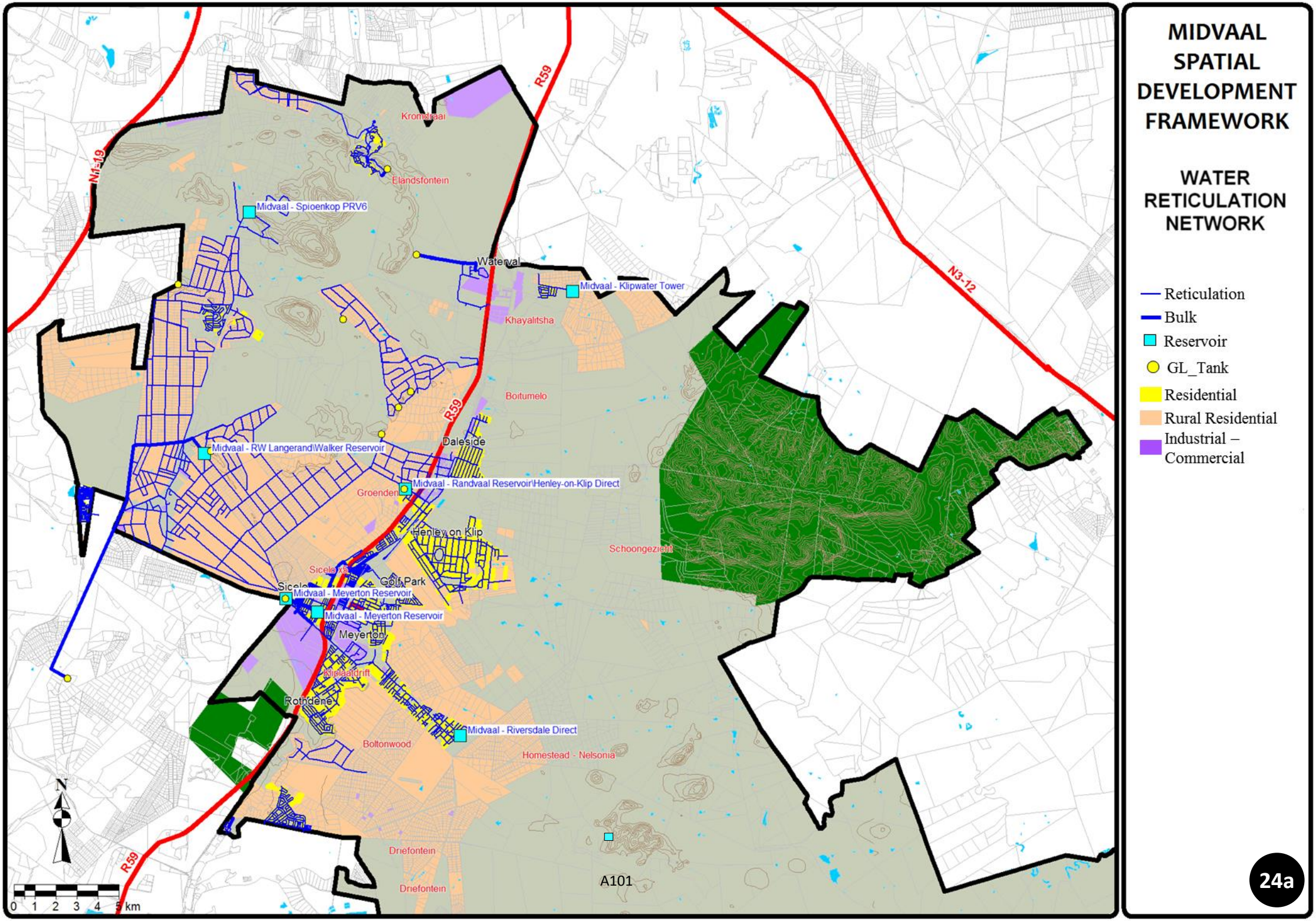
Water Service Provision and Capacity

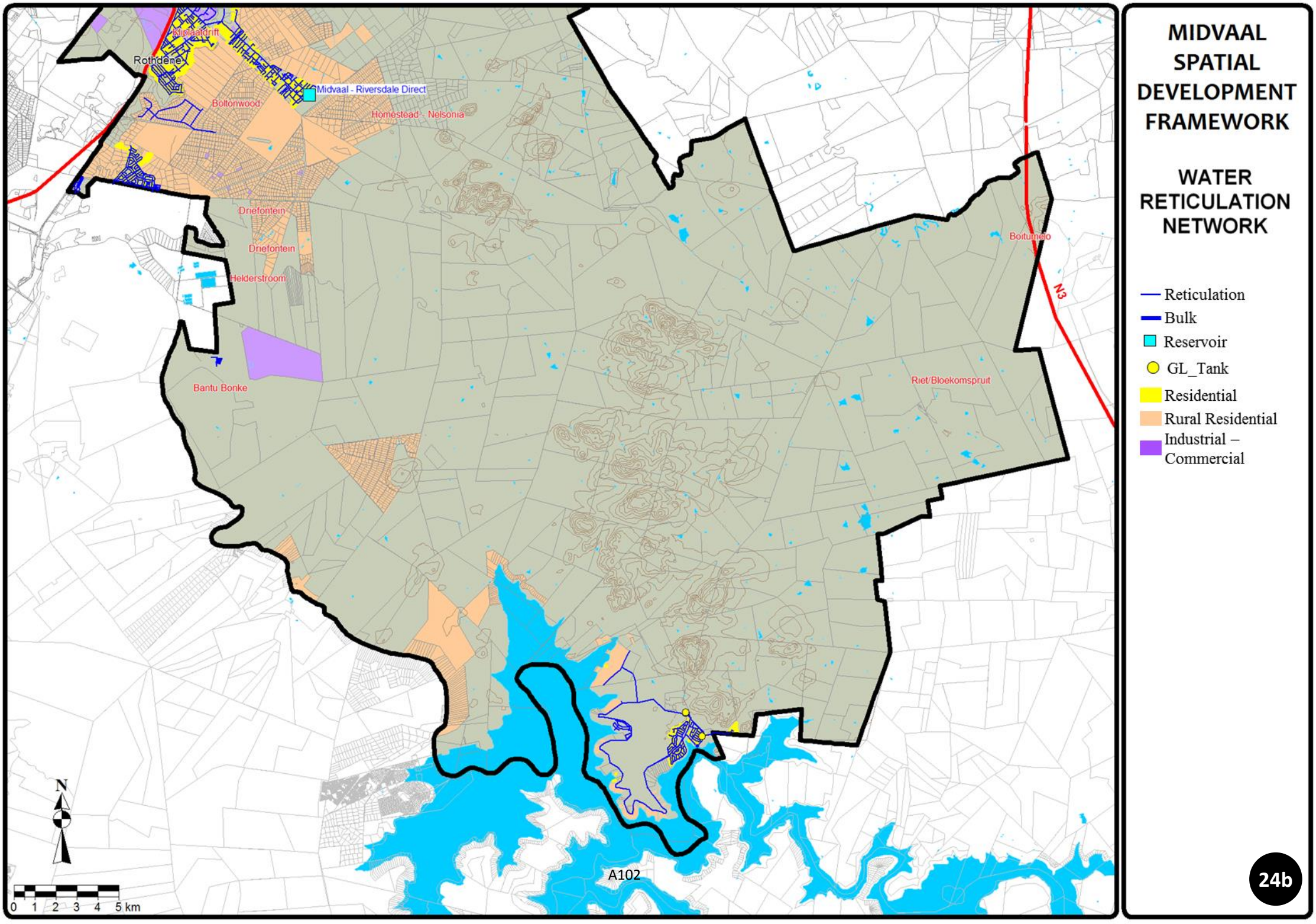
Rand Water is the main service authority for bulk water supply in the Midvaal area, with a main water pipeline (2300mm diameter) transversing the Suikerbosrant area. Bulk water to the central and western rural areas is supplied mainly by the Randvaal and Langerand reservoirs and pipeline systems of Rand Water. Rand Water does not serve Vaal Marina, but the water supply in Vaal Marina forms part of a service contract entered into between the local municipality and a contractor.

The Randvaal system supplies water to the Randvaal/Daleside areas and part of the surrounding agricultural holdings. The Langerand system supplies water to the De Deur/ Walkerville area and parts of the former Lekoa Vaal and Greater Johannesburg Metropolitan areas around route R82. No regional bulk water scheme currently exists in the Eikenhof area to the north of Tedderfield.

The groundwater source in the region is mainly used for irrigation purposes. Large quantities of groundwater are present in the dolomite areas to the north. This source of water is under-utilised, but to minimise the possible development of sinkholes, careful consideration should be given to any withdrawal from this source (Wagner Nel, 1998).

The main rivers in the region, namely the Klip, Riet and Suikerbos Rivers flow into the Vaal River in the south. Water in these rivers is polluted by various sources and is used mainly for crop irrigation.


MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
WATER RETICULATION NETWORK
Reticulation
Bulk
Reservoir
GL_Tank
Residential
Rural Residential
Industrial – Commercial
N1-19
R59
N3-12
Kromdraai
Elandsfontein
Midvaal - Spioenkop PRV6
Waterval
Midvaal - Klipwater Tower
Khayalitsha
Boitumelo
Daleside
Midvaal - RW Langerand\Walker Reservoir
Midvaal - Randvaal Reservoir\Henley-on-Klip Direct
Groenden
Henley on Klip
Schoongezicht
Golf Park
Midvaal - Meyerton Reservoir
Midvaal - Meyerton Reservoir
Meyerton
Klipiaatdrift
Rothdene
Midvaal - Riversdale Direct
Boltonwood
Homestead - Nelsonia
Driefontein
Driefontein
A101
N
0 1 2 3 4 5 km
24a



MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

WATER RETICULATION NETWORK

- Reticulation
- Bulk
- Reservoir
- GL_Tank
- Residential
- Rural Residential
- Industrial – Commercial

24b

Industries such as Nampak (outside Midvaal), Heineken, and Everite are supplied with potable water directly from Rand Water pipelines. The Klipwater Township in the Waterval area is serviced via a 200kl elevated tower linked to a Rand Water pipeline located to the east thereof.

Rand Water recently constructed the new Spioenkop reservoir and pump station. This reservoir has a 42 Ml capacity and is located approximately 16 km north west of Meyerton Town, and more specifically in the vicinity of Walkerville. This new infrastructure benefits users in Orange Farm, Ennerdale, Weilers Farm/ Sweetwaters (City of Johannesburg) and Walkerville/ De Deur (Midvaal). A new reservoir was also recently constructed to serve the Savannah City development in the Doornkuil area.

Meyerton is serviced by 2x10Ml reservoirs situated in Meyerton Farms. Rand Water supplies water to these reservoirs. A borehole also exists to supply water to this reservoir, but is currently not in use.

Riversdale is serviced by a 50kl water tower. This tower is filled by means of a pump station in Jan Neethling Street. An additional connection to the nearby Rand Water line is required to solve some supply pressure problems in the area.

The De Deur, Balmoral and Walkers Fruit Farms areas are served by the Langerand Reservoir.

As reflected on Figures 24a and 24b the following areas in Midvaal have internal water reticulation systems:

- Homestead Apple Orchards;
- Blue Saddle Ranches;
- De Deur;
- Duncanville Ext. 3
- Golfview;
- Henley-on-Klip;
- Highbury;
- Ironsyde A.H.,
- Klipriver;
- Meyerton;
- Tedderfield;
- Ohenimuri;
- Parts of Walkerville;
- Randvaal;
- Rissiville; and
- Vaal Marina

From this it is evident that the water reticulation network is mostly concentrated in the central and north-western parts of the municipality.

As mentioned, the reticulation system was originally designed and constructed in accordance with the land use characteristics and associated water demand in the various parts of the Midvaal area e.g. agricultural holdings, residential, industrial etc. As a result there is very limited spare capacity on the system to cater for significant land use changes, densification, etc. without large scale upgrading of the system.

The most problematic areas in terms of current capacity include the Sicelo area, Henley-on-Klip, Walkers Fruit Farms, Blignautsrus, Homestead Apple Orchards, Ohenumuri, Golf View, Daleside, Kookrus and the eastern parts of Riversdale.

Farmers usually provide water to their farm workers. However, when farms are sold or sub-let, workers lose access to this water.

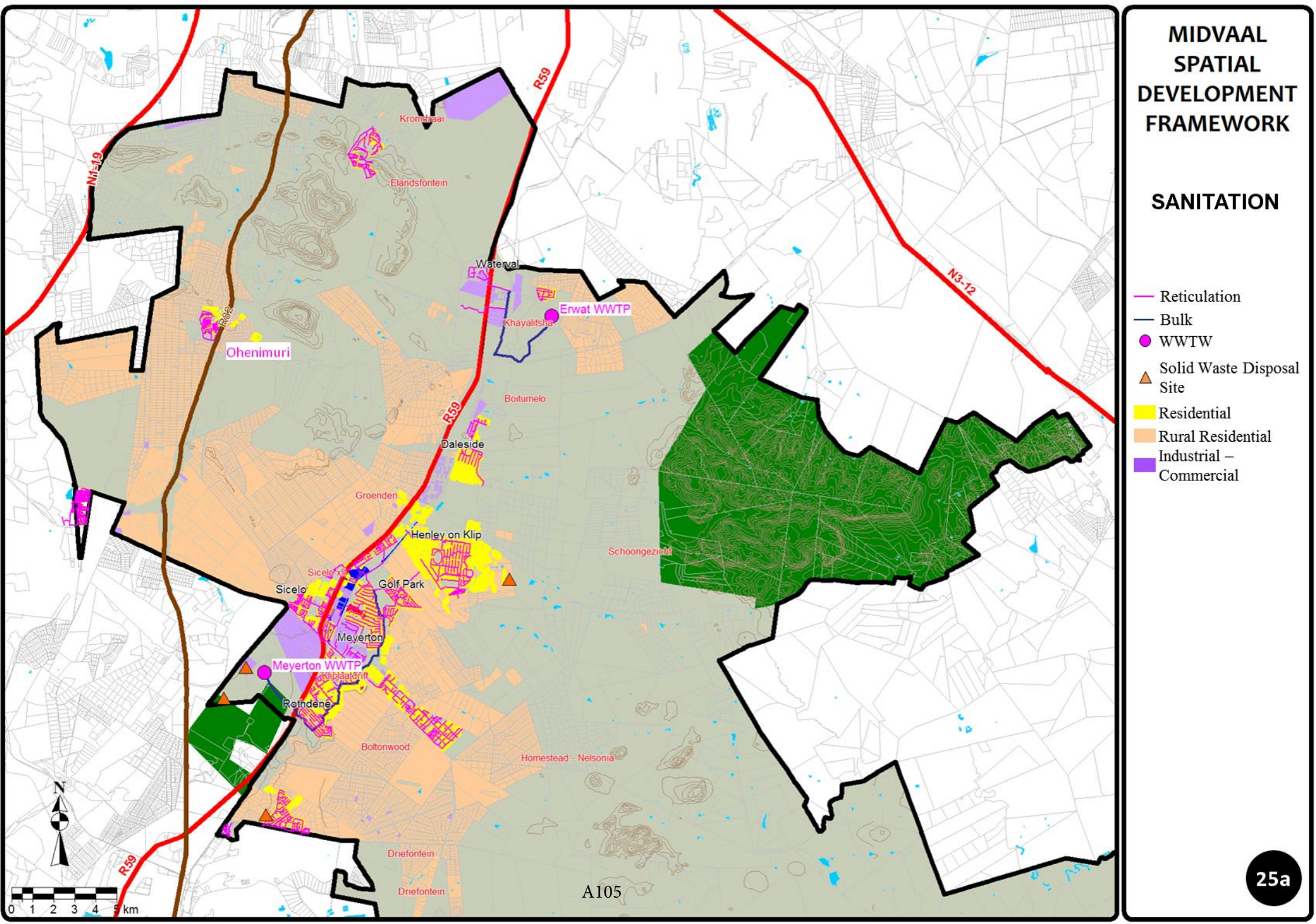
Water is currently being supplied to Sicelo informal settlement by means of pre-paid water meters at 200m intervals. The water provision in Sicelo (phase I) has just been completed and (phase II) will proceed shortly.

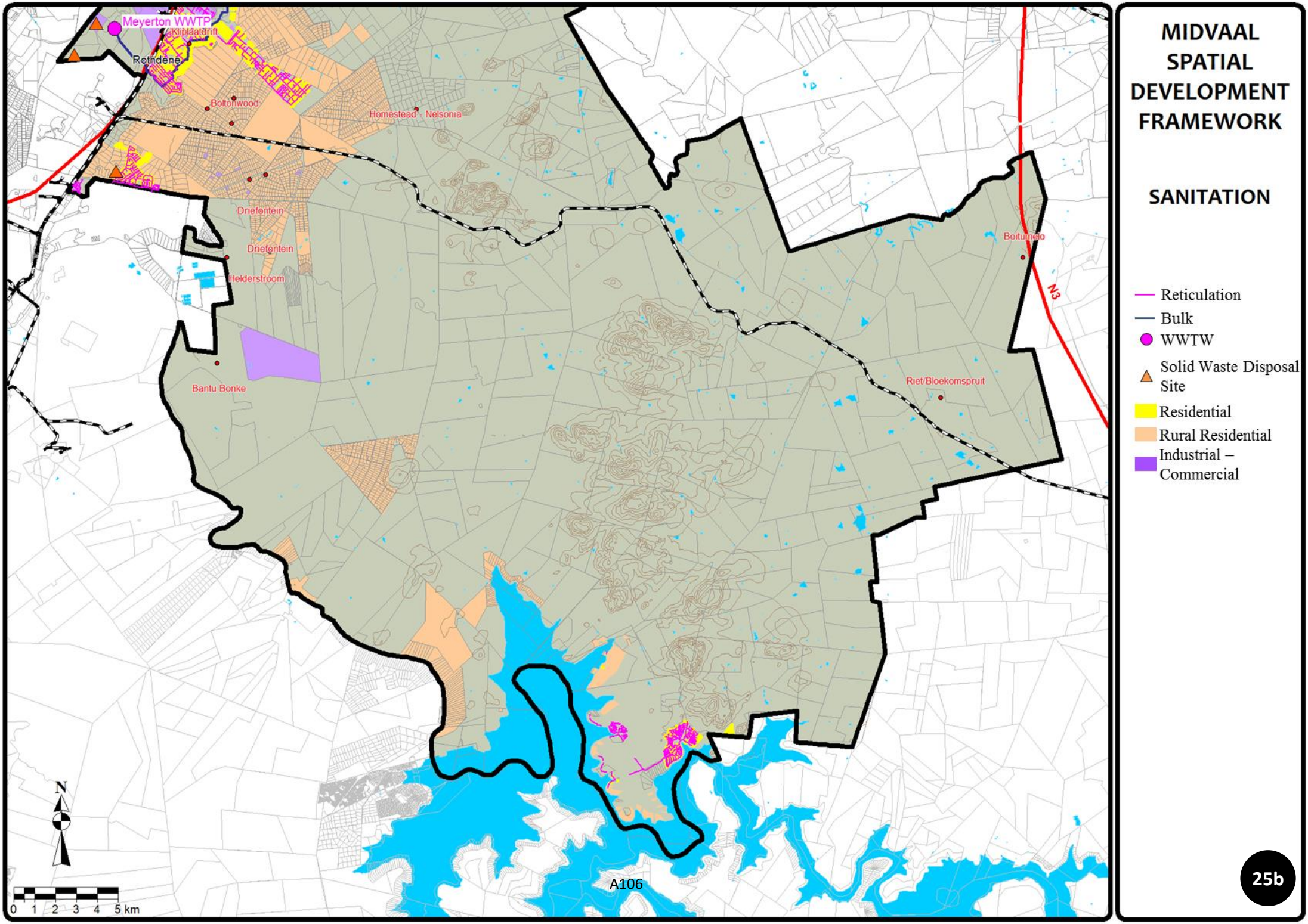
Vaal Marina has a new 10Ml reservoir and the water treatment works has recently been upgraded (see Figure 24b).

Sanitation Service Provision and Capacity

There are three (3) waste-water treatment works in the MLM, namely Ohenimuri WWTW, Vaal Marina WWTW, and Meyerton WWTW of which the Meyerton Treatment Works is the main regional facility (**Figures 25a and 25b**). The other two facilities only serve the local surrounding areas and thus hold very limited capacity. Insufficient capacity at the Meyerton Plant needs to be addressed as a matter of urgency to make provision for future growth in the surrounding core urban area of the Midvaal Municipality (including Sicelo). There is also an ERWAT Treatment Plant at the Waterval Node area in the northern section of the R59 Corridor, but this facility serves the Ekurhuleni area located to the north thereof. At present Midvaal has no connections to this facility.

Approximately 82% of households in the Midvaal area are served by waterborne sewer, which is relatively high, considering the rural nature and vast extent of the area. Assuming that the pit latrines are not Ventilated Improved Pit (VIP) Latrines, it could be said that the sanitation backlog in the area is 18% or 5598 households. It is mostly farm labourers and residents of informal settlements who do not have access to proper sanitation facilities.


MIDVAAL
SPATIAL
DEVELOPMENT
FRAMEWORK
SANITATION
Reticulation
Bulk
WWTW
Solid Waste Disposal Site
Residential
Rural Residential
Industrial – Commercial
25a
N1-19
R59
N3-12
R82
Kromdraai
Elandsfontein
Waterval
Erwat WWTP
Khayalitsha
Ohenimuri
Boitumelo
Daleside
Groenden
Henley on Klip
Schoongezicht
Sicelo
Golf Park
Meyerton
Meyerton WWTP
Kliplaatdrift
Rothdene
Boltonwood
Homestead - Nelsonia
Driefontein
N
0 1 2 3 4 5 km



MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

SANITATION

- Reticulation
- Bulk
- WWTW
- Solid Waste Disposal Site
- Residential
- Rural Residential
- Industrial – Commercial

25b

Waterborne systems for wastewater are present in the following areas as reflected on Figure 25a:

- Meyerton: Wastewater is carried through main sewer piping ranging from 100 mm to 1700 mm to the main sewer pumping station at Rothdene. All of this water is pumped to the Meyerton Waste Water Treatment Works. The capacity of the works is 10MI and is currently in need of upgrading.
- Randvaal: Wastewater generated within the southern parts of this area drains through a main sewer system ranging from 100 mm to 400 mm towards the Meyerton catchment area. It is presently treated at the Meyerton Waste Water Treatment Works (WWTW). The Meyerton facility needs to be extended.
- Fairway Village (Ohenimuri), Walkerville: This is the only proclaimed township in the rural area of Walkerville and 75% of the township is provided with waterborne sewer. The wastewater drains to the Ohenimuri water works situated adjacent to Fairway Village/ Ohenimuri.
- Waterval Waste Water Treatment Works: This is the property of the East Rand Water Company (ERWAT) and is located south of the Klipwater Township on the northern boundary of the region. Klipwater township, together with industries such as Everite and Nampak drain to this facility. The capacity of the Waterval WWTW is 155 ML; however, the plant is currently operating at between 210 and 215 ML. ERWAT has plans to start expanding/ upgrading the plant to 255 ML in a year's time, which should be sufficient to accommodate growth in the short term.
- Blue Saddle Ranches: No water borne sewer system is available. Septic tanks and a french drain system are in use.
- Henley-on-Klip: Water borne sewer system (where available) is drained to the Meyerton WWTW via the Meyerton sewer system. The Septic Tank Effluent Drainage (STED) system is also in use in parts of the Henley-on-Klip region.
- Vaal Marina: This township (Figure 25b) is serviced on a contract basis by means of its own Waste Water Treatment Works, with strict regulations enforced by Rand Water and the Department of Water Affairs, seeing that this township is situated directly adjacent to the Vaal Dam, Gauteng's main water source (Vuka et al, 1999).
- There is currently a moratorium on the approval of development applications that fall within the Rothdene pumping station catchment area (in the vicinity of Kookrus). The moratorium stipulates that no new development proposals will be approved by Midvaal Municipality because of limitations in the bulk sewerage infrastructure network. (MLM Migration Plan, 2013).

No formal sewerage network exists in the remainder of the Midvaal area. Sanitation in the rural parts is generally addressed by means of pit-latrines or septic tanks, and french drains. Biochemical systems is the preferred technology of the Midvaal Municipality. Farmers often assist their farm labourers in this respect.

Initiatives are currently under way to provide Sicelo and Mamello with sanitation. (To be elaborated on in Chapter 6 of this document).

5.8.2 Electricity

As depicted on **Figures 26a and 26b** only the urban parts of the Midvaal municipal area are provided with electricity by the local municipality, while the entire remainder area is served by Eskom. Areas served by the MLM include: Ironsyde Agricultural Holdings, Homestead Apple Orchards, Blue Saddle Ranches, Blignautsrus, De Deur, Golfview, Hartzenbergfontein, Henley-on-Klip, Highbury, Klipriver, and parts of Walkerville. As illustrated on Figures 26a and 26b there is also an extensive Master Plan in place to ensure that new developments along routes R59 and R82 in the Midvaal area can be supplied with electricity as and when required.

Approximately 79% of households in Midvaal receive electricity from the local authority. There is a backlog of approximately 5598 households (18% of the households) without access to electricity. Census 2011 data indicated that approximately 79% of households in Midvaal Local Municipality utilise electricity as the main source for lighting, while 15% utilise candles and 4% use paraffin.

It is considered that it is mostly farm labourers and residents of informal settlements who do not have electricity, especially in the Mamello and Sicelo areas. These areas will only be reticulated once they are formalised (IDP). Electricity provision to schools, clinics and other community facilities should also be prioritised.

A number of new substations have been proposed along route R59; and Meyerton substation will be upgraded to provide electricity to new developments in the short to medium term.

5.8.3 Solid Waste

All urban areas have access to refuse removal services, while about 84% of Small Holdings and Agricultural Holdings are served. There are no waste removal services on farms in the MLM. Waste in these areas is disposed of by residents themselves.

There is a regional landfill site located to the north of the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve, outside the jurisdictional area of Midvaal. There is a second (small) landfill site in Vaal Marina, which is in the process of being licensed. The landfill sites in Walkerville and Henley-on-Klip are currently being licensed. There are also mini dump sites in Rissiville, Klipriver, and Meyerton.

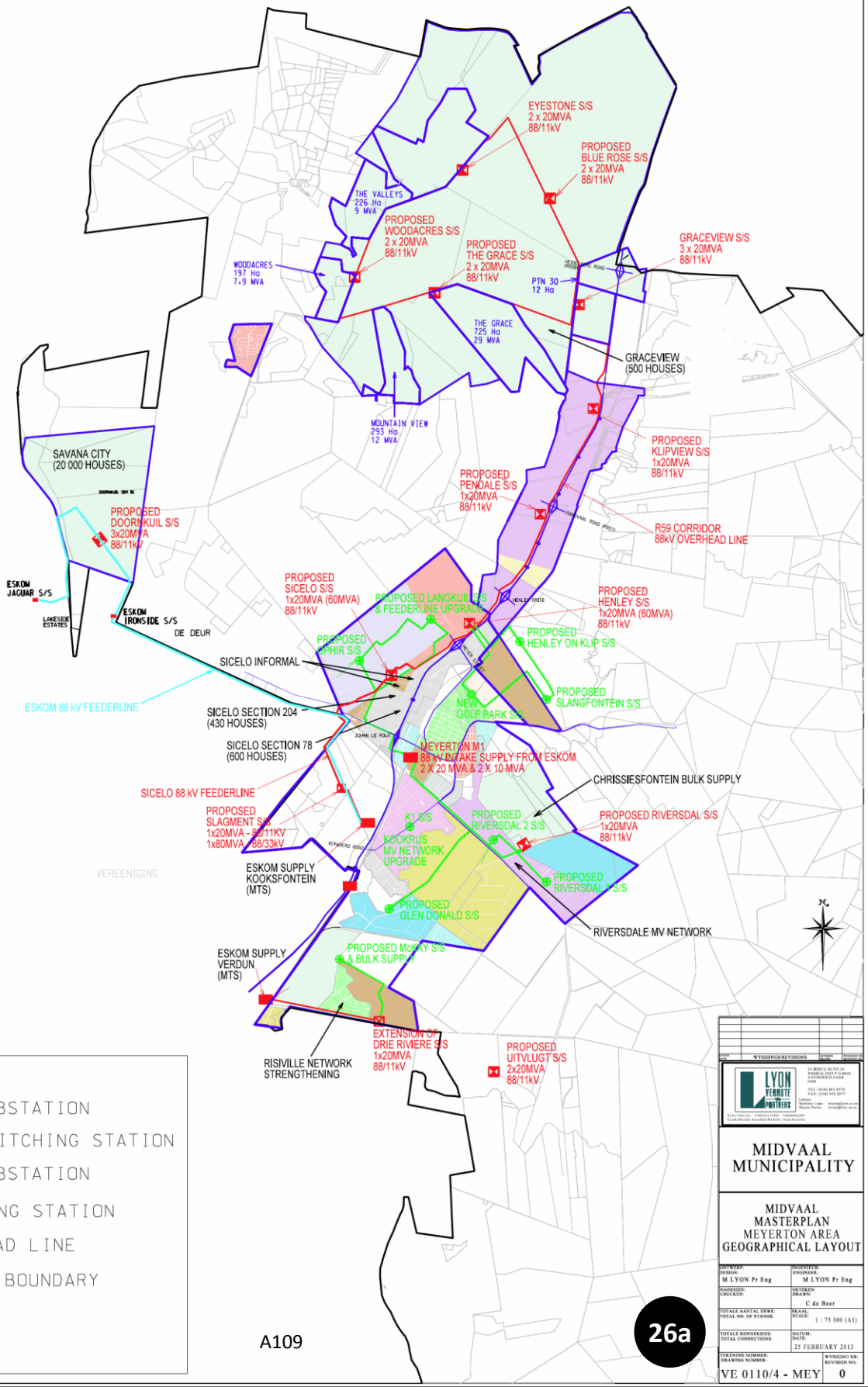
While it is recognized that there is limited refuse removal services in the extensive agricultural and rural areas of the MLM, the sensitive nature of the natural environment and proximity to major rivers indicate that this is a potentially hazardous situation. This indicates a need for smaller landfill sites located throughout the region to assist communities in the agricultural and rural areas with refuse disposal in a safe and environmentally conscious manner. There is a need for a Solid Waste Master

BACKLOG & ELECTRIFICATION

NAME OF PROJECT	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20
Section 78	Building of 600 RDP houses		R8.5 million					
Section 204	Building of 430 RDP houses	R7.35 million						
Graceview	Building of 500 RDP houses			R6 million				
Mamello	Building of 600 RDP houses	R19 million	R6.8 million					
Mamello	Building of 400 RDP houses			R4.88 million				
Savana City	Building of 20000 RDP houses	R5 million	R10 Million	R10 Million	R20 million	R25 million	R25 million	R25 million
Sicelo Informal	Informal	R18 million						

BULK SUPPLY

BULK ELECTRICAL INFRASTRUCTURE PROJECTS	TOTAL COST	YEAR 1 2013/2014		YEAR 2 2014/2015		YEAR 3 2015/2016		YEAR 4 2016/2017		YEAR 5 2017/2018	
		DEV	MUNIC	DEV	MUNIC	DEV	MUNIC	DEV	MUNIC		
THREE RIVERS SUB	R 21 300 000.00				R 21 300 000.00						
UITVLUGT SUBSTATION	R 43 377 000.00			R 13 013 100.00		R 13 013 100.00		R 17 350 800.00			
UITVLUGT 33V FEEDER LINE ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 5 000 000.00			R 5 000 000.00							
KOOKSFONTEIN 33/11 ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 7 800 000.00		R 7 800 000.00								
RIVERSDAL MV NETWORK	R 2 000 000.00				R 1 000 000.00		R 1 000 000.00		R 1 000 000.00		R 1 000 000.00
RIVERSDAL SUB	R 29 000 000.00						R 8 400 000.00		R 19 600 000.00		
RIVERSDAL 33/11 ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 8 000 000.00				R 8 000 000.00						
KOOKRUS UPGRADING OF ELECTRICAL NETWORK	R 15 953 000.00						R 4 788 900.00		R 4 788 900.00		R 6 381 200.00
MCKAY BULK SUPPLY	R 5 000 000.00						R 5 000 000.00				
LANGKUIL FEEDER UPGRADE	R 5 400 000.00							R 4 200 000.00		R 4 200 000.00	
SICELO SUB AND FEEDERLINE	R 60 000 000.00		R 30 000 000.00		R 30 000 000.00						
DOORNKUIL SUBSTATION	R 40 000 000.00							R 40 000 000.00			
DOORNKUIL 3/33 ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 30 000 000.00					R 30 000 000.00					
EAGLE VIEW (WAALDAM) SUBSTATION & 33KV LINE	R 48 000 000.00					R 24 000 000.00		R 24 000 000.00			
WAALDAM PUMPSTATION SUBSTATION 33KV& TRFR ESKOM CASH UPFRONT	R 9 373 615.36						R 9 373 615.36				
WAALDAM S/S ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 37 510 520.82			R 37 510 520.82							
33V CORRIDOR 33KV OVERHEAD LINE	R 32 400 000.00		R 2 400 000.00						R 15 000 000.00		R 15 000 000.00
RISIVILLE EXF & ELECTRIFICATION - NETWORK STRENGTHENING	R 781 000.00					R 781 000.00					
CHRISSIESFONTEIN ELECTRIFICATION 600 STANDS - BULK SUPPLY	R 3 000 000.00					R 3 000 000.00					
	R 409 956 136.21	R 0.00	R 59 900 000.00	R 55 523 620.82	R 60 300 000.00	R 71 294 100.00	R 29 555 515.36	R 85 550 800.00	R 40 388 900.00	R 4 200 000.00	R 32 381 200.00



MUNICIPAL LEGEND:

- PROPOSED SUBSTATION
- PROPOSED SWITCHING STATION
- EXISTING SUBSTATION
- NEW SWITCHING STATION
- 88kV OVERHEAD LINE
- DEMARCATION BOUNDARY

MIDVAAL MUNICIPALITY

MIDVAAL MASTERPLAN
MEYERTON AREA
GEOGRAPHICAL LAYOUT

ONTWERP: DESIGN:	INGENIEUR: ENGINEER:
M LYON Pr Eng	M LYON Pr Eng
NAGESIEN: CHECKED:	GETEKEN: DRAWN:
	C de Beer
TOTALE AANTAL ERWE: TOTAL NO. OF STANDS:	SKAAL: SCALE: 1 : 75 000 (A1)
TOTALE KONNEKSIES: TOTAL CONNECTIONS:	DATUM: DATE: 25 FEBRUARY 2013
TEKENING NOMMER: DRAWING NUMBER:	WYSIGING NR: REVISION NO.
VE 0110/4 - MEY	0

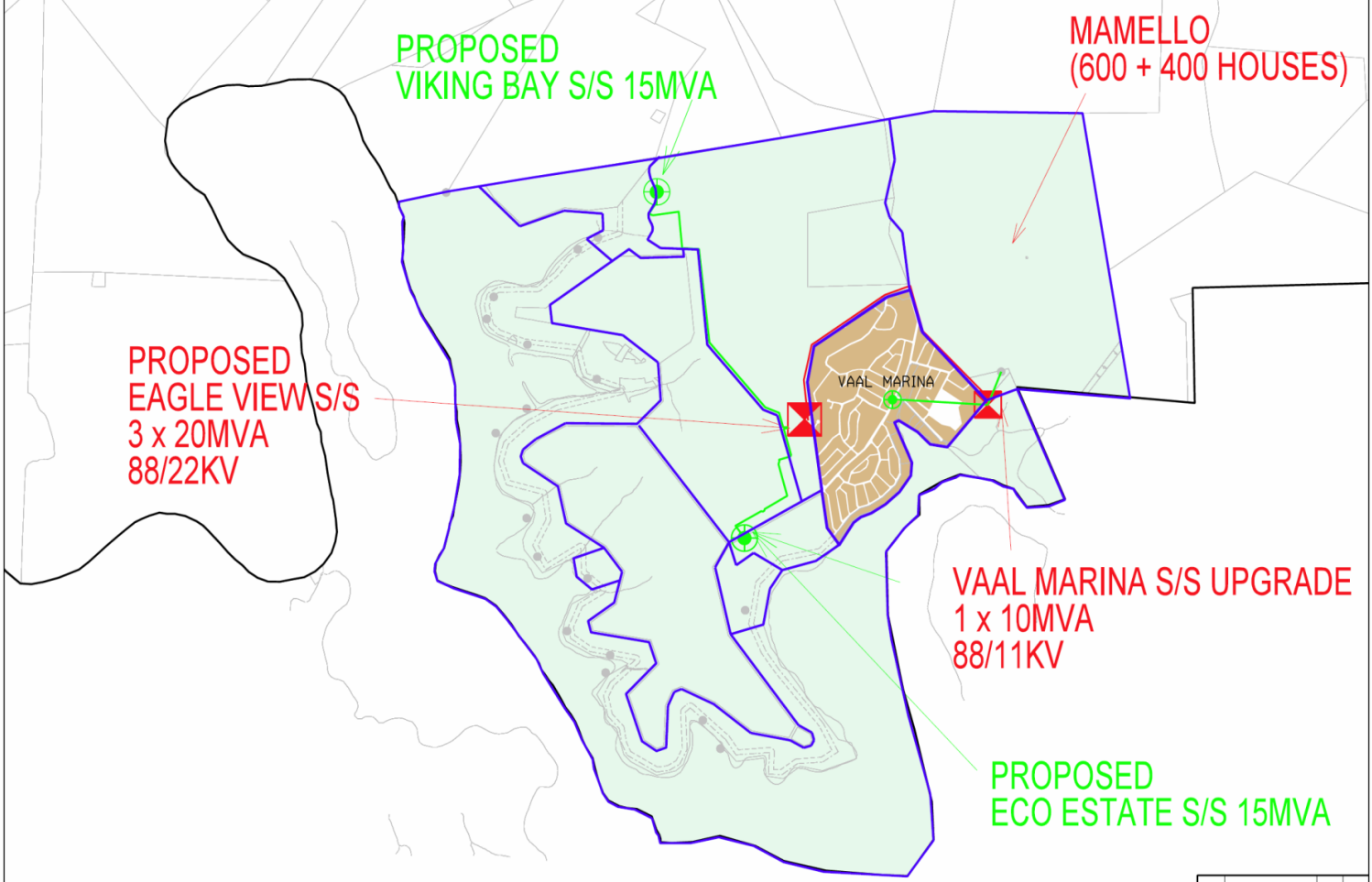
26a

BULK SUPPLY

BULK ELECTRICAL INFRASTRUCTURE PROJECTS	TOTAL COST	YEAR 1 2013/2014		YEAR 2 2014/2015		YEAR 3 2015/2016		YEAR 4 2016/2017		YEAR 5 2017/2018	
		DEV	MUNIC	DEV	MUNIC	DEV	MUNIC	DEV	MUNIC		
THREE RIVERS SUB	R 21 300 000.00				R 21 300 000.00						
UITVLUGT SUBSTATION	R 43 377 000.00			R 13 013 100.00		R 13 013 100.00		R 17 350 800.00			
UITVLUGT O/H FEEDER LINE ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 5 000 000.00			R 5 000 000.00							
KOOKSFONTEIN S/S ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 7 500 000.00		R 7 500 000.00								
RIVERSDAL MV NETWORK	R 4 000 000.00				R 1 000 000.00		R 1 000 000.00		R 1 000 000.00		R 1 000 000.00
RIVERSDAL SUB	R 28 000 000.00						R 8 400 000.00		R 19 600 000.00		
RIVERSDAL S/S ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 8 000 000.00				R 8 000 000.00						
KOOKRUS UPGRADING OF ELECTRICAL NETWORK	R 15 953 000.00						R 4 785 900.00		R 4 785 900.00		R 6 381 200.00
MCKAY BULK SUPPLY	R 6 000 000.00						R 6 000 000.00				
LANGKUIL FEEDER UPGRADE	R 8 400 000.00							R 4 200 000.00		R 4 200 000.00	
SICELO SUB AND FEEDERLINE	R 60 000 000.00		R 30 000 000.00		R 30 000 000.00						
DOORNKUIL SUBSTATION	R 40 000 000.00							R 40 000 000.00			
DOORNKUIL S/S ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 30 000 000.00					R 30 000 000.00					
EAGLE VIEW (VAALDAM) SUBSTATION & O/H LINE	R 48 000 000.00					R 24 000 000.00		R 24 000 000.00			
VAALDAM PUMPSTATION SUBSTATION 10MVA TRFR ESKOM CASH UPFRON	R 9 373 615.39						R 9 373 615.39				
VAALDAM S/S ESKOM CASH UPFRONT CONTRIBUTION	R 37 510 520.82			R 37 510 520.82							
R59 CORRIDOR 88kV OVERHEAD LINE	R 32 400 000.00		R 2 400 000.00						R 15 000 000.00		R 15 000 000.00
RISIVILLE EXT 6 ELECTRIFICATION : NETWORK STRENGTHENING	R 781 000.00					R 781 000.00					
CHRISSIESFONTEIN ELECTRIFICATION 650 STANDS : BULK SUPPLY	R 3 500 000.00					R 3 500 000.00					
	R 409 895 136.21	R 0.00	R 39 900 000.00	R 55 523 620.82	R 60 300 000.00	R 71 294 100.00	R 29 559 515.39	R 85 550 800.00	R 40 385 900.00	R 4 200 000.00	R 22 381 200.00

BACKLOG & ELECTRIFICATION

NAME OF PROJECT	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20
Section 78	Building of 600 RDP houses		R8.5 million					
Section 204	Building of 430 RDP houses	R7.35 million						
Graceview	Building of 500 RDP houses			R6 million				
Mamello	Building of 600 RDP houses	R19 million	R6.8 million					
Mamello	Building of 400 RDP houses			R4.88 million				
Savana City	Building of 20000 RDP houses	R5 million	R10 Million	R10 Million	R20 million	R25 million	R25 million	R25 million
Sicelo Informal	Informal	R18 million						



MUNICIPAL LEGEND:

- PROPOSED SUBSTATION
- PROPOSED SWITCHING STATION
- EXISTING SUBSTATION
- NEW SWITCHING STATION
- 88kV OVERHEAD LINE
- DEMARCATION BOUNDARY

A110

26b

WYSIGINGS/REVISIONS

LYON VERMOOTE & PARTNERS

MIDVAAL MUNICIPALITY

MIDVAAL MASTERPLAN
VAALDAM AREA
GEOGRAPHICAL LAYOUT

ONTWERP: DESIGN: M LYON Pr Eng	INGENIEUR: ENGINEER: M LYON Pr Eng
NAGESIEN: CHECKED:	GETEKEN: DRAWN: C de Beer
TOTALE AANTAL ERWE: TOTAL NO. OF STANDS:	SKAAL: SCALE: 1 : 25 000 (A1)
TOTALE KONNEKSIES: TOTAL CONNECTIONS:	DATUM: DATE: 25 FEBRUARY 2013
TEKENING NOMMER: DRAWING NUMBER: VE 0110/4 - VD	WYSIGING NR. REVISION NO. 0

Plan for Midvaal, to deal with the social, physical and environmental aspects of solid waste management.

5.9 ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT POTENTIAL

5.9.1 Midvaal Macro Economy

Size of the Midvaal Economy

The Sedibeng District Economy contributes 5.6% towards the Gauteng GVA. Emfuleni Local Economy contributes 77.2% to the Sedibeng District Economy, while Midvaal and Lesedi Local Municipalities contribute 13.6% and 9.2% respectively. It should however be noted that the Emfuleni population comprises 76.9% of the District labour force, while Midvaal comprises 13.2%. The economic contributions of each municipality are thus directly proportional to the size of the population and, more specifically, the labour force.

At a local level, the Central Region of the MLM makes the largest contribution to the municipal economy (53.5%). This is not surprising, as this region encompasses the R59 Development Corridor – the economic heart of the Midvaal Local Economy.

Economic Profile

The structure of the economy provides valuable insight into the dependency of an area on specific sectors and its subsequent sensitivity to fluctuations in global and regional markets.

Table 11 below provides an indication of the percentage distribution of contributions by economic sectors to the economy of South Africa, Gauteng, Sedibeng and Midvaal between 2001 and 2011.

Table 11: Percentage Contribution to GVA per Sector per Region, 2006 and 2011

Economic Sector	South Africa		Gauteng		Sedibeng		Midvaal	
	2006	2011	2006	2011	2006	2011	2006	2011
Agriculture	2%	2%	0%	0%	0%	0%	1%	1%
Mining	7%	6%	2%	2%	3%	3%	3%	4%
Manufacturing	19%	17%	22%	19%	37%	30%	34%	30%
Electricity and water	2%	2%	2%	2%	4%	3%	6%	7%
Construction	3%	3%	3%	4%	4%	5%	6%	7%
Wholesale and trade	14%	14%	14%	14%	14%	14%	14%	14%
Transport	10%	10%	9%	9%	6%	6%	6%	7%
Finance and business services	22%	24%	25%	27%	14%	17%	18%	18%
Community services	6%	6%	4%	4%	3%	3%	3%	3%
Government services	15%	15%	17%	17%	16%	18%	8%	9%
Total	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%

Source: Midvaal Migration Plan 2013

It is evident that the manufacturing sector is the major contributor to the local economy of Midvaal LM. It contributes roughly 30% to the total economy, while the finance and business services sector (18%) and wholesale and trade sector (14%) are also major role players.

From a detailed analysis, it is evident that the Western Region's largest economic sectors are Finance and Business Services (53.1%), followed by Government and Community Services (17.3%). The largest economic sectors in the Central Region are Mining and Quarrying (34.7%), followed by Financial and Business Services (17.8%); and the Eastern Region's main economic sectors are namely Manufacturing (38.4%), followed by Government and Community Services (16.7%).

The following locations contribute significantly to the **manufacturing** sector of Midvaal LM (refer to Figure 18):

- Though the largest section of Vereeniging falls outside the boundaries of Midvaal LM, the area between Vereeniging and Meyerton contributes significantly to the Midvaal economy.
- In the Henley-on-Klip/ Daleside urban concentration, the industrial zone along the M61 gives access to a main area of manufacturing close to the R59 freeway.
- Klipriver (e.g. Klipriver Business Park).

Note that the Manufacturing Sector, the main economic pillar, showed a decrease in employment opportunities in 2011. The other main economic pillars all showed an increase of employment opportunities for the same period.

The central part of Midvaal is the primary contributor to the **financial and business services** sector, in other words the area along the R59 freeway between Vereeniging, Meyerton, Henley-on-Klip, Highbury, and Daleside.

The greatest contribution to Midvaal LM's **trade** sector comes from Henley-on-Klip/ Highbury/ Daleside agglomeration along the R59 freeway, followed by the Vereeniging/ Meyerton agglomeration and the Walkerville area. The areas with the smallest contributions to the trade sector are generally located in the central and south-eastern parts of the LM, and lacking access to route R59.

5.9.2 Midvaal Local Economic Development (LED) Strategy

The Midvaal Local Economic Development (LED) Strategy is based on the following two strategic thrusts intended to stimulate sustainable economic growth in the local municipality:

- Economic diversification; and
- Growth in sectors with comparative advantage: increased focus on tourism, agriculture, manufacturing, and trade sectors.

The LED Strategy noted that Midvaal should diversify its economic base in order to reduce its dependency on a single economic sector (Manufacturing). There is potential to grow the manufacturing, trade, tourism, agriculture and construction sectors in the study area.

The proposed strategies to grow the mentioned five sectors are briefly summarised below:

Construction: There has been a steady growth in building plan approvals, subdivision and rezoning applications. The residential boom that some Midvaal towns are experiencing, along with the expansion of some existing and new businesses and industries, predominantly along route R59, and the anticipated development at Savanna City means that **construction** remains a growing sector. Another possible reason for the growth in the construction sector could be effective land use management through the myriad of policies and Precinct Plans which was developed and approved by Council in recent years. These policies and plans not only gives guidance to land owners and developers, but also creates a sense of stability in the built environment (Demacon).

The construction sector is a labour-intensive sector and has significant potential for job creation, although this tends to be short term. There are also backward and forward linkages to a number of other sectors. For example, the inputs to construction, such as electrical fittings, plumbing, painting, etc. could possibly be sourced locally. Downstream/ post-construction benefits to the economy include home furnishing (manufacturing) and an ongoing need for goods and services (trade).

Tourism: This was identified as one of the economic sectors that have the potential to reverse a sluggish economy, mobilize domestic and foreign investment and develop SMMEs. Midvaal has significant untapped tourism potential.

Midvaal's proximity to Johannesburg and Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipalities is potentially one of its greatest assets, as these areas host large potential visitors, and the regional linkages are generally in a good state.

Midvaal offers scenic beauty with ridges and river systems, conservancies, nature reserves, game farms, a range of outdoor activities; cultural experiences; local cuisine; and historical landmarks. Sedibeng DM, together with Birdlife SA, has developed the Sedibeng Birding Route of which many sites are located in Midvaal or just outside of the Midvaal area of jurisdiction. This route should be promoted and marketed, and additional tourist attractions could be incorporated as part of the route. Lastly, Walkerville is being developed into a tourist town.

Tourism products should include business tourism, eco-tourism and adventure tourism. The partnership with Sedibeng Tourism and the neighbouring local authorities should be furthered so that the area as a whole can be branded and promoted as a destination; and relationships with travel agents and the promotion of holiday packages to Midvaal should be explored.

Agriculture: This sector should be encouraged in the form of improved linkages between small scale niche farming and the Walkerville Farmers Market. The development of agri-processing plants (to process and package agricultural produce) in the rural areas should also be encouraged. Also, the Midvaal Agricultural Policy highlights strategies for the establishment of Bamboo farming in the MLM. These non-invasive activities could be done on a small scale with very little start-up capital.

Manufacturing: Currently trade and manufacturing in the Midvaal area is closely linked to the steel sector. The **manufacturing** sector can expand into agri-processing activities (see above) as well as the production of biofuels, beer, ales, salad dressing etc. from agricultural products. This could be linked to a marketing strategy, which promotes the trade of these goods. Importantly, the potential of economies of scale should be explored.

Trade: is a growing sector with the potential to absorb more labour. This can happen through the provision of value added goods and services. It is important that trade's contribution to GRP increases as its workforce percentage increases. A further important aspect to this sector is the role and function of the so called second (or informal) economy. In the Midvaal economy, trade can be linked to manufacturing, construction and tourism. Linking the growth of trade to these sectors creates opportunities to provide value added goods and specialised services.

5.10 Synthesis and Conclusive Summary

Key Features and Structuring Elements

- The study area has strong regional linkages to major economic cores like Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and the Vereeniging-Vanderbijlpark complex. These include routes R59 and R82, and the Vereeniging-Germiston railway line.
- Midvaal is predominantly rural, with urban development predominantly consolidated along routes R59 and R82 in the north-western parts of the municipal area.
- Meyerton is the highest order town in the area with a relatively large business and residential component. Smaller settlements and agricultural holdings in the surrounds act as service centres to the surrounding local communities.
- The local population is relatively well educated, and unemployment levels are low compared with provincial and national averages.
- The strongest economic drivers in Midvaal are: Manufacturing (29.5%), Financial and Business Services (18.5%), Trade (14.5%), and General Government Services (9.4%). There are indications that the Manufacturing sector is declining; there is thus a need to diversify the Midvaal economy.
- The urban areas and agricultural holdings exhibit the highest population growth rates.
- The official backlog with regards to informal settlements and backyard units (according to Census 2011) was determined to be 5546.

- The population is projected to grow between 3288 and 4681 people per annum for the next six (6) years. The related projected household growth is between 1034 and 1472 housing units per annum.
- The total housing supply of existing housing projects is calculated at 23 825 units comprising 8858 middle and high income units and 14 994 subsidised units which is sufficient to meet current and projected demand beyond the year 2020.

Key Issues

- Horizontal alignment of economic initiatives with the adjoining LMs' SDFs, especially Emfuleni, Lesedi and the City of Joburg is important for future development.
- The study area is surrounded by large concentrations of low income communities (especially in the City of Joburg area of jurisdiction), with very limited economic activity and job opportunities to serve them.
- Unlike urban areas in the MLM, rural communities have limited access to engineering infrastructure and social services.
- The most problematic areas in terms of current water capacity include the Sicelo area, Henley-on-Klip, Walkers Fruit Farms, Blignautsrus, Homestead Apple Orchards, Ohenumuri, Golf View, Daleside, Kookrus and the eastern parts of Riversdale.
- There is currently a moratorium on the approval of development applications that fall within the Rothdene pumping station catchment area. The moratorium is expected to be lifted after two years once upgrading to the system has been completed.
- There is a need for the revitalisation of CBD/ activity areas in the MLM, together with general local economic development and growth of SMMEs.

Development Opportunities

- Midvaal is located midway between two major industrial cores in Gauteng Province – Ekurhuleni MM and Emfuleni LM. The three areas are all linked via the R59 freeway.
- The study area will in future gain direct access onto the N1 corridor at Elandsfontein, via a new access interchange from K154 which is already partially constructed. The Elandsfontein precinct has significant development potential – especially in the medium to longer term.
- The Vaal Marina and Suikerbosrant Nature Reserves are potential major tourist attractions.
- There are a number of important ridges in the study area which also have potential for tourism development.
- There may be potential for further mining in the area – especially in the Randvaal-Daleside area.
- The south-eastern extents of Midvaal were identified as a provincial agricultural hub.
- The R59 freeway and routes R82 and R550 were earmarked as development/ industrial corridors in the GSDF.
- It might be viable to reroute cargo flights from the OR Tambo International Airport to the Vereeniging airport, which would hold opportunities for extensive industrial and commercial development around Meyerton.

- Walkerville has potential for development as a tourism town, similar to Clarens/ Cullinan.
- The De Deur area will experience increased development pressure from the west over the next few years.

Development Constraints

- Localised dolomitic conditions could be a development constraint; dolomite mainly occurs in the central-northern parts of the municipal area.
- Environmentally sensitive areas such as the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve and important ridges must be conserved.
- The condition of provincial roads in the MLM is generally poor, mitigating economic development and access to the area.
- Insufficient water and sanitation infrastructure in urban areas and along routes R59 and R82 may deter development.
- Spatial discrepancy with the largest concentration of low income residential development being located towards the west of route R82 while the bulk of economic activities/job opportunities are located to the east of route R59.
- The urban footprint of Midvaal is very fragmented. The long term vision for the area is thus extensive corridor development along routes R59, R82 and R154 and K164 (Johan le Roux) in an effort to functionally consolidate the urban fabric of the municipality along two north-south and two east-west routes.

6 SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

Table 12 below represents the Land Use Budget for the Midvaal SDF up to the year 2020. The following are to be noted from this:

- The projected population is 135 156 people (current = 107 072) based on the Historical Growth Trends Scenario of the Midvaal Migration Plan. This represents an increase of 28 084 people at a rate of 4681 people per annum.
- The households increase by 8830 at a rate of 1472 per annum to bring the total number of households by 2020 to 42 495 units.
- The population will be able to sustain approximately 229 765m² of retail floor space and 22 977m² of office floor space which should be mainly located in the nodal points identified.
- The incremental population will justify the construction of one new primary school and seven Educational Care Centres in the municipal area while secondary schools are sufficiently provided for (based on the population size). However, the spatial distribution of these and other facilities should also be considered to ensure that all communities are served within appropriate distance. This may necessitate providing additional facilities in outlying areas in future.
- As far as other community facilities are concerned, the Midvaal Municipality would require one more Primary Health Clinic and Local Library, as well as four additional Post Office/ICT Access Points.
- In general, however, the Midvaal Municipality is currently well-provided with a wide range of community facilities and services, and only a limited number of new facilities need to be provided up to 2020 (based on population growth forecasts).

Similar to the 2014 Midvaal SDF, the reviewed Midvaal SDF is based on a number of Development Principles associated with the various functional and structuring elements within the Midvaal area. These Principles form the individual layers which the SDF comprises, and these are incrementally consolidated to form one Integrated Spatial Development Framework for the Midvaal area.

The ten Development Principles (and associated themes) are summarised below:

- **Environmental Management**: To protect and actively manage the natural environmental resources in the Midvaal Municipal Area in order to ensure a sustainable equilibrium between agricultural, tourism, industrial/ manufacturing and mining activities, as well as urbanisation pressures in the area.
- **Agricultural Production**: To facilitate and enhance agricultural production in the municipal area by actively protecting all land earmarked for agricultural purposes, and to target agricultural holdings for innovative small scale farming and agro processing.
- **Tourism Promotion**: To promote tourism development through the active utilization of tourism resources available like the Vaal Dam, the Ridges Precincts, and the Nature Reserves in the area.

Table 12: Midvaal Local Municipality: Land Use Budget, 2020

		SCENARIO 1		EXISTING FACILITIES	SURPLUS/DEFICIT	CSIR GUIDELINES for Large Cities/Small Metros	AREA PER FACILITY	PROVISION CRITERIA
		no	ha					
	BASE DATA							
	Dwelling Units	42 495						
	Population	135 156						
	Education		107.8					
	Small Crèche	56	1.1		-56	1/2 400 population	200m²	Compulsary
	ECD Hub and Care Centre	7	0.7		-7	1/20 000 population	1000m²	Compulsary
	Primary (including Grade R)	19	54.1	18	-1	1/7000 population	2.8ha	Compulsary
	Secondary	11	51.9	13	2	1/12 500 population	4.8 ha	Compulsary
	Business	229 765	76.6					
	Local retail centre (floor area in m²)	67 578	23					
	Neighbourhood retail centre (floor area in m²)	81 094	27					
	Community, small regional retail centre (floor area in m²)	81 094	27					
	Offices (floor area in m²)	22 977	8					
	Community Facilities		16.5					
Health/Emergency	Primary Health Clinic	6	1.1	5	-1	1/24 000 population	2 000 m²	
	Community Health Centre	1	2.0			1/100 000 population	1.5ha	Compulsary
	Police	2	0.2	4	2	1/60 000 population	1 000 m² to 1 ha	Compulsary
	Fire Station	2	0.7	2	0	1/60 000 population	3 000 m²	Compulsary
Social /Cultural	Local Library	7	0.3	6	-1	1/20 000 population	500m²	Compulsary
Civic	Thusong Centre/Labour/SASSA	1	0.5	1	0	One per Municipality	2 000 m² - 1ha for full range of facilities	Compulsary
	Magistrate's Court	1	1.0	1	0	One per Municipality	Site size area specific	Compulsary
	Municipal Office	1	0.3	2	1	One per Municipality	3 000m² to 1ha	Compulsary
	Prison and Place of Safety	1	2.0	2	1	One per Municipality	2ha - 5ha	Compulsary
Social Services	Community Hall (medium/small)	4	0.8	5	1	1/10 000 population	2 000 m² - 5000m²	Discretionary
	Post Office/ICT Access Point	14	0.7	10	-4	1/10 000 population	300m² (+ add 200m² for ICT)	Compulsary
	Worship Centre	45	6.8			1/3 000 population	1 500 m²	
	Open Space		266.5					
	Active		75.7			1000 population	0.56ha	Compulsary
	Passive		67.6			1000 population	0.5ha	Compulsary
	Solid Waste Disposal Site/Recycling Depot	1	100.0	3	2	One per Municipality	100ha, but varies in size	Compulsary
	Cemetery		23.2			100 000 population	17.2ha	Compulsary

- **Corridor Development**: To pre-actively plan, design and facilitate the establishment of a Development Corridor along the R59 freeway.
- **Nodal Development (Economic and Social Facilities)**: To facilitate the development of a hierarchy of sustainable Activity Nodes in partnership with stakeholders to ensure equitable access to social infrastructure, and to promote Local Economic Development in the urban and rural parts of the municipality.
- **Movement Network**: To capitalise on the strategic location of the municipality by way of regional and provincial linkages, and to establish an internal movement network comprising a hierarchy of roads which include a comprehensive public transport network and services.
- **Industrial, Commercial, Mining Activity**: To promote the development of a diverse range of industrial, commercial and mining activities in the Midvaal area through partnerships with the private sector, and with specific focus along the R59 Corridor and at the designated nodal points.
- **Human Settlement Development**: To provide for a wide range of bonded and subsidised housing typologies and tenure alternatives within clearly defined Strategic Development Areas, and to continuously manage residential densification by way of the Midvaal Density Policy.
- **Compact City**: To delineate an Urban Development Boundary to encourage consolidated urban development and to protect high potential agricultural land and sensitive environments.
- **Targeted Engineering Infrastructure Investment**: To prioritise the bulk of short to medium term upgrading/provision of engineering services to nodal areas within the Urban Development Boundary.

Each of these principles is expounded individually in the section that follows.

Development Principle 1: To protect and actively manage the natural environmental resources in the Midvaal Municipal Area in order to ensure a sustainable equilibrium between agricultural, tourism, industrial/ manufacturing and mining activities, as well as urbanisation pressures in the area.

In line with the directives provided in the Gauteng EMF (2014) and the Midvaal EMP (2008), it is proposed that the Midvaal area be subdivided into the following four distinct Environmental Control Zones:

- **Zone 1: High Control Zone** (Regional Open space System)
- **Zone 2: Normal Control Zone** (Agricultural, Low Density Residential Tourism and Light Industrial/ Agri Industries outside Zone 1 (Open Space) and Zone 3 (Urban Edge)
- **Zone 3: Urban Development Zone** (All areas earmarked for Urbanisation/Township Establishment) – also nodes along corridors
- **Zone 4: Industrial and Large Commercial Focus Areas** (Normally within Urban Edge)

Each of these zones are briefly discussed in the section below:

Zone 1: High Control Zone (Regional Open Space System)

Figure 27.1 reflects the environmental features that are deemed to form part of the regional open space system (High Control Zone) of the Midvaal area. It includes the drainage system, the proclaimed nature reserves and registered conservancies, as well as the ridges within the municipal area.

The Klip River with its main tributaries like the Natal Spruit, the Varkensfontein Spruit, as well as the Suikerbosrant River constitute the main drainage system within the northern and central parts of the Midvaal area, while the Vaal River and Vaal Dam are the most prominent features in the southern and south-eastern parts. This network provides for a comprehensive open space system to be incorporated into the future spatial structure of the municipal area. Along the entire drainage system there is a 50 and 100 year floodline area which needs to be protected, managed and conserved as per the relevant legislative guidelines, and which provides for linear continuity of the proposed Midvaal Regional Open Space System.

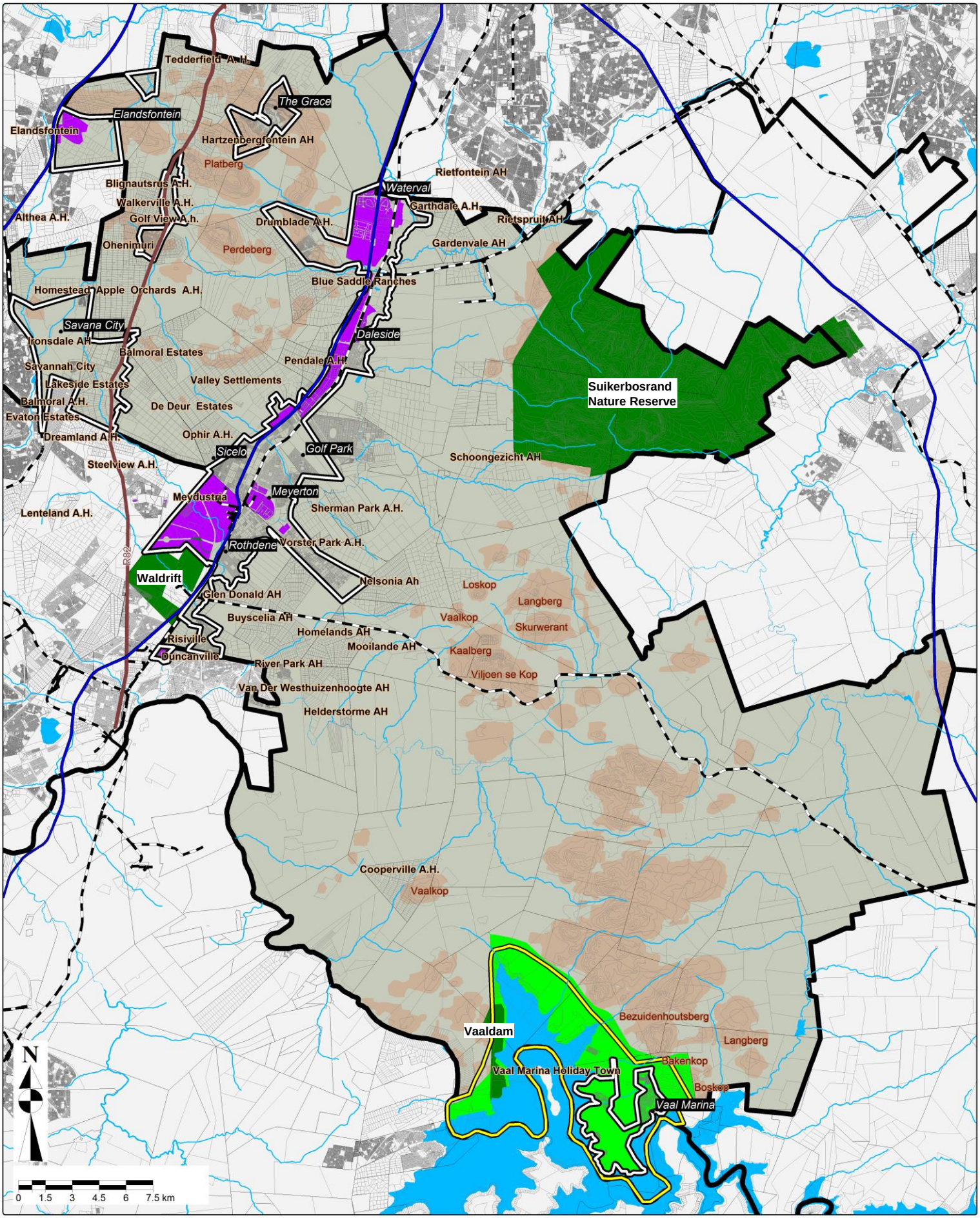
Supplementary to the drainage system as depicted on Figure 27.1, the Regional Open Space System also incorporates the proclaimed Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve which is located in the north-eastern parts of the municipal area and which is legally protected from development.

The third important structuring element which forms part of the proposed Midvaal Regional Open Space System is the two major ridges precincts located within the municipal borders. These include the Platberg-Perdeberg complex in the north-western quadrant of the municipal area between Homestead Apple Orchards A.H. and Tedderfield A.H.; as well as the Vaalkop-Skurwerant-Bezuidenhoutsberg-Langberg-Bakenkop complex located in the south-eastern parts of the municipal area between Vaal Marina and the Suikerbosrant located within the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve.

This Regional Open Space System must be managed in line with the Midvaal Environmental Management Framework (June 2008).

The existing conservancies within the Midvaal area as well as the EMF guidelines pertaining to Conservancies also need to be considered as supplementary development guidelines to the Midvaal High Control Zone. This must be read in conjunction with the guidelines for areas classified as High Control Zone in the Gauteng EMF as listed in the table below:

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Environmental Management Zones



Zone 1 - High Control Zone:
- Ridges
- Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve
- Dams and Rivers
- Conservancies

Zone 2 - Normal Control Zone:
- Agriculture

Zone 3 - Urban Development Zone

Zone 4 – Industrial and Large Commercial Focus Zone

A121

Special Control Zone

Special Control Zone

27.1

Zone 1: High Control Zone

Intention
Special control zones are sensitive areas within and outside the urban development zone. These areas are sensitive to development activities and in several cases also have specific values that need to be protected.

Composition
The following areas have been identified in this zone:

- Conservation priority areas (CBAs);
- Rivers (including 32m buffers);
- Ridges;
- Areas that are sensitive (as determined in the sensitivity assessment);
- Protected areas;
- The creation of the Vaal Dam conservation and recreation area with the focus on grassland conservation and extensive recreation activities;
- The creation of the Johannesburg south conservation, recreation and intensive small scale agriculture area around the Klip River.

Conditions
No listed activities may be excluded from environmental assessment requirements in this zone and further activities may be added where necessary to protect the environment in this zone. Additional requirements (guidelines, precinct plans, etc.) to ensure the proper development of identified areas in this zone, in a manner that will enhance their potential for conservation, tourism and recreation may be introduced.

The following is a list of the features in the MLM EMP which are considered to be Non-Negotiable components of the Regional Open Space System:

Non-Negotiables	Components
❖ Nature Reserves	• Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve
❖ Wetlands	• Widely dispersed
❖ Ridges	• Predominantly Category I and II ridges
❖ Heritage sites	• Blockhouse
❖ Conservancies	• Apple Orchards • Thorntree • Henley-on-Klip • Kliprivier/ Suikerboschrand • Drumblade • Welverdiend • Vaaldam • Klipkraal
❖ Natural Water Courses	• Suikerbosrant River • Klip River • Rietspruit • Vaal River

With regards to future plans the intention of the Gauteng Conservancy Association (GCA) is to form conservancies in areas where the GDACE Conservation Plan 2 has recognised important and irreplaceable sites (see **Diagram 13**).

Another major physical structuring element which will dictate the nature and extent of development within the Midvaal area is dolomite which mainly occurs in the central-northern parts of the municipal area. **Figure 27.2** illustrates the spatial extent of dolomite in the municipal area, and which will have an influence on the type and intensity of development to be allowed in these areas. Detailed, site specific geotechnical studies need to be conducted for individual land use/ township applications in these areas.

In the final instance it is confirmed that environmental concerns in the Midvaal area will continue to be managed in terms of the relevant legislation and EIA processes, following which the appropriate mitigation and conservation measures pertaining to the specific land use application will be put in place.

Zone 2: Normal Control Zone

This includes all agricultural land outside the urban edge (Zone 3) and not included in Zone 1 (High Control Zone). It includes activities like low density/rural residential, tourism e.g. Vaal Marina, light commercial and agri-industries in the agricultural areas. The following guidelines will apply:

Intention

This zone is dominated by agricultural uses outside the urban development zone as defined in the Gauteng Spatial Development Framework. No listed activities may be excluded from environmental assessment requirements in this zone.

Composition

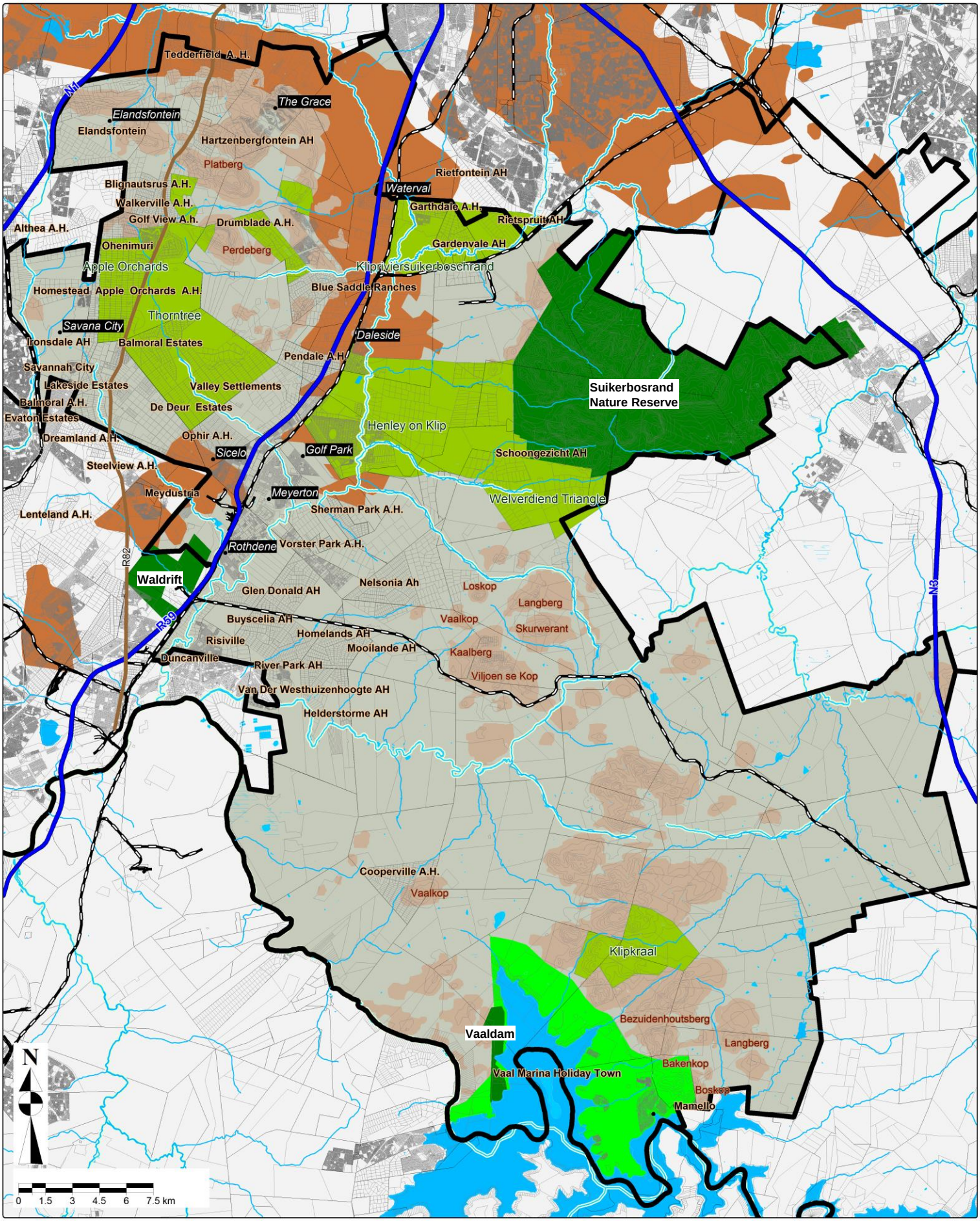
The normal control zone is comprised of the following areas outside the SDF area and special control areas:

- LC01, LC02, LC03, LC04, ISM01, ISM02, ISM03, ISM04, ISM05, ISM06, ISM07, ISM08;
- Area between R54 and R42 (within MLM border);
- This area also comprises the Bantu Bonke initiative as well as the Kudung Land Reform area;
- It is recommended that development in this zone be carried out along the lines of agri-villages which will prove to be more sustainable in terms of job creation and economic growth while preserving the environmental integrity of the area.

Precautionary Guiding Principles

- No densification or subdivision on farms east of existing development from (north to south) Rietspruit/Green Valley, Witkop/Daleside, Henly-on-Klip, Riversdale, Koolfontein/Nelsonia and Mooiland/Helderstroom.
- Development in these areas will be subject to conditions as determined by the MLM and will only be considered on very low potential agricultural land.

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Regional Open Space and Dolomite



Ridges
Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve
Dams and Rivers
Conservancies
Dolomite (C Plan V3.3 - 2011)
Midvaal LM
20m Contours
River Buffers
Special Control Zone

A124

27.2

Zone 3: Urban Development Zone (Urban Edge)

This zone includes all areas within the Midvaal Urban Edge except for High Control Zone areas and the Industrial and Large Commercial Focus Zone within the Urban Edge.

The following guidelines will apply:

Intention

The intention with Zone 1 is to streamline urban development activities in it and to promote development infill, densification and concentration of urban development within the urban development zones as defined in the Gauteng Spatial Development Framework (GSDF), in order to establish a more effective and efficient city region that will minimise urban sprawl into rural areas. Certain currently listed activities may be exempted from environmental assessment requirements at the discretion of the competent authority.

Composition

The Urban Development Zone is composed of the following control areas within the area covered by the GSDF as defined in the previous chapter:

- LC01: Urban existing developed land;
- LC02: Urban development priority;
- LC03: Rural development priority;
- LC04: Rural and urban development priority.
- ISM01: Conservation and agricultural priorities;
- ISM02: Conservation and urban development priorities;
- ISM03: Conservation, urban development and rural development priorities;
- ISM04: Agriculture and urban development priorities;
- ISM05: Agriculture, conservation and rural development priorities;
- ISM06: Agriculture, conservation and urban development priorities;
- ISM07: Agriculture, conservation, urban development and rural development priorities; and
- ISM08: Agriculture, rural and urban development priorities.

Conditions

- Development in this area must be sustainable in respect to the capacity of the environment and specifically the hydrological system to absorb additional sewage and stormwater loads as a result of increased densities;
- Existing open spaces and urban should be retained as open space for the foreseen increased densities; and
- Water Research Commission Report, 2012. The South African Guidelines for Sustainable Drainage Systems.

Zone 4: Industrial and Large Commercial Focus Zone

Intention

The intention with Zone 4 is to streamline non-polluting industrial and large scale commercial (warehouses etc.) activities in areas that are already used for such purposes and areas that are severely degraded but in close proximity to required infrastructure (such as old and even current mining areas). Certain currently listed activities, in addition to those intended for Zone 3 may be excluded from environmental assessment requirements in this zone in future.

Conditions

- Development in this area must be sustainable in respect to the capacity of the environment and specifically the hydrological system to absorb additional sewage and stormwater loads of increased densities; and
- Development in this area must identify any unmapped wetlands, especially seep areas that may occur on any site and when necessary apply for the required water use licence.

Non-polluting Industrial promotion areas where selected activities are to be excluded from EIA processes in addition to those excluded in Zone 3.

Development Principle 2: To facilitate and enhance agricultural production in the municipal area by actively protecting all land earmarked for agricultural purposes, and to target agricultural holdings for innovative small scale farming and agro processing.

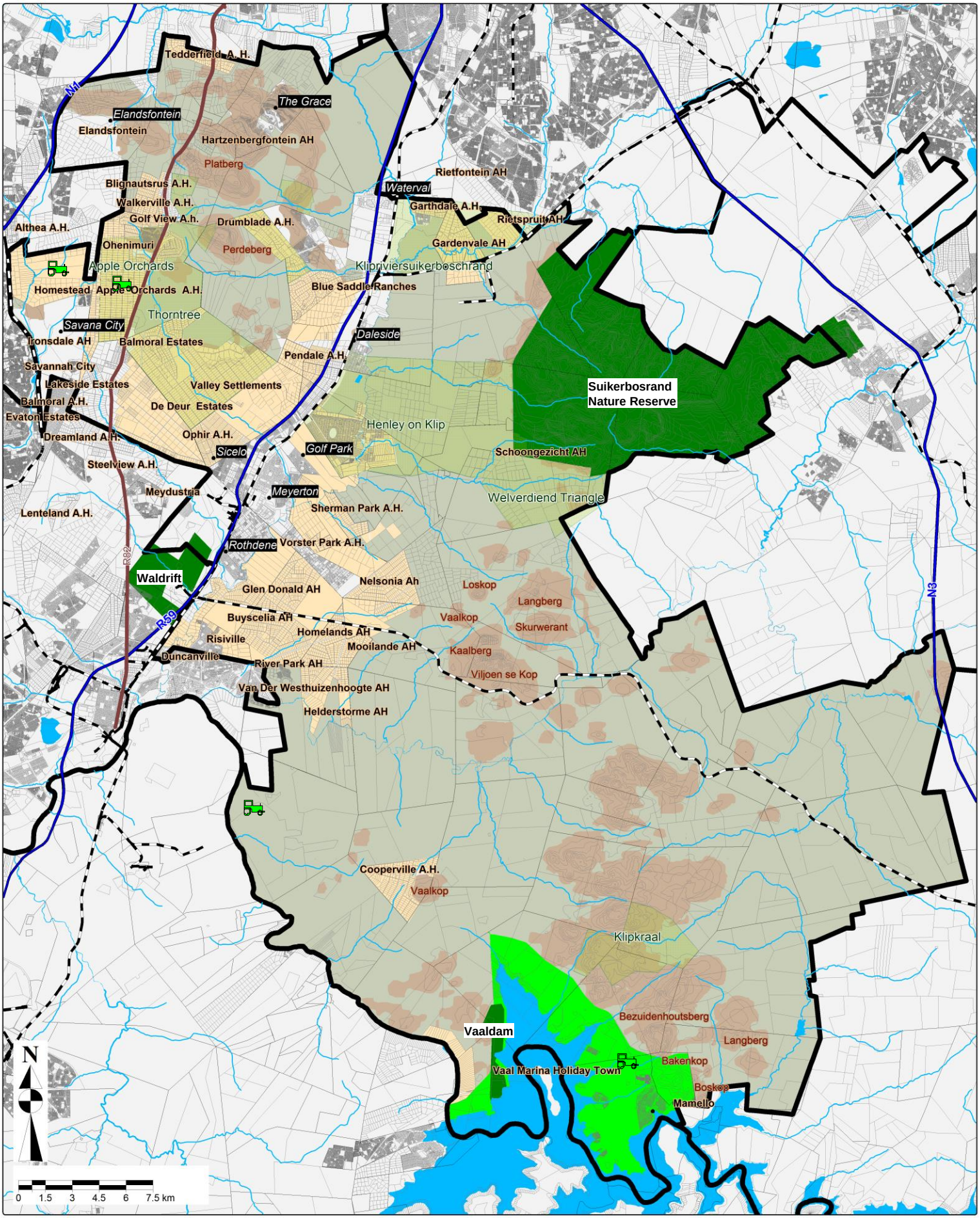
The Midvaal municipal area is well-endowed with high and medium/moderate potential agricultural land which is deemed to form part of the “bread basket” of Gauteng Province. In line with the above Agri Vision for the MLM reads as follow: **AGRITROPOLIS**, food basket of Gauteng supporting farmers to graduate from subsistence Small Holder Farmers to commercial farmers and ultimately become **Agro-Preneurs**.

The areas of high agricultural potential mainly occur in the south-eastern parts of the municipal area between Suikerbosrant and Vaal Marina where extensive agricultural activity currently takes place in an area classified as one of the provincial agricultural hubs; and the central north-western parts between Doornkuil, Homestead Apple Orchards, Walkerville, Tedderfield and Waterval.

This principle states that all agricultural land as depicted on **Figure 28** must be protected against urbanisation and/or extensive subdivision in order to protect the agricultural potential and integrity of these farm units (supports growth management) in support of the Agricultural Policy Objectives as contained in the Midvaal Agricultural Policy which states as follow:

- Preserve land with high conservation potential in support of the livelihoods of communities and to ensure food security;

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Agriculture



Extensive Agriculture
Ridges
Nature Reserves
Conservancies

Agri-Hub
Agricultural Holdings
Dams and Rivers
Special Control Zone

A127

- Preserve agricultural land in support of the livelihoods of communities and to ensure food security, especially on agricultural land with high yield potential;
- Provide a high level of certainty to landowners, decision makers and other stakeholders with regard to the status and future of agricultural land;
- Regulate and control access to agricultural land by proponents of non-agricultural development, thereby giving effect to the provisions of agricultural legislation;
- Build awareness and knowledge about the value of agricultural land and the need to preserve it and on matters pertinent to the threats that contribute to the loss of this resource;
- Promote efficiency in decision-making on applications relating to the subdivision of agricultural land and the change in use of agricultural land;
- Promote investment into alternative agricultural practices in the Midvaal area, for the benefit of the economy and to improve the quality of life.

The **Midvaal Agricultural Policy (2015)** is based on the following strategic pillars:

- Pillar 1: Obtaining funding for agriculture
- Pillar 2: Quantification (Audit) of infrastructure available
- Pillar 3: Establishment of Midvaal Agricultural Forum
- Pillar 4: Cluster farmers per commodity
- Pillar 5: Skills development and training
- Pillar 6: Market opportunities and linkages
- Pillar 7: Climate smart technology
- Pillar 8: Traceability through production, processing and distribution
- Pillar 9: Branding of Midvaal specific commodities
- Pillar 10: Regulations and By-Laws Awareness enhancement
- Pillar 11: Agricultural infrastructure provision
- Pillar 12: Development of Agro-Preneurs
- Pillar 13: Agro Processing enhancement
- Pillar 14: Consolidation of agricultural initiatives
- Pillar 15: Agro Industry Value Chain extension
- Pillar 16: Establishment of agricultural development nodes around Doornkuil, De Deur, Bantu Bonke and Vaal Marina

All policy statements and criteria as contained in the Midvaal Agricultural Policy are applicable to the land earmarked for agricultural purposes as reflected on Figure 27 of the Midvaal Spatial Development Framework. It should also be noted that the MLM intends to make 600 ha of agricultural land available as part of a Farmers Support Programme to provide more people access to land.

Agricultural Hubs

The Midvaal Municipality wishes to enhance agricultural production and processing as part of its vision to promote the municipal area as an agricultural hub in Gauteng context. This might require

farmers to form functional clusters (agricultural hubs) within the area to collectively perform specialised agricultural activities (agglomeration and economy of scale benefits). Such activities may comprise intense production with related infrastructure, processing of products (agro-industries), training facilities and associated accommodation/social facilities for workers, and even commercial outlets to sell the processed agricultural products locally.

In such cases the farmers should approach the municipality with a business plan/proposal for the declaration of the relevant area as an "Agricultural Hub". The MLM will then consider the basket of land uses required and negotiate with the group of farmers accordingly on the range and scale of land uses that can be allowed in such "Agricultural Hub" – even if it does not comply with the Agricultural Policy referred to above. Each case will be evaluated on its own merit.

In this regard the Doornkuil and Homestead Apple Orchards areas represent a proposed pilot Agricultural Hub (refer to Figure 27) where innovative agricultural production and processing should be established in line with the objectives noted in the De Deur Development Framework and Precinct Plan (2017).

Agricultural Holdings

As far as agricultural holdings in general are concerned, Council should strictly control the land uses as these areas have the tendency to become "mixed use transition areas" if not properly managed.

The primary purpose of agricultural holdings is to accommodate small-scale farming and rural-residential activity and the original layout, road reserves and engineering services provided in these areas were designed in accordance with this concept.

In many instances the illegal land uses performed on agricultural holdings have a severe negative impact on the surrounding environment in terms of noise pollution (small industrial activities), traffic (especially "trucking business", sanitation (normally these areas only have septic tanks) and waste disposal.

In all these areas the general rule should be to allow agricultural services, public open space, rural residential and community facilities. Any other uses should be subject to the Consent of the Midvaal Local Municipality.

It should be noted that Rural Local Economic Development (LED) is a critical element towards future social and economic stability in the rural/agricultural areas of Midvaal, and therefore require very specific interventions in future (in partnership with Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Land Reform).

Development Principle 3: To promote tourism development through active utilization of tourism resources available like the Vaal Dam, the Ridges Precincts, and the Nature Reserves in the area.

There are four major tourism features within the municipal area which should be promoted as tourism destinations in the Midvaal area (see **Figure 29**).

The first and most prominent tourism feature is the Vaal Marina precinct located in the far south-eastern parts of the municipal area, and which comprise a number of holiday resorts located around the Vaal Dam. This area is an asset not only to the local Midvaal community, but also to the broader Gauteng and regional population. It needs to be actively managed and protected in order to ensure that the character of the area as a tourism destination is maintained in the long term. The development guidelines as formulated for the Vaal Dam Special Control Zone as noted under Development Principle 1 as well as those contained in the Midvaal Environmental Management Framework (2008) are applicable to this precinct.

Supplementary to the Vaal Marina area, the world renowned Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve which is located in the north-eastern parts of the municipal area and which incidentally also consist of a range of ridges, represent a second prominent tourism feature/destination to the Midvaal area. The nature reserve should be actively marketed and promoted as a destination for day visitors from all over Gauteng Province. At present it already hosts some annual sports events which attract people from afar, but much more could be done to effectively brand it as a tourism precinct supplementary to it being a Nature Reserve. A one kilometre wide buffer zone of low intensity and compatible land use must be maintained in all directions around the Nature Reserve in order to protect it from negative external influences.

The Klip River and specifically the Henley-on-Klip area along the Klip River represent the third prominent tourism feature located within the Midvaal area. The area is characterised by a village atmosphere and forms part of a conservancy. The Bass Lake precinct adjacent to the north of Henley-on-Klip is also very popular for fishing and a number of adventure sports facilities.

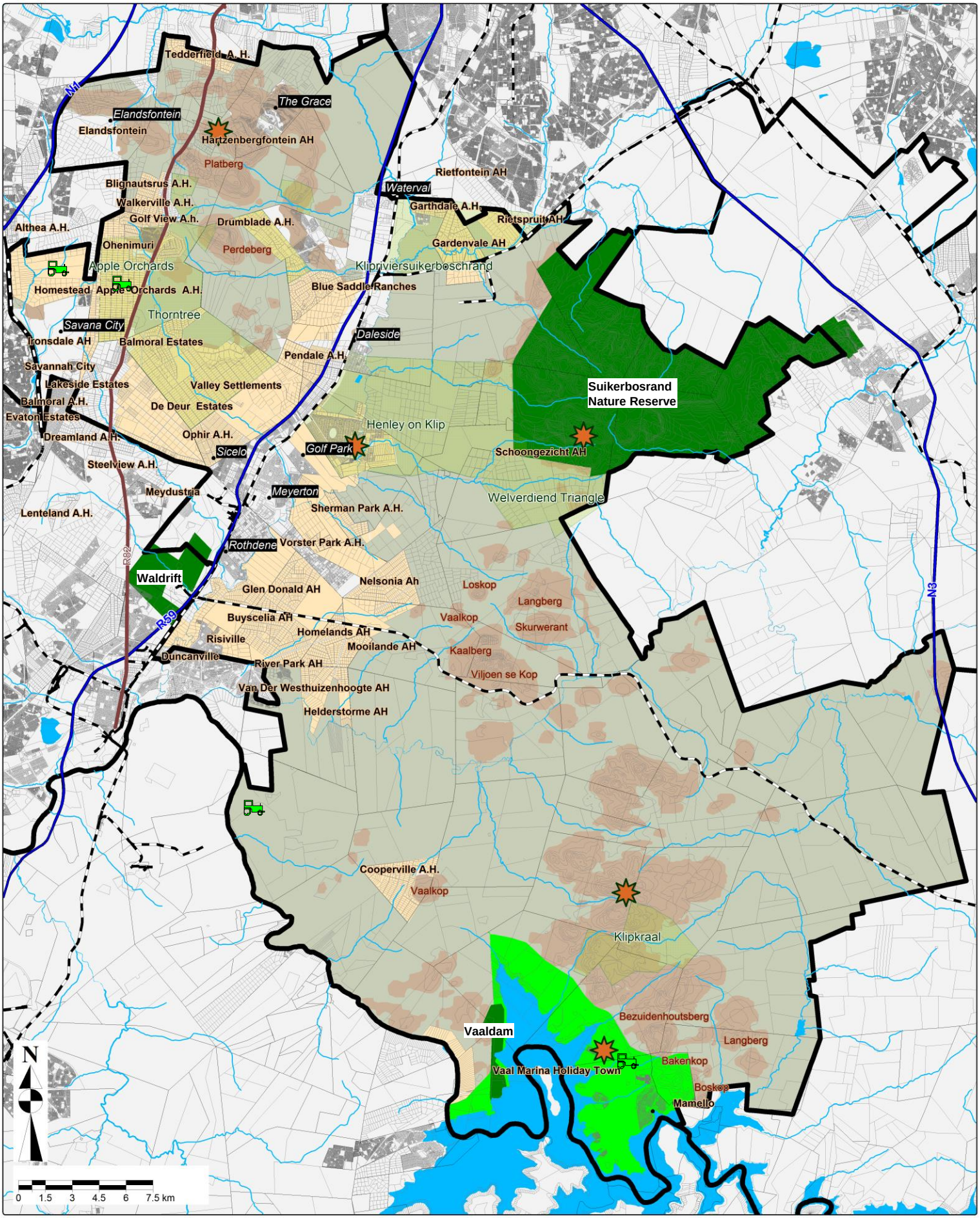
The existing character of the area should be maintained and protected by restricting subdivision of properties and ensuring that farm portions are used for agricultural purposes.

The agricultural properties to the east, south and west need to be maintained as a green belt/buffer, while the establishment of bridle paths should be encouraged for the use of horse riders and cyclists.

The Midvaal Density Policy (outside the Urban Development Boundary), Accommodation Policy, and Agricultural Policy are applicable to this area.

The fourth tourism precinct within the municipal area is represented by the extensive ridges located in the south-eastern and north-western parts of the municipal area respectively, and which form part of

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Tourism



Extensive Agriculture
Ridges
Nature Reserves
Conservancies
Agri-Hub
Agricultural Holdings
Dams and Rivers
Special Control Zone
Tourism Precincts

A131

the Midvaal Regional Open Space System. Because of the strict development limitations applicable to these areas, there is potential to utilise these to further enhance the tourism character of the Midvaal area. The ridges areas can be utilised to expand on the range of tourism facilities and services being provided by the Midvaal municipality. Such services and facilities could include the development of mountain biking routes, hiking trails, game farming, and a range of adventure sport facilities as long as these do not impact negatively on the environmental quality of the area. The proposed Walkerville tourism village concept as discussed in the Walkerville Development Framework/ Precinct Plan could play an anchor role towards strengthening the tourism component in the Platberg ridges area.

Supplementary to the above, routes R42, R549 and R54 which serve most of the tourism precincts could be developed as tourism corridors by catering for supportive tourism initiatives and hospitality uses subject to the following conditions:

- The land use must be compatible with the character of the surrounding area;
- The scale and intensity must be compatible with the surrounding area;
- It may not interfere or impact negatively on the amenity of the area.

In principle, the majority of guest accommodation typologies as contained in the **Midvaal Accommodation Policy** should be promoted in and around the tourism precincts identified in the Midvaal SDF, subject to these facilities complying with all the requirements and conditions as set out in the policy. The **Accommodation Policy** provides guidelines to the following typologies/activities:

- Camping and Caravaning;
- Bed and Breakfast Establishments;
- Guesthouses;
- Backpackers Accommodation (including boarding house);
- Self-catering Apartments;
- Hotel;
- Resort/Lodge;
- Game Farm.

It should be emphasised that the SDF supports the principle that the majority of the guest accommodation typologies as reflected above should be concentrated in and around the identified tourism precincts. However, this does not prevent land owners within any other parts of the municipal area from applying for such rights as long as they comply with the criteria, guidelines and justification requirements for such facilities as contained in the **Midvaal Accommodation Policy**.

Development Principle 4: To pre-actively plan, design and facilitate the establishment of a Development Corridor along the R59 freeway.

There is significant potential to promote a variety of economic activities, as well as residential development along the R59 Corridor in the Midvaal area. Extensive studies were conducted to determine the development potential of this corridor during 2004 and 2008, and Council approved the R59 Corridor Development Framework during July 2010. Following from this, the more detailed R59 Corridor Urban Design Framework was developed during July 2014. The footprint of the R59 Corridor functional area is schematically illustrated on **Figure 30**. The R59 Corridor functional area is the priority area for the bulk of economic and residential development within the Midvaal Municipality, and should thus also be prioritised in terms of the provision of engineering services. The bulk of development in the short to medium term is to be located to the east of route R59, but some areas to the west of the freeway are now also earmarked for development in the short to medium term, and more specifically the following:

- The land to the west of route R59 from the Graceview Industrial Park southwards up to road 1073 (future K160);
- The land to the west of route R59 from route 1322 (future K158) at Daleside, southwards and right up to Meyer Street (future K210).

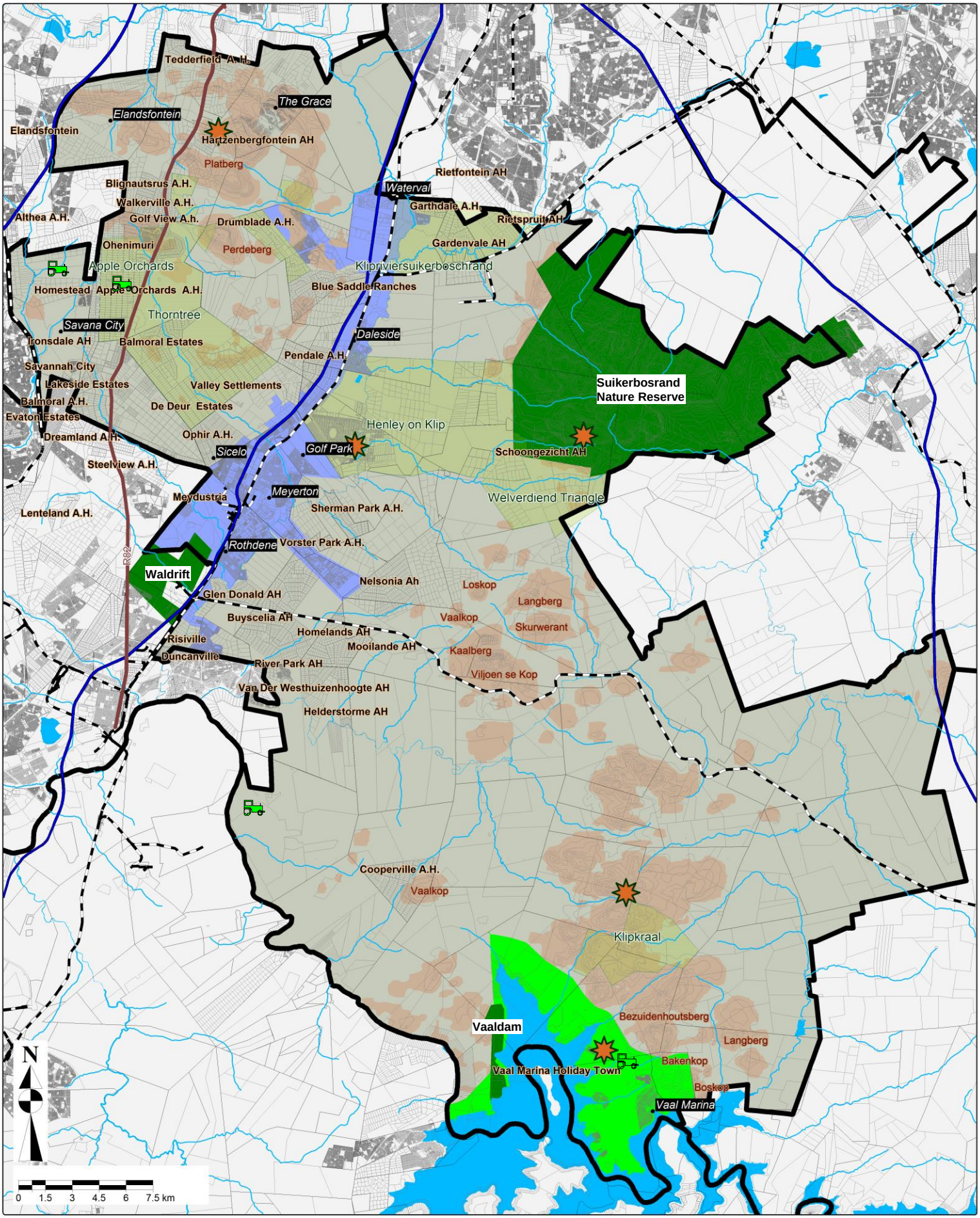
Due to limited infrastructure capacity to the west of route R59, the preferred use in the above two areas would be typical services with low bulk service requirements (especially water and sanitation) e.g. storage/ warehousing, packaging, dry assembly plants, showrooms etc.

Development Principle 5: To facilitate the development of a hierarchy of sustainable Activity Nodes in partnership with stakeholders to ensure equitable access to social infrastructure, and to promote Local Economic Development in the urban and rural parts of the municipality.

It is important to define a proper nodal structure within the municipal area in order to enhance service delivery, and to promote the provision of both social and economic infrastructure. This in turn, will result in consolidated social and economic development in both the urban and rural parts of the municipality as a form of growth management. As part of the 2011 Municipal SDF process, the Midvaal Municipality commissioned the formulation of a **Nodal Development Policy** for the municipal area.

According to the Midvaal Nodal Policy (2011), "***Nodal development is defined as a mixed-use pedestrian-friendly land use pattern that seeks to increase concentrations of population and employment in well-defined areas with good transit service, a mix of diverse and compatible land uses, and public and private improvements designed to be pedestrian and transit oriented."***

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
R59 Corridor Development



Extensive Agriculture
Ridges
Nature Reserves
Conservancies
Agri-Hub
Agricultural Holdings
Dams and Rivers
Special Control Zone
Tourism Precincts
R59 Corridor

A134

1) Nodal Hierarchy

The Midvaal Nodal Development Policy makes provision for a three tier hierarchy of nodes within the Midvaal area as depicted on **Figure 31**:

- Primary Nodes: Core Area (CBD)
- Secondary Nodes: Neighbourhood Nodes
- Tertiary Nodes: Rural Nodes

a) Primary Node: Core Area (CBD)

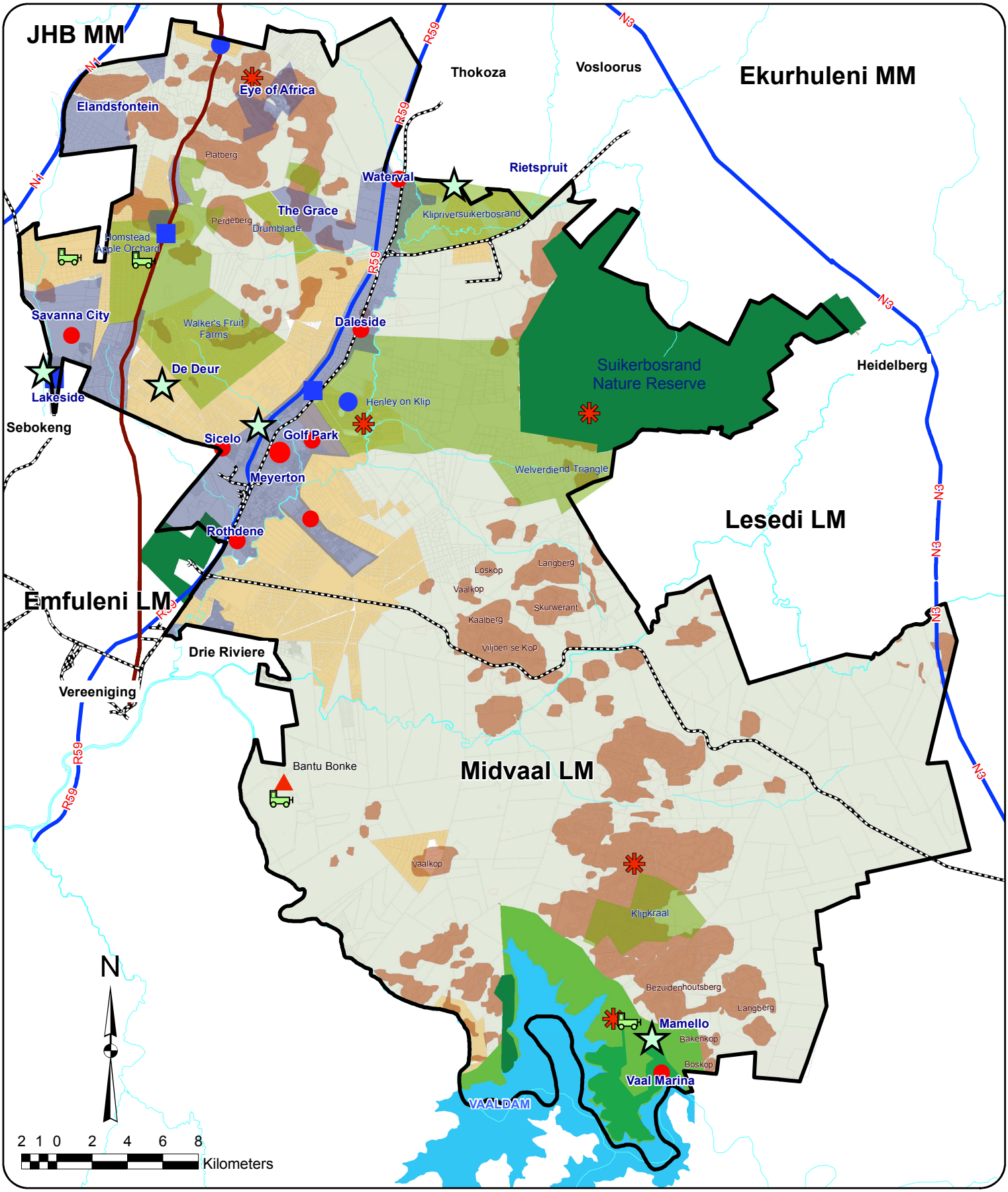
The first and most prominent activity node within the Midvaal municipality is the Core Area which represents the Midvaal CBD located in the central part of Meyerton. This is the largest and most comprehensive activity node within the municipal area and will act as the priority area for promoting the widest range of economic activities, as well as higher order social facilities and amenities in the municipal area.

b) Secondary Node: Neighbourhood Nodes

The second category, which is the Neighbourhood Node, is generally located within the Midvaal Urban Development Boundary and comprise a number of evenly spaced nodal points identified all along the R59 corridor in the central Region, as well as some nodal points in the western parts of the municipal area (especially along route R82). These nodes are intended to provide lower order goods and services conveniently close to where communities currently reside. In total there are thirteen neighbourhood nodes identified within the Midvaal area, as listed below:

- Waterval
- Daleside
- Golf Park
- Meyer Street Entrance (Gateway)
- Sicelo
- Riversdale
- Kookrus
- Rothdene
- Walkerville
- Savanna City
- De Deur
- Vaal Marina
- Elandsfontein (It is anticipated that the Elandsfontein Node, once the precinct starts developing, will also become one of the secondary nodes in the Midvaal municipal area).

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Hierarchy of Activity Nodes & Economic Development Centres



Legend

- Economic Development Centres
- Railway Stations
- Rural Node
- Neighbourhood Node
- Core Area
- MPCC
- Agri Village
- Tourism Precincts
- Rivers
- R82 Road
- Railway Line
- Existing Main Roads A136
- 20m Contours
- Urban Development Boundary
- Midvaal Boundary
- Nature Reserves
- Conservancies
- Vaal Dam
- Tourism
- Ridges
- Rural Residentail
- Agriculture

Note that the GITMP supports nodal development and densification along public transport corridors such as route R82.

c) Tertiary Nodes: Rural Nodes

The third category of node is specifically located outside the Urban Development Boundary of Midvaal and comprises two Rural Nodes which do not form part of proclaimed townships (refer to Figure 30). These include one nodal point along the R82 Corridor in the Western Region of the municipality at Tedderfield, and the Henley-on-Klip node in the Central Region of the municipality.

More detailed Precinct Plans have been compiled for a number of nodes in Midvaal, including the CBD, Waterval, Tedderfield, Elandsfontein, Walkerville and De Deur which are the largest ones.

All the nodes referred to above represent the consolidation and integration of a range of economic, social and residential facilities at strategically located points accessible at a convenient distance to the surrounding communities.

d) Multi Purpose Community Centres

Clusters of community facilities in the form of Multi Purpose Community Centres exist at the following points within the municipal area (see Figure 30):

- Bantu Bonke MPCC
- Lakeside MPCC
- Ohenumeri MPCC
- Randvaal MPCC

The purpose of a Multi Purpose Community Centre is primarily to provide a one-stop service comprising a fairly comprehensive range of social facilities and services to the surrounding community at strategic points within the municipal area. Such services and facilities could include schools, clinics, satellite police stations, libraries, post offices, community halls, and a range of additional social facilities and services e.g. pension pay-out points.

By implication a Multi Purpose Community Centre can/should form part of the identified hierarchy of nodes (Core Area, Neighbourhood Nodes and Rural Nodes) in the Midvaal area, but the four cases referred to above already exist, and should thus be maintained.

e) Agri Village

The Bantu Bonke area in the central-southern parts of the municipal area is classified as an Agri Village. This is a small residential settlement with a number of community facilities serving the local and surrounding rural communities. It has a strong agricultural character with a hydroponic plant forming part of the village.

2) Economic Development Centres

Figure 31 above depicts the proposed introduction of Economic Development Centres (EDC's) which are aimed at realising economic growth and creation of jobs as outlined on the Midvaal IDP Theme for 2018-2019. The main objective of the EDC's is to serve as integrated distinct anchors allocated within five (5) Midvaal Townships ranging from, but not limited to:

- **Milling Plant**- To develop a milling plant that will produce maize products and animal feeds. The objective of this plant would be to attract local business that is in the agricultural and farming industry to buy stock from this plant.
- **Agro-Processing Centre-**To develop a Agri-processing facility that will comprise of the following uses: agricultural and agro-processing purposes, restaurant, car wash and mini/family market/s (fruit and vegetables), training facility, production infrastructure, pack house with cold storage and administration offices**,** this hub is also aimed at supplying local farmers and shops tat are within the agriculture business.
- **Upholstery and Sewing Hub**- To develop a hub that will specialise in the production of municipal uniform and other clothing needs- The targeted market are the Municipality, schools and other businesses
- **Tourism**- To create tourism objective for Midvaal in partnership with Heineken and Netherlands Embassy together with tourism related facilities- This centre is aimed at promoting private public partnerships, as this centre is looking at attracting Heineken and the Netherlands Embassy to work together with the municipality.
- **Plastic Manufacturing Plant** – To develop a hub that will look at manufacturing plastics and be sold to the municipality and the local business.

An extensive investigation/research approach is required prior to the realisation of the above mentioned centres. It is important to note that certain critical and realistic steps would have to be taken looking at but not limited to the following:

- **Comparative advantage studies**- That will look at the viability of the centres, the rationale, Its target market, approach and benefits within the community
- **Available and Required Engineering Infrastructure Services-** To look at the available and required services that will be required to establish extra commercial/industrial loading on the municipality's capacity.
- **Policy Framework-** Extensive Policy frameworks would have to be formulated, to serve as guiding documents so as to legally facilitate the centres within a framework.
- **Other relevant research studies** relevant to the establishment of the EDC's.

All of the centres are aimed at utilizing and improving skills and employment for the local communities, through prioritising local labour and youth employment. It is envisaged that all the centres be integrated through participating in the leading and lagging economic value chain.

3) Projected Land Use Demand per Node (2034)

Table 13 below depicts the projected 20 year demand forecast for floor space demand in the various parts of the Midvaal Municipality as determined from the Midvaal Economic Development Analysis (Demacon 2014).

- Along the R59 Corridor the major areas of projected trade growth are around Gateway/Golf Park (37 000-39 000m² GLA); at Highbury/Henley-on-Klip (5500-7500m² GLA); and Waterval (2000-3500m² GLA).
- In terms of office demand the Gateway/Golf Park and Highbury/Henley-on-Klip Nodes are highest while the projected demand for warehousing/industrial uses are highest at four nodes: Waterval/Nampak (150 000-180 000m² GLA); Daleside/Witkop (75 000-105 000m² GLA); and Henley-on-Klip/Highbury and Sicelo with 45 000-65 000m² GLA each.
- Residential densification and infill development (housing) is projected around all these nodes.
- Along route R82 the projected demand is significantly smaller than along the R59 Corridor. Savannah City holds the highest projected demand for Trade (21 000-23 000m² GLA) and office (1500-3500m² GLA) while De Deur and Walkerville are expected to yield about 2500 – 4000m² each.
- De Deur and Elandsfontein can expect the bulk of industrial demand (11 000-13 000 and 3000-5000m² GLA respectively) while Walkerville could also yield significant commercial development based on the latest Walkerville Development Framework (2017).
- The bulk of residential development is also projected around Savannah City (470 000-500 000m² GLA).
- In the remaining nodal areas in Midvaal the projected demand is limited, although significant residential development will occur around Mamello.

Table 13: Twenty Year Demand Forecast Space Demand (Baseline Scenario)

Nodes/Development Areas	Trade (m² GLA)	Office (m² GLA)	Industrial/ Warehousing (m² GLA)	Housing (m² GLA)
R59 Functional Areas				
Waterval/Nampak-Everite	2000 – 3500	1000 – 3000	150 000 – 185 000	54 000 – 56 000
Daleside/Witkop	1000 – 2500	1000 – 3000	75 000 – 105 000	17 500 – 19 000
Henley-on-Klip/Highbury	5500 – 7500	3000 – 5000	45 000 – 65 000	54 000 – 56 000
Gateway	37 000 – 39 000	22 000 – 25 000	0	54 000 – 56 000
Golf Park	2000 – 3500	14 000 – 17 000	0	54 000 – 56 000
Meyerton CBD	0	0	0	17 500 – 19 000
Sicelo	2000 – 3500	1000 – 3000	45 000 – 65 000	72 500 – 74 500
Kookrus	2000 – 3500	1000 – 3000	0	0
Rothdene	1000 – 2500	1000 – 3000	0	17 500 – 19 000
Riversdale	1500 – 3500	1000 – 3000	0	17 500 – 19 000
R82 Functional Areas				
Tedderfield	1000 – 2500	150 – 350	800 – 1100	17 500 – 19 000
Elandsfontein	1000 – 2500	150 – 350	3000 – 5000	17 500 – 19 000
Walkerville	2500 – 4500	350 – 550	0	17 500 – 19 000
Savanna City	21 000 – 23 000	1500 – 3500	2000 – 3500	470 000 – 500 000
De Deur	2500 – 4500	350 – 550	11 000 – 13 000	17 500 – 19 000
Other				
Vaal Marina/Mamello	3500 - 5000	1000 - 2500	0	245 000 – 247 000
Eye of Africa	2500 – 4500	300 – 500	0	60 500 – 63 000
Suikerbosrant	300 – 600	150 – 350	0	0
Bantu Bonke Agricultural Village	300 – 600	150 – 350	0	0

Source: Midvaal Economic Development Analysis: Demacon (2014)

3) Detailed Development Guidelines

The following more detailed development guidelines are applicable to the various types of nodes in the Midvaal area.

a) Primary Node: Core area (CBD)

"The CBD area provides the highest residential and commercial densities in the municipal area and the greatest variety of services in the region. It is intended to have the character of a central business district. As a regional destination, a core area typically contains larger retail stores, entertainment, offices and a mix of higher density housing.

The CBD area is of a municipal-wide significance and can therefore develop a strong retail, entertainment and office component. The retail component can accommodate a regional shopping centre or 2 or more community shopping centres. Alternatively, the core area can accommodate a total and combined retail floor area of between 10,000m² and 60,000m². The viability of the retail figures given above needs to be validated through a retail study that accompanies each individual application of retail land use rights within the municipal area.

The CBD area needs to provide higher-order community services that serve the entire municipal area. With regard to health care, the core area should provide the region's hospital(s), as well as other higher order and specialized medical facilities. Other community facilities to be provided in such a node include a large police station and emergency service centre. These facilities are all highest-order facilities when compared to similar facilities provided in lower-order nodes.

The core area can provide recreation facilities that serve the municipal area, usually consisting of a stadium that forms the central facility within such a node. Such a recreational facility can serve as the base for regional sports clubs. In addition to the stadium, the core area should contain other highest-order recreations facilities, such as a cricket oval, a swimming pool and a multi-purpose indoor sports centre.

The CBD area can also accommodate a significant higher-density housing component to enable a more vibrant nodal configuration. The Meyerton CBD is most probably the only area within Midvaal that is suited for the development of walk-ups and a higher-density housing option.

b) Secondary Nodes: Neighbourhood Nodes

These nodes are intended to create a focus for more residential, suburban areas within the urban boundary of the municipal area. They are to provide a variety of services for local residents, including a mix of medium density housing, ranging from semi-detached housing to duplex housing, shopping, offices and community services. Neighbourhood nodes are intended to help steer urban development

on a municipal level and provide structure to residential neighbourhood on a local level. Although there is no single design template that can be applied to all neighbourhood nodes, there are certain planning and design principles present in all good examples of neighbourhood node development, which are set out in the document.

A neighbourhood node can accommodate a community shopping centre and two or more local shopping centres or a total and combined retail floor area of between 5,000m² and 10,000m² in size. The viability of the retail figures given above needs to be validated through a retail study that accompanies each individual application of retail land use rights within the municipal area. In addition, a neighbourhood node can accommodate entertainment venues of local significance and an office component that can provide office space for local businesses.

Table 14: Typical Retail Centre Classification

Classification	Size (m²)
Local Centre (Rural Centre)	1000-5000
Neighbourhood Centre	5000-10000
Community Centre	10000-30000
Small Regional Centre	30000-60000
Regional Centre	60000-100000
Super-Regional Centre	>100000

Source: Urban Dynamics Gauteng, 2010

A neighbourhood node should provide community services to the residential neighbourhoods they serve and should at least comprise a clinic, a post office, a community centre and a library. A recreational component can also be attached to a neighbourhood node. These recreational facilities can supplement the recreation facilities of schools.

c) Tertiary Nodes: Rural nodes

As the name suggests, rural nodes are nodes in rural areas that provide basic services and shopping opportunities to rural communities. These nodes are all located outside of the existing urbanized areas and Urban Development Boundary. These nodes should have a semi-rural character which can be expressed in their layout and building design.

A rural node can accommodate two or more local shopping centres, or a total and combined retail floor area of up to 5,000m² in size. (Also refer to Table 13). In addition, a rural node can accommodate office floor area catering for local businesses.

Due to the travel distances associated with rural areas, it is imperative that rural nodes should provide community services to the rural communities they serves. A rural node should at least comprise a clinic, a post office and a community hall. It is also important that the rural node comprises a police station due to the short reaction times required to respond to emergencies. A rural node can also

comprise recreational facilities, such as a rugby field and a few tennis courts, to serve as a community facilitator within rural areas.

As part of a general drive towards enhancing the development of activity nodes in the municipal area, it is suggested that Council commission the compilation of detailed precinct plans for such areas. Most of the nodes in Midvaal already have such plans.

Development Principle 6: To capitalise on the strategic location of the municipality by way of regional and provincial linkages, and to establish an internal movement network comprising a hierarchy of roads which include a comprehensive public transport network and services.

It is important to provide for proper regional, as well as local road network linkages within and around the municipal area. As illustrated on **Figure 32.1** the most important regional routes currently serving the Midvaal area include the R59 freeway, route R82 in the western parts of the municipal area, route R550 which runs from the Waterval area towards the N3 in the eastern parts, route P25-1/ R551 which links Midvaal (Meyerton) to Lesedi (Heidelberg); route K78 which links the Meyerton area to the Vaal Dam and to the N3 freeway to the east (south of Heidelberg); route P41-2 which links the Vaal Marina area to Heidelberg towards the north-west; and route R557 which links Meyerton to the Suikerbosrant Nature Reserve.

This road network needs to be protected and enhanced at all cost in order to ensure that Midvaal is functionally linked to the surrounding urban fabric and performs its function, both economically and socially, in the broader regional and provincial context.

Figure 32.2 comprises the proposed Strategic Road Hierarchy of existing and proposed first, second and third order routes in the Midvaal area as contained in the Midvaal Integrated Transport Plan and the Gautrans Strategic Road Network.

In brief the proposed future road hierarchy comprise the following route as reflected on Figure 6.2:

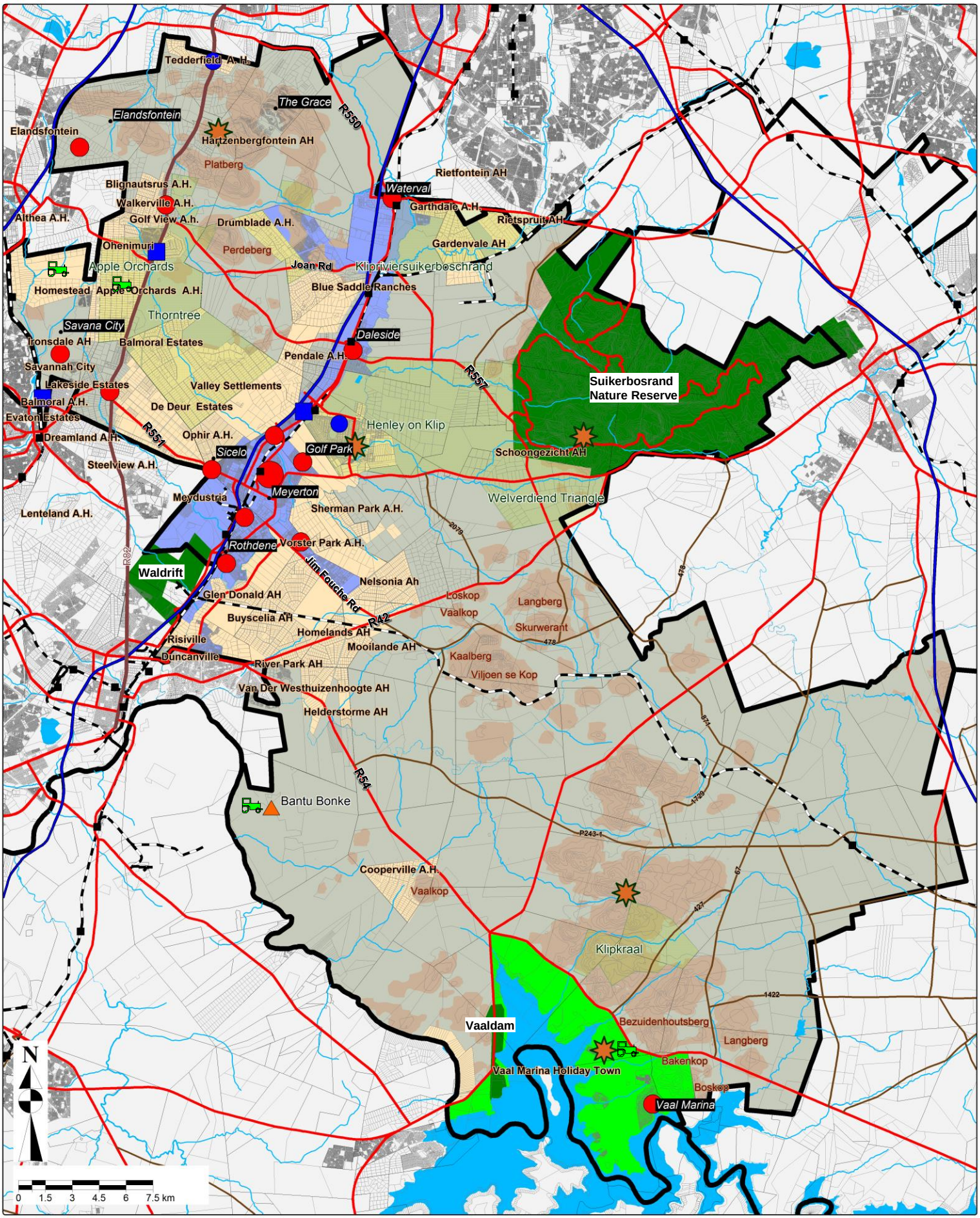
First Order (Freeways):

- N1 towards the west;
- R59 in the central Midvaal area;
- PWV13 broadly linking Suikerbosrant to the Vaal Dam;
- PWV18, 20 and 22 which will serve the Midvaal area in an east-west direction in the northern, central and southern parts once it is constructed.

Second Order: K-routes/Conventional Dual Carriageway Routes:

- Routes K47, K57 (existing R82), and K77 parallel to the west of route R59;
- Routes K91, K135 and K167 parallel to the east of Route R59;

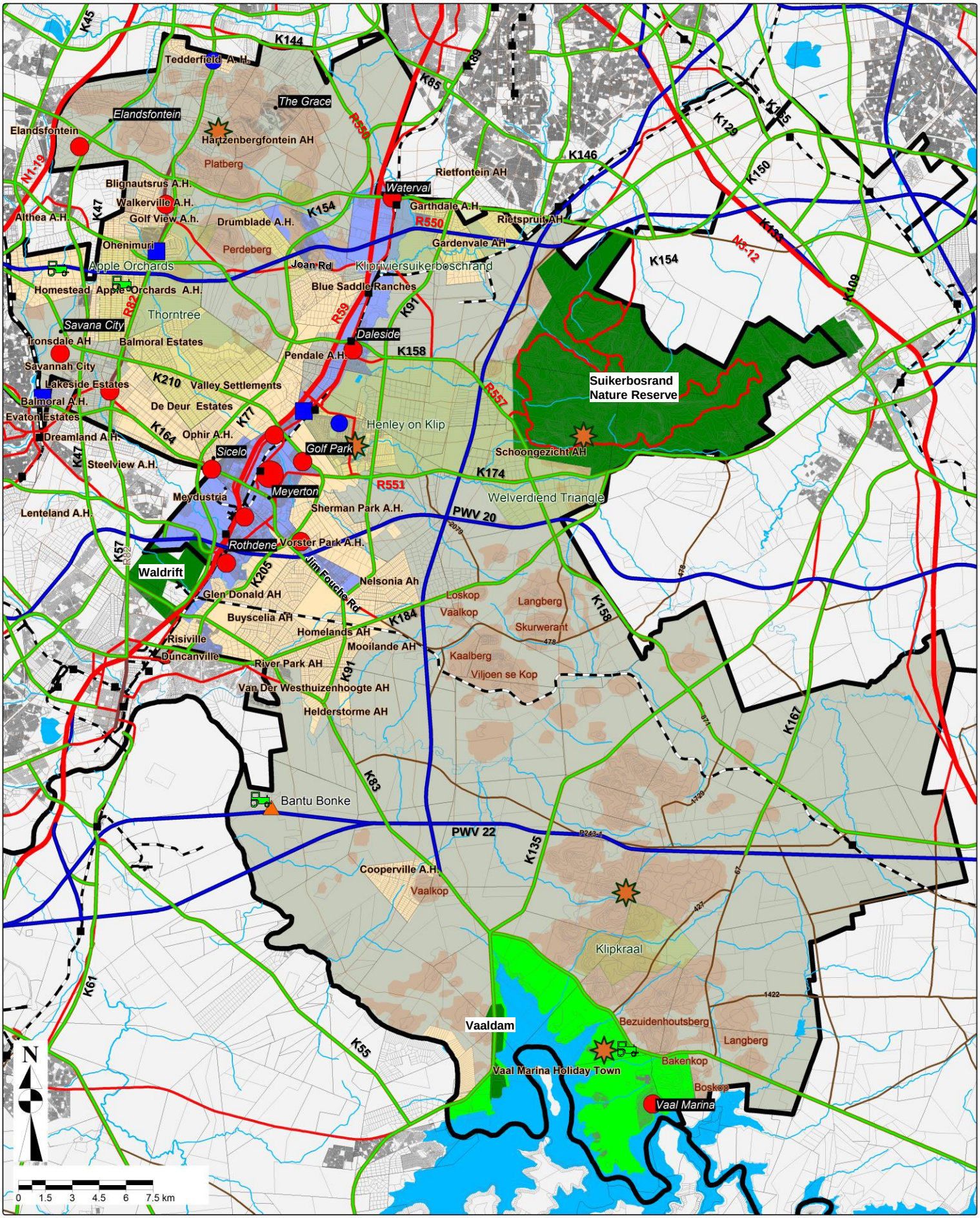
MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Existing Movement Network



Extensive Agriculture
Ridges
Nature Reserves
Conservancies
Agri-Hub
Agricultural Holdings
Dams and Rivers
Tourism
Tourism Precincts
R59 Corridor
Core Area
Neighbourhood Node
Rural Node
MPCC
A144 Agri Village
National Roads
Main Roads
Other Roads
Railways
Rail Stations

32.1

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Strategic Road Network



Extensive Agriculture
Ridges
Nature Reserves
Conservancies
Agri-Hub
Agricultural Holdings

Dams and Rivers
Tourism
Tourism Precincts
R59 Corridor
Core Area
Neighbourhood Node

Rural Node
MPCC
Agri Village

Class 1 Road (Existing)
Class 1 Roads (Proposed)
Class 2 Roads (Proposed)
Class 3 Roads
Railways
Rail Stations

A145

32.2

- In an east-west direction and from north to south in the Midvaal area the following routes:
    - K144 past Tedderfield to the north towards Lenasia;
    - K154 through the Waterval Node (Heidelberg Road) towards Walkerville and Elandsfontein;
    - K158 through Daleside towards Suikerbosrant;
    - K210 from Golf Park through Doornkuil towards the N1;
    - K174 between Meyerton and Heidelberg (Lesedi);
    - K164 from Meyerton CBD through Sicelo towards Ironside and Everton-Sebokeng (Johan le Roux extension);
    - K184 from Emfuleni/Vereeniging towards Ironside;
    - K83 between Emfuleni/Vereeniging and the Vaal Dam.

The most important routes from the above are K57 (R82) to the west (serving the area in a north-south direction); K154 to the north linking Waterval Node to Elandsfontein and beyond (east to west); and K164 (Johan le Roux) linking Midvaal CBD to Sicelo and to De Deur (east-west). Combined with route R59 these routes form the lattice around which the bulk of development in Midvaal will take place over the next few decades.

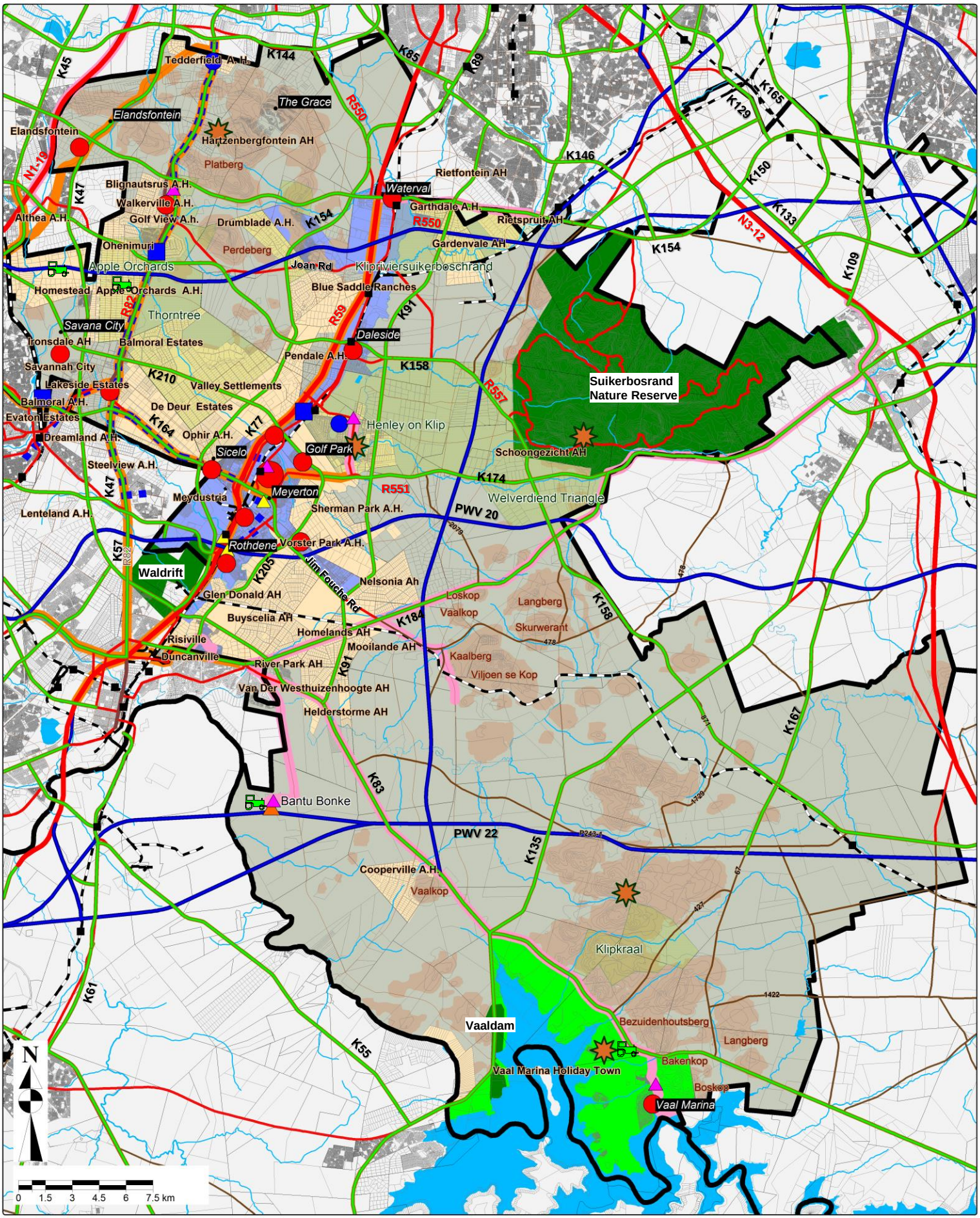
Supplementary to the above, there is also a third order network which serves to provide access to individual farm areas and agricultural holdings/properties at local level. This is the first road hierarchy that provide direct access to land uses and is the highest order route network under the authority of the Midvaal Municipality.

It is important to note that the Strategic Road Network as depicted on Figure 31.2 is a long term plan (50 years plus), and that individual routes or parts thereof will only be constructed if/when traffic volumes emanating from land use development/urbanisation warrants the construction thereof.

Figure 32.3 depicts the priority public transport routes as well as taxi and bus stops within the municipal area. The most important routes in this regard include route R551 which links De Deur to Meyerton; route K89 which serves as the main public transport route parallel to R59 and the railway line; as well as some local linkages towards the east and south of Meyerton. The priority taxi ranks and bus stops proposed for the Midvaal area are also illustrated on Figure 32.3.

The two existing railway lines are assets to the Midvaal area and the municipality will contribute towards enhancing the viability of these as commuter railway lines by promoting Transit Orientated Development around all the railway stations along the lines both along the R59 Development Corridor and at the Residentia and Stretfort railway station in Savannah City. (Also refer to sections 4.2.1 and 6.5.2 of the Midvaal Nodal Policy.

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Priority Public Transport Network



Extensive Agriculture
Ridges
Nature Reserves
Conservancies
Agri-Hub
Agricultural Holdings

Dams and Rivers
Tourism
Tourism Precincts
R59 Corridor
Core Area
Neighbourhood Node

Rural Node
MPCC
Village
A147
Main Taxi Routes
Secondary Taxi Routes
Bus Routes)

Class 1 Road (Existing)
Class 1 Roads (Proposed)
Class 2 Roads (Proposed)
Class 3 Roads
Railways
Rail Stations

Taxi Stops
Bus Stops

32.3

Development Principle 7: To promote the development of a diverse range of industrial and commercial and mining activities in the Midvaal area through partnerships with the private sector, and with specific focus along the R59 Corridor and at the designated nodal points.

As depicted on **Figure 33** the bulk of proposed industrial and commercial activity within the Midvaal area over the short to medium term should be located within the R59 Development Corridor. The more detailed development proposals associated with this area are discussed in greater detail in the **R59 Development Framework** and the **R59 Urban Design Framework** documents. Limited development may also be allowed in certain areas to the west of route R59, subject to the bulk service requirements of the intended use (preferably low) and the availability of such infrastructure.

It is however important to note that limited small scale light industrial/commercial development can and should also be accommodated in some of the other nodal points in the municipality (also refer to Table 12 to see projections). The De Deur, Walkerville and Tedderfield nodal points located along route R82 in the western parts of the Midvaal municipal area are earmarked to accommodate supplementary light industrial and/ or commercial activity (at limited scale). The Precinct Plans for each of these nodal areas provide more detail pertaining to the range of activities to be allowed, as well as the exact location, scale and extent of such developments.

Similarly, the area adjacent to the N1 freeway at the Elandsfontein Node is earmarked for future industrial use at a scale similar to that envisaged around the Klip River Business Park. The Midvaal Municipality should, however, commence with discussions at provincial level to elevate this project to Blue IQ status in provincial context.

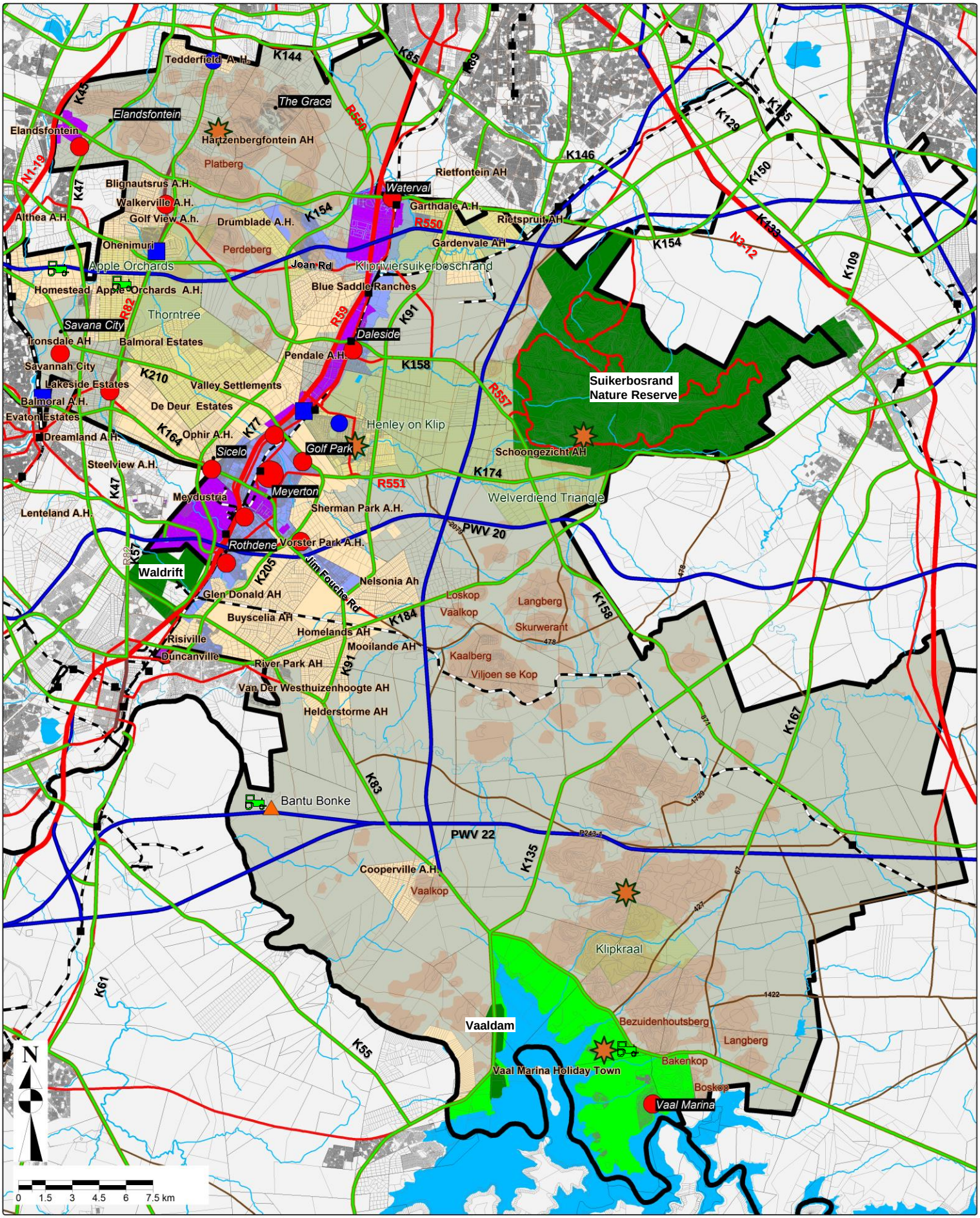
Substantial parcels of vacant industrial-zoned land are still available within the R59 corridor area and development of these land parcels should receive priority. Light industrial and commercial use will be an important component of the land use mix which will eventually make up the proposed R59 Development Corridor.

As far as heavy/ noxious industrial development is concerned, it should be consolidated in the Meydustria area which has sufficient buffer zones between the industrial area and surrounding residential suburbs.

Development Principle 8: To provide for a wide range of bonded and subsidised housing typologies and tenure alternatives within clearly defined Strategic Development Areas, and to continuously manage residential densification by way of the Midvaal Density Policy.

Figure 34 illustrates the fourteen Strategic Development Areas identified within the municipal area where Council should promote the bulk of residential development in the short, medium and longer term (these form part of Council's Growth Management Strategy). These areas are generally located close to the major centres of economic activity, and support/supplement the development of the R59

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Industrial / Commercial



Extensive Agriculture
Ridges
Nature Reserves
Conservancies
Agri-Hub
Agricultural Holdings

Dams and Rivers
Tourism
Tourism Precincts
R59 Corridor
Core Area
Neighbourhood Node

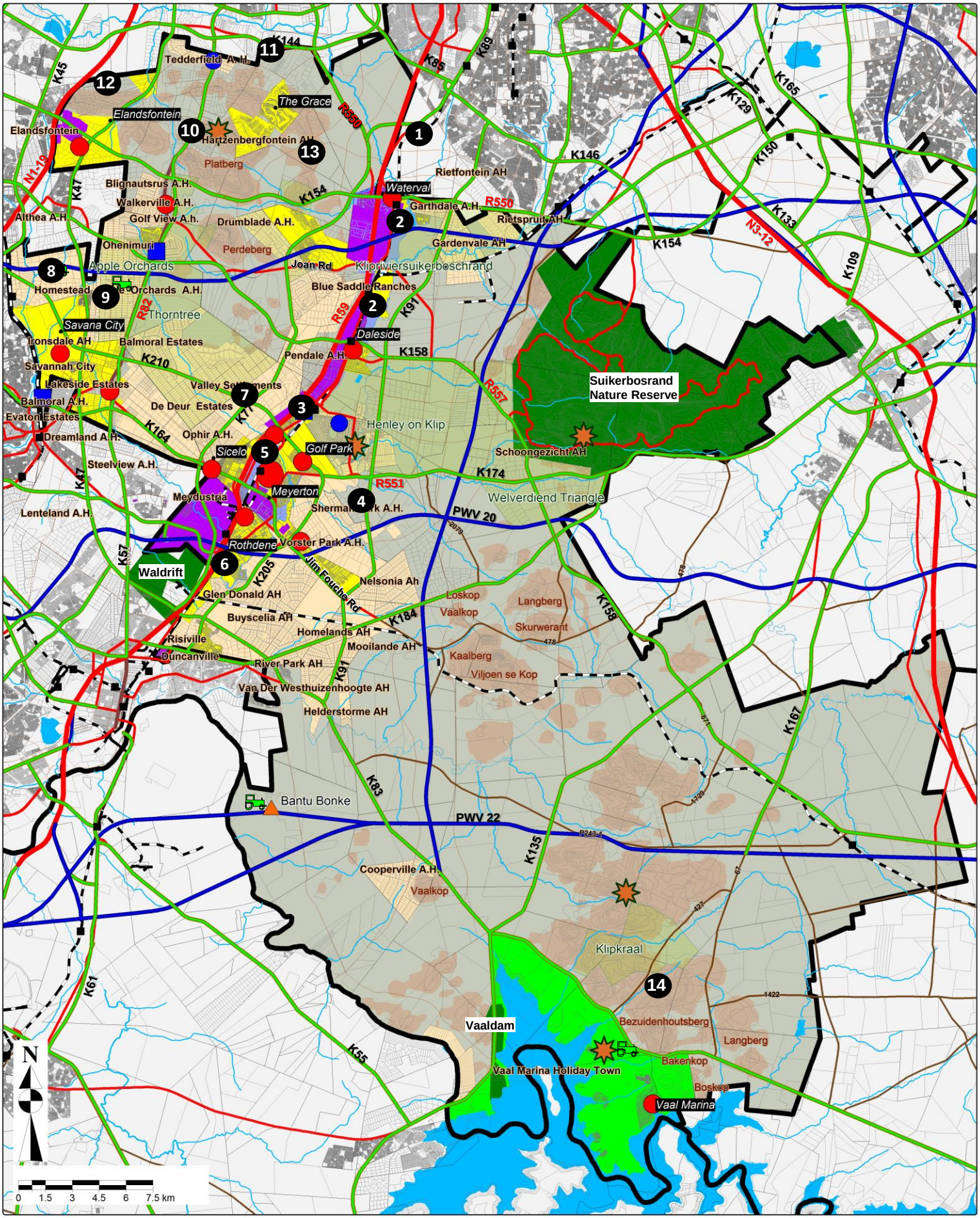
Rural Node
MPCC
Agri Village

A149

Class 1 Road (Existing)
Class 1 Roads (Proposed)
Class 2 Roads (Proposed)
Class 3 Roads
Railways
Rail Stations

Industrial / Commercial

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Residential



Extensive Agriculture
Ridges
Nature Reserves
Conservancies
Agri-Hub
Agricultural Holdings

Dams and Rivers
Tourism
Tourism Precincts
R59 Corridor
Core Area
Neighbourhood Node

Rural Node
MPCC
Agri Village

Class 1 Road (Existing)
Class 1 Roads (Proposed)
Class 2 Roads (Proposed)
Class 3 Roads
Railways
Rail Stations

Industrial / Commercial
Residential
SDA's

A150

Development Corridor and to a lesser extent route R82. By implication the Strategic Development Areas could comprise a range of housing densities starting at about 10 to 12 units per hectare in conventional middle to high income residential areas, and up to about 60 units per hectare, especially around the major public transport routes e.g. SDA2 and SDA5.

The fourteen Strategic Development Areas where residential development/densification can/ should be promoted include the following:

Strategic Development Area	Potential Capacity
SDA1: Waterval Node within UDB	550 Units
SDA2: Skansdam and Daleside railway stations	1000 Units
SDA3: Golf Park-Meyerton CBD Precinct *	1000 Units
SDA4: Riversdale	200 Units
SDA5: Rothdene-Kookrus	200 Units
SDA6: Rissiville	100 Units
SDA7: Sicelo *	5476 Units
SDA8: Savannah City *	18 399 Units
SDA9: De Deur	20 028 Units
SDA10: Walkerville	2523 Units
SDA11: Eye of Africa: Mountain View/Woodacres	2158 Units
SDA12: Elandsfontein	16 182 Units
SDA13: The Grace *	1414 Units
SDA14: Mamello *	1031 Units
Total	**69 230 Units**

* Short to Medium Term Priority

The Vaal Marina complex is not earmarked for conventional residential development/densification as it caters for holiday accommodation, but Mamello will become a permanent residential township in this area.

It is estimated that these areas could collectively accommodate about 69 230 units which is sufficient to serve the incremental residential demand in the municipal area for at least the next two to three decades.

The highest priority areas for the short to medium term are highlighted in the table below, and mainly include The Grace, Golf Park CBD and Sicelo along route R59; Savannah City along route R82; and Mamello in the Vaal Marina area. All development will, however, be subject to engineering services availability.

Part of the Walkerville node is Ohenimuri where approximately 373 residential erven are still vacant. It is recommended that Council call for proposals for a developer to develop all the Council owned properties in Ohenimuri. A variety of housing typologies catering for different affordability levels should be catered for and could include RDP, GAP Market (FLISP) bonded units and Full Bonded Units as well as bonded or subsidised (CRU/Social) rental units.

As far as residential densification outside the Urban Development Boundary is concerned the **Midvaal Density Policy (2011)** will be applied. In principle, Rural Residential development is allowed in all rural areas as depicted on Figure 33, but it should be noted that there are strong guidelines and parameters contained in the Midvaal Density Policy within which such development can and should be allowed.

In general, the formalisation of informal settlements need to be achieved through upgrading programmes. This is done as part of the low cost housing process, in terms of provincial housing subsidies.

There is almost never a sharp cut-off point between urban development and extensive agriculture, and it is therefore envisaged that a transitional area will develop on the agricultural holdings and around the urban edge, which may comprise of a range of different peripheral uses.

It is proposed that low intensity land uses associated and compatible with agricultural holdings and rural residential areas may be supported. Intensive agriculture should also be promoted in these areas, where potential exists. If properly developed, these uses can actually support the Urban Development Boundary and serve as a barrier/ obstacle to future expansion of the urban environment.

Development Principle 9: To delineate an Urban Development Boundary to encourage consolidated urban development and to protect high potential agricultural land and sensitive environments.

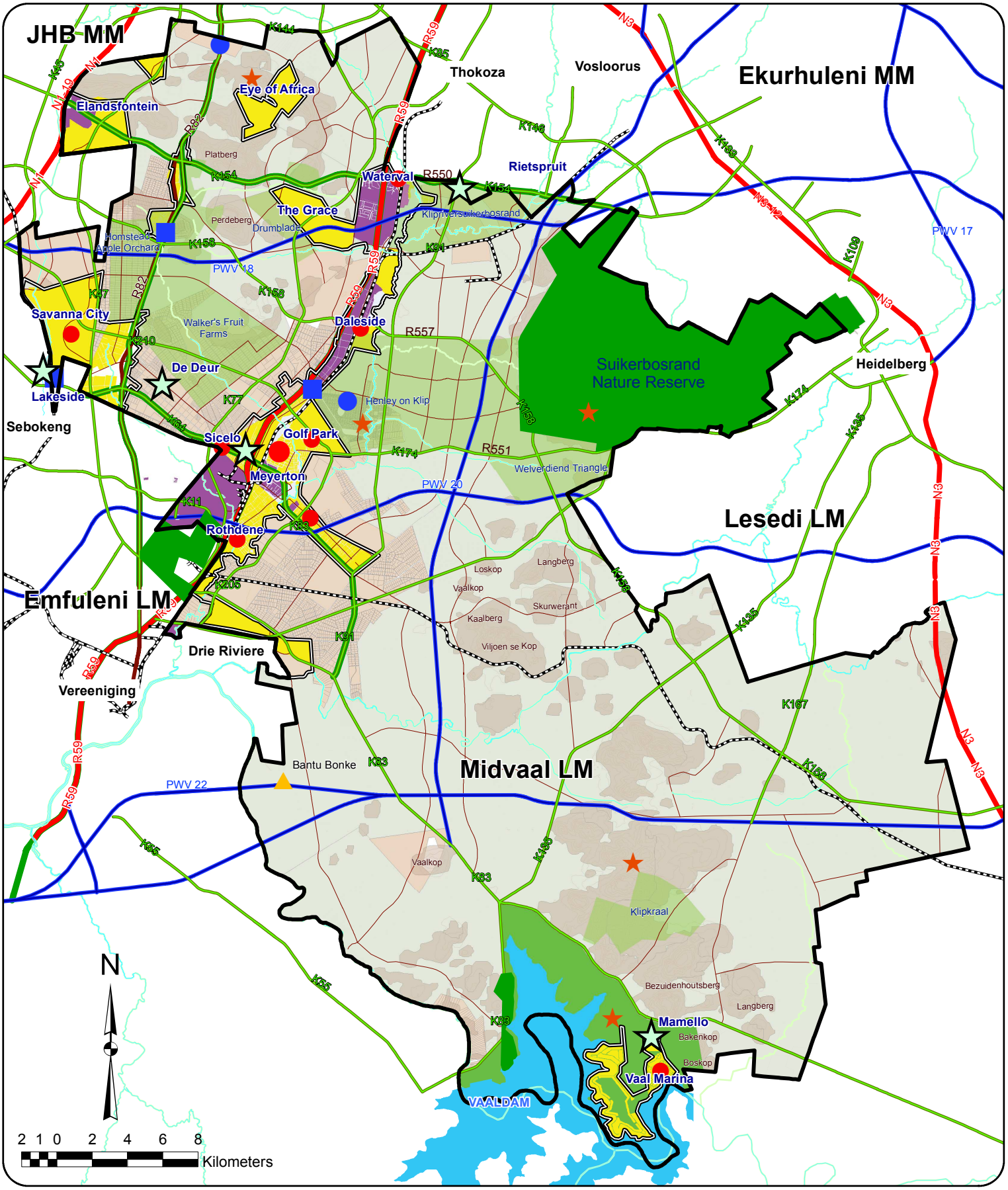
In order to enhance the development of the R59 Corridor and the other identified secondary activity nodes in the municipal area, the Midvaal Municipality opted to utilise an Urban Development Boundary as one of a series of Growth Management Instruments aimed to guide the direction, size, extent, intensity and phasing of development along the R59 Development Corridor and around the various nodes identified in the municipality. As a result the majority of land to the east of the R59 freeway and around the secondary activity nodes along route R82 are included within the Urban Development Boundary as depicted on **Figure 35**.

From this it is evident that the major focus area for urbanisation in the Midvaal area is to the east of the R59 corridor extending along the entire length of route R59 from Rothdene in the south up to Waterval in the north. The Lakeside/ Doornkuil, De Deur, Walkerville, Ohenimuri, Eye of Africa and Vaal Marina precincts are also included within the Urban Development Boundary as these areas already represent extensive development.

The following guidelines pertaining to land uses to be allowed within and outside the Midvaal Urban Development Boundary will apply:

MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK - COMPOSITE

Midvaal SDF 2018/2019



Legend

- Economic Development Centres
- Railway Stations
- Rural Node
- Neighbourhood Node
- Core Area
- MPCC
- Agri Village
- Tourism Precincts
- Proposed PWV Roads 2010
- Proposed K Routes 2010
- Rivers
- R82 Road
- Railway Line
- Existing Main Roads
- Secondary Roads Existing
- Priority Regional Network
- 20m Contours
- Urban Development Boundary
- Midvaal Boundary
- River Buffers
- Nature Reserves
- Conservancies
- Industrial-Commercial
- Residential
- Vaal Dam
- Tourism
- Ridges
- Agricultural Holdings
- R59 Corridor
- Agriculture

A153

a) Land Use within the Urban Development Boundary

As far as land uses inside the Urban Development Boundary are concerned, a land use that is consistent with the relevant municipality's IDP, spatial development framework, land use management plan and/or town planning scheme should be permitted, subject to the normal procedures and legislation e.g. environmental considerations, transportation requirements etc. It is important to note that the Urban Development Boundary does not imply that the entire area within the boundary can/ should be allowed to develop and that development rights are therefore guaranteed. Factors such as timing, availability of services, the environmental impact/ conditions etc. must and should still be applicable when considering an application within the Urban Development Boundary.

b) Land Use outside the Urban Development Boundary

Land uses that are rural in nature would be more desirable, and should therefore be promoted outside the Urban Development Boundary rather than inside it. Where applicable, it will also have to be in line with provincial policies e.g. GDACE policy on subdivision of land etc., and/or the local development frameworks compiled for the various rural areas in the Midvaal area, e.g. Walkerville and De Deur Precinct Plan. The following land uses will be allowed in the rural areas outside the Midvaal Urban Development Boundary:

a) Extensive agriculture;
b) Conservation Areas/Nature Reserves;
c) Tourism and related activities e.g. curio markets;
d) Recreational Facilities e.g. hiking trails/hotels/game lodges;
e) Farm stalls and home industries;
f) Rural residential uses/Agricultural Holdings in specific areas; or
g) Any other related development of service;

provided that the proposed development or service
h) services primarily the local market; and/or
i) is resource based; and/or
j) is located at a defined and approved service delivery centre/nodal point.

Developments or services not complying with the criteria set in (a) – (f) may thus only be allowed if it complies to one or more of the criteria listed as (h), (i) and (j).

It is important to note that, in line with the Urban Development Boundary, the Midvaal Municipality already identified the short, medium and longer term priority areas for the upgrading and expansion of engineering services to promote and facilitate economic development.

In principle, all parts of the Midvaal Municipality located within the Urban Development Boundary are deemed to be priority areas for accommodating development, while the remainder part of the municipal area is deemed to be rural in nature, and thus all policies, guidelines and principles applicable to rural development are to be applied in these areas.

Development Principle 10: To prioritise the bulk of short to medium term upgrading/provision of engineering services to nodal areas within the Urban Development Boundary.

As a principle, areas located within the Urban Development Boundary in the Midvaal area will be prioritised for bulk engineering services capital investment.

The Midvaal Municipality will work in accordance with this principle without neglecting the constitutionally mandated rights of all communities – even those outside the Urban Development Boundary – of having access to a minimum level of basic services like water, sanitation, electricity, shelter, education and health.

Even within the Urban Development Boundary not all areas are equally prioritised. Therefore, the town planning and engineering services departments of the Midvaal Municipality need to align their programmes in order to ensure that whatever spare capacity is available within the municipality is used for the prioritised areas within the Urban Development Boundary.

The upgrading and/or expansion of engineering services in order to facilitate development or to unlock the development potential of certain areas needs also to be scheduled accordingly.

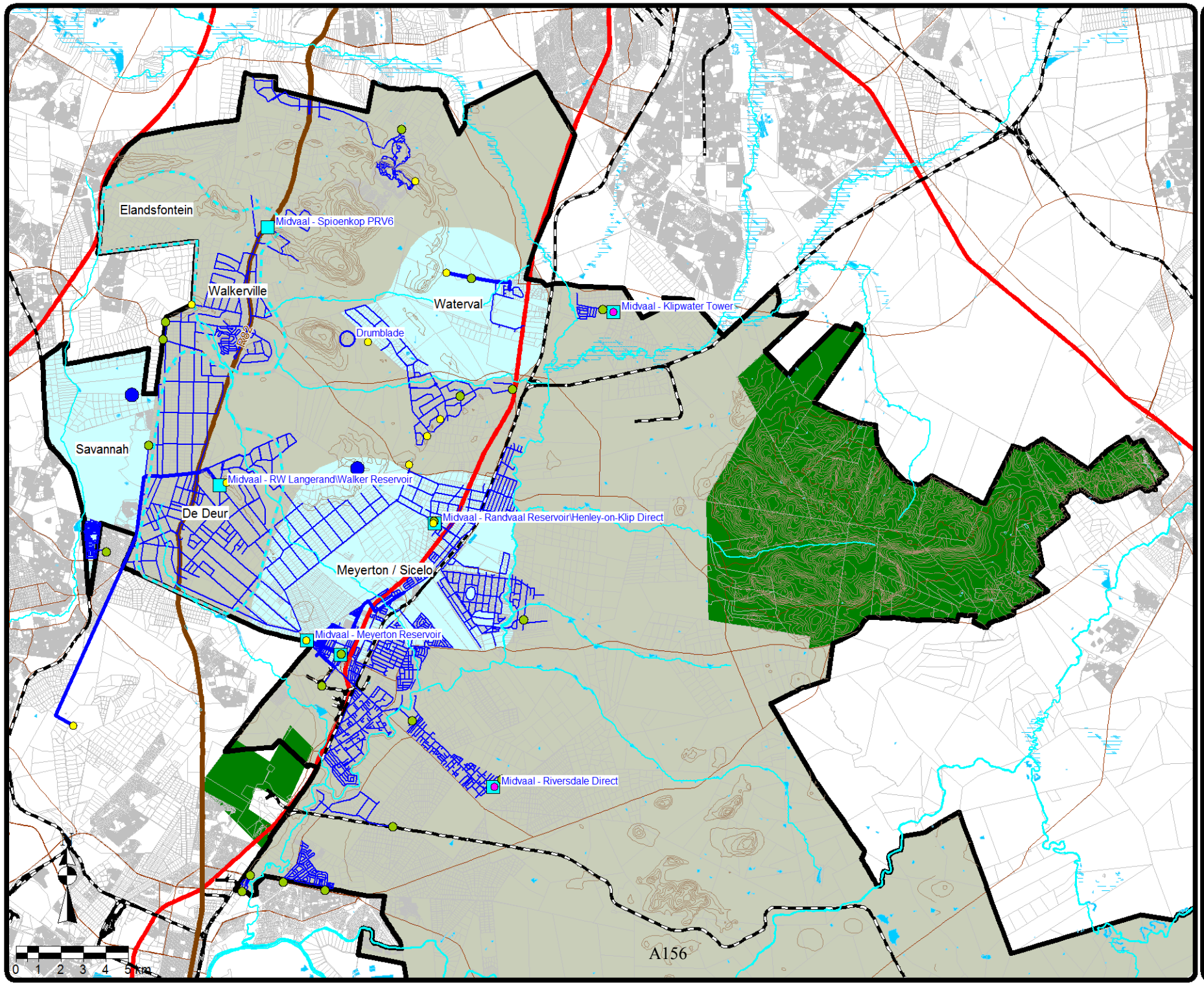
The following is a brief summary of the rationale/approach to be followed by the Midvaal Municipality in terms of the provision/upgrading of engineering services in the next three to five years:

a) Meyerton/Sicelo Core Area

Water: As far as water is concerned a new reservoir will be constructed in the northern parts of the Meyerton/Sicelo core area as depicted on **Figure 36**. This reservoir will have a capacity of 10Ml which should be sufficient to accommodate approximately 5000 additional households.

Sanitation: In terms of sanitation the entire Meyerton/Sicelo functional area as depicted on **Figure 37** will benefit from the upgrading of the Meyerton sewer treatment plant from the current 12Ml to approximately 22Ml. This upgrade will be conducted over a period of approximately 3 to 4 years and will serve about 15 000 more residential units in the Meyerton/Sicelo area, and even beyond.

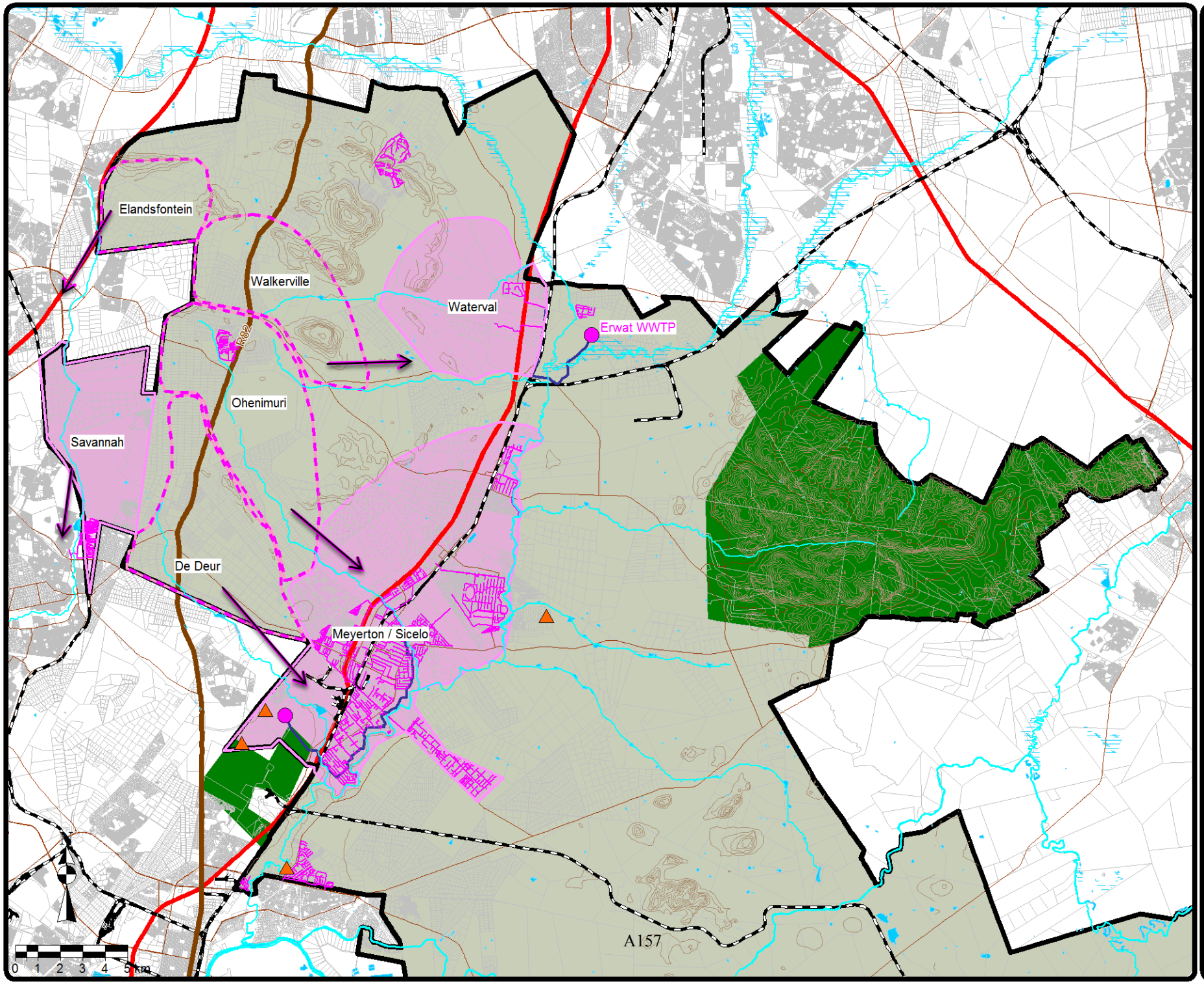
The outfall sewers serving this functional area will also be upgraded as and where required. This includes a new bulk outfall sewer from Sicelo to link up with the existing Klip River outfall sewer.



MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

WATER INFRASTRUCTURE STRATEGY

- Reticulation
- Bulk
- Reservoir
- Bulk
- GL Tank
- Tower
- New Reservoir
- Upgrade
- High Priority Functional Area
- Lower Priority Functional Area



MIDVAAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

SANITATION INFRASTRUCTURE STRATEGY

- Reticulation
- Bulk
- WWTW
- Solid Waste Disposal Site
- High Priority Functional Area
- Lower Priority Functional Area
- Future Outfall Sewer Link

In the vicinity of Rothdene the existing pump station and rising main will also have to be upgraded in order to cater for the increased capacity of the total catchment area.

b) Waterval Node

Water: In the Waterval Node functional area the Drumblade reservoir will be upgraded to serve the new residential developments associated with The Grace located to the west of the existing node. This is the most important water related upgrade for the short to medium term in this area.

Sanitation: In terms of sanitation each development in and around this area will have to provide its on-site package plant in line with current policy. The long term vision for this area is, however, to link into the existing Erwat sewer treatment plant which is located within this functional area. It is anticipated that this will only materialise in the medium to longer term (beyond 6 years from now).

c) Walkerville/Elandsfontein

Water: The Walkerville area and future development in Elandsfontein will be served by the Spioenkop reservoir which is located in the northern extents of this functional area. There is sufficient capacity to serve the demand.

Sanitation: In terms of sanitation, Walkerville will rely on package plants for the short to medium term until the Erwat plant located at the Waterval Node is accessible for use by the Midvaal municipality. It is envisaged that Walkerville will eventually be linked by way of an outfall sewer from Walkerville through to the Erwat plant in Waterval.

The Elandsfontein sewer will be treated at the Sebokeng treatment plant which is located to the south-west of the area in the area of jurisdiction of the Emfuleni Local Municipality.

d) Savanna City Functional Area

The infrastructure for Savanna City will mostly be provided by the developers. These include the recently completed reservoir located in the north-eastern extents of the functional area as illustrated on Figure 36, as well as an outfall sewer link to the Sebokeng Treatment Plant towards the south-west as indicated on Figure 37. It should, however, be noted that the Sebokeng Plant is already under severe pressure and does not have spare capacity.

e) De Deur

Water: Once the intensity of development in the De Deur area warrants it, the existing Langerand reservoir serving the area will be upgraded to 10 or 15Ml which will cost approximately R100 million.

Sanitation: The current policy with regards to the provision of package plants for individual developments in De Deur will remain until such time as the scale/magnitude of development warrants the construction of an outfall sewer line to link up with the Meyerton treatment plant. This link will require that the Meyerton treatment plant at the time be expanded from the 22Ml currently planned to approximately 30Ml. The expansion of the treatment plant as well as the feeder line is expected to cost in the order of approximately R300 million. This initiative is scheduled for the medium to longer term and will only follow once the intensity of development in De Deur justifies such large scale upgrading.

f) Vaal Marina

At the Vaal Marina Node the priority matters relate to the construction of a new water tower of approximately 0.3Ml as well as the improvement of the existing sewer treatment plant. Both these projects are already on the capital programme of the local municipality.

Conclusion

It is evident that the priority areas in terms of bulk infrastructure provision in the short to medium term are the Meyerton/Sicelo functional area; the Waterval Node and surroundings to the north of the R59 Corridor; as well as the Savanna City Precinct located in the far western extents of the municipality.

The functional precincts around route R82 which include De Deur, Ohenimuri, Walkerville and Elandsfontein are lower priorities at this stage and will link into the Meyerton and/or Waterval sewer functional areas once development warrants such large scale upgrading of engineering services.

Regarding waste removal the priority of the municipality at this stage is the construction of a new waste treatment plant (Phase 3), as well as the upgrading of the existing ones at Walkerville and Meyerton town.

7 IMPLEMENTATION

7.1 Implementation Monitoring and Evaluation Guidelines

In terms of Section 26 of the Municipal Systems Act the Spatial Development Framework of a municipality is one of nine legal components of the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) of that municipality. As such the SDF thus becomes part of the statutory processes associated with the IDP, and which includes, amongst others, the processes related to Inter Governmental Relations (IGR), Community Consultation and Participation, and the Budgeting process of the local municipality.

In view of the above it is firstly proposed that the Midvaal Local Municipality SDF be incorporated into the MLM IDP process during the 2017/18 IDP Review. Within the IDP, the MLM SDF should then serve as the backdrop against which all development needs, and projects and initiatives forthcoming, should be measured and assessed.

All projects and programmes to be implemented by the various spheres of government, parastatals organisations, and/or the private sector should then firstly be evaluated in order to ensure that these are in support of the principles of the SDF, and that these will contribute towards the achievements of the spatial vision for the municipal area, before being included into the IDP for the next financial year.

The two consultation mechanisms in the IDP process i.e. the IDP Technical Committee and the IDP Representative Forum involve all technical and political stakeholders, public and private, and is the ideal medium to use to promote and market the development opportunities as reflected in the SDF. This process is illustrated on **Figure 38**.

However, there is also opportunity to utilise existing or new Working Groups/Task Teams to implement aspects of the SDF even outside the official IDP structures. Typical aspects to be addressed in this manner include the monitoring of agricultural activity in the MLM, working groups overseeing feasibility studies conducted for various Strategic Development Areas etc.

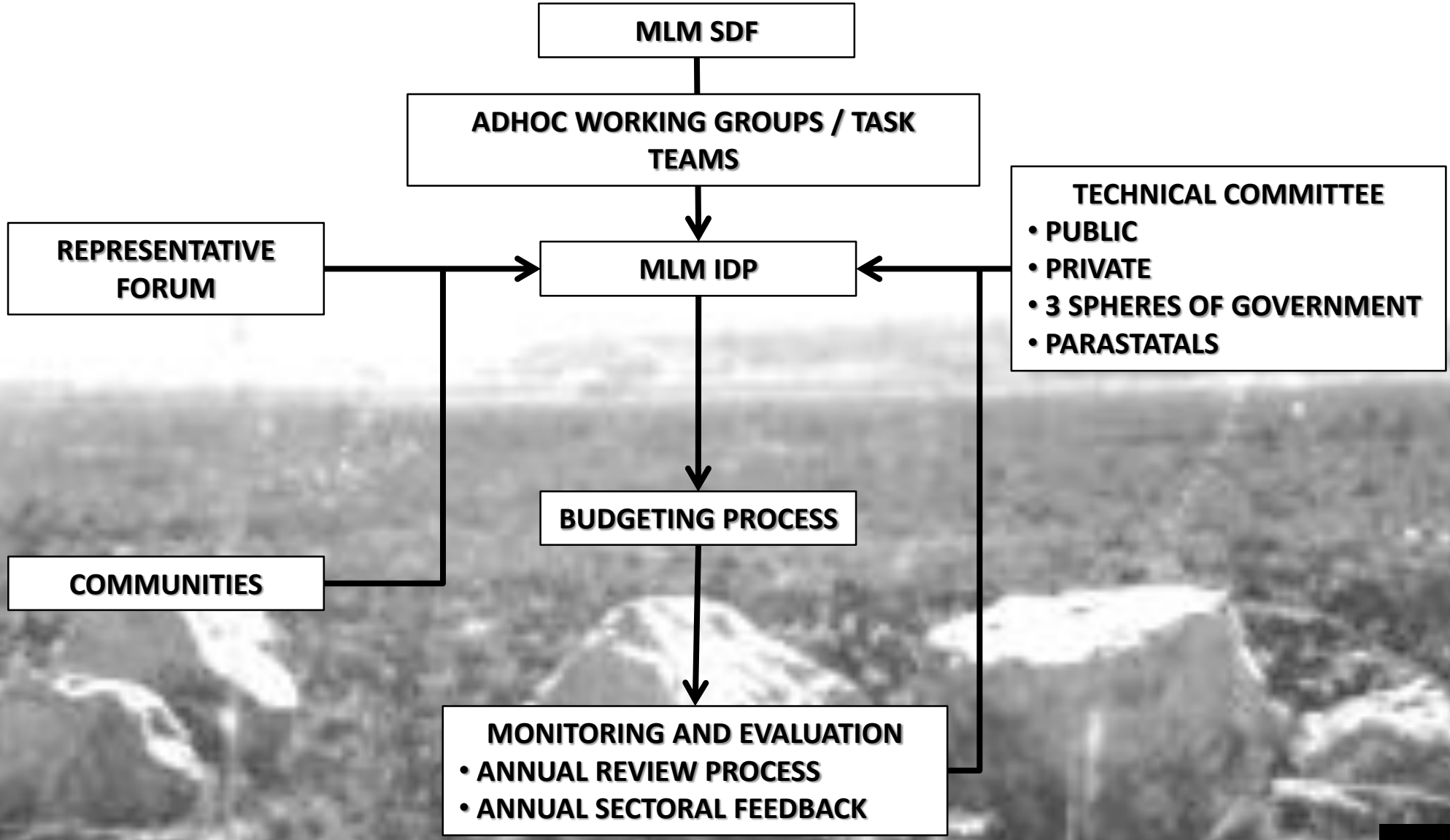
Representatives of departments from all three spheres of government participate in the IDP process, and if they all work in accordance with the principles contained in the SDF, the alignment and synchronisation of the programmes of sectoral departments can be significantly improved. This will specifically be of critical importance in the establishment of Multi Purpose Community Centres where a number of stakeholders have a role to play.

The next important benefit to be derived from utilising the IDP process to promote and market the SDF, is the fact that the IDP process involves all communities, and private stakeholders in the municipal area. As part of a general capacity building initiative the contents and philosophy of the SDF should be presented to these stakeholders during the IDP process. This will ensure that communities have a common understanding of the principles fundamental to the SDF, and will also guide and inform the inputs provided by communities during the IDP consultation process.

If stakeholders (public and private) in the Midvaal LM have a common understanding of the long term spatial vision for the area, it will ensure the effective alignment of all development initiatives in the area, and optimise the collective benefits to be derived from these.

The next significant benefit associated with implementing the SDF via the MLM IDP process, is the fact that the IDP is legally linked to the Budgeting Process of the Municipality (in terms of the Municipal Systems Act and the Municipal Finance Management Act).

MIDVAAL LM SDF IMPLEMENTATION STRATEGY



By incorporating the MLM SDF into the IDP process, it ensures that the proposed projects and programmes emanating from the SDF process are incorporated into the IDP, from where it feeds into the Budgeting process of the Municipality. In this way the effective linkage of the SDF to the Municipal Budget is achieved.

The last important component to be addressed is the Monitoring and Evaluation of the implementation of the SDF proposals. The IDP process is subject to a cyclical review on an annual basis. It is appropriate that, as part of the annual IDP Review Process, an assessment/audit should be done by November of each year to determine to what degree the goals and objectives of the SDF have been achieved during the preceding year. This also leaves sufficient time (December up to March) to rectify the shortcomings identified, and to include these in the Revised IDP and Budget for the next financial year. As the IDP Review process involves all development partners in the municipal area, it will also be possible to grant each partner an opportunity during the SDF assessment process to report on progress made in implementing their respective spatial initiatives, and for the various stakeholders to illustrate how their initiatives support the realisation of the spatial vision as contained in the MLM SDF.

It is of critical importance that the developers active in the MLM participate in this process as their investment in social services and residential development contributes significantly to the local spatial structure. Without this level of co-operation and alignment there is no hope of achieving long term sustainability in the Midvaal area.

7.2 Capital Investment Framework and Implementation Programme

Table 15 is a list of priority projects to be initiated in the Midvaal area, based on the findings and development proposals contained in the SDF. The various Departments of the Midvaal Local Municipality should assess and incorporate these projects into their respective departmental Capital Investment Frameworks. From here it should be consolidated into the Municipal Capital Investment Framework and Medium Term Expenditure Framework. Accordingly, the CFO and PMU Managers should seek to acquire funding for the various projects via the relevant sources e.g. grants, subsidies etc. **Note: This table with projects will be updated once the updated Capital Investment Framework of the municipality is available/ approved.**

Table 15: SDF Related Capital Investment Programme

Principle	Responsibility	Cost	Phasing		
			Year 1-3	Year 4-5	Year 6 Onwards
Development Principle 1: Environmental Management					
Action 1.1 Implement/Apply EMF Guidelines based on four Control Zones as defined in SDF in all new applications.	Midvaal Local Municipality	Operational	X		
Action 1.2: Enhance Green Technology/Energy Efficiency in terms of Annexure XA of the National Building Regulations.	Midvaal Local Municipality	Operational	X	X	X
Development Principle 2: Agricultural Development					
Action 2.1: Strict Control of Land Use on Agricultural Holdings and Farms.	Midvaal Local Municipality	Operational	X		
Action 2.2: Support CRDP initiatives on agricultural land as/when initiated by DRDLR.	Midvaal Local Municipality/ DRDLR	Operational	X		
Action 2.3: Support all agricultural pillars/ initiatives in Midvaal.	Midvaal Local Municipality/ DRDLR	Operational	X	X	X
Action 2.4: Make available 600 ha of land	Midvaal Local Municipality/ DRDLR	Operational	X	X	
Development Principle 3: Tourism Promotion					
Action 3.1: Formulate Municipal Tourism Enhancement Strategy for each of the five Tourism Precincts.	Midvaal Local Municipality	R600 000	X		
Action 3.2: Enhance branding of five Tourism Precincts through signage.	Midvaal Local Municipality	R100 000	X		
Action 3.3: Implement/Apply the Midvaal Accommodation Policy.	Midvaal Local Municipality	Operational	X		
Development Principle 4: R59 Development Corridor					
Action 4.1: Continuously brand the R59 functional area as a provincial Development Corridor and prioritise this area for infrastructure investment (public/private).	Midvaal Local Municipality	Operational	X		
Action 4.2: Make copies of R59 Development Framework and R59 Design Framework readily available to the public.	Midvaal Local Municipality	Operational	X		
Action 4.3: Promote human settlements mega projects in line with R59 Development Framework and R59 Design Framework.	Midvaal Local Municipality	Operational	X	X	
Development Principle 5: Enhance Nodal Development to Guide/ Direct Service Delivery					
Action 5.1: Initiate compilation of Precinct Plans for following secondary nodes:	Midvaal Local Municipality (Grant funding: DRDLR/ GDED/ Other)				
- Henley-on-Klip		R100 000	X		

Principle	Responsibility	Cost	Phasing		
			Year 1-3	Year 4-5	Year 6 Onwards
- Gateway		R80 000		X	
- Golf park		R80 000		X	
- Sicelo		R100 000	X		
- Kookrus		R80 000			X
- Rothdene		R80 000			X
- Riversdale		R50 000	X		
Action 5.2: Construction of Sport Centre at Lakeside MPCC.	MLM (MIG Funding)	R18,3 million	X	X	X
Action 5.3: Construction of Informal Trade Shelters in Various Nodes.	MLM (MIG Funding)	R9,2 million	X	X	
Action 5.4: Construction of Fire station at Vaal Marina.	MLM (MIG Funding)	R7,05 million	X		
Action 5.5: Construction of Schools in Savanna City.	G Dept Education	R1,4 billion	X	X	X
Action 5.6: Construction of Clinics in Savanna City.	G Dept Health	R500 million	X	X	
Action 5.7: Construction of Doornkuil Regional Cemetery (Savanna City). (As per Doornkuil Precinct Plan)	SDM	R25 million		X	
Action 5.8: Construction of Doornkuil Regional Tertiary Agricultural Training Facility (Savanna City).	G Dept Education	To be determined		X	X
Action 5.9: Construction Regional Hospital and Training Facility (Savanna City).	MLM (MIG Funding)	To be determined		X	X
Action 5.10: Development of Precinct Plans for Economic Development Centres	MLM	To be determined	X		
Development Principle 6: Movement Network					
Action 6.1: Maintenance of route R59.	SANRAL/ GAUTRANS	To be determined	X	X	X
Action 6.2: Upgrading of route R82.	Gautrans	To be determined	X	X	
Action 6.3: Upgrading of route K164 (Johan le Roux).	Gautrans	To be determined		X	X
Action 6.4: Upgrading of route K154.	Gautrans	To be determined		X	X
Action 6.5: Construction of link road: Henley-on-Klip to Golf Park (R59 to K174 link road).	MLM	To be determined	X		
Action 6.6: Gravel to Tar Roads (Phase 4).	MLM (MIG Funding)	± R5 million p.a.	X	X	X
Action 6.7: Mamello Access Road.	MLM (MIG Funding)	R600 000	X		
Action 6.8: Pedestrian bridge over R59.	Gautrans	R4 189 900	X		
Development Principle 7: Industrial, Commercial and Mining Activity					
Action 7.1: Elandsfontein Blue IQ Elevation.	MLM/GDED	To be determined	X	X	X
Action 7.2: Revitalisation Strategy for Southern Industries within R59 Corridor.	MLM/GDED	To be determined		X	

Principle	Responsibility	Cost	Phasing		
			Year 1-3	Year 4-5	Year 6 Onwards
Development Principle 8: Residential development in SDAs					
Action 8.1: Facilitate Development in all Strategic Development Areas.	MLM	To be determined	X	X	X
Action 8.2: Compile Sustainable Human Settlement Plan for Midvaal.	MLM	R400 000	X		
Development Principle 9: Urban Development Boundary					
Action 9.1: Strictly apply guidelines pertaining to development within/ outside UDB in Midvaal.	MLM	Operational	X	X	X
Development Principle 10: Provision of Engineering Services					
Action 10.1: Upgrade Meyerton Treatment Plant (12Ml to 22Ml).	MLM/MIG Funding	To be determined	X		
Action 10.2: Upgrade all Outfall Sewers in surrounding area.	MLM/MIG Funding	± R8 million p.a.	X	X	X
Action 10.3: Sicelo/Highbury reservoir and mains.	MLM/MIG Funding	R57 million	X	X	
Action 10.4: Upgrade Rothdene pump station and rising main.	MLM/MIG Funding	To be determined	X		
Action 10.5: Upgrade Drumblade reservoir to serve The Grace.	MLM/MIG Funding/ Developer	To be determined		X	
Action 10.6: New Savanna Reservoir.	Developer	To be determined	X		
Action 10.7: Savanna Outfall Sewer to Sebokeng WTW.	Developer	To be determined	X		
Action 10.8: Vaal Marina water tower.	MLM/MIG Funding	R1,35 million	X		
Action 10.9: Mamello Bulk Sewer.	MLM/MIG Funding	R60 000	X		
Action 10.10: Upgrade Landfill Sites: Vaal Marina, Walkerville.	MLM/MIG Funding	R10 million	X	X	X
Action 10.11: New waste disposal site (Phase 3).	MLM/MIG Funding	To be determined		X	X

7.3 Alignment with Midvaal LUMS

A Land Use Scheme is interpreted to be a scheme which subsequently regulates and records the permissible use and/or restrictions applicable to each property within the area of the municipality. It is therefore the “mechanism” or legislative document which provides the final management/control over land use over each piece of land on an administrative and technical level in accordance with the SDF in general.

The MLM Development Principles and accompanying Precinct Plans are well aligned with the various Town Planning Schemes in the Midvaal area, and is compatible and supportive of the Principles/ Norms pertaining to Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Systems as contained in Chapter 2, Sections 7 and 8 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA).Furthermore the MLM SDF is well aligned with the recently completed Sedibeng District SDF, and with the SDFs of adjoining local municipalities. The horizontal and vertical alignment of the area’s envisioned spatial structure should continually be improved through the review process of these documents. In this way alignment between the District and local SDFs will continuously be improved.

7.4 Conclusion: Alignment with SPLUMA Principles

The MLM Spatial Development Framework incorporates and functionally integrates a wide range of development disciplines. These development disciplines are interdependent and collectively contribute towards achieving the principles stipulated in Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA). The functional relationship between the ten development principles inherent to the MLM SDF and the development principles contained in SPLUMA is illustrated on the table below and briefly discussed:

	Spatial Justice	Spatial Sustainability	Spatial Efficiency	Spatial Resilience	Good Administration
DP 1: Protect and actively manage the natural environmental resources in the Midvaal Municipal Area in order to ensure a sustainable equilibrium between agricultural, tourism, industrial/ manufacturing and mining activities, as well as urbanisation pressures in the area.		x			
DP 2: Facilitate and enhance agricultural production in the municipal area by actively protecting all land earmarked for agricultural purposes, and to maintain agricultural holdings for small scale agriculture and rural residential purposes.		x		x	

	Spatial Justice	Spatial Sustainability	Spatial Efficiency	Spatial Resilience	Good Administration
DP 3: To promote tourism development in the Midvaal area by way of the active utilisation of tourism resources available like the Vaal Dam, the Ridges Precincts, and the nature Reserves in the area.		x	x		
DP 4: Pre-actively plan, design and facilitate the establishment of a Development Corridor along the R59 freeway.			x	x	x
DP 5: Facilitate the development of a hierarchy of Activity Nodes and a number of Multi Purpose Community Centres in the Midvaal area to ensure equitable access to social infrastructure, and to promote Local Economic Development in the Urban and Rural parts of the municipality.	x		x	x	
DP 6: Capitalise on the strategic location of the municipality by way of regional and provincial linkages, and to establish an internal movement network comprising a hierarchy of roads which include a comprehensive public transport network and services.	x				
DP 7: Promote the development of a diverse range of industrial and commercial and mining activities in the Midvaal area with specific focus along the R59 Corridor and at the designated nodal points.	x		x		
DP 8: Provide for a wide range of housing typologies and tenure alternatives within the municipal area by way of clearly defined Strategic Development Areas, and to manage residential densification by way of the Midvaal Density Policy.	x				x
DP 9: Delineate and Urban Development Boundary to encourage consolidated urban development.		x			x
DP 10: Prioritise the bulk of short to medium term upgrading/provision of engineering services in accordance with the Urban Development Boundary.			x	x	x

As far as the environment is concerned, it should be noted that the aim of the MLM SDF is to mitigate the negative impacts of land uses on the environment as far as possible, and to enhance the invaluable environmental resources of the municipal area. In this regard the SDF defined a priority 'green' network for the Midvaal area which should be enhanced and protected at all cost. The network includes all ridges, water courses, and formally protected areas. Only land uses compatible with the guidelines in the Midvaal SDF for this regional open space network can/should be allowed.

Furthermore, the SDF provided for the consolidation, densification and intensification of urban settlement in both the urban and rural parts of the district, with proposals to implement an urban development boundary around the nodal points and corridors to contain urban sprawl and to manage growth.

The urban footprint is minimised at all cost while the surrounding land is made available for a combination of agriculture, tourism, and conservation activity.

The proper management of the natural environment is a critical success factor towards spatial sustainability, as well as economic growth, in the MLM area in future.

With regards to transportation the SDF highlights a number of road and rail corridors which will enhance the spatial efficiency of the Municipality significantly, the most prominent being route R59. This network ensures that the LM is effectively linked to external regional economies, but also enhances spatial justice by giving marginalised communities access to economic and social services and facilities. The latter is achieved by connecting all activity nodes to one another, thereby providing continuity for various communities to reach any destination in the municipal area.

The nodal hierarchy advocated provides for a variety of activity nodes as focus areas for provision of economic and social infrastructure. The adoption of this principle ensures that collective contributions of various government departments will enhance one-stop service delivery at strategic points (identified nodes) which supports the SPLUMA principle of Good Administration.

The concept of a Multi Purpose Community Centre ensures that marginalised communities are being served with a comprehensive range of services (spatial justice), but also supports the principle of spatial sustainability as it consolidates activities around the most accessible points in the municipal area. Such clustering of activities also act as stimulus to local economic development and the establishment of SMME's which also enhances the Spatial Efficiency of such areas. More nodal points can be defined in future which provides for Spatial Resilience in the SDF.

The SDF also makes provision for the incremental upgrading of services in very specific areas like Sicelo and Mamello. Furthermore, upgrading of services are also earmarked for priority Strategic Development Areas in order to cater for new residential mixed income development, and in identified activity nodes where infrastructure provision caters for economic growth and job creation.

The Midvaal SDF focuses on the space economy of the municipal area and aims to highlight the optimum location for different economic sectors active within. The high potential agricultural land is earmarked for agricultural purposes while the tourism opportunities associated with the proposed conservation areas, ridges and water features (Vaal Dam) are also highlighted. This supports the principles of Spatial Resilience, Spatial Efficiency, and eventually Spatial Sustainability.

Industry/ manufacturing is mainly guided by the R59 Development Corridor activities which represent opportunities for a wide range of industries, while business activities are mainly guided by the hierarchy of nodes – the most accessible points in terms of the movement network.

The Strategic Development Areas identified in the Midvaal SDF incorporates historically segregated communities into the urban fabric of the municipality in pursuance of Spatial Justice, Spatial Efficiency, and eventually also Spatial Sustainability.

From the above it is also evident that various departments/ development disciplines at municipal, provincial and national level all have a role to play and a contribution to make towards the successful implementation of the Midvaal SDF. This is in support of the principle of Good Administration whereby all spheres of government contribute towards ensuring an integrated approach to land use and land development.

Finally, the Midvaal SDF also supports/ is aligned with the Gauteng Pillars of Radical Transformation, and the Gauteng Integrated Urban Development Framework (refer to sections 4.5 and 4.7 respectively).

ANNEXURE C: DISASTER MANAGEMENT PLAN

MIDVAAL

LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

DISASTER MANAGEMENT PLAN



Preliminary

MUNICIPAL MANAGER **TEL: (W) (016) 360 7418**
MR. ASA DE KLERK **CELL: 082 771 8961**

Cllr. BONGANI BALOYI **TEL: W) (016)-360 7413**
EXECUTIVE MAYOR **CELL: 072 279 8458**

Ninth revision **Approved 2018**

Classification Grading: LEVEL 1, 2 or 3

MIDVAAL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY CHIEF FIRE OFFICER ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This document and its supporting appendices and annexures encompass the (Provincial Disaster Management Booklet for Disaster) response, declaration, classification and funding in terms of the Disaster Management Act, (Act no 57 of 2002) as the Amended. It also comprises as the Guideline On the Development and Structure of a Disaster Management Plan in terms of section 12(1) (a) read with section 22(a) of the Disaster Management Act,57 of 2002 giving guidance in terms of the development and structure of a disaster management plan.

APPLICABILITY

This Midvaal Disaster Management Plan for disaster response, declaration, classification and funding is applicable to the Gauteng Provincial Department, the Sedibeng District as well as all departments in the Midvaal Local Municipality that are responsible for the coordination and management of disasters in the Midvaal area of jurisdiction.

H.STEYN
CHIEF FIRE OFFICER
DATE:

S MOSIDI
EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR COMMUNITY SERVICES

ASA DE KLERK
MUNICIPAL MANAGER

Contents

MIDVAAL i

PLAN i

MUNICIPAL MANAGER TEL: (W) (016) 360 7418 i

MR. ASA DE KLERK CELL: 082 771 8961 i

Cllr. BONGANI BALOYI TEL: W) (016)-360 7413 i

EXECUTIVE MAYOR CELL: 072 279 8458 i

MIDVAAL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY CHIEF FIRE OFFICER ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS ii

INTRODUCTION 1

BACKGROUND 1

PURPOSE 2

DISTRIBUTION 2

ACRONYMS / ABBREVIATIONS 3

DEFINITIONS: 3

AMENDMENTS / UPDATES / DISTRIBUTION 4

DISTRIBUTION LIST: 4

CHAPTER 1 5

CHAPTER 2 6

DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT MULTI-DISCIPLINARY CO-ORDINATION ARRANGEMENTS 7

LINES OF COMMUNICATION AND INTER-GOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS 8

MIDVAAL FIRE DEPARTMENT CONTROL ROOM (DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT CENTRE) (DRMC) 9

1. RESPONSIBILITIES OF STAKEHOLDERS 9

2. JOINT DISASTER RISK REDUCTION MANAGEMENT COMMITTEE (JDRRMC) AND SPECIAL HAZARD / RISK-SPECIFIC AND SERVICE / DEPARTMENTAL TASK TEAMS 10

3. DISASTER RESPONSE CO-ORDINATION 11

4. MUNICIPAL MANAGER 12

5. DIRECTOR LEGAL / PMS 13

6. DEPUTY MUNICIPAL MANAGER: CORPORATE SERVICES 13

***7.* Executive Director Finance:** 14

8. EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR: COMMUNITY SERVICES 15

9. SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT CO-ORDINATOR: 17

10. EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR: DEVELOPMENT AND PLANNING 17

11. HEAD PUBLIC SAFETY 19

12. DIRECTOR: PROJECT MANAGEMENT UNIT (PMU) 21

13. DISASTER FUNDING ARRANGEMENTS 23

14. ENTITY / SERVICE DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT PLANS 24

15. COMPREHENSIVE DISASTER RISK, VULNERABILITY AND MANAGEABILITY ASSESSMENT FOR MIDVAAL: 25

15.a. OVERLEAF ISTHE 20018/19 DISASTER RISK SUMMARY TABLE WITH THE RELEVANT HAZARD PRIORITIES. 28

16. PRE-DISASTER RISK REDUCTION 29

17. CLASSIFICATION OF DISASTERS 29

18. POST DISASTER RESPONSE AND RECOVERY (DISASTER RESPONSE PLAN) 30

19. REVIEWING & UPDATING OF THE MUNICIPAL DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT PLAN 31

INTRODUCTION

The Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan (DRMP) serves to confirm the organisational and institutional arrangements within Midvaal Local Municipality to effectively prevent disasters from occurring and to lessen the impact of those hazards that cannot be avoided. Essentially, this Plan serves as the **strategic co-ordination and co-operation mechanism between all the relevant Entities / Stakeholders** and is therefore the DRM Master Plan at the highest hierarchical level. The hazard / risk-specific DRM Plans and the MLM Directorate / External Entity DRM Plans and their related emergency procedures are to be focussed at the *tactical and operational levels* and should therefore be considered as being subsidiary to the ML Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan.

Disaster Risk Management is defined as "a continuous and *integrated multi-sectorial and multi-disciplinary process* of planning and implementation of measures aimed at disaster prevention, -mitigation, -preparedness, -response, -recovery, and -rehabilitation" - as per Section 1 of the Disaster Management Act, 57 of 2002.

The *slogan* to best describe this initiative is:- " **Disaster Risk Management is Everybody's Business** "

BACKGROUND

The preventative, risk-reduction and preparedness elements of the Municipal DRM Plan must be implemented and maintained on a continuous basis. The emergency response or re-active elements of the Municipal DRM Plan will be implemented in Midvaal Local Municipality whenever a major incident or disaster occurs or is threatening to occur within the municipal area.

The Disaster Management Act places the responsibility for the implementation of the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan for Midvaal on the appointed Chief Fire Officer.

The Disaster Management Act requires Midvaal to take the following actions:

- to prepare a Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan for its area according to the circumstances prevailing in the area and incorporating all municipal entities as well as external role-players;
- to co-ordinate and align the implementation of its Municipal DRM Plan with those of other organs of state, institutional and any other relevant role-players; and
- to regularly review and update its Municipal DRM Plan (ref. Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002 - Section 48).

Midvaal must submit a copy of its Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan and any amendment to the said Plan to the Gauteng Province Disaster Management Centre and to the Disaster Management Centre of Sedibeng District.

The Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan should:-

- form an integral part of Midvaal IDP so that disaster risk reduction activities can be incorporated into its developmental initiatives,
- anticipate the likely types of disaster that might occur in Midvaal area and their possible effects,
- identify the communities at risk,
- provide for appropriate prevention, risk reduction and mitigation strategies,
- identify and address weaknesses in capacity to deal with possible disasters,
- facilitate maximum emergency preparedness,
- establish the disaster risk management policy framework and organisation that will be utilized to mitigate any significant emergency or disaster affecting Midvaal,

- establish the operational concepts and procedures associated with day-to-day operational response to emergencies by Midvaal Departments and other entities. These SOPs will also form the basis for a more comprehensive disaster response, as referred to in Midvaal MIMP document,
- incorporate all special Hazard / Risk-specific and Departmental DRM Plans and related emergency procedures that are to be used in the event of a disaster. These will provide for

  (i) the allocation of responsibilities to the various role players and co-ordination in the carrying out of those responsibilities;
  (ii) prompt disaster response and relief;
  (iii) disaster recovery and rehabilitation focused on risk elimination or mitigation;
  (iv) the procurement of essential goods and services;
  (v) the establishment of strategic communication links;
  (vi) the dissemination of information.

PURPOSE

The Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan is designed to establish the framework for implementation of the provisions of the Disaster Management Act, (57 of 2002), as well as the related provisions of the Municipal Systems Act, (32 of 2000).

The purpose of the Municipal DRM Plan is to outline policy and procedures for both the pro-active disaster prevention and the reactive disaster response and mitigation phases of Disaster Risk Management.

It is intended to facilitate multi-agency and multi-jurisdictional co-ordination in both pro-active and re-active related programmes.

DISTRIBUTION

This Disaster Risk Management Plan is produced by the Midvaal Chief Fire Officer as part of his responsibility in terms of the Disaster Management Act, This document is intended for internal use of the Organisation and Entities concerned and should be treated as confidential and not be displayed in whole or in part in any public place or to the media.

The recipients will be advised by the Chief Fire Officer when the DRM Plan has been amended or updated. Each recipient should then obtain and distribute copies of these amendments to their respective members as required and the replaced pages / copies should be destroyed.

ACRONYMS / ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations are used in the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan:-

MLM – Midvaal Local Municipality
DCT - Disaster Co-ordination Team
DisRes - Disaster Resources Database
DRMC - Disaster Risk Management Centre
DOC - Disaster Operations Centre
EMS - Emergency Medical Services
IDP - Integrated Development Plan
JDRRMC - Joint Disaster Risk Reduction Management Committee
JOC - Joint Operations Centre
MDMAF - Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum
MIMP - Multi-disciplinary Incident Management Plan
NDMC - National Disaster Management Centre
PDMC - Provincial Disaster Management Centre
PG:GP - Provincial Government: Gauteng Province
SANDF - South African National Defence Force
SAPS - South African Police Service
SOP - Standard Operating Procedure
FDCR- Fire Department Control Room

DEFINITIONS:

The following words and expressions will, unless the context otherwise requires or the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act No. 57 of 2002) or National Disaster Management Framework, 2005 otherwise provides, have the meanings thereby assigned to them namely-

In terms of Midvaal Multi–Disciplinary Incident Management Plan (MIMP), which advocates a **co-ordinated and standardised approach to incident response activities** in Midvaal, an **incident** is defined as: "*a general description of a hazard occurrence or situation requiring intervention ranging from a limited co-ordination of emergency resources to a more extensive multi-disciplinary operation. This scenario may also develop into an emergency or disaster situation. "*

A **major incident** is defined as: *"a more complex situation requiring the co-operation and co-ordinated response of multiple emergency disciplines and resources and operations as set out in the MIMP. This scenario may also develop into an emergency or disaster situation".*

An **emergency** is defined as: "*an event that requires the prompt implementation of actions, or the special regulation of persons or property, to limit the risk to health, safety or welfare of people, or to limit damage to property or the environment.*
Response actions should be co-ordinated based on the MIMP".

"Assimilate" means to take in, absorb and integrate information to fully understand the context of concepts (Kavanagh, 2002:65);

"**Disaster Management Plan**" means a plan developed by an organ of state in terms of section 25, 38, 39, 52 or 53 of the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act No. 57 of 2002);

"**Integrated development Plan**" means a plan envisage in Section 25 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2002 (Act No.32 of 2000);

"**Internalise**" means to make disaster management part of an organs of state's operations through learning, practicing and assimilation (adapted from Kavanagh, 2002: 602);

"**Interrogate**" means to ask questions of someone or something closely, or formally, or to obtain date from a computer file, database, storage device, or terminal (adapted from Kavanagh, 2002: 603).

AMENDMENTS / UPDATES / DISTRIBUTION

New amendments or updates will be added to the Amendments and Updates Listing below and it is the responsibility of the individual to regularly check the currency of their Plan copy.

Proposals for amendment or additions to the text of this Plan should be forwarded to:-
Chief Fire Officer,
Protection Services
Midvaal
P O Box 9
Meyerton
1960
Telephone: +27 (0)16 360 7500
Facsimile: +27 (0)16 362 2632

AMENDMENTS AND UPDATES LISTING

REV. NO.	DATE OF ISSUE	DETAILS OF PAGE(S) AMENDED OR REPLACED
1	2008	Revision on resignation and new appointments on organograms
2	17 / 2/2012	Revision on resignation and new appointments and evacuation procedures
3	30/8/2012	Revision on resignation and new appointments on organograms
4	21/2/2013	Total revision of the previous version.
5	2/9/2013	Revision on resignation and new appointments
6	13/8/2014	Revision on resignation and new appointments
7	6/8/2015	Revision on resignation and new appointments
8	15/8/2016	Revision on resignation and new appointments Attachment of Randwater and SASOL GAS lines emergency plans as additional documents.
9	26 / 2 / 2018	Revision to compliance with the Department of co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs notice 415 of 2017

DISTRIBUTION LIST:

DEPARTMENT	DATE
COGTA: PDMC	
SEDIBENG DISTRICT	
Community services	
Corporate services	
Development & Planning services	
Engineering services	
Financial services	

CHAPTER 1

MIDVAAL'S APPROACH TO DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT

MIDVAAL'S DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT POLICY FRAMEWORK (DISASTER MANAGEMENT ACT 57 OF 2002 - SECTION 41)

Midvaal Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum (MDMAF) must establish and implement a policy framework for Disaster Risk Management in the municipality. MDMAF must ensure an integrated and common approach to Disaster Risk Management entities in Midvaal Local Municipality.

Midvaal Municipal Disaster Risk Management Policy Framework will be –

(a) consistent with the provisions of the Disaster Management Act;
(b) consistent with the National Disaster Risk Management Framework; and
(c) consistent with the Disaster Risk Management Policy Framework of the Provincial

Government: Gauteng.

Midvaal Fire Department (MFDP) is the custodian of the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan for Midvaal. Individual Services / Directorates, Departments and other role-players / entities will be responsible for the compilation and maintenance of their own Service's / Entity's Disaster Risk Management plans. Along with the various **specific** Hazard DRM Plans, the Service / Entity DRM Plans will be considered as integral parts of the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan.

The processes involved in Disaster Risk Management can best be explained through the Disaster Risk Management Continuum. (Fig.1DRMC)

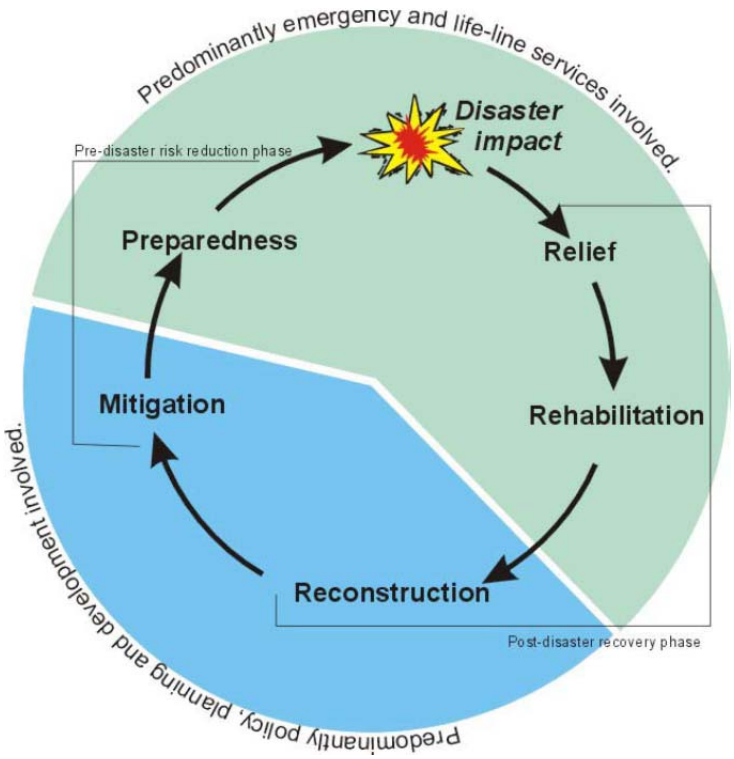


Figure 1: Disaster Risk Management Continuum

Figure 1 illustrates the DRM Continuum – it should be noted that Disaster Risk Management is not only re-active, but also involves actions aimed at preventing disasters, or mitigating the impact of disasters, i.e. disaster risk reduction. Different line functions and departments must contribute in varying degrees to Disaster Risk Management in the various phases of the Disaster Risk Management Continuum. The needs identified in the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan will indicate where the different Directorates, Departments, Branches and other Entities should contribute.

These contributions must then be included in the respective Directorate's or Entity's Disaster Risk Management Plans and in the special risk-specific DRM Plans which have been drafted.

Disaster Risk Management Plans must cover the whole Disaster Risk Management continuum and must address all actions before, during and after disasters. Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled based on a generic plan which will include references to any standard operating procedures (SOP's), legislation and best practice of the respective Services or Entities. These generic plans can be adapted to suit type of hazard / disaster-risk being dealt with. The respective Directorate / Department / Entity Disaster Risk Managements Plans must be integrated with the relevant multi-disciplinary hazard / risk-specific plans so that all aspects are covered.

CHAPTER 2

INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT

MUNICIPAL MANAGEMENT STRUCTURE AND ARRANGEMENTS

The various levels making up the management structures for Disaster Risk Management in Midvaal will respectively plan to maintain existing services and adapt to deal with the changed circumstances during major incidents or disasters. The planning, prevention and response management structure for Midvaal is as follows: -

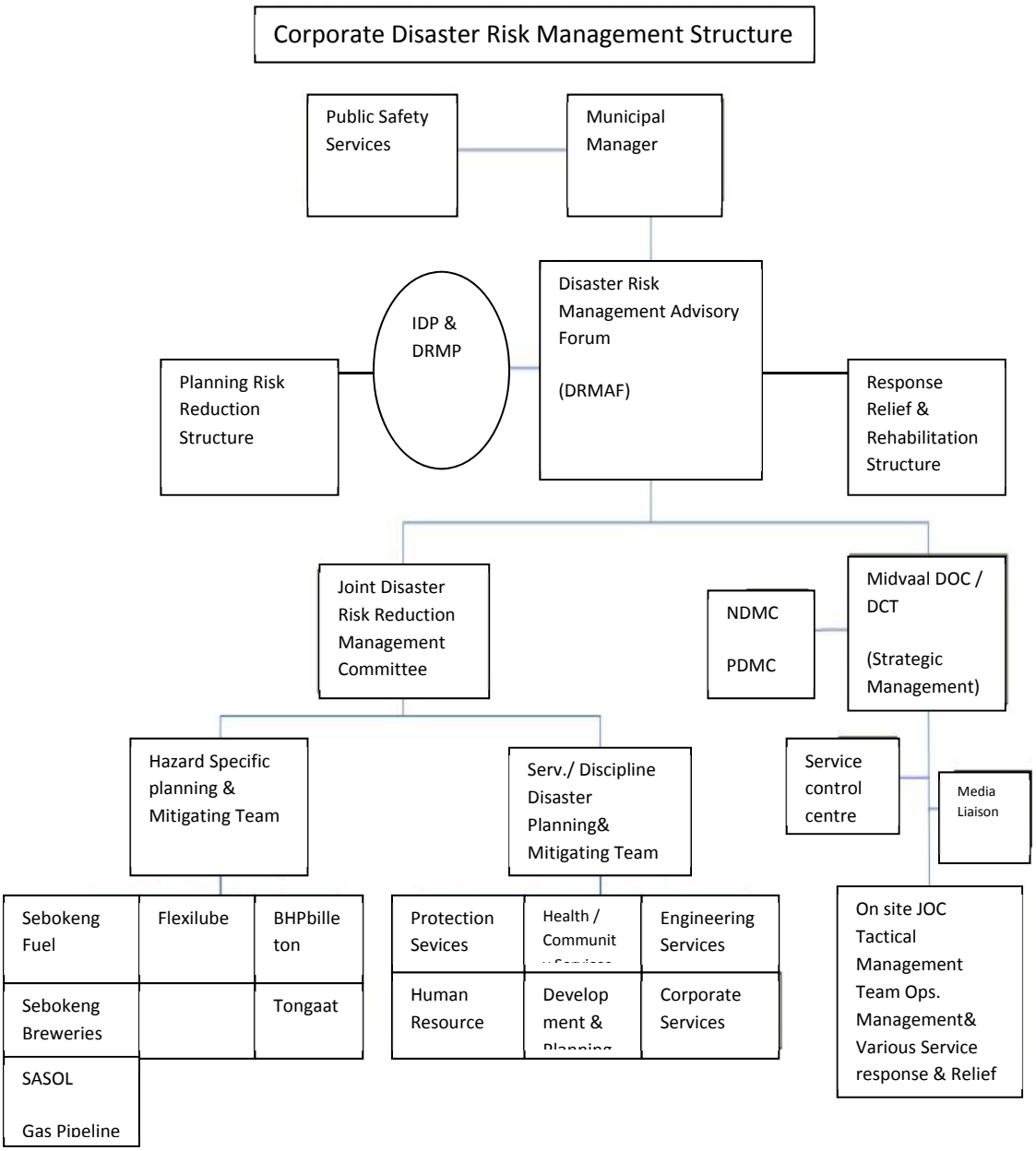


Figure 2: Midvaal Disaster Risk Management Structure

The first objective of the above structure must be to achieve disaster prevention, risk reduction and mitigation efforts in the day-to-day activities of the entities in Midvaal. The second but equally important objective is to ensure effective disaster response, relief and rehabilitation efforts.

DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT MULTI-DISCIPLINARY CO-ORDINATION ARRANGEMENTS

Midvaal Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum (MDMAF) will comprise of the following functionaries:

Internal to Midvaal :-

Municipal Manager
Director Legal / PMS
Deputy Municipal Manager: Corporate Services
Executive Director: Finance

Chief Environmental Health Officer
Executive Director: Development and Planning
Executive Director: Community Services
Director LED & Housing: LED, Agriculture, Tourism and Housing
Head: Public Safety
Executive Director: Engineering
Director: Engineering Support: Support Services
Mechanical Workshop: Fleet co-ordinator
Divisional Officer Protection services: Communication
Divisional Officer Operations & Communication: Fire Dept. Control Room (Disaster Risk Management Centre)
Chief Fire Officer: Fire and Rescue Service
Chief: Traffic Services
Chief Superintendent Traffic: Law Enforcement & Security

NOTE: Representation may be adjusted by the Forum in accordance with the identified risks to Midvaal which are being dealt with over a period.

External Entities: -

PG: Sedibeng District Disaster Management Centre
PG: Sedibeng District Emergency Medical Services
PG: Sedibeng District Social Services and Poverty Alleviation
PG: Sedibeng District Traffic Control
SA Police Services
SA National Defence Force
plus representation from the CPF(Community Police Forum), Metrorail, Transnet Freight Rail, Commerce & Industry, the Disaster Relief NGO's and the broader Community.

NOTE: Representation may be adjusted by the Forum in accordance with the identified risks to Midvaal which are being dealt with over a particular period.

LINES OF COMMUNICATION AND INTER-GOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS

In terms of Section 43 (1) of the Disaster Management Act, (57 of 2002), it is incumbent on Midvaal to establish in its administration, a Disaster Risk Management Centre for its municipal area. Lines of communication and the relationship between the various Disaster Risk Management formations of the different spheres of government are illustrated in Figure 3.

Midvaal Disaster Risk Management Centre liaises with the Provincial Disaster Management Centre, which in turn liaises with the National Disaster Management Centre.



Figure 3: Lines of Communication

MIDVAAL FIRE DEPARTMENT CONTROL ROOM (DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT CENTRE) (DRMC)

The (FDCR) or (DRMC) must specialise in issues concerning disasters and Disaster Risk Management within Midvaal. In this regard it must promote an integrated and co-ordinated approach to the function, with special emphasis on prevention and mitigation.

The (FDCR) or (DRMC) must perform functions and exercise powers as stipulated in Section 44 of the Disaster Management Act, 57of 2002.

The (FDCR) (DRMC) will act as a repository and conduit for information concerning disasters, impending disasters and Disaster Risk Management in the municipal area.

The Fire Department Control Room (FDCR) will perform its functions –

(a) within the national, provincial and municipal Disaster Risk Management frameworks;
(b) subject to Midvaal IDP and other directions of Midvaal Council; and
(c) in accordance with the administrative instructions of the municipal manager.

It will liaise with and co-ordinate its activities with those of the Gauteng Provincial Disaster Management Centre and the Sedibeng District Disaster Management Centre and render assistance as required in legislation.

The hazard-specific and Departmental planning committees, the functioning of the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT) in the Disaster Operations Centre (DOC) and the On-site (mobile) Joint Operations Centre, etc. will be described in later sections of this document.

1. RESPONSIBILITIES OF STAKEHOLDERS

The main stakeholders in Midvaal Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan are listed in this Section and their respective specific responsibilities in ***both*** the **disaster prevention / disaster risk reduction / mitigation / preparedness *and*** their **disaster response, relief and rehabilitation** requirements are indicated.

In terms of the Municipal DRM Plan, the primary objective of each stakeholder must be to prevent the occurrence of emergencies or disasters that threaten life, property, the environment or economic activity in Midvaal. Failing the prevention of emergencies or disasters through the elimination of disaster risk, the secondary objective is to reduce disaster risk and vulnerability and thus lessen the possible impact of emergencies or disasters.

MUNICIPAL DISASTER MANAGEMENT ADVISORY FORUM (MDMAF)

It is the responsibility of Midvaal Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum to approve the compilation and maintenance of a Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan which will be compiled and maintained by Midvaal Disaster Risk Management Centre, as well as the incorporation of the relevant supportive hazard or risk-specific and Service / Entity DRM Plans.

The Disaster Management Advisory Forum shall review of the Municipal DRM Plan on an annual basis. It must make recommendations for changes that are considered appropriate and that the required support documents, organisation, resources, training and facilities are in place at **all** the participating Entities to ensure a viable emergency / disaster response structure for Midvaal.

The Municipal DMAF must oversee the assigning project teams to address specific risks and develop risk-specific plans by the Joint Disaster Risk Reduction Management Committee (JDRRMC) - refer to the functions of the JDRRMC in Paragraph 8.4.

The Municipal DMAF must ensure that the following actions, which are in line with the benchmarked disaster risk management principles, take place during the following disaster phases: -

Disaster Risk Reduction and Preparedness phases:

- ensuring that regular Disaster Risk Assessments are undertaken in Midvaal,
- assessing capacity of Midvaal to implement emergency / disaster response actions,
- oversee the formulation of plans and projects to **reduce disaster risk**, including the **integration with MLM IDP initiatives.**

During any major Emergency or Disaster Response and Relief phases:

- assessing the effect of any disaster which has occurred in Midvaal and examine any further consequences and disaster risk in the emergency area(s) led by the DCT (refer para. 6.3),
- assess the consequences and disaster risk to the remainder of Midvaal, if any,
- assessing all response actions by the Entities participating in this Plan, and
- advise and formulate recommendations on the response actions, including the mitigation of any further disaster risk, as required.

During the Recovery and Rehabilitation phases:

- ensuring a return to normal functioning of affected communities as soon as possible,
- provide input on disaster prevention or mitigation through disaster risk elimination or reduction.

2. JOINT DISASTER RISK REDUCTION MANAGEMENT COMMITTEE (JDRRMC) AND SPECIAL HAZARD / RISK-SPECIFIC AND SERVICE / DEPARTMENTAL TASK TEAMS

The Joint Disaster Risk Reduction Management Committee (JDRRMC) will comprise designated senior personnel from each of Midvaal Directorates (Directors, Deputy Directors, Assistant Directors or Chiefs of sections) who will be the Disaster Management “links” or “nodal points” into their respective Directorates and will be the conduit for especially proactive/ risk reduction initiatives. Senior staff of external Organisations’ will also serve on the JDRRMC and will fulfil similar roles to those of Midvaal representatives. Special Hazard / Risk-specific Task Teams will be responsible to plan, manage and complete multi-disciplinary projects and produce the necessary DRM Plans in the *pre-disaster risk reduction and preparedness phases*. They will continue with DRM Plan maintenance and readiness programmes on an on-going basis.

Special Task Teams may also be convened to address specific risk-mitigation issues during the *post-disaster recovery and rehabilitation phases*. Such Teams will determine their respective terms of reference and deliverables under the direction of the JDRRMC and Midvaal Disaster Risk Management Advisory Forum, in association with the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), as may be required by the nature and extent of the Incident.

The Municipal DMAF will delegate the JDRRMC to ensure that Hazard / Risk-specific Task Teams, as well as Service / Departmental Teams are convened and maintained to address risk-specific Disaster Risk Management plans which have the highest risk to Midvaal, i.e. DRM Plans for flooding and storms, Climate Change, Earthquakes, Transport Incidents, Hazardous Materials Incidents, etc., as well as mass events preparedness. Policies, plans and procedures that address efficient incident management and inter-disciplinary co-operation during incidents are to be

included in these DRM Plans. The input of specialist advisers in the various fields must be obtained on an on-going basis.

In the recovery and rehabilitation phase, these Project Teams will take over responsibility for recovery and rehabilitation from the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT) once the DCT is demobilised and / or in cases where recovery and rehabilitation take place over an extended and protracted period.

A Special Task Team under a specific line function / department may also be convened to take responsibility for activities that address the causal factors of any disaster or major incident occurrence. Such Teams will receive a brief from, and report back to the Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum and to senior management. They will work in close co-operation with the Fire Department. Their recommendations must be incorporated into the respective hazard / risk-specific and Departmental DRM Plans and, if necessary, be incorporated into the Municipal DRM Plan.

3. DISASTER RESPONSE CO-ORDINATION

The Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT) shall be convened in the (off-site) Disaster Operations Centre (DOC) when an emergency or disaster has occurred or is likely to occur, in accordance with the following parameters: -

- where the size or seriousness of the emergency seems beyond the capability of a Service, in the opinion of the most senior on-duty official of that Service, the Fire Department can be requested to activate the DCT,
- where the Head of the Fire Department, Protection Services believes it is necessary to activate the DCT in order to effectively manage an emergency which has occurred or is likely to occur, the DCT must convene in the DOC,
- the activating Service shall, via the Fire Department control, contact the Divisional Officer Operations who shall immediately arrange to notify the designated members of the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- the Divisional Officer Operations shall request the DCT members to meet at the DOC of Midvaal or at any other viable alternate centre should the DOC not be available for whatever reason,
- the DCT will evaluate the situation and collaborate with the Head of the Fire Department, Public Safety regarding the need for a declaration of a Local State of Disaster, as well as the continued activation or standing-down of the DCT.

All incidents will be managed by the Disaster Co-ordination Team in accordance with the principles and guidelines contained in Midvaal Multi-Disciplinary Incident Management Plan (MIMP) and the Disaster Operations Centre's (Fire Department) Standard Operating Procedures.

The Disaster Co-ordination Team (Operational Fire Personnel) will be convened and chaired by the Chief Fire Officer at the DOC Midvaal or at another suitable facility which is appropriately removed from any direct hazard or risk if the DOC is unavailable for whatever reason. The DCT will be activated through the procedures outlined in the Disaster Response Plan section – refer to Paragraph 12.

MLM DISASTER OPERATIONS CENTRE

Midvaal Disaster Operations Centre (DOC) staff (a section of the Fire Department), must assist with additional functions (as listed below), under the guidance of the Disaster Co-ordination Team, when this Committee is convened / activated to oversee response, relief and rehabilitation operations during any major Incident, Emergency or Disaster situation.

These additional functions are: -

- to maintain records of communications, decisions, actions and expenditures,

- have continuous communication and liaison with all Disciplines on-site through the On-site Joint Operations Centre (On-site JOC) and the respective Service Command Posts deployed on site,
- designate emergency area(s) and sites,
- decide on emergency measures and priorities,
- assess the impact / consequences resulting from the Incident,
- request emergency partner assistance / implement any mutual aid agreements as are necessary,
- close public buildings as required,
- issue public warnings, orders and instructions as required,
- protect the health and safety of emergency responders,
- ensure an acceptable level of emergency services for Midvaal outside emergency area(s),
- prepare lists of fatalities, casualties and missing persons,
- prepare lists of destroyed and damaged properties,
- consider the declaration of a Local State of Disaster,
- co-ordinate response with provincial ministries through the PG: Gauteng Disaster Management Centre and Sedibeng Disaster Management co-ordinate response with non-governmental disaster relief organisations, neighbourhood and community organisations,
- identify all persons / organisations which can contribute to emergency response,
- provide information to the media for dissemination to the affected population(s) and the public,
- co-ordinate information for public release with emergency partners' communications staff,
- respond to inquiries from the Mayor or the MM,
- identify target audiences for post-emergency communications,
- identify persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings, submit information for payment of invoices,
- assist with any other tasks, as determined by the DCT, when in session.

4. MUNICIPAL MANAGER

The Municipal Manager, assisted by the Fire Department, is to ensure that Disaster Risk Management activities such as hazard identification, disaster risk and vulnerability assessments, disaster prevention, disaster risk reduction / mitigation, preparedness and incident response, relief and rehabilitation are integrated into the functions / mandates of each discipline / entity within the organisation and executed in an effective and efficient manner throughout Midvaal.

During and after responses to major emergencies or disasters the Municipal Manager will be responsible to personally or through a designated official to:

- Report, liaise and consult with councillors and provincial and national government departments,
- Report on emergency impact and response to the Executive Mayor,
- Report on emergency impact and response to the councillor(s) for the affected area(s),
- Report on emergency impact and response to the remaining Councillors,
- Notify next-of-kin when an employee is injured, missing or killed during any emergency,
- Authorize any extraordinary expenditures (access to disaster funding and / or any alternative emergency funding sources),
- Identify persons / organisations to receive recognition for contributions made to emergency response.

THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER MUST:

- When deemed necessary, consider the declaration of a local state of disaster as per the Disaster Management Act, 57 of 2002,
- Liaise with provincial officials and national officials,
- Co-ordinate response with CBO'S and NGO'S,

- Authorize area evacuation / re-entry when area is safe,
- After consultation with the DCT authorise area evacuation / re-entry,
- Identify persons/organisations to receive recognition for contributions to the emergency response,
- Establish and maintain required telecommunications links with all the relevant departments and entities,
- Identify available resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the DCT,
- Establish and maintain a resources database (DisRes),
- Ensure effective media liaison and public early-warning,
- Provide situation reports to all internal and external role-players on a regular basis.

Specific reference is made to the following:

IDP and Organisational Performance Management Systems

- Ensure that the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan forms an integral part of the IDP,
- Ensure that hazard identification, risk assessment and that risk prevention and/or risk reduction / mitigation principles are applied for *all* development projects to be undertaken.

5. DIRECTOR LEGAL / PMS

The Director Legal / PMS must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Service, with specific reference to the following:

- Auditing and informing the relevant Disaster Risk Management Plans of Council Installations to ensure pro-active disaster risk reduction and compliance with relevant legislation, codes and regulations,
- Audit compliance of Midvaal services with the stipulations of the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT).

6. DEPUTY MUNICIPAL MANAGER: CORPORATE SERVICES

The Deputy Municipal Manager: Corporate Services must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Directorate, including the Legal Services, PRO & Marketing Services, Committees, Records, Information Technology (Helpdesk) and Independent Electoral Commission Office, with specific reference to the following:

Director: Legal Services

The Director: Legal Services must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Department, with specific reference to the following:

- Monitoring compliance with relevant legislation, regulations, licenses and by-laws,
- Documenting information for potential legal actions,
- Documenting information for potential compensation claims,
- Identifying information to be documented for inquests or investigations under applicable laws.

PRO & Marketing: Chief complaint Officer

The Chief Complaint Officer must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Service, with specific reference to the following:

- Customer relations enquiries of Midvaal,
- Operation of a Call Centre for non-urgent matters & assistance with emergency information dissemination, as required.

Assistant Director: Committees

The Assistant Director must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Service, with specific reference to the following:

Head of Records

The Head of Records must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Service, with specific reference to the following:

- Providing administrative support including printing and courier services for distribution of disaster related printed material to depots and decentralised offices,
- Provision of registry and cell phone administration services.

Director: (Human Resource) Personnel Services

The Director: (Human Resource) Personnel Services must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Department, with specific reference to the following:

- Providing information to MLM staff and their families regarding aspects of any emergency or disaster,
- Documenting information for remuneration of municipal employees involved in emergency response,
- Reporting to the Health and Safety Committees on the emergency responses undertaken in Midvaal,
- Documenting potential Occupational Health and Safety issues,
- Documenting information for potential municipal labour relations issues.
- **Occupational Health and Safety Officer** preparation in terms of the emergency evacuation plans which are co-ordinated from his / her office.

Information Technology Helpdesk (Div. Officer Ops. & IT)

Management to ensure continued reliable operation of Midvaal radio system, especially in times of emergencies, as it is utilised by all Midvaal emergency services. Further radio staff are on standby as well as a 24/7 maintenance and support agreements with the contractor.

7. **Executive Director Finance:**

The Executive Director Finance must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Directorate, to lead and direct financial functions of Midvaal so that the current and future effectiveness of Council services, programmes and operations are insured, and these include Treasury, Budget, Revenue, Supply Chain Management, Valuations and Asset Management, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,

- Enterprise Risk Management
- Documenting information for potential municipal insurance claims,
- Managing donations for emergency response,
- Facilitating emergency procurement,
- Initiating and facilitating efforts to make funds available for pro-active and re-active disaster management within the municipal area,
- Supplying financial resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

8. EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR: COMMUNITY SERVICES

The Executive Director: Community Services must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Directorate, and is required to provide strategy and management to the Sports & Recreation, City Parks and Library & Information Services Departments, with specific reference to the following:

Assistant Director Parks / Swimming Pool

The Assistant Director Parks / Swimming Pool must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Department, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Emergency / contingency planning for all Council facilities used for mass events,
- Make available facilities for emergency assembly and / or shelter of persons displaced by emergencies or disasters,
- Plan and assist with the management of emergency shelter, evacuation assembly points and mass care facilities for persons displaced by emergencies or disasters,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT)
  Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

Parks

The Assistant Director Parks / Swimming Pool must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Department, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations,
- Assist with the removal of vegetation proving to be hazardous, both pro-actively and re-actively after any Incident,
- Supplying any specific resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

CHIEF ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH OFFICER

The Chief Environmental Health Officer must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Directorate, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Steps to eliminate disaster risks presented by communicable diseases,
- Isolate person(s) to decrease or eliminate disaster risk presented by a communicable disease,
- Protect the health and safety of emergency responders,
- Monitor large groups of people for contamination and / or health effects,
- Preventative issues around communicable diseases for disrupted populations (may be general population or limited to vulnerable populations and essential service operators),
- Immunize large groups of people,
- Assist with the management of emergency shelter, evacuation assembly points and mass care facilities for persons displaced by emergencies or disasters,
- Seize and dispose of food that poses a health hazard,
- Monitor the environment (air, water, and ecosystem) for contamination,
- Identify victims, responders or affected persons who may require medical follow-up and / or who may require psychosocial support and to facilitate this support which may be provided by the appropriate governmental and non-Governmental agencies as applicable,
- Identify persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings regarding health matters,

  Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by Midvaal Health representative(s) on the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), if convened,
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).
- Liaise with the PG: Gauteng Health Department who are responsible for the provision of curative and operative interventions during any major incident regarding the:-

- care for evacuees and victims,
- the provision of curative health care in remarks of communicable diseases for disrupted populations (may be general population or limited to vulnerable populations and essential service operators).

Chief Environmental Health Officer

The Chief Environmental Health Officer must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Department, with specific reference to the following:

Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,

- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings,
- Plan and ensure that risk reduction and disaster mitigation principles are adhered to in the recovery and redevelopment phases,
- Ensure that risk reduction and mitigation principles are applied as part of the environmental input into all development projects,
- Include the reduction of natural disasters as an element in environmental education programmes,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),

- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes),
- Identify possible environmental disasters,
- Identification of land for mass burials if required

9. SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT CO-ORDINATOR:

The Social Development Co-Ordinator must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Directorate and is required to provide strategy and management to the Social Development, Economic & Human Development, Property Management and Tourism Departments, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, including social development plans,
- Compilation of re-active departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

Assistant Director: Waste Management

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Disposing of non-hazardous waste and refuse when and where required,
- Advising and providing facilities for the disposal of hazardous waste,
- Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

10. EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR: DEVELOPMENT AND PLANNING

The Executive Director: Development and Planning must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Directorate, and is required to provide strategy and management of the Environmental Resource Management, Spatial Planning & Urban Design, Strategic Development & GIS and the Planning & Building Development Departments, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Include the reduction of natural disasters as an element in environmental education programmes,
- Identify possible environmental disasters,
- Compilation of pro-active environmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support risk reduction or elimination,
- Monitoring the environment (ground, air, water and the ecosystem) for contamination,
- Ensure linkages between this plan and infrastructure development framework,

- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

Director: Town Planning and GIS

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Rendering support and advice throughout all phases of Disaster Risk Management planning activities,
- Compiling, exercising and carrying out adequate disaster recovery procedures for IT infrastructure and information management,
- Establishing and maintaining required informatics links to maintain the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes),
- Supplying IT Infrastructure and assets to host and maintain DisRes, integrated GIS and any other IT systems which can assist in Disaster Risk Management,

Deputy Director: Urban Planning

The Deputy Director: Urban Planning must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Department, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination through the long term spatial development framework to ensure integrated, proactive and decisive decision making on major infrastructure, investment, development and settlement issues, including directives for local area integrated human settlement planning and the provision of Urban Design inputs for corporate strategic programmes to improve settlement planning,
- Ensure that risk reduction and mitigation principles are applied as part of the environmental input into all development projects, including the identification of possible environmental disasters,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings,
- Plan and ensure that risk reduction and disaster mitigation principles are adhered to in the recovery and redevelopment phases,
- include the reduction of natural disasters as an element in environmental education programmes,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

Chief Building and Land Use Officer

The Chief Building and Land Use Officer must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Department, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination through the planning and building development initiatives being undertaken under the guidance of the department,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations, especially where buildings and other structures have been affected by the Incident,

- Identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Plan and ensure that risk reduction and disaster mitigation principles are adhered to in the recovery and redevelopment phases,
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

DIRECTOR: LED & HOUSING

The Director: LED & Housing must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Directorate and is required to provide strategy and management of the Policy, Research Planning and Monitoring, Existing Settlements and New Settlements Departments, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Identify and make available alternative land and housing / shelter for persons displaced by an emergency or disaster,
- Plan and assist with the management of emergency shelter, evacuation assembly points and mass care facilities for persons displaced by emergencies or disasters,
- Ensure that all housing and servicing projects promote disaster risk reduction,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

11. HEAD PUBLIC SAFETY

The Head Public Safety must:

- Ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his/her Directorate,
- Establish and ensure the effective functioning of the Disaster Risk Management Advisory Forum,
- When necessary and assisted by the Chief Fire Officer and submit reports containing recommendations for changes to the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan to Council.

The specific responsibilities of the following key Departments and Services in this Directorate are as follows:

Chief Fire Officer: Fire and Rescue Service

The Chief Fire Officer is responsible for the performance of his Disaster Risk Management functions, as per Section 44 of the Disaster Management Act, 57 of 2002. He / she is responsible for the compilation, maintenance, distribution and the implementation and co-ordination of Midvaal Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan and its supporting risk-specific and Departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans, including linkage to Midvaal Integrated Development Plan (IDP).
The Fire Chief, in consultation with the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), when convened, will determine the appropriate response structures to any incident, emergency or disaster situation, and when these structures can be de-activated or scaled down he must also ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Service, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations,
- Preventing the outbreak or spread of fires,
- Fighting or extinguishing fires,
- Protecting life and property from fire or other threatening danger,
- Rescuing of life or property from fire or other danger,
- Evacuating designated area(s) threatened by fire of both persons and livestock,
- Assist and manage hazardous material decontamination facilities and operations
- co-ordinating response and mutual aid agreements with adjacent District Councils in Sedibeng District,
- protecting the health and safety of emergency responders,
- maintaining a central registry of evacuees,
- identifying persons who may require long term care and accommodation,
- identifying target audiences for post-emergency communications,
- ensuring acceptable level of emergency services for Midvaal outside of the emergency area(s),
- identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports and debriefings,
- supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

Divisional Officer Operations & Communication

The Divisional Officer Operations & Communication must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Department, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Providing information to persons at emergency facilities (e.g. assembly points / evacuation centres / mass care facilities),
- Providing information to persons at special incident-related meetings,
- Providing information to Midvaal employees and their families who are affected by emergencies / disasters,
- Arranging site visits for persons affected by the emergency, e.g. families of deceased persons,
- Arranging anniversary events of disasters for affected persons in support of efforts to facilitate psychosocial coping mechanisms,
- Regularly updating on emergency situation to councillors,
- Supporting the Fire Department Control Room in communicating status reports and public safety notices,
- Supporting the Fire Department in risk-reducing public education and awareness programmes
- Provide and support the DRMC with a 24-hour communication facility for the notification of Major Incidents and any subsequent communication needs,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Fire Department Control Room Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

Chief: Traffic Services

The Chief: Traffic Services must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Service, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations,
- Co-ordinating Incident response with the South African Police Service and all the other responding Emergency and Essential Services,
- Assist the police with the controlling and dispersing crowds on the roadways,
- Support the evacuation of designated area(s) which are threatened by any emergency of both persons and livestock,
- Managing and controlling traffic in and around emergency area(s), on evacuation routes and on emergency vehicles' access and egress routes,
- Identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings,
- Protecting essential service facilities and infrastructure, as required,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the DRMC's Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

12. DIRECTOR: PROJECT MANAGEMENT UNIT (PMU)

The Director: Project Management Unit (PMU) must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Directorate, and is required to provide strategy and management to the Roads & Storm water, Transport, Electricity Services, Water and Sanitation and Solid Waste Management Departments with specific reference to the following:

Director: Civil Services

The Director: IRT must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Service, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active Departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive Departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Taking appropriate measures to accommodate the transport network in the most expedient manner under the prevailing circumstances,
- Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the DRMC's Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

Assistant Director: Roads and Storm water

The Assistant Director: Roads and Storm water must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Service, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active Departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive Departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Confining and containing flood water where possible,
- Providing technical advice in preventing or reducing the effects of flooding and storm-damage,
- Liaison with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry as required,
- Removing debris and other obstacles from transportation routes and other sites as required,
- Repairing any damaged or dysfunctional road infrastructure to restore optimal functioning of the transport network in the shortest possible time,
- Taking appropriate measures to accommodate traffic on the transport network in the most expedient manner under the prevailing circumstances,
- Liaison with the Provincial Roads Department and National Roads Agency as required,
- Assist and advise on Hazmat clean-up and decontamination of infrastructure and the environment,
- Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

Assistant Director: Sewer and Purification

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Co-ordinating response with businesses and industries affected by the emergency,
- Controlling consumption of public water supply,
- Providing alternate water supplies (potable, industrial and for fire-fighting),
- Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as he result of an emergency or disaster,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

Fleet co-ordinator: Mechanical Workshop (Transport)

The Fleet co-ordinator must ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his / her Service, with specific reference to the following:

- Compilation of pro-active Departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive Departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Taking appropriate measures to accommodate traffic on the transport network in the most expedient manner under the prevailing circumstances,
- Liaison with the Provincial Transport Department and National Transport Department as required,
- Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster,

- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).
- Fleet & Workshop Management to ensure that:-
- Appropriate staff have been placed on standby to cater for such occasions (supervisors, drivers, operators and labourers),
- Appropriate vehicles are available for timeous response,
- Permits for low bed trailers, etc. are valid for such emergency response,
- Supplementary resources are available from private sector,
- Procedural guide and lists of internal and external contacts are available for standby teams,
- Call out procedures and contacts details are lodged with HOD and updated weekly.

Director: Electricity Services

- Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,
- Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations,
- Co-ordinating response with businesses and industries affected by the emergency,
- Co-ordinating response with national and provincial Public Works departments,
- Co-ordinating response with Eskom regarding electricity supply to the City,
- Allocating available electricity,
- Planning alternate electrical supply,
- Arranging for an alternate telephone or communication service, if required,
- Controlling telecommunications system load,
- Identifying buildings which are electrically unsafe,
- Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster,
- Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

13. DISASTER FUNDING ARRANGEMENTS

If the execution of obligations and duties as outlined in this Plan entails costs for any Service, provision must be made in the relevant Service's own budget.
Under certain circumstances Midvaal will be re-imbursed by National Government for disaster response efforts. However, the Disaster Management Act, Chapter 6, states that the Minister of Provincial Affairs and Local Government, may in the case of disaster relief funding, prescribe a percentage of the budget of a local authority which can be used as a threshold for accessing additional funding from the Department for response efforts.

This implies that the amount set as a threshold will have to be spent by Midvaal on disaster response and relief before financial assistance may be considered by National Government.

The financial assistance to be provided by National Government may consider what planning, prevention and mitigation measures were taken pro-actively and whether the situation could have been avoided or minimised had Midvaal implemented the aforementioned actions.

If planning and prevention strategies have not been implemented the local authority may be penalised from a financial point of view. It is therefore vital that comprehensive Disaster Risk Management Plans are in place to substantiate any possible future financial claims.

14. ENTITY / SERVICE DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT PLANS

Each individual Directorate, Department and Service of Midvaal Local Municipality, as well as applicable external entities / organisations, as indicated in the Disaster Risk Management Framework, are responsible for submitting their respective Entity's Disaster Risk Management Plan to the ED Community Services, Fire Department serving as the Disaster Risk Management Centre, as per Section 52 of the Disaster Management Act, 57 of 2002. Disaster risk reduction aspects contained in these Entity / Service DRM Plans should also be incorporated into that Entity's submission to the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) to achieve the development targets of Midvaal.

All Entity / Discipline DRM Plans, especially where the Entities / Disciplines are identified as the Lead Combatting Agency or as the Support Agency to deal with a particular hazard, should primarily be directed at hazard prevention or disaster risk reduction, but disaster response, relief and rehabilitation aspects must be included and regularly exercised to ensure the Entity's readiness for any catastrophic event in Midvaal.

Aspects to be addressed in any Disaster Risk Management Plan should encompass the following:-

Planning Framework & Scope of the DRM Plan

- the way in which the concept and principles of Disaster Risk Management are to be applied in the Department's functional area;
- the relevant Department's role and responsibilities in terms of the national, provincial or municipal Disaster Risk Management frameworks;

Applicable References, Statutory Requirements and Linked Documents / SOP's

Abbreviations and Definitions Used

Hazard Identification, Risk (including Disaster-risk) and Vulnerability Assessments, leading to a needs analysis.

(Disaster) Risk Management Efforts –

a. Evaluation and description of Infrastructure / Organisation available
e.g. The Discipline's own Disaster Risk Management Resources Database
(Its capacity to fulfil its role and responsibilities)
b. Prevention through risk elimination
e.g. The Discipline's initiative to remove hazards / alternative processes
(Particulars of its Disaster Risk Management strategies)
c. Mitigation through risk reduction
e.g. The Discipline's engineering solutions / legislative compliance / safety culture / etc.
10.6 Preparedness planning for major risks that cannot be eliminated
e.g. The Discipline's contingency strategies and emergency procedures in the event of a disaster, including measures to finance these strategies
a. Contingency Planning based on risks and vulnerabilities

e.g. Fire / Chemical spills / Engineering aspects

b. Emergency organisation, internal and external

- Emergency management structure and allocation of responsibilities
- Standard Operating Procedures
- Integrated communications systems and other resources

c. Response planning

e.g. The Discipline's Role and responsibilities regarding a response to an emergency / disaster situation:

- Emergency response teams (groups with special responsibilities during emergencies) (i) Notification and Activation Procedures:

- Stand-by Lists / Emergency contact numbers
- Resources to be used / additional resources

(ii) Recovery plans:

Service's role and responsibilities regarding post-disaster recovery and rehabilitation;

- Business Continuity / Disaster Recovery for IT systems, etc.
- May also lead to reconstruction and redevelopment projects and programmes

d. Lines of communication (Protocols) and liaison and integration with other Services

Internal and external communication lines (who informs who, who reports to whom). Each Discipline must co-ordinate and align (integrate) the implementation of its DRM Plan with those of other co-responding role-players / entities. The DRM Plan must be regularly reviewed and updated).

e. Awareness and Education Efforts

The Discipline's strategies BEFORE (Prevention, Mitigation and Preparedness) DURING THE INCIDENT (Notifications, actions and advisories)
AFTER (Advisories, Public information and education) – then, re-align the strategies and start again at the "BEFORE" to be ready to deal with the next hazard.

f. Evaluation and Maintenance programmes.

All Discipline's in this regard to put strategies in place to mitigate or prevent future repetition of incidents by maintaining and monitoring the strategies that was put in place.

15. COMPREHENSIVE DISASTER RISK, VULNERABILITY AND MANAGEABILITY ASSESSMENT FOR MIDVAAL:

A comprehensive disaster risk assessment for Midvaal, incorporating both (technical) and community-based aspects, need to be under to comply with the standards envisaged by the Disaster Management Act, 57 of 2002 and the Disaster Management Framework, 2005.

The Disaster Risk Assessment, where the **PREDICTABILITY, THE IMPACT (SEVERITY / CONSEQUENCES), THE VULNERABILITY AND THE COPING CAPACITY (MANAGEABILITY)** requirements that a hazard poses will determine the priorities for disaster risk management programmes and projects. The amount of possible benefit to be derived from a risk reduction & preparedness project in terms of lives protected, livelihoods secured and property or the environment / natural resources defended, will be the criteria that determines these priorities.

DISASTER RISK ASSESSMENT: DETERMINATION OF THE RELATIVE DISASTER RISK PRIORITISATION

Disaster Risk quantification

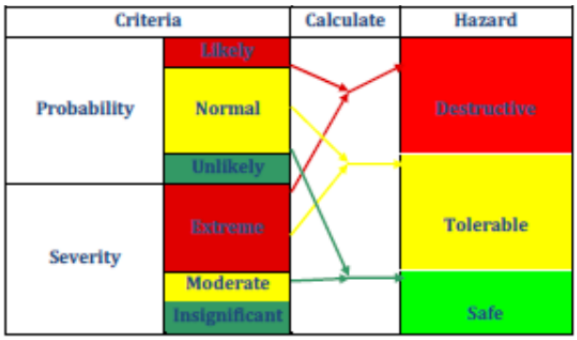
The disaster risk profiling assessment normally produces so many hazards that must be addressed that the sheer volume of work tends to be overwhelming. Consequently, a ***Relative Disaster Risk Prioritisation Assessment*** is conducted to assist the Municipality in their disaster risk management planning.

The ***Relative Disaster Risk Prioritisation Assessment*** involves the following action steps: -

- **Quantify the Hazard**
- **Quantify the Disaster Risk Manageability / Coping Capacity**
- **Quantify Vulnerabilities**
- **Determine the Overall Disaster Risk Score**

a. Hazard score quantification

The hazard score is determined by quantifying the probability and severity of a hazard (refer to the **Table** below).



= <u>Probability</u>: The probability of a hazard occurring is assessed and classified in three categories, namely:
- ***Likely*** ~ hazards in this category will have a very high probability of occurring (score = 3)
- ***Normal*** ~ hazards in this category will have a normal probability of occurring (score = 2)
- ***Unlikely*** ~ hazards in this category will have an unlikely probability of occurring (score = 1)

= <u>Severity</u> : The severity of the hazard, should it occur, will be accessed and the hazards will be classified into the following three categories :-
- ***Extreme -*** hazards in this category will hold extreme consequences to a community (score = 3)
- ***Moderate -*** hazards in this category will hold moderate consequences to a community (score = 2)
-Insignificant - hazards in this category will hold insignificant consequences to a community (score = 1)

b. Disaster Risk Manageability or Coping Capacity

The degree to which a society or institution can intervene and manage / cope with the negative consequences of a hazard event will depend on the following, each rated on a three-point scale where good = 3; modest =2; poor = 1), viz.: -
- **Awareness**: The over-all awareness of people living in a potential impact area of a hazard to that hazard is one of the factors that determine the risk manageability of a community.

- **Legislative Framework**: The legislative framework that governs a hazard event is one of the factors that determine the risk manageability of a community.

- **Early Warning Systems**: The early warning systems for a hazard event.

- **Government Response**: The response of the municipality and the provincial government to a hazard.

- **Government Resources**: The resources available to the municipality and the provincial government for a hazard event.

- **Existing Risk Reduction Measures**: The existing risk reduction measures of the municipality and the provincial government to a hazard event.

- **Public Participation Measures**: The existing public participation measures of the municipality and the provincial government to a hazard event.

- **Municipal Management Capabilities**: The over-all management capability of the municipality for a hazard event.

A simple mathematical model (formula given below) can be utilised to quantify the degree to which a community can intervene and manage the negative consequences of a hazard event: -

Risk Manageability Score ≥ 18: Should the risk manageability score of a particular hazard event impacting on a community be higher than 18 that community has a very ***high*** level of manageability and it is unlikely that the hazard event will impact negatively on the community.

Risk Manageability Score 8 to 18: If the risk manageability score of a particular hazard event impacting on a community is between 8 and 18, that community has a ***modest*** level of manageability and it is likely that the hazard event will impact negatively on the community.

Risk Manageability Score ≤ 8: Risk manageability scores of a particular hazard event impacting on a community lower than 8 accounts for a community with a ***poor*** level of manageability and it is highly likely that the hazard event will impact negatively on the community.

c. Vulnerability Score

Create Hazard Vulnerability Analysis Directory Structure: - A directory structure should be created to assist in determining the degree to which a community is vulnerable to each of the hazards in the region.

Quantify Vulnerabilities: - To enable risk quantification the Vulnerabilities of the area should also be calculated. The model has assessed **environmental**, **economical**, **societal** and **critical facilities** (NB **political** and **legal vulnerabilities** may also be required to be assessed, depending on the Community's circumstances). A map of the study area should be used, and GIS layers should be used to indicate areas that are vulnerable. Each area on the map must be allocated a vulnerability score for **each of the four vulnerabilities** and a vulnerability score of 1, 2 or 3 should be used, where: -
1 = not vulnerable
2 = moderately vulnerable
3 =extremely vulnerable

A total vulnerability score (VT), which is the sum of the Environmental (VENV), economical (VEC), societal (VS) and critical facility (VCF) vulnerabilities, can then be calculated for each geographical area or specific study area, i.e. **VT = VENV + VEC + VS + VCF (+VP + VL, as applicable).** Vulnerability scoring will be based on the following: -

Vulnerability Score ≥ 10: Should the vulnerability score of a particular hazard event impacting on a community be higher than or equal to 10, that community is extremely vulnerable to that hazard.

Vulnerability Score 7 to 9: Should the vulnerability score of a particular hazard event impacting on a community is between or equal to 7 and 9, the community is moderately vulnerable.

Vulnerability Score < 7: Should the vulnerability score of a particular hazard event impacting on a community be less than 7, the vulnerability is considered to be low.

d. Relative Disaster Risk Priorities

This analysis focuses on calculating the relative risk priorities of a hazard event, using a simplified risk prioritisation model to calculate the relative priorities of the risk to which communities in a specific area are exposed:-

Relative Disaster Risk Priority Score = Hazard score X Vulnerability score / Manageability score.

Very High (intolerable) Risks (Relative Risk Priority ≥ 10) : Should the relative risk priority of a particular hazard event impacting on a community is higher than or equal to 10, that community faces a potentially **destructive** risk with a high probability of occurrence, for which they are **unprepared**. This combination equates to an **intolerably high risk** and may be a disaster in the making. For these **very high risks** **urgent risk reduction interventions are required!**

High Risk (Relative Risk Priority 4.1 to 9.9): If the relative risk priority of a particular hazard event impacting on a community is between 4 and 10, the risks to which these communities are exposed are potentially **destructive,** but the community is modestly prepared for the hazard event occurrence. This combination equates to a **high risk** and a combination of **risk reduction interventions** and **preparedness plans** must be initiated for these risks.

Tolerable / Moderate Risk (Relative Risk Priority 3.6 to 4): Relative risk priorities of a particular hazard event impacting on a community lower than 4 translate in very little risk for a largely prepared community. This combination equates to a **tolerable / moderate risk** and **preparedness plans** for these risks must be prepared.

Low Risk (Relative Risk Priority ≤ 3.5): Relative risk priorities of a particular hazard event impacting on a community lower than or equal to 3.5 translate in a **low risk** indicating a prepared community, but on-going preparedness is still required.

15.a. OVERLEAF ISTHE 20018/19 DISASTER RISK SUMMARY TABLE WITH THE RELEVANT HAZARD PRIORITIES.

ANNEXURE A

PRIORITY ANALYSIS

	Importance	**Urgency in terms of time**	**Growth potential**
1	Not important at all	No immediate action required-time is not essential	If nothing is done the situation will improve quickly
2	Negligible	Some small interventions are required within the next month	If nothing is done the situation will improve slowly
3	Important	Some small interventions are required within the next week	If nothing is done the situation will stay the same
4	Very important	Some integrated actions are required within the next 24 hours	If nothing is done the situation will deteriorate slowly
5	Critical important	Immediate drastic actions required	If nothing is done the situation will deteriorate quickly

- **Importance** is the relative significance given to it in terms of the community priorities and development plans or critical facility / vulnerable area.

- **Urgency** is how essential it is that something must be done immediately – the time factor or recovery time objective.

- **Growth potential** (escalation) is whether the situation will improve or deteriorate (will the effect of the situation become worse, stay the same or improve as time passes if nothing additional is done?

16. PRE-DISASTER RISK REDUCTION

Pre-disaster risk reduction is the primary objective of this Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan. All Midvaal Departments must pursue disaster-risk reduction and mitigation in all their activities. The pre-disaster risk reduction responsibilities of each Department of Midvaal are described under Section 8 of this Plan.

PREVENTION AND RISK REDUCTION STRATEGIES

Integrated strategies must be developed and implemented covering disaster prevention and disaster risk reduction through the following:

- Policies and legislation
- Economic development programmes / IDP
- Risk reduction studies and projects
- Training and community awareness
- Environmental Impact Assessments
- Hazard management
- Community education and capacity building

Each Department is responsible for the compilation of pro-active Departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster-risk reduction or elimination.

MITIGATION STRATEGIES

Integrated strategies must be developed and implemented covering disaster mitigation through the following:

- Insurance
- Recovery planning
- Early warning systems

DISASTER PREPAREDNESS

Integrated strategies must be developed and implemented covering disaster preparedness through the following:

- Recovery planning
- Emergency and contingency planning
- Drills, rehearsals and exercises
- Training and exercises
- Management and institutional arrangements
- Mutual Aid agreements
- Early warning systems

STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES (SOPs)

All Services / Entities are encouraged to formulate SOPs outlining the details of their own systems of operating / actions under especially emergency conditions and to create this awareness amongst its staff members. These will be linked to their Service's / Entity's Emergency Plans to expand on the specific operations required during a situation.

17. CLASSIFICATION OF DISASTERS

When an event of disaster proportions occurs or is threatening to occur in any part of Midvaal, the Municipal Manager will determine whether the event can be classified as a Local State of Disaster in terms of the Disaster Management Act,57 of 2002 and, if so, the Fire Department will immediately: -

- Initiate efforts to assess the magnitude and severity or potential magnitude and severity of the disaster;
- alert all the disaster risk management role-players in the municipal area that may be of assistance in the circumstances;
- initiate the implementation the disaster response plan or any contingency plans and emergency procedures that may be applicable under the circumstances of the threat; and
- inform the Sedibeng District Disaster Management Centre of the disaster and the initial assessment of the magnitude and severity or potential magnitude and severity of the disaster.

When informing the Director Sedibeng District Disaster Management, the ED Protection Services together with the MM may make recommendations regarding the classification of the disaster as may be appropriate in terms of Section 49 of the Disaster Management Act, 57 of 2002.

Irrespective of whether a local state of disaster has been declared or not, Midvaal is primarily responsible for the co-ordination and management of local disasters that occur in its area, in terms of Section 55 (1) of the Disaster Management Act, 57 of 2002.

Whether or not an emergency situation is determined to exist, municipal and other agencies may take such actions under this plan as may be necessary to protect the lives and property of the inhabitants of Midvaal.

Declaration of a local state of disaster:- In terms of Section 55 of the Disaster Management Act, 57 of 2002, in the event of a local disaster, Midvaal Council may, by notice in the Provincial Gazette ***declare a local state of disaster*** if existing legislation and contingency arrangements do not adequately provide for the municipality to deal effectively with the disaster, or if there are any other prevailing or special circumstances that warrant the declaration of a local state of disaster.

If a local state of disaster has been declared, Midvaal Council will take a Council Resolution or issue directions, or authorise the issue of directions to: -

• Assist and protect the public;
• Provide relief to the public;
• Prevent or combat disruption; or
• Deal with the destructive and other effects of the disaster.

18. POST DISASTER RESPONSE AND RECOVERY (DISASTER RESPONSE PLAN)

DISASTER RESPONSE CO-ORDINATION

The Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT) shall be convened in the (off-site) Disaster Operations Centre (DOC) when an emergency or disaster has occurred or is likely to occur, in accordance with the following parameters: -

- where the size or seriousness of the emergency seems beyond the capability of a Service, in the opinion of the most senior on-duty official of that Service, can be requested to activate the DCT,
- where the Head of such department believes it is necessary to activate the DCT in order to effectively manage an emergency which has occurred or is likely to occur, the DCT must convene in the DOC,
- the activating Service shall, via the Disaster Operations Centre's, contact the Management Protection Services who shall immediately arrange to notify the designated members of the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),
- the ED Community Services / Chief Fire Officer shall request the DCT members to meet at the DOC at the Fire Department or at any other viable alternate centre should the DOC not be available for whatever reason,

- the DCT will evaluate the situation and collaborate with the Head of the Sedibeng DRM Centre regarding the need for a declaration of a Local State of Disaster, as well as the continued activation or standing-down of the DCT.

All incidents will be managed by the Disaster Co-ordination Team in accordance with the principles and guidelines contained in Midvaal Multi-Disciplinary Incident Management Plan (MIMP).

DISASTER OPERATIONS CENTRE (DOC)

All the co-ordination and response integration activities by the various responding disciplines will be managed from the Fire Department (Disaster Operations Centre) (DOC) whose functions and responsibilities are described under DOC's Standard Operating Procedures.

REQUESTS FOR PROVINCIAL AND NATIONAL GOVERNMENT ASSISTANCE

Under certain circumstances, National (including SANDF), Provincial Department and even International assistance, may be requested from the Gauteng Provincial Disaster Management Centre or the National Disaster Management Centre. This will be in the instance where the ***emergency / disaster has been declared a provincial or national state of disaster***, when a ***joint disaster management co-ordination system will be put in place***.

RECOVERY AND REHABILITATION OPERATIONS

Post-disaster recovery and rehabilitation operations, which may include reconstruction or redevelopment efforts, will normally take on the nature of special programmes and projects.

The different departments will assist with the identification of needs and will facilitate recovery and rehabilitation operations. The function or department with the most direct involvement in the operation will take responsibility for project management and delivery. Project Teams convened for these purposes must report to the Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum on a regular basis (as determined by the MDMAF).

In this regard the causal factors of disasters must be addressed and disaster prevention through risk elimination should be pursued in the rehabilitation, reconstruction or redevelopment efforts in order to avoid a repetition of the disaster.

19. REVIEWING & UPDATING OF THE MUNICIPAL DISASTER RISK MANAGEMENT PLAN

Midvaal will regularly review and update the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan, as required by Section 53 of the Disaster Management Act, (57 of 2002).

oooOOOooo

MIDVAAL

FIRE & RESCUE SERVICE



DISASTER - RELIEF - POLICY

1 DRAFT 26 February 2018

A206

MIDVAAL

Fire and Rescue Service

Disaster - Relief - Policy

Preamble to the Disaster - Relief - Policy: Fire and Rescue Service.

The Midvaal Fire and Rescue Service recognised that relief measure do existed in other administrations which are covered in the Disaster Management Act-Act.57 of 2002. The relief measure captured in this policy is aimed for Midvaal community (residents) to ensure consistent and fair application of relief measures to all members. The Fire and Rescue Service is a complex Operation and it is therefore imperative that set standards and single policies and guidelines are provided for members of the service to ascribe to and prevent any inconsistencies in their operation.

AMENDMENTS / UPDATES

New amendments or updates will be added to the Amendments and Updates Listing below and it is the responsibility of the individual to regularly check the currency of their Plan copy.

Proposals for amendment or additions to the text of this Plan should be forwarded to:-
Chief Fire Officer,
Protection Services
Midvaal
P O Box 9
Meyerton
1960
Telephone: +27 (0)16 360 7500
Facsimile: +27 (0)16 362 2632

AMENDMENTS AND UPDATES LISTING

REV. NO.	DATE OF ISSUE	DETAILS OF PAGE(S) AMENDED OR REPLACED	
0	2016	1st draft of the Relief Policy	
1	2018	Amendments on p1, paragraph 1. p6 Introduction, p10 part 3, p12 part 4, p15 Table 1, p28 contact list	
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			

PROPERTY

This document and its supporting appendices and annexures encompass the Midvaal Relief Policy for Disaster response, declaration, Classification and funding in terms of the Disaster Management Act, (Act no 57 of 2002) and the amendment Act 16 of 2015 as well as the Provincial Disaster Management Booklet.

Applicability

The draft policy for disaster response, declaration, classification and funding is applicable to the Midvaal Local Municipality who are responsible for the coordination and management of disasters in its area of jurisdiction.

Definitions:

"**Department** "means the department in council which is revered to;
"**Disaster**" means a progressive or sudden, widespread or localised, natural or human-caused occurrence which –
(a) causes or threatens to cause –
(i) death, injury or disease –
(ii) damage to property, infrastructure or the environment; or
(iii) disruption of the life of a community, and (b) is of the magnitude that exceeds the ability of those affected by the disaster to cope with its effects using only their own resources;
"**Disaster Management**" means a continuous and integrated multi-sectorial, multi-disciplinary process of planning and implementation of measures aimed at -
(a) Preventing or reducing the risk of disasters;
(b) Mitigating the severity or consequences of disasters
(c) Emergency preparedness
(d) A rapid and effective response to disasters; and
(e) Post-disaster recovery and rehabilitation;
"**integrated development plan**" in relation to the municipality, means a plan envisaged in section 25 of the Local government: Municipal Systems Act 2002(Act No. 32 of 2002)
"**Local disaster**" means a disaster classified as a local disaster in terms of section 23;
"**Local municipality**" means a municipality that shares municipal executive and legislative authority in its area with a district municipality within those areas it falls, and which is described in section 155 (1) of the constitution as a category B municipality
"**Mitigation**" in reaction to a disaster, means measures aimed at reducing the impact or effects of a disaster;"
"**Municipal Legislation**" means municipal by-laws;
"**prevention**" in relation to a disaster, means measures aimed at stopping a disaster from occurring or preventing an occurrence from becoming a disaster;

"**response**" in relation to a disaster, means measures taken during or immediately after a disaster in order to bring relief to people and communities affected by the disaster;
"MDMC" Municipal Disaster Management Centre
"PDMC" Provincial Disaster Management Centre
"NDMC" National Disaster Management Centre
"DCT" Disaster Coordination Team
"DisRes" Disaster Risk Management Resources Database
"DMC" Disaster Management Centre

DRAFT

TABLE OF CONTENTS:

PART 1 **6**

1. Introduction
2. Objective and Purpose of the Policy

PART 2 **7**

3. Disaster Response and Relief
   - ✓ a) The implementation of the disaster response plan
   - ✓ b) Disaster assessment
   - ✓ c) Reporting
   - ✓ d) Coordination and funding
   - ✓ e) Powers and duties of Midvaal municipal council during disaster response

PART 3 **8**

4. Disaster Declaration
   - ✓ f) Principles underpinning the declaration of a state of disaster
   - ✓ g) Powers and duties of a MDMC in the declaration of a state of disaster
   - ✓ h) Powers and duties of Midvaal municipal council

5. Disaster Response and Relief measures

PART 4

12

6. Disaster relief grant

PART 5 **14**

7 Roles and Responsibilities of Stakeholders during disaster response
   - ✓ Contact details for Disaster Response Stakeholders
   - ✓ Contact List of Municipal Disaster Centres in Gauteng
   - ✓ Contact List of Midvaal Local Municipal MMC and Head of Departments

DRAFT

PART 1
INTRODUCTION

1. INTRODUCTION

Midvaal is the best Local Municipality in Gauteng and forms part of the Sedibeng District. This local municipality strife to accomplish its goals in a time with economic challenges. In a growing population the risks are also growing in the area, and this put pressure on our infrastructure and service delivery.

There are a wide variety of natural and human-induced hazards which effects most of the municipal area of jurisdiction, these hazards are: drought, floods, fires, earth trimmers, earthquakes, and sinkholes, where the most frequently occurring hazards are floods and severe storms - which could potentially result in a disaster.

This draft policy will work hand in hand with the Disaster Management Act, (Act 57 of 2002) which makes provision for an integrated and co-ordinated system that focuses on rapid and effective response to disasters and post disaster recovery and rehabilitation.

The National Disaster Management Policy Framework of 2005 also outlines the key requirements that will ensure that planning for disaster, response as well as rehabilitation and reconstruction, and will achieves the following objectives;

1. to implement immediate integrated and appropriate response and relief measures when significant events or disasters occur and
2. implement all rehabilitation and reconstruction strategies following a disaster in an integrated and development manner.

Disaster relief and rehabilitation is the provision of immediate shelter, life support and human needs to persons affected by, or responding to a disaster. Disaster relief activities are undertaken during disaster operations to assist the affected families to recover from the impact of disasters.

This policy will guide Midvaal personnel to effective and timely respond to disasters in its area and will guide on the process of response, declaration and funding. It will further provides appropriate guidelines for coordination and response to all types of disasters or emergencies.

DRAFT

PART 2
DISASTER RESPONSE AND RELIEF

Before a disaster are declared and classified the following need to be kept in mind:

a) The implementation of the disaster response plan:

The disaster management plan must;

i) Anticipate the type of disasters that are likely to occur in the municipal area and their possible effects;
ii) Facilitate maximum emergency preparedness
iii) Incorporate plans, emergency procedures and response strategies (Standing Operating Procedures) outlining arrangements for dealing with disasters.
iv) The municipality must ensure that these plans are activated in the event of a disaster.

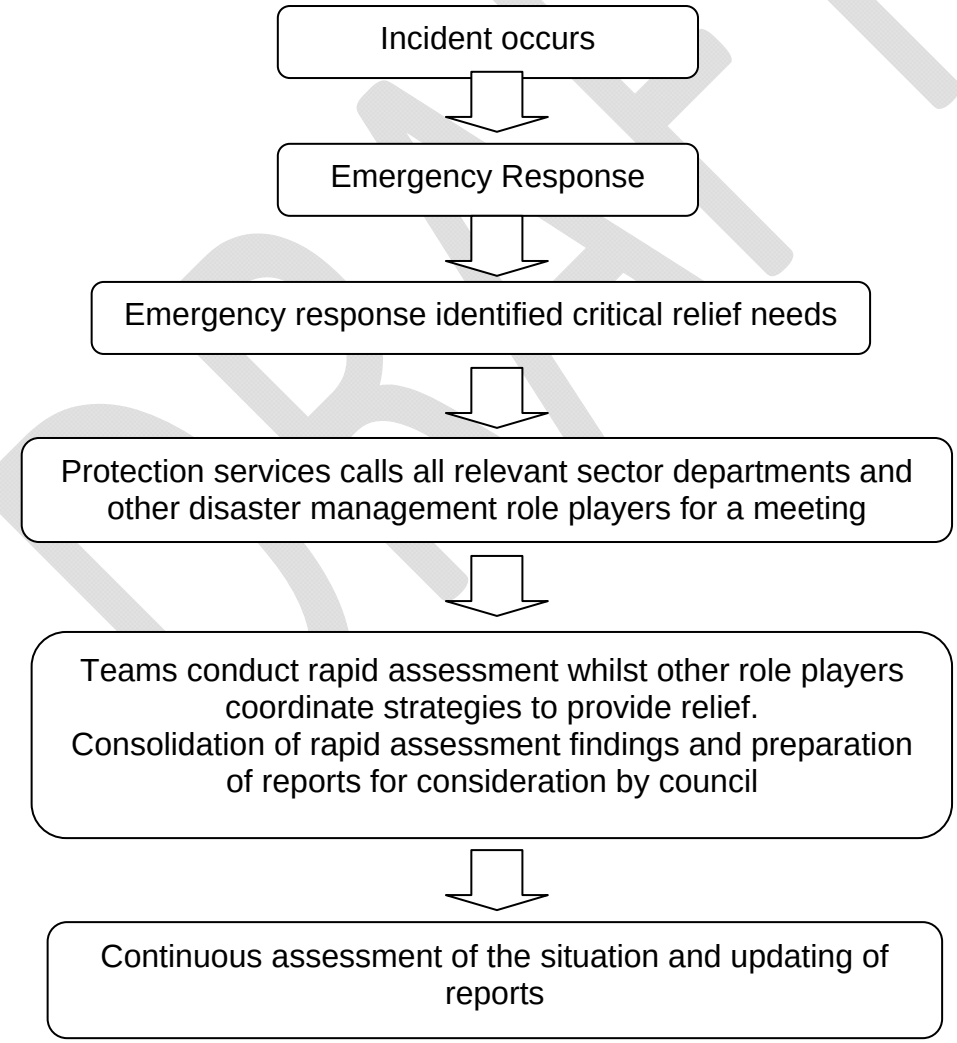


Diagram 1: illustrate how a municipality must coordinate disaster relief:

b) Disaster Assessment

Protection Services (Fire) will conduct the following assessment after occurrence:

i) Rapid assessment
ii) Detailed assessment
iii) Cost assessment

c) Reporting

i) A MDMC (In Midvaal situation the Fire Department control room and Operational Management) must notify the PMDC of any disastrous events in its area within an hour of the occurrence.

ii) A MDMC must provide a rapid assessment report to the PMDC and the NDMC on the magnitude and severity or potential magnitude and severity of the disaster within 3 days after occurrence.

iii) A MDMC has a responsibility to alert disaster management role players in the area that may be of assistance in disaster response circumstances.

iv) The rapid assessment report must at least contain the following:

- Description of the occurrence
- Details of the area affected including ward details
- Number of people and households affected
- Number of people injured, displaced, missing and fatalities
- Type, quantity, extent etc of the infrastructure damaged
- Emergency intervention provided
- A high level immediate plan of action

v) A MDMC must conduct a detailed damage assessment to determine medium-long term interventions that must be put in place to restore normality in the effected community.

vi) A MDMC must submit to the PDMC and NDMC a report on the detailed damage assessment that has been conducted within 14 days after the occurrence.

vii) This report must contain at least the following:

- Overview of the current situation in the affected areas
- Confirm the number of people and households affected
- Confirmed the number of people injured, displaced, missing and fatalities
- Confirmed details on infrastructure damage including geo-referencing
- Estimated cost of damaged infrastructure
- Relief assistance provided

viii) A MDMC must submit a detailed incident report to the PDMC and the NDMC within a month after the occurrence.

ix) A MDMC must at the same time that a detailed incident report is submitted to the PMDC and the NDMC, submit a copy of the detailed incident report to its municipal council.

x) The incident report must at least contain the following:

- Indication whether early warnings were received
- Contingency planning arrangements and whether this was implemented

DRAFT

- Description of the joint operations structure that were established and how they functioned.
- The extent of involvement by relevant sector departments.
- Involvement of civil society and the private sector.
- Indication of whether any applicable Memorandums of Understanding (MOU) with other stakeholders were activated.
- Whether a state of local disaster was declared by council.
- Prevention and mitigation measures to reduce the risk, and
- Disaster risk reduction plans to deal with future occurrences.

xi) All assessment and incident reports submitted to the PDMC and the NDMC must be duly signed by the Accounting Officer of the municipality.

xii) The PDMC may prescribe the format that must be used for submission of incident reports.

d) Coordination and funding

xiii) Midvaal municipality must fund disaster response and relief activities through various means at its disposal including reprioritisation of municipal budget and donations from external stakeholders

xiv) The municipality must ensure that coordination of funding is done in line with relevant legislation such as the Municipal Management Financial Act, (Act No.56 of 2003).

e) Powers and duties of a municipal council during disaster response

1. Midvaal municipal council has the power to –
   a) Approve Policies on how the municipality will respond to disasters
   b) Make municipal by-laws concerning disaster response

2.Midvaal municipal council has the duty to -
   a) Avail the necessary resources for the purpose of responding to a disaster
   b) Consider the reports submitted on disaster occurrences by the MDMC.

DRAFT

f) Principles underpinning the declaration of a state of disaster

Disaster declaration at local and provincial spheres is based on the following principles:

1. Other legislation cannot be used to deal with the occurrence
2. The community involved is unable to cope with the occurrence
3. The municipal council has adequate resources to deal with the occurrence
4. The affected sector departments within the affected area have inadequate resources to deal with the occurrence
5. The effects of the occurrence are such that effective response and relief require specialised intervention
6. Declaration of a state of disaster is a mechanism that municipalities can use to invoke extra – ordinary measures to deal with effects of a disaster
7. Only a municipal council and a Premier may declare a state of disaster

g) Powers and duties of a MDMC in the declaration of a state of disaster

1. A MDMC must advise the municipal council on its determination of an occurrence
2. A MDMC is responsible for performing the required administrative work to facilitate the declaration of a state of disaster by the municipal council.
3. Facilitate the publication of the declaration in provincial gazette
4. Implement all resolutions of the municipal council in relation to the declaration

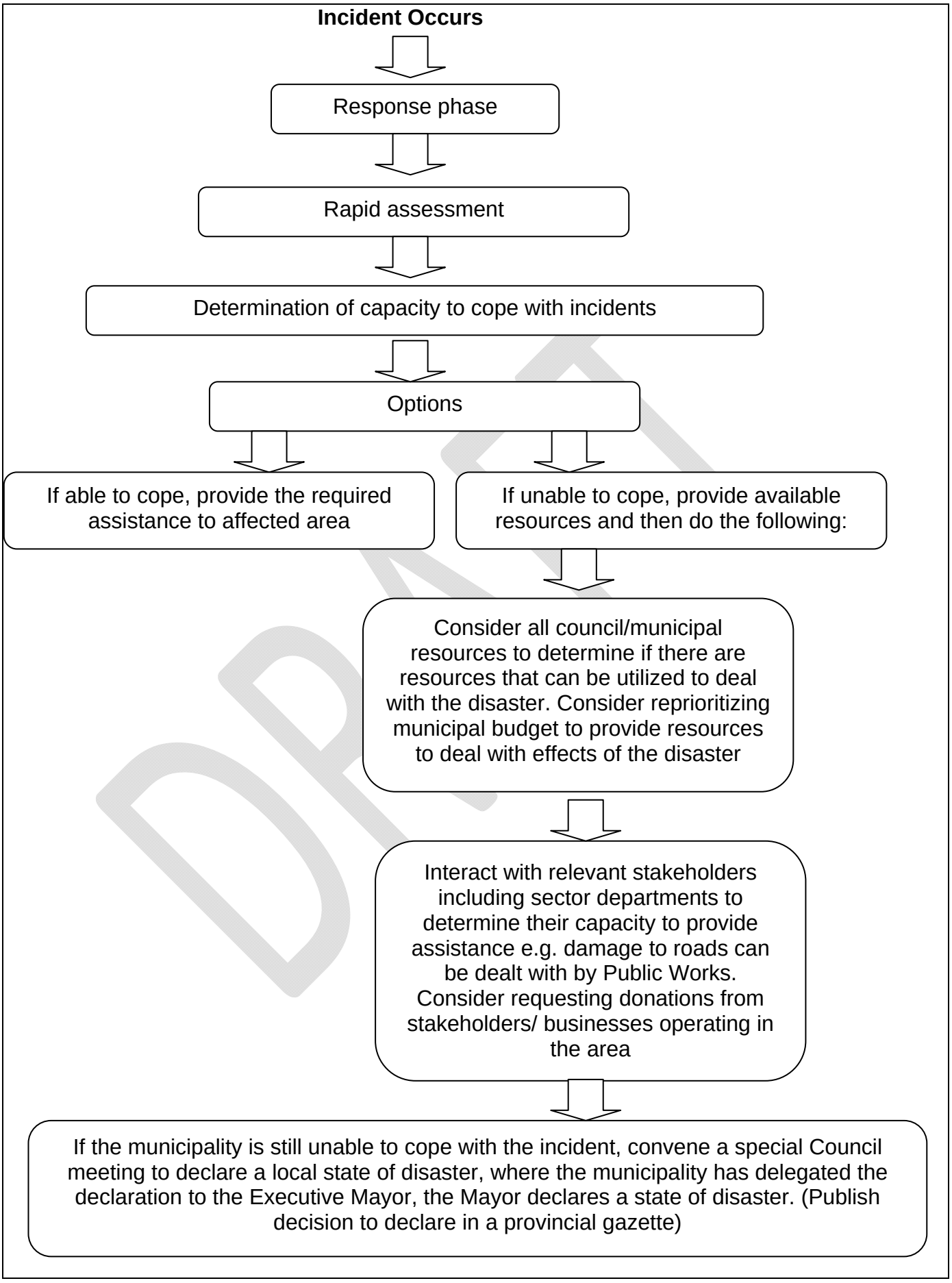
h) Powers and duties of Midvaal municipal council

Midvaal municipal council has the responsibility to declare a local state of disaster in its area through a council resolution

The following municipal councils have the primary responsibility to coordinate and manage a local state and may declare a local state of disaster.

a) A metropolitan or district municipal council and
b) A local municipal council if it has an agreement with the district municipality to coordinate and manage a local state of disaster in terms of section 54(2) of the Act. This agreement must be for the coordination and management of one occurrence or may be coordination and management of occurrences whenever they occur and must be in the form of a council resolution taken by both councils.

Steps to follow when declaring a local state of disaster:


Incident Occurs
Response phase
Rapid assessment
Determination of capacity to cope with incidents
Options
If able to cope, provide the required assistance to affected area
If unable to cope, provide available resources and then do the following:
Consider all council/municipal resources to determine if there are resources that can be utilized to deal with the disaster. Consider reprioritizing municipal budget to provide resources to deal with effects of the disaster
Interact with relevant stakeholders including sector departments to determine their capacity to provide assistance e.g. damage to roads can be dealt with by Public Works. Consider requesting donations from stakeholders/ businesses operating in the area
If the municipality is still unable to cope with the incident, convene a special Council meeting to declare a local state of disaster, where the municipality has delegated the declaration to the Executive Mayor, the Mayor declares a state of disaster. (Publish decision to declare in a provincial gazette)

PART 4
DISASTER RELIEF GRANT

Disaster relief and rehabilitation is the provision of immediate shelter, life support and human needs to persons affected by, or responding to a disaster and are undertaken during disaster operations.

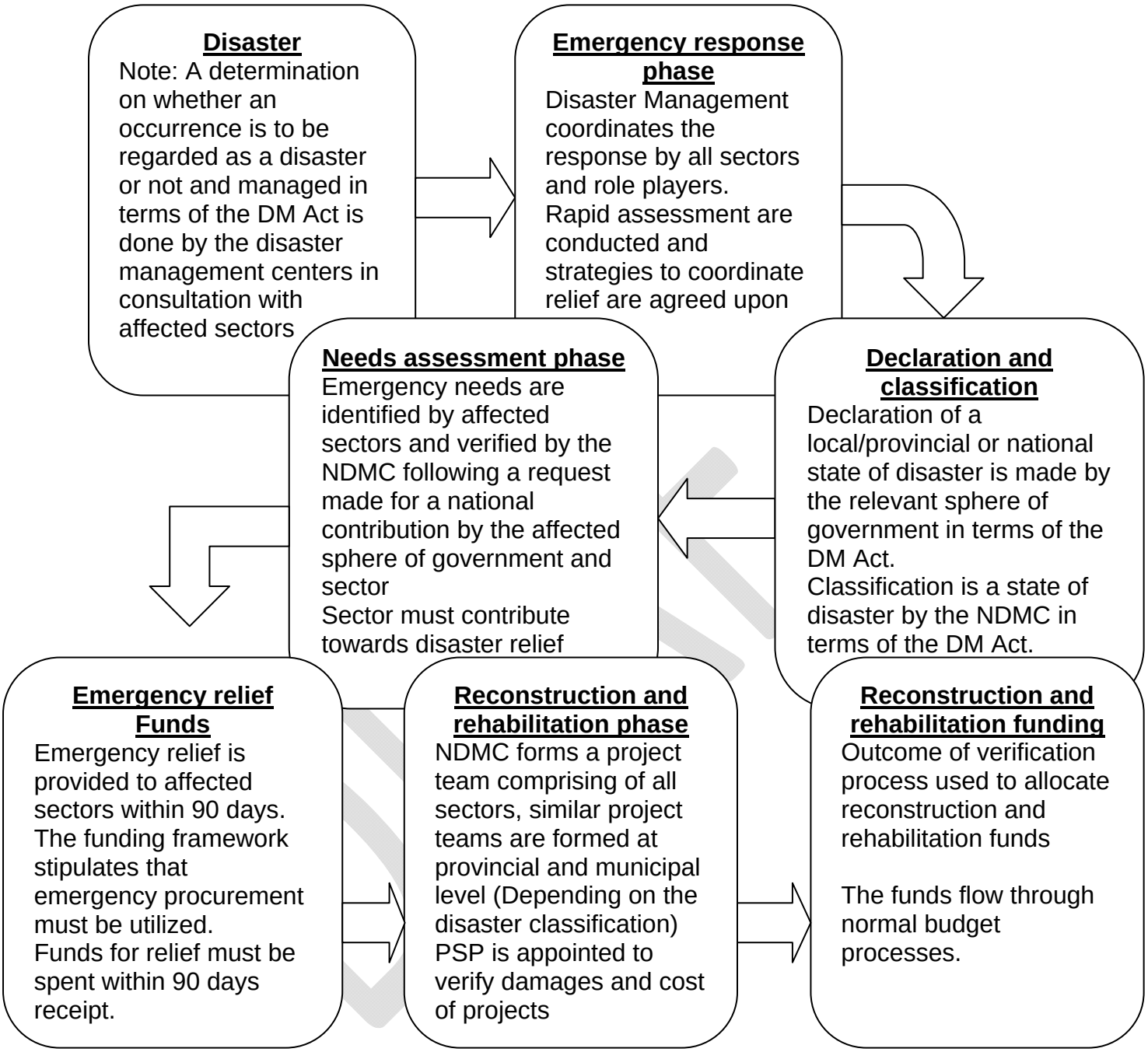
Disaster recovery is the coordinated process of supporting affected communities in the reconstruction of the physical infrastructure, restoration of the economy and of the environment, and support the emotional, social and physical wellbeing of those affected.

Clear transition arrangements from response and recovery are necessary. The scope of disaster recovery operations is to be identified and clearly articulated. The application of a holistic approach to relief and recovery requires the clear identification of the role and responsibilities of all stakeholders involved in the process.

Funds are required to effectively support response and recovery efforts such as the provision of rescue services, basic humanitarian services and critical infrastructure repair. Section 56 of the Disaster Management Act, (57 of 2002) states that when a disaster occurs provincial and local organs of state may financially contribute to response efforts and post- disaster recovery and rehabilitation. Section 16 of the Public Financial Management Act, (Act no 26 of 1999) also provides for the use of funds in emergency situations as well as the National Disaster Framework of 2002 which describe a percent of the budget or any aspect of a budget of provincial organ of state or municipal organ of state.

DRAFT

Diagram 2 depicts the process of applying for disaster grants following an occurrence in a municipality or a province.



PART 5
ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF STAKEHOLDERS DURING DISASTER RESPONSE

Disaster response includes the activities taken in anticipation of, during and immediately after an event to ensure that its effects are minimized. The timely, integrated and coordinated approach requires clear definition or roles and responsibilities of those involved in response activities and their understanding of the functions that contribute to effective response. In this regard, municipalities would have to be supported by appropriate expertise and resources from the provincial and national government.

When a significant event or disaster occurs or is threatening to occur, it is imperative that there should be no confusion as to roles and responsibilities and procedures to be followed. When coordinating assistance, it must be born in mind that the primary responsibility for coordinating response to specific events must be allocated to a specific organ of state and the DMC has the responsibility to coordinate disaster relief efforts in its area of jurisdiction.

The National Disaster Framework of 2015 stipulates that the responsibility for coordinating response to specific known rapid and slow-onset significant events and disaster must be allocated to a specific organ of state. Disaster Management Plans, Contingency or operational plans as well as guidelines of various stakeholders that are involved during response must be considered and implemented accordingly. Mechanisms for the activation and mobilisation of additional resources for response and recovery measures must be clearly set out in the plans.

The tables below present the roles and responsibilities of various departments in the municipality.

DRAFT

TABLE 1:

AGENCY	Roles & Responsibilities
Municipal Manager	• When deemed necessary, consider the declaration of a local state of disaster as per the Disaster Management Act, 57 of 2002, • Liaise with provincial officials and national officials, • Co-ordinate response with CBO'S and NGO'S, • Authorize area evacuation / re-entry when area is safe, • After consultation with the DCT authorise area evacuation / re-entry, • Identify persons/organisations to receive recognition for contributions to the emergency response, • Establish and maintain required telecommunications links with all the relevant departments and entities, • Identify available resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the DCT, • Establish and maintain a resources database • Ensure effective media liaison and public early-warning, • Provide situation reports to all internal and external role-players on a regular basis. Report, liaise and consult with councillors and provincial and national government departments, • Report on emergency impact and response to the Executive Mayor, • Report on emergency impact and response to the councillor(s) for the affected area(s), • Report on emergency impact and response to the remaining Councillors, • Notify next-of-kin when an employee is injured, missing or killed during any emergency situation, • Authorize any extraordinary expenditures (access to disaster funding and / or any alternative emergency funding sources), • Identify persons / organisations to receive recognition for contributions made to emergency response.
IDP and Organisational Performance Management Services	Ensure that the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan forms an integral part of the IDP, • Ensure that hazard identification, risk assessment and that risk prevention and/or risk reduction / mitigation principles are applied for *all* development projects to be undertaken.
Executive Director Corporate Services / Legal services	Monitoring compliance with relevant legislation, regulations, licenses and by-laws, • Documenting information for potential legal actions, • Documenting information for potential compensation claims, • Identifying information to be documented for inquests or investigations under applicable laws.

PRO & Marketing: Chief Complaint Officer	Customer relations enquiries of Midvaal, • Operation of a Call Centre for non-urgent matters & assistance with emergency information dissemination, as required.
Head of Records	Providing administrative support including printing and courier services for distribution of disaster related printed material to depots and decentralised offices, • Provision of registry and cell phone administration services.
Executive Director Finance	Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Enterprise Risk Management • Documenting information for potential municipal insurance claims, • Managing donations for emergency response, • Facilitating emergency procurement, • Initiating and facilitating efforts to make funds available for pro-active and re-active disaster management within the municipal area, • Supplying financial resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database
Executive Director (Human Resource) Personnel Services	Providing information to MLM staff and their families regarding aspects of any emergency or disaster, • Documenting information for remuneration of municipal employees involved in emergency response, • Reporting to the Health and Safety Committees on the emergency responses undertaken in Midvaal, • Documenting potential Occupational Health and Safety issues, • Documenting information for potential municipal labour relations issues. • **Occupational Health and Safety Officer** preparation in terms of the emergency evacuation plans which are co-ordinated from his / her office.
Executive Director Community Services / Sports recreation and parks officer	Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Emergency / contingency planning for all Council facilities used for mass events,

	• Make available facilities for emergency assembly and / or shelter of persons displaced by emergencies or disasters, • Plan and assist with the management of emergency shelter, evacuation assembly points and mass care facilities for persons displaced by emergencies or disasters, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database
Parks	Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations, • Assist with the removal of vegetation proving to be hazardous, both pro-actively and re-actively after any Incident, • Supplying any specific resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database
Health	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Steps to eliminate disaster risks presented by communicable diseases, • Isolate person(s) to decrease or eliminate disaster risk presented by a communicable disease, • Protect the health and safety of emergency responders, • Monitor large groups of people for contamination and / or health effects, • Preventative issues around communicable diseases for disrupted populations (may be general population or limited to vulnerable populations and essential service operators), • Immunize large groups of people, • Assist with the management of emergency shelter, evacuation assembly points and mass care facilities for persons displaced by emergencies or disasters, • Seize and dispose of food that poses a health hazard, • Monitor the environment (air, water, and ecosystem)

DRAFT

	for contamination, • Identify victims, responders or affected persons who may require medical follow-up and / or who may require psychosocial support and to facilitate this support which may be provided by the appropriate governmental and non-Governmental agencies as applicable, • Identify persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings regarding health matters, Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by Midvaal Health representative(s) on the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), if convened, • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database • Liaise with the PG: Gauteng Health Department who are responsible for the provision of curative and operative interventions during any major incident regarding the: - - care for evacuees and victims the provision of curative health care in remarks of communicable diseases for disrupted populations (may be general population or limited to vulnerable populations and essential service operators).
Chief Environmental Health Officer	Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings, • Plan and ensure that risk reduction and disaster mitigation principles are adhered to in the recovery and redevelopment phases, • Ensure that risk reduction and mitigation principles are applied as part of the environmental input into all development projects, • Include the reduction of natural disasters as an element in environmental education programmes, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database • Identify possible environmental disasters, • Identification of land for mass burials if required
Social Development co-ordinator	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk

DRAFT

	reduction or elimination, including social development plans, • Compilation of re-active departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database
Director Solid Waste Management	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Disposing of non-hazardous waste and refuse when and where required, • Advising and providing facilities for the disposal of hazardous waste, • Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database
Executive Director Development and Planning	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Include the reduction of natural disasters as an element in environmental education programmes, • Identify possible environmental disasters, • Compilation of pro-active environmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support risk reduction or elimination, • Monitoring the environment (ground, air, water and the ecosystem) for contamination, • Ensure linkages between this plan and infrastructure development framework, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database

DRAFT

Director Town Planning & GIS	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Rendering support and advice throughout all phases of Disaster Risk Management planning activities, • Compiling, exercising and carrying out adequate disaster recovery procedures for IT infrastructure and information management, • Establishing and maintaining required informatics links to maintain the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database • Supplying IT Infrastructure and assets to host and maintain DisRes, integrated GIS and any other IT systems which can assist in Disaster Risk Management,
Director Urban Planning	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination through the long term spatial development framework to ensure integrated, proactive and decisive decision making on major infrastructure, investment, development and settlement issues, including directives for local area integrated human settlement planning and the provision of Urban Design inputs for corporate strategic programmes to improve settlement planning, • Ensure that risk reduction and mitigation principles are applied as part of the environmental input into all development projects, including the identification of possible environmental disasters, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings, • Plan and ensure that risk reduction and disaster mitigation principles are adhered to in the recovery and redevelopment phases, • include the reduction of natural disasters as an element in environmental education programmes, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).
Chief Building and Land	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk

DRAFT

use Officer	Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination through the planning and building development initiatives being undertaken under the guidance of the department, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations, especially where buildings and other structures have been affected by the Incident, • Identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Plan and ensure that risk reduction and disaster mitigation principles are adhered to in the recovery and redevelopment phases, • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).
Deputy Director Housing	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Identify and make available alternative land and housing / shelter for persons displaced by an emergency or disaster, • Plan and assist with the management of emergency shelter, evacuation assembly points and mass care facilities for persons displaced by emergencies or disasters, • Ensure that all housing and servicing projects promote disaster risk reduction, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes)
Public Safety	• Ensure that Disaster Risk Management Plans are compiled and maintained in his/her Directorate, • Establish and ensure the effective functioning of the Disaster Risk Management Advisory Forum, • When necessary and assisted by the Chief Fire Officer and submit reports containing recommendations for changes to the Municipal Disaster Risk Management Plan to Council.
Chief Fire Officer Fire and Rescue Services	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination,

DRAFT

	• Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations, • Preventing the outbreak or spread of fires, • Fighting or extinguishing fires, • Protecting life and property from fire or other threatening danger, • Rescuing of life or property from fire or other danger, • Evacuating designated area(s) threatened by fire of both persons and livestock, • Assist and manage hazardous material decontamination facilities and operations • co-ordinating response and mutual aid agreements with adjacent District Councils in Sedibeng District, • protecting the health and safety of emergency responders, • maintaining a central registry of evacuees, • identifying persons who may require long term care and accommodation, • identifying target audiences for post-emergency communications, • ensuring acceptable level of emergency services for Midvaal outside of the emergency area(s), • identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports and debriefings, • supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes)
Divisional Officer Operations & Communications	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Providing information to persons at emergency facilities (e.g. assembly points / evacuation centres / mass care facilities), • Providing information to persons at special incident-related meetings, • Providing information to Midvaal employees and their families who are affected by emergencies / disasters, • Arranging site visits for persons affected by the emergency, e.g. families of deceased persons, • Arranging anniversary events of disasters for affected persons in support of efforts to facilitate psychosocial coping mechanisms, • Regularly updating on emergency situation to councillors, • Supporting the Fire Department Control Room in communicating status reports and public safety notices, • Supporting the Fire Department in risk-reducing

DRAFT

	public education and awareness programmes • Provide and support the DRMC with a 24-hour communication facility for the notification of Major Incidents and any subsequent communication needs, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Fire Department Control Room Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).
Chief Traffic Services	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management plans to ensure service continuation during emergency/disaster situations, • Co-ordinating Incident response with the South African Police Service and all the other responding Emergency and Essential Services, • Assist the police with the controlling and dispersing crowds on the roadways, • Support the evacuation of designated area(s) which are threatened by any emergency of both persons and livestock, • Managing and controlling traffic in and around emergency area(s), on evacuation routes and on emergency vehicles' access and egress routes, • Identifying persons / organisations to contribute to post-emergency reports / debriefings, • Protecting essential service facilities and infrastructure, as required, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the DRMC's Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).
Executive Director Engineering Transport Roads and Major Projects / Director Civil Services	• Compilation of pro-active Departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive Departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Taking appropriate measures to accommodate the transport network in the most expedient manner under the prevailing circumstances, • Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT),

DRAFT

	• Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the DRMC's Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).
SNR. Engineering Technician: Roads and Storm water	• Compilation of pro-active Departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive Departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Confining and containing flood water where possible, • Providing technical advice in preventing or reducing the effects of flooding and storm-damage, • Liaison with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry as required, • Removing debris and other obstacles from transportation routes and other sites as required, • Repairing any damaged or dysfunctional road infrastructure to restore optimal functioning of the transport network in the shortest possible time, • Taking appropriate measures to accommodate traffic on the transport network in the most expedient manner under the prevailing circumstances, • Liaison with the Provincial Roads Department and National Roads Agency as required, • Assist and advise on Hazmat clean-up and decontamination of infrastructure and the environment, • Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).
Water and Purification	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Co-ordinating response with businesses and industries affected by the emergency, • Controlling consumption of public water supply, • Providing alternate water supplies (potable, industrial and for fire-fighting), • Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as he result of an emergency or disaster, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination

DRAFT

	Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).
Fleet and coordination: Mechanical Workshop	• Compilation of pro-active Departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive Departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Taking appropriate measures to accommodate traffic on the transport network in the most expedient manner under the prevailing circumstances, • Liaison with the Provincial Transport Department and National Transport Department as required, • Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes). • Fleet & Workshop Management to ensure that:- • Appropriate staff have been placed on standby to cater for such occasions (supervisors, drivers, operators and laborers), • Appropriate vehicles are available for timeous response, • Permits for low bed trailers, etc. are valid for such emergency response, • Supplementary resources are available from private sector, • Procedural guide and lists of internal and external contacts are available for standby teams, • Call out procedures and contacts details are lodged with HOD and updated weekly.
Director : Electrical Services	• Compilation of pro-active departmental Disaster Risk Management programmes to support disaster risk reduction or elimination, • Compilation of reactive departmental Disaster Risk Management Plans to ensure service continuation during emergency / disaster situations, • Co-ordinating response with businesses and industries affected by the emergency, • Co-ordinating response with national and provincial Public Works departments, • Co-ordinating response with Eskom regarding electricity supply to the City, • Allocating available electricity,

DRAFT

	• Planning alternate electrical supply, • Arranging for an alternate telephone or communication service, if required, • Controlling telecommunications system load, • Identifying buildings which are electrically unsafe, • Identifying and prioritising essential services that may require restoration as the result of an emergency or disaster, • Supplying resources for Disaster Risk Management purposes as requested by the Disaster Co-ordination Team (DCT), • Establishing and maintaining a resources database that is integrated with the Disaster Risk Management Resources Database (DisRes).

CONTACT DETAILS FOR DISASTER RESPONSE STAKEHOLDERS

NAME	CONTACT DETAILS	
DR. Bongani Elias Sithole: Head PDMC	Elias.sithole@gauteng.gov.za	072 933 8977
Lindokuhle Ngubane: Director: Disaster Management	Lindokuhle.ngubane@gauteng.gov.za	083 375 8523
Roland Hendricks: Director Fire and Rescue Services	Roland.hendricks@gauteng.gov.za	079 524 0712
Vonroy De Beer: Deputy Director: Disaster Management	Vonroy.debeer@gauteng.gov.za	071 472 7093
Bongeka Mpinke: assistant Director: Disaster Management	Bongeka.mpinke@gauteng.gov.za	074 761 8618

DRAFT

CONTACT LIST OF MUNICIPAL DISASTER CENTRES IN GAUTENG PROVINCE

City of Johannesburg	Mr. Tshepo Mothlale	Head of Centre	011 286 6009 072 436 6870	tshepomo@joburg,org.za	140 linden road corner Greyston & Linden Sandton
City of Ekurhuleni	Mr. Bafana Mazibuko: Acting Head of Centre	Head of Centre	011 871 7911 072 584 6952	Anthony.kesten@ekurhuleni.gov.za	3 Hawley road Bedfordview
Wetsrand District Municipality	Mr. Peter Mokoto	Head of Centre	011 411 5210 083 289 2038	pmokoto@wrdm.gov.za	
Tswane Metropolitan Municipality	Mr. Sam Nkosi	Head of Centre	073 888 1297	samn@tswane.gov.za	Pieter Delport Sentrum Pretoria 0002
Sedibeng District Municipality	Mr. Sam Thlapolosa	Head of Centre	082 901 4310	samt@sedibeng.gov.za	Corner of Beaconsfield Ave. Vereeniging 1930

NAME	**CONTACT DETAILS**	
City of Johannesburg	10177 /112 cell	011 375 5911
City of Tswane	10177 / 112 cell	012 310 6300 / 6400
Ekurhuleni	10177 / 112 cell	011 458 0911
West Rand District	10177 / 112 cell	011 951 3000 /3030
	Merafong	018 788 9500 018 786 2223 /4 Carltonville 018 771 6023 Fochville
	Mogale City	011 951 2000 /086 166 4253
	Randfontein	011 951 3000
Sedibeng District	10177 /112 cell	016 450 3000
	Emfuleni	016 950 5000
	Lesedi	016 340 4300
	Midvaal	016 360 7500

DRAFT

Contact list of Midvaal Local MMC and Head of Departments.

Name	Status	Department	Contact Number	
Cllr Bongani Baloyi	Executive Mayor	Mayoral Office	072 279 8458 / 076 941 7588	
Cllr F Peters	(Speaker)		076 609 2886 /083 521 3990 (Freddie)	
Cllr WF de Agrella	(Ward 1)		082 452 9548 (Wayne)	
Cllr SMA Janse van Rensburg	(Ward 2		082 212 4520 (Salomé)	
Cllr MS Schoeman	Ward 3		073 827 8660 (Marie)	
Cllr PJ Teixira	Ward 4	MMC Engineering	076 809 9150 (Peter)	
Cllr PD Pretorius	Ward 5)		082 927 7219 (Patricia)	
(Patricia)	Ward 6	MMC Finance	082 927 7219 (Johannes)	
Cllr Peter Teixira	Ward 7	MMC Engineering	076 809 9150 (Peter)	
Cllr MM Ndebele	Ward 8		078 532 3904 (Mike)	
Cllr HP Oosthuysen	Ward 9	MMC Community Services	072 170 8681 (Hennie)	
Cllr MM Mahlangu	Ward 10		063 465 8383 (Martha)	
Cllr B Hlengwa	Ward 11)		079 982 7589 (Bekinkosi)	
Cllr MC Kruger	Ward 12)		083 585 6928 (Mariana)	
Cllr S Muirhead	Ward 13		084 297 6190 (Sue)	
Cllr PC Pretorius	Ward 14	Chief Whip	082 696 9007 (Phil)	
Cllr L Parsonson	Ward 15		083 969 1430 (Lynda)	
Cllr A Tsukudu		MMC Corporate Services	082 718 0337 (Amelia)	
Cllr HP Oosthuysen		MMC Community Services	072 170 8681 (Hennie)	
Albert De Klerk	Municipal Manager		082 771 8961	
Thom Peeters	DMM		082 859 0486	

DRAFT

Nataasha Ameer van Wyk	Director Legal		083 894 0284	
Steph Coetzee	Executive Director	Engineering	082 572 0282	
Vacant	Executive Director	Development & Planning	079 507 3554	
Annette van Schalkwyk	Executive Director	Finance	082 497 2912	
Solly Mosidi	Executive Director	Community Services	082 894 2827	
Eugene Lensley	Head Public Safety	Community Services	082 064 1847	

REFERENCES

6.1 Disaster Management Act, Act 57 of 2002
6.2 Disaster Response Booklet
6.3 Midvaal Disaster Management Plan

DRAFT

Midvaal Local Municipality
Contact Details
PO Box 9, Meyerton, 1960
Tel: 016-360-7400
Fax: 016-360-7519
www.midvaal.gov.za

CONTINGENCY

PLAN

FLOODS

2018

INDEX CONTINGENCY PLAN

1. PURPOSE OF PLAN PAGE 3
2. PREFACE PAGE 3
3. MIDVAAL FIRE ACTION PLAN PAGE 4-7
4. LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS PAGE 7
5. ROLE PALYERS IN THIS PLAN PAGE 8-9
6. EMERGENCY UNFOLDING ACTION PLAN PAGE 8-9
7. PREVENTATIVE MEASURES PAGE 10-11
8. CONCLUSION PAGE 11

1) PURPOSE OF THE PLAN

The purpose of this plan is to ensure the availability of an action plan that would assist in curbing the consequences that may be caused by floods due to unexpected rainy festive season December 2014 to February 2015 as revealed by Weather forecast from time to time and leading to disasters.

2) PREFACE

The recent heavy rains have caused havoc in Gauteng area, have necessitated an alert to all Municipalities who are prone to disasters of that kind, to put action plans in place that would address the consequences created by such weather conditions. Sedibeng district Municipality is one of those prone to disasters caused by floods, according to the recent Risk Assessment completed. There are some areas within the Midvaal that are lying on low and along flood lines which may be flooded due to heavy continuous rains. These areas include:

AREA	**RISK LEVEL (**low, medium, high)	**PROBABILITY (**low, medium, high)	**IMPACT (**low, medium, high)
Areas along Vaal River banks.	medium	medium	Medium
Lower lying areas along the Vaal dam.	High	Low	High
An area where the Klip River enters the Vaal River (the bottle neck area)	Medium	High	Medium
Midvaal Klip River	Medium	Medium	medium
Sicelo	Medium	Low	Low
Henley Weir	Medium	Medium	Medium

Dale side	Medium	Medium	Medium
Langkuil	Medium	Medium	Medium
Mamello	Medium	Medium	Medium

3) MIDVAAL FIRE ACTION PLAN

To successfully deal with any possible flood prevention and mitigation is of importance.

a) Prevention

We cannot prevent any natural rainfall, but we can deal with such risk. This can be done into four ways:

- Transfer the risk
- Terminate the risk
- Treat the risk
- Tolerate the risk

In this case we will treat and tolerate the risk (Possible Flooding's)

b) Mitigation

In the Midvaal area we have prone areas for flooding:

- Kliprivier
- Henley weir
- Langkuilspruit (Meyerton Farms)
- Sicelo (Next to Bell road)
- Dale Side

c) Kliprivier

- After heavy rain falls in Midvaal and surrounding areas the river levels will be monitored by the shift officer on duty every 4 to 6 hours depending on the down fall.
- When the levels keep rising sand bags will be provided by Fire department to try stop water reaching the houses.
- The fire department was proactive and got sandbags in stock
- Should the water levels rise drastically that endangers life and property evacuation will be considered.
- The standby divisional officer to obtain the weather forecast for the next 24-48 hours.

- The JOC will be dispatched and planning will be done with role players on what area will be evacuated and what task each member will do (SAPS,FIRE,TRAFFIC,CPF)
- The relevant MMC as well as the ED become informed where a decision will be taken to inform the Mayor
- Affected areas community will be evacuated to the community hall in the area.

d) Henley weir / Lower areas

- When heavy rain fall is predicted for Midvaal and surrounding areas Midvaal sewer section can be proactive and ensure that the Henley weir is not blocked to ensure that the flow of water
- After heavy rain falls in Midvaal and surrounding areas the river levels will be monitored by the shift officer on duty every 4 to 6 hours depending on the down fall
- When the levels keep rising sand bags will be provided by Fire department to try stop water reaching the houses
- Should the water levels rise drastically that endangers life and property evacuation will be considered.
- The standby divisional officer to obtain the weather forecast for the next 24-48 hours
- The JOC will be dispatched and planning will be done with role players on what area will be evacuated and what task each member will do (SAPS, FIRE, TRAFFIC, CPF)
- Roads to be closed off by Traffic to ensure motorist and pedestrians do not enter
- The relevant MMC as well as the ED become informed where a decision will be taken to inform the Mayor
- Affected areas community will be evacuated to the community hall in the area.

e) **Lankuilspruit (Meyerton Farms)**

- After heavy rain falls in Midvaal and surrounding areas the river levels will be monitored by the shift officer on duty every 4 to 6 hours depending on the down fall.
- When the levels keep rising sand bags will be provided by Fire department to try stop water reaching the houses.
- The fire department was proactive and got sandbags in stock

- Should the water levels rise drastically that endangers life and property evacuation will be considered.
- The standby divisional officer to obtain the weather forecast for the next 24-48 hours.
- The JOC will be dispatched and planning will be done with role players on what area will be evacuated and what task each member will do (SAPS,FIRE,TRAFFIC,CPF)
- Affected areas community will be evacuated to the community hall in the area
- Public awareness to be done as a proactive measure to educate the community

f) Sicelo (Next to Bell Road)

- When heavy rain fall is predicted for Midvaal and surrounding areas Midvaal sewer section can be proactive and ensure that the sewers inlets are free from debris to ensure that the water can flow and minimizing the risk of pushing back ,and effecting the communities along Bell Road
- After heavy rainfall are encountered the community living along Bell road are effected
- After heavy rainfall the shift officer to monitor the water levels every 4-6 hours
- When the levels keep rising sand bags will be provided by Fire department to try stop water reaching the informal settlement houses
- Should the water levels rise drastically that endangers life and property evacuation will be considered.
- The standby divisional officer to obtain the weather forecast for the next 24-48 hours.
- Public awareness to be done as a proactive measure to educate the community

g) **Dale side**

- After heavy rain falls in Midvaal and surrounding areas the river levels will be monitored by the shift officer on duty every 4 to 6 hours depending on the down fall.
- When the levels keep rising sand bags will be provided by Fire department to try stop water reaching the houses.
- The fire department was proactive and got sandbags in stock
- Should the water levels rise drastically that endangers life and property evacuation will be considered.
- The standby divisional officer to obtain the weather forecast for the next 24-48 hours.

- The JOC will be dispatched and planning will be done with role players on what area will be evacuated and what task each member will do (SAPS,FIRE,TRAFFIC,CPF)
- The relevant MMC as well as the ED become informed where a decision will be taken to inform the Mayor
- Affected areas community will be evacuated to the community hall in the area.

Note that should the flooding escalate refer to POINT 6- **EMERGENCY UNFOLDING ACTIONS,** in addition with the points highlighted above.

4) LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Section 47 (1) of the Disaster Management Act, (No 57 of 2002), **Prevention and Mitigation**, states that a Municipal disaster management centre, to the extent that it has capacity, must give guidance to organ of state, private sector, NGOs, communities and individuals in the municipal area to assess and prevent or reduce the risks of disasters, including –

(a) Ways and means of –

(i) Determining levels of risks;
(ii) Assessing the vulnerability of communities and households to disasters that may occur;
(iii) Increasing the capacity of communities and households to minimize the risk and impact of flooding that may occur.
(iv) Monitoring the likelihood of, and the state of alertness to flooding that may occur.

The above requirements indicate that there is a definite need to determine the levels of floods risks, assessing the vulnerable communities and monitoring the likelihood of, and the state of alert for possible floods.

5) ROLE PLAYERS IN THIS PLAN

One of the definitions of Disaster Management is that it is multi sectorial and multi-disciplinary in nature and therefore a plan of this nature must include all role players associated with disaster management. The department has therefore made several contacts with all role players in this regard to sensitize them on this plan and to get their commitment in availing themselves in times of need. The following is list of all identified role players with the type of action expected from each in accordance with their field professionalism and contact person.

DEPARTMENT	CONTACT PERSON	CONTACT NUMBER
Disaster Management	S Thlapolosa	082 901 4310
	P Nieuwenhuizen	
	S Mothapo	082 901 5726
Provincial Disaster Management	Roland Hendriks	079 524 0712
Emergency Medical Services		
GPG	S Pino	071 604 6466
ER 24	A Bronkhorst	084 460 7011
Fire & Rescue Services		
Midvaal Fire Services	E Lensley	083 310 6358
	H Steyn	082 697 0732
MMC Community Services	H Oosthuizen	072 170 8681
SAPS		
Water wing	Supt Pieterse	079 887 9429
	Capt. G Steyn	082 853 0435
Meyerton	Col. B. Swikwambana	082 558 2510
De Deur	Col. S Slabert	082 412 5766
Environmental Health		
Midvaal	J Venter	071 353 0044
Traffic		

Midvaal	A Mpai	**082 838 9351**
Storm Water		
Midvaal	A Mthetho	**083 629 6865**
Housing		
Midvaal	Sylvia Nkrumah	016 360 7562
ESKOM & Electricity		
Midvaal	Sup A Du Toit	083 308 2359
Water Department		
Midvaal	M Tholo	082 707 1256
Engineering		
Midvaal	S Coetzee	082 572 0282

6) EMERGENCY UNFOLDING ACTIONS

In case of an emergency related to floods becomes reported the following activities will unfold if referred to

- An emergency becomes reported and the message is received through the Communication Centre or verbally reported by any member of the community.
- First line emergency services become despatched to the scene e.g. the Fire and Rescue services, EMS, Traffic, SAPS etc.
- The information becomes disseminated to Disaster Management officials by the CCC supervisor.
- The information becomes forwarded to the Provincial Disaster Management Centre.
- The information becomes visualized and analysed and a decision is taken to respond to the scene.

- o A quick survey and summary of the surrounding is done i.e. the severity of the incident, impact caused, affected families, affected environment, infrastructural damages, extend of affected normal living etc.
- o The relevant MMC as well as the ED become informed where a decision will be taken to inform the Mayors.
- o A decision to call-up all relevant role players to the scene is taken e.g. environment, water affairs, electricity, department housing, health, Storm water system, Red Cross etc.
- o Temporary shelter becomes organized where and when needed e.g. nearby schools, churches, halls, nearby crèches etc.
- o Provision of meals is organized where needed e.g. through assistance of Red Cross and other stake holders.
- o Relocation of affected families to the organized temporary shelter.
- o Relief measures are taken e.g. the provision of blankets, clothing etc. where needed.
- o Final assessment of the incident is done by all role players and a summary is done.
- o A final report with recommendations is done and forwarded to Council.

7) PREVENTATIVE MEASURES

Flooding due to natural causes are in most cases unavoidable but loss of life and property can be avoided. In most cases communities are not acquainted with the type of flooding affecting their areas and thus making them inexperienced with the way of combating any serious hardships caused. Regardless of this, external help is necessary in bringing life back to normal quickly. Preventative measures are therefore key to preventing unnecessary loss of life and property.

The following will have to be implemented to avoid chaos that may be caused by floods during this rainfall season:

- **Public awareness and education.**
  - Using Community Development Workers, distribution of educational pamphlets on floods education and hints.
  - Through educational presentations by DM officials during Ward committee meetings of prone areas.

- Educational measures through local media. (newspapers)

- **Early warning measures.**
  - Through local media (radios, new papers etc.)
  - listening to weather bureau and physical observations.
  - The use of sound hailers to warn communities in time.
- **Ward Councillors encouraged to provide early feedback to the centre, and community**

8) CONCLUSION

Like most regions in the province, Midvaal is also susceptible to flooding that may escalate in to disasters. The plan acknowledges the premise that flooding incidents can disrupt the lives of communities, cause loss of lives and result in general social upheaval. This plan then signifies the needs to manage such flooding incidents and their consequences in a coordinated, efficient and effective manner. This plan is to be updated frequently and as the need arise.

_____ _____

MR. H STEYN DATE

_____ _____

MR. E LENSLEY DATE
HEAD PUBLIC SAFETY

TEMPLATE 1: HAZARD REGISTER

HAZARD IDENTIFICATION						HAZARD ANLYSES				
NO	HAZARD	Marking	Description (e.g. River overflowing)	Clisification number	Grid reference on Risk Mapper e.g. H3 or B4 - B6	Likelihood (probability)	Frequency	Predictability	Magnitude	Hazard Index
1	Over loading of over head electric wires		Over loading of electic wires			4	2	3	3	3
2	Electric Sub stations		Sabotation of the stations			3	2	3	2	2
3	Pump Stations		Blignoutsrus, Drumblade, Eye of Africa, Blue Saddle Ranch, Randvaal,Vaal			4	3	3	3	3
4	Load shedding		Pump stations overflowing.			2	2	3	3	2
5	Aircraft carrier (Pontoon)		Sabotation of the pump hamper service delivery			2	2	2	2	2
6	Vaal Marina water works		Blignoutsrus pipe burst 3days no H2O			3	3	2	2	2
7	Labour unrest / Sabotation		Hamperring of service delivery / Poisoning of drinking water			2	2	2	3	2
8	Pump Stations (sewer)		Over flowing into the river			5	5	1	3	3
9	Theft		Electris cables and manhole covers.			3	2	4	3	3
10	Gas		Methane gas in manholes			5	3	3	1	3
11	Floods		lifting of manhole covers / river debry.			5	3	2	3	3
12	Bridges	RD	During floods			2	2	3	3	2
13	People unrests	RD	Digging up of roads			2	2	2	2	2
14	Mamelo Flooding		During heavy and long rainfall			2	2	2	3	2

15	Vaal Dam Sluisgates		Braking of the dam			2	2	2	4	3
16	Boitomelo		cut of from sosiaty during floods			2	2	2	2	2
17	Rand Water Panfontein		(NKP) Sabutage			2	2	2	4	3
18	Sebokeng fuels /Vaal gas		Fuel /gas fires, vapour cloud explosions			2	2	2	3	3
19	Roshnee Fire work factory		Explosion, fire			2	2	2	3	3
20	Old and new Sicelo		Riates, fires			2	2	2	2	2
21	Michilane tyres		fires			2	2	2	2	2
22	Klip river Business park		Fires, explosions.			2	2	2	2	2
23	Rust-Olium		Explosion, fire			2	2	2	2	2
24	Scilogic Pharmacuteculs		Fires explosions			2	2	2	3	3

TEMPLATE 2: CRITICAL FACILITY REGISTER

No	Name (e.g. Mandela Primary School)	Marking	Type (e.g. School)	Additional Information (e.g. # of learners, teachers, building type, etc.)	Grid refernce
1	MLM (HQ)		Ruling department Offices	5 departments +- 800 people Brick building -interior drywalling	
2	Fire/Traffic department		Public Safety & Law inforcement	Brick and zink building, 74 Fire Fighters, 16 Traffic .	
3	SAPS		Law inforcement	Brick and zink building,	
4	Schools		Primary/ Secondary/ ECD	Brick and zink buildings	
5	Churches		All types	Brick and zink buildings	
6	Community Halls		Halls	Brick and zink buildings	

TEMPLATE 3: SOCIETAL ANALYSIS REGISTER

No	Name (e.g. Diepkloof)	Marking	Discription (e.g. Informal Settlement)	Demographics[2] (e.g. unemployment, gender & age distribution, etc.)	Grid refernce
1	All informal Settlements	A	Informal Settlement	Mostly unemployed women in mid age	W3,5,6,7,8,10,12,13
2	All industrial		manufacturing/fuel/ gas/gries	Mostly week days	W3,5,8,10,12,13,14
3	Agricultural		Farmers AGRI 1&2		W1,2,3,4,5,6,7,11,12,13
4	All formal resedential areas		Midvaal	All race and age	All Wards

TEMPLATE4: ECONOMICAL ANALYSIS REGISTER[3]

No	Name (e.g. Henri & Sons)	Marking	Description (e.g. tyre factory)	Type (e.g. Manufacturing)	Grid reference
1	Green Greens Farms(several others)	AGRI 1	AGRI	Vegetables	W1,2,3,4,5,6,7,11,12,13,14
2	P.J Botha Farming(several others)	Agri 2	AGRI	Kattle / Milk farmer	W1,2,3,4,5,6,7,11,12,13,14
3	Industrial Parks		Combination of different factories		W1,3,5,7,8,10,12
4	Mini factories		Combination of different factories		W1,4,5,7,8,10,12
5	Heavy Engeneering		Flexilube oil refinary	Oil refinary	W1,3,5,8,10,12,14
6	Bh bulliton		Industry	Mining	W3
7	Meyerton Railway Station		Raiway Station	Railway	W8
8	Heiniken (Sebokeng Breweries)		Brewery	Alcohol	W12
9	Scilogic Pharmacuteculs		Medical LAB	Manufacturing	W12

TEMPLATE 5: ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS REGISTER

No	Name (e.g. Tswane dumping site)	Marking	Description (e.g. waste disposal)	Type (e.g. type of waste, possible environmental impact)	Grid reference
1	bhpbulliton		Manganise mining	Dust polution	W3
2	ATLAS		Organic ferteliser	Organic Dust Polution	W10
3	Sybrand van Niekerk park		Flexi Lube Refanary	Refanary Air polution	W10
4	Vaal Lubra		Bath tub	Manufacturing Air polution	W8
5	Ruber factory		Ruber factory	regaining of rubber Air polution	W5
6	Tekfalt		Bitchman Plant	Air Polution	W5
7	DeDeur dumping site		Waste disposal	All tipe of waste Air polution	W11
8	H.O.K Dumping site		Waste disposal	All tipe of waste Air polution	W4
9	Duncanville Ind. Park		Sebokeng Fuels	Bulk Diesel / Gas supplier	W2
10	Klip river Business Park		Combination of factories	All tipe of waste Air polution	W12
11	Scilogic Pharmacuticuls		Chemical disposal	Air Polution	W12

TEMPLATE 6: ECONOMICAL ANALYSIS REGISTER

No	Name (e.g. conflict, instability, strong leadership)	Marking	Description (why the area has a political influence on vulnerability/capacity)		Grid reference
1	Sicelo	Ward 8	Different political parties	No schools	ward 8 / 10
2	Sicelo	Ward 10	Boardness of schollers during scho	Poor leaders	ward 8 /10
3	Mamelo	Ward 1	Unemployed	Poor training opportunities /Farmer community	ward 1
4	Boitomelo	Ward 1		Un experience people / farmer community	ward 1
5	Kayalisha	Ward 12		very little resources because it is on private land	ward 12
6	Pheels farm	Ward 12		Farmer community on private land	ward 12
7					
8					
9					
10					
11					
12					
13					
14					
15					

TEMPLATE 7: HIGH RISK AREAS SHEET

No	IDENTIFIED HIGH RISK AREAS: Overlapping of hazards, critical facilities, vulnerable communities, environmental sensitive areas etc	Grid reference on Risk Mapper e.g. H3 or B4 -B6
1	Mamelo, Vaal Dam sluisgates, Boitomelo, Rand water Panfontein, Pump station Vaal Marina (Dam)	Ward 1
2	Duncanville Ext 3 Sebokeng fuels	Ward 2
3	Bhp Billiton	Ward 3
4	H.O.K Dumping site, Tongaat Hewlets	Ward 4
5	Fire works Factory, Rubber factory, Bichiman plant, Pheelis Farm, Hienicken	Ward 5
6	Lakeside Estates	Ward 6
7	Tedderfield	Ward 7
8	Sicelo old and new, Vaal Libra	Ward 8
9	Taxi Rank	Ward 9
10	Sicelo, Atlas, Flexi lube	Ward 10
11	Dumping site De Deur	ward 11
12	Rand water Klip river, Scilogic Pharmacuticuls, Mitchilane tyres,Klip river Businessprk	Ward 12

TEMPLATE 8: RISK SUMMARY SHEET

HIGH RISK AREA NO:			DISCRIPTION:																	
No	Risk description (e.g. flooding of informal settlement)	Hazard Index	Vulnerability Index Table 2						Capacity Index Table 3						Resilience Index	Risk Score	Impor tance	Urgency	Growth Potencial	Priority
			Political	Economical	Social	Tech	Environ	Total	Institutional	Programme	Physical	People	Support	Total	Vulnerability ÷ Capacity	Hazrd x Resilience	Table 4	Table 4	Table 4	Importance + Urgency + Groth
1	Mamelo Flooding	2,25	1	2	3	2	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	1,4	1,4	3,2	2	2	2	6
2	Vaal Dam Sluisgates	3,25	1	4	4	3	5	3,4	4	4	3	3	3	3,4	1	3,3	3	1	3	7
3	Boitomelo	2,5	1	2	2	2	2	1,8	1	1	2	2	1	1,4	1,2	3,2	2	2	2	6
4	Rand Water Panfontein	2,75	1	3	3	3	3	2,6	4	3	3	3	3	3,2	,8	2,2	3	1	3	7
5	Pump Station V Marina	2,75	1	3	3	3	3	2,6	3	3	3	3	2	2,8	,9	2,5	3	2	3	8
6	Sebokeng Fuels	2,75	1	3	3	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	1	2,5	3	1	3	7
7	Bhp Billiton	2,5	1	3	3	3	3	2,6	4	3	3	3	3	3,2	,8	2	3	1	2	6
8	H.O.K Dumping site	3	1	3	3	2	3	2,4	3	2	2	2	3	2,4	1	3	3	2	3	8
9	Tongaat Hewlets	2,5	1	3	3	3	3	2,6	3	3	3	3	3	3	,8	3,6	3	2	3	8
10	Firework Factory	3	1	3	3	4	4	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	1,5	4,5	3	2	3	8
11	Rubber Factory	2,75	1	3	3	3	4	2,8	2	2	2	2	2	2	1,4	4	3	2	3	8
12	Bichiman Plant	2,75	1	3	3	3	4	2,8	3	3	3	3	3	3	,9	2,5	3	1	2	6
13	Pheelis Farm	2,5	1	2	3	2	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	1,4	1,4	3,5	3	2	3	8
14	Heiniken	3	1	3	3	3	3	2,6	4	3	3	3	3	3,2	,8		3	1	3	7
15	Lakeside	2,5	1	2	3	2	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	1,4	1,4	3,2	3	2	3	8
16	Tedderfield	2,5	1	2	3	2	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	1,8	1,1	3,2	3	1	3	7
17	Old & New Sicelo	2,5	1	2	3	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	1	1,6	1,3	1,17	3	2	3	8
18	Vaal Libra	3	1	3	3	3	4	2,8	3	2	3	3	2	2,6	1	3	3	2	3	8
19	Taxi Rank	2,5	1	2	3	2	2	2	1	2	2	1	1	1,4	1,4	3,2	2	1	2	5
20	Sicelo	2,5	1	2	3	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	1	1,6	1,2	3,2	3	2	3	8
21	Atlas	2,75	1	3	3	2	3	2,4	3	2	3	2	2	2,4	1	2,75	3	2	3	8
22	Flexi Lube	2,75	1	3	3	3	3	2,6	3	2	3	2	3	2,6	1	2	3	2	3	8
23	De Deur Dumping site	3	1	3	3	2	3	2,4	3	2	2	2	2	2,2	1	2,23	3	2	3	8
24	Rand Water Klip rivier	2,75	1	3	3	3	3	2,6	4	3	3	3	3	3,2	,8	3,24	3	2	3	8
25	Railay station	3.25	1	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	0.8	2.6	3	2	3	8

Midvaal Local Municipality
Contact Details
PO Box 9, Meyerton, 1960
Tel: 016-360-7400
Fax: 016-360-7519
www.midvaal.gov.za

INTERNAL MEMORANDA

Template 10:"Risk Reduction Projects"

Grid Reference:				
Risk description:				
RISK	Tolerate or accept	Treat, reduce , mitigate & control	Transfer or Response & recovery	Terminate
1Shack fires in informal settlements	5 shack fires per month will be tolerated	Provision for early warning devises & fire awareness training	Provision for land for relocation	
2 Crossing of R59	1 Death per week will be tolerated	Provision for pedestrian bridge / palisade fencing	Enforcement of By - laws and road traffic act.	
3 Flooding during raining season	Flooding of houses with in the flood line of the river will be tolerated	Cleaning of river and draining system	Joint operation by different departments.	
4 Run away grass fires during winter season	5 thousand hectares per season will be tolerated	Effective monitoring and management of FPA	Enforcement of National veld and forest fire act	
5 Compliance with Fire Safety regulations	Minimum compliance are expected and will be tolerated	Regular inspections for compliance by Fire Safety section	Enforcement of by-laws and regulations for compliance	

ANNEXURE D: IT DISASTER RECOVERY PLAN

[CS]: REVIEW OF IT FRAMEWORK

COMPETENCY: MAYORAL COMMITTEE

PURPOSE:

To submit the reviewed IT Framework for approval.

RECOMMENDATIONS:

1. That the reviewed IT Framework which deals with the following matters BE APPROVED:

    (i) Back-up Policy (Schedule 1).
    (ii) Disaster Recovery Strategy (Schedule 2).
    (iii) Terms of Reference for I T Steering Committee (Schedule 3).
    (iv) Standard Operation Procedure: Access to Systems and Controls (Schedule 4).
    (v) IT Usage Policy (Schedule 5).
    (vi) Review of IT Functions (Schedule 6).
    (ix) Review IT policies (Schedule 7)
        IT security policy;
        IT Anti-virus policy

2. That the IT Framework be reviewed annually by the Section 80 Corporate and Finance Services Portfolio Committee, with a report to the Mayoral Committee if significant changes are required or envisaged.

REPORT

Attached hereto is the reviewed IT Framework which has been updated and addressed in terms of the Auditor – General requirements and suggestions. It will be submitted to the Auditor – General's office to establish whether any possible shortcomings still exist. It will also be reviewed annually.

SCHEDULE 1

MIDVAAL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY BACKUP POLICY

SOLAR, PayDay, Quidity Backup

1.1 Frequency and Timing of Backups

1.1.1 A full backup is taken every day.

1.1.2 Backups are scheduled to run every day commencing at 18h00.

1.1.3 Month-end backup is taken monthly after the financial month-end procedures.

1.1.4 Year-end backup is taken annually after the financial year-end procedures.

1.2 Backup Procedure

1.2.1 Changing tapes according to schedule: inserting tape at close of day and removal of tape from the backup unit after migration from disk to tape is done.

1.2.2 Storing the backup tapes in fireproof safe.

1.2.3 Checking that the backup has been successful.

1.2.4 Managing a backup failure.

1.2.5 Maintaining the backup log.

1.3 Verification of Backup Status

1.3.1 The designated member of staff must check the backup status on the system daily and report any failures to the Administrator.

1.3.2 Proof of successful backup must be saved.

1.4 Backup Log

A daily backup log is issued to keep record of backups, their status, which tapes are used and housekeeping of the backup system.

1.5 House-keeping of the Backup System

Cleaning tapes are used in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. LT tape drives should be cleaned if the cleaning light is illuminated. This procedure will be done as and when needed.

1.6 Managing Backup Failure

In the event of an unsuccessful backup, the staff responsible for checking the backup must immediately:

1.6.1 Note any error messages and/or Information on the backup printout/screenshot

1.6.2 Report the failure to the Administrator and the department affected

1.6.3 Follow procedures on backup failure and re-run backup

1.6.4 If failure still occurs contact the NETCB helpdesk

1.6.5 Record the failure in the backup log and any actions taken as a result.

1.7 Storage of Backup Tapes

1.7.1 The backup tapes, when removed from the tape library, are stored securely in a fire-proof safe.

1.7.2 Once a week the tapes are taken off-site and stored securely in a fire-proof safe at the Meyerton Fire Station.

1.7.3 The off-site register and on site register must be updated and signed accordingly.

1.7.4 At the same time, the tapes deposited three weeks previously at the off-site storage will be collected and returned to the on-site safe for re-use.

- Five days of complete backup tapes stored on the on-site premises for reuse.
- Fifteen days of complete backup tapes (past three weeks) stored off-site at the appointed secure location.

1.8 Validation of Backup Tapes

A backup tape is validated by a restore to the Test Environment monthly or as requested by the user department. Refer to the procedure for the restore of a backup to production or test database.

1.9 Management of Tapes

1.9.1 Tapes are clearly labelled and used in strict rotation to ensure even wear and immediate identification of any problems with a specific tape.

1.9.2 All data is backed up to disk on a daily basis overnight Monday to Friday and migrated from disk to tape during the day. A cycle of four complete weeks tapes are used in rotation.

1.9.3 Financial month-end backup tapes are used in a twelve month cycle. This means that a total of 12 tapes are required for this annual backup cycle.

1.9.4 Financial year-end backup tapes are kept for a period of seven years.

1.9.5 Tapes must be replaced at the first sign of deterioration. Tapes are labelled to show age and have to be replaced according to the manufacturer's recommendations

2. **Novell File Server Backup**

2.1 Backups (incremental and full) of all volumes on the Novell File Server are done through BackupPC a high-performance, enterprise-grade system for backing up Linux and stored on disk.

2.2 A Backup script runs daily and backups are done to the backup server on-site.

2.3 Incremental backups are done daily from Monday to Thursday and a full backup is taken over the weekend. On average there is four full weeks of backups on the backup server and the oldest backup will be overwritten when the disk space is depleted.

2.4 The designated member of staff (IT helpdesk operator as in 7 below) must check the backup status on the system first thing each morning and report any failures to the Administrator as per daily check list.

2.5 If failure to run a successful backup cannot be solved by the Administrator, contact VPN Technologies to report the failure for rectification.

3 **BAUD Backup**

The back-ups for the Baud system are done by the service provider (PricewaterhouseCoopers Inc). The service provider has to confirm that no data and backups will be withheld from MLM with expiring of contract. Proof attached as “Annexure 1B”

4 **CITY Solve Backup**.

The Citysolve system is hosted by I@Consulting and all data and source code are backed up on a daily basis. For detail on the SLA refer to Citysolve

Support and Maintenance Agreement filed with the Development and Planning Cluster. Proof attached as “Annexure 1C”

5 **Duties and responsibilities of staff responsible for backups**.

All the stipulated functions above in points 1 and 2 are the responsibility of the staff members tasked to do the backups:

Systems Administrator: R.Tshabangu

Technician: M Mpaka, P.J. Otto

SCHEDULE 2

DISASTER RECOVERY STRATEGY

It is recorded that a Disaster recovery server (Plate Spin Forge) for Solar (mScoa), PayDay, Quidity, Terminal services, Novell and shared drives has been commissioned by the MLM and is located at the appropriate off-site venue(Fire Station CCTV room) and the connectivity to that venue is by means of fibre optic link. This server (Plate Spin Forge) is updated daily by replicating the core systems mentioned above to this server commencing at 20h00.

Depending on the severity of the disaster the systems can be ring fenced on the DR server and the users can then access the DR server to continue the processing on the DR server. It must be mentioned that the recovery point will always be the data as replicated on the previous day's replication.

To ensure that this Disaster Recovery plan and procedure will be beneficial it is absolutely imperative to ensure that backups are taken and reports are checked on a daily basis. The replication of the mentioned core systems should be checked daily and the ring fencing and testing of the said systems as replicated should be tested and signed off quarterly.

The Disaster Recovery procedure will be deemed to come into effect when;

- A system hardware failure such as a disk crash or other hardware failures occurs and is not repairable within a 24 hour period.
- A natural disaster should occur at the Council's main computer centre at the Head Office in Mitchell street.

Should a disaster occur the following procedures should be followed:

1) In the case that the data can be recovered from a backup:
   - Recover the last successful backup from the off-site storage.
   - Check the backup cycle and tape description as defined in the backup cycle to ensure that the correct tape is recovered and restore the data to the relevant database.
   - Revert back to normal processing.

2) In the case that servers /server room were damaged or destroyed revert to the procedure to ring fence the environment and continue processing by accessing the DR server(Plate Spin Forge).
   - Inform all users that the production server is not functional and the pre-configured DR connection is to be used until such time that the production server can be fixed.

Contact Persons in case of a Disaster:

MIDVAAL L.M. **Contact numbers:**

A.S.A. de Klerk	082 771 8961	Municipal Manager
T.W. Peeters	082 859 0486	Deputy Municipal Manager
P.A. Ernst	084 500 0155	IT Operations Manager
Rebecca Tshabangu	072 157 7621	Systems Administrator
Desmond Mosiya	083 426 8050	Technical Administrator

Fire:

Hannes Steyn	082 697 0732	Chief Fire Officer
Anthony Bruno	076 306 0345	Deputy Chief Fire Officer
Fire Control Room	016 360 7500	

Vendors:

Securelink	083 274 8948 Francois de Kock	(LAN and WAN)
VPN Technologies	083 305 3854 Jaco Lange	Firewalls, ISP and routing devices
Business Connexion	082 901 2244 Kobus Ras 076 838 1882 Jenny Bierman	Virtual Servers and Solar financial system
NETCB	082 441 7782 Justin Foxcroft 083 395 5196 Cobus Burgers	Novell
Payday	072 605 7799 Aldo Taylor	Salary/Human resources/leave systems, Time & Attendance and ESS
Quidity	078 882 5707 / 083 415 4875 Pam Buttle	Electronic Management

ANNEXURE E: MEC COMMENTS 17/18 IDP

GAUTENG PROVINCE
COOPERATIVE GOVERNANCE AND
TRADITIONAL AFFAIRS
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Enquiries: Thandiwe Kubeka
Telephone: 011 355 5047 / 0716792823
Reference: TK03/02/10

By email: mayor@midvaal.gov.za

Cllr Bongani Baloyi
The Executive Mayor
Midvaal Local Municipality
Cnr Mitchel and Junious Street
MEYERTON
1960

Dear Cllr Baloyi

RE: COMMENTS ON THE 17/18 MIDVAAL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY (LLM) REVIEWED INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP)

The above subject matter has reference.

The Gauteng Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (COGTA) wishes to congratulate the Midvaal Local Municipality for the timeous preparation, review and adoption of the final Integrated Development Plan (IDP) for the 17/18 financial year and its subsequent submission for commenting in line with Section 32 of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000. The Department further wishes to express appreciation to the Municipality for its continuous cooperation and active participation in efforts aimed at strengthening joint planning and budgeting among the three spheres of government in the pursuit of a globally competitive Gauteng City-Region

In terms of Section 32 (2) of the MSA, I have concluded that there are no issues requiring amendment in the IDP. However, as part of an ongoing effort to ensure inter-governmental alignment as well as the effective delivery of the developmental mandate of local government, several issues are hereby brought to your attention for consideration in future planning and budgeting.

SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT PLANNING

- Midvaal LM strongly support regional and provincial linkages as well as linkages between nodes. The linkages to neighbouring municipalities and the network in general is clearly indicated and seen as a structuring element. Corridor development is strongly implemented as a way to leverage on the existing linkages. The municipality is commended for this.
- An Air Quality Management Plan is critical to mitigate the air pollution effects from the municipality's biggest industry which contributes to the local economy, manufacturing which is also a key development area in the future. The municipality is encouraged to develop and implement an Air Quality Management Plan which will further fulfil the objectives of Pillar 2, Decisive Spatial Transformation and Pillar 3, which is Accelerating Social Transformation by raising the living standards of people.

- An Integrated Waste Management Plan is also necessary to manage waste in the municipality from illegal dumping, inadequate sewage disposal and industrial pollution amongst others.

FINANCIAL VIABILITY

- The municipality is commended for filling all critical posts. Additionally, the municipality's Budget and Treasury office is almost at full capacity with minimal vacancies, as a result the municipality has the relevant capacity to promote good financial management and ensure the efficient application of financial resources in the rendering of services to the community.
- The municipality's cash position is reasonable at cash coverage of 2.9 months in 2017/18, 2.7 and 2.6 months, respectively, over the MTREF period although it is less than the 3 months as recommended by National Treasury.
- The municipality indicated in the budget document that apart from inflation, the municipality considered cost reflectiveness of the tariffs when determining the 2017/18 tariffs. The municipality revenue and expenditure from main services namely electricity, refuse, sanitation, and water over the 2017/18 MTREF indicates that the municipality will consistently generate surpluses from these services. This is an indication that the municipality tariffs are cost reflective.
- Repairs and maintenance allocation is not adequate and it is currently at 2.6 percent. This will result in challenges in meeting service delivery requirements going forward. Repairs plus maintenance has always been below the National Treasury norm of 8 percent and the trend is further expected to continue over the MTREF period. The municipality is encouraged to increase the budget on repairs and maintenance of infrastructure.

CONCLUSION

The Integrated Development Plan continues to form a crucial aspect of our evolving system of inter-governmental development planning. The municipality is encouraged to pay close attention to the issues raised in the letter. It is anticipated that these issues will be addressed in the next review cycle of the IDP. As a Department, we re-affirm our commitment to partner with your municipality in an on-going effort to strengthen vertical alignment among the various spheres towards making the IDP a plan of all government.

Should you wish to make further enquiries regarding this matter, please do not hesitate to contact Ms Thandiwe Kubeka, Director Integrated Development Planning Co-ordination office at telephone number 011 355 5047 / 071 679 2823 or at the e-mail address Thandiwe.kubeka@gauteng.gov.za.

Yours faithfully

MR SP MASHATILE, MPL
MEC: CO-OPERATIVE GOVERNANCE, TRADITIONAL AFFAIRS AND HUMAN SETTLEMENTS
DATE: 07/12/2017

Cc : Municipal Manager: Midvaal Local Municipality
: Office of the Premier
: All GPG Departments

ANNEXURE F: RESPONSE TO MEC COMMENTS 17/18 IDP

Midvaal Local Municipality
PO Box 9, Meyerton, 1960
Tel: 016 360 7400
Fax: 016 360 7519
www.midvaal.gov.za

Tel: 016 360 7431 • Fax: 016 360 7538 • E-mail: promiset@midvaal.gov.za

MEC: Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs

Department of Local Government and Housing

77 Commissioner Street

Johannesburg

2001

31 May 2018

Dear MEC Moiloa

RE: RESPONSE ON THE COMMENTS OF THE 17/18 FINAL MUNICIPAL INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN

The Midvaal Local Municipality acknowledges the comments from the office of the MEC on the 2017/2018 Integrated Development Plan (IDP).

The Municipality appreciates the feedback on the IDP and also welcomes the areas of improvement and notes same, the issues that needs action are therefore responded to in this way:

MEC COMMENTS:	MIDVAAL RESPONSE
SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT PLANNING	
Midvaal LM strongly supports regional and provincial linkages as well as linkages between nodes. The linkages to neighboring municipalities and the network in general is clearly indicated and seen as a structuring element. Corridor development is strongly implemented as a way to leverage on the existing linkages. The municipality is commended for this	Noted
An Air Quality Management Plan is critical to mitigate the air pollution effects from the municipality's biggest industry which contributes to the local economy, manufacturing which is also a key development area in the future. The municipality is encouraged to develop and implement an Air Quality Management Plan which will further fulfil the objectives of Pillar 2, Decisive Spatial Transformation and Pillar	Noted

3, which is Accelerating Social Transformation by raising the living standards of people	
An Integrated Waste Management Plan is also necessary to manage waste in the municipality from illegal dumping, inadequate sewage disposal and industrial pollution amongst others	Noted
FINANCIAL VIABILITY	
The municipality is commended for filling all critical posts. Additionally, the municipality's Budget and Treasury office is almost at full capacity with minimal vacancies, as a result the municipality has the relevant capacity to promote good financial management and ensure the efficient application of financial resources in the rendering of services to the community	Noted and agreed to
The municipality's cash position is reasonable at cash coverage of 2.9 months in 2017/18, 2.7 and 2.6 months, respectively, over the MTREF period although it is less than the 3 months as recommended by National Treasury	Noted and agreed to
The municipality indicated in the budget document that apart from inflation, the municipality considered cost reflectiveness of the tariffs when determining the 2017/18 tariffs. The municipality revenue and expenditure from main services namely electricity, refuse, sanitation, and water over the 2017/18 MTREF indicates that the municipality will consistently generate surpluses from these services. This is an indication that the municipality tariffs are cost reflective.	Noted and agreed to
Repairs and maintenance allocation is not adequate and it is currently at 2.6 percent. This will result in challenges in meeting service delivery requirements going forward. Repairs plus maintenance has always been below the National Treasury norm of 8 percent and the trend is further expected to continue over the MTREF period. The municipality is encouraged to increase the budget on repairs and maintenance of infrastructure	The budget for the 2018/2019- 2020/2021 has been tabled to Council on the 22 March 2018. This draft budget increased allocations towards repairs and maintenance (as an mSCOA project). The municipality will continue to increase allocations to repairs and maintenance to ensure the assets are maintained at the optimum level.

The Midvaal Local Municipality's IDP formulation continues to align and be at the standard that it should be. With the review of the Midvaal IDP 2018/2019, Midvaal Local Municipality has introduced an approach that is aimed at making the IDP to address personal issues of the community through introducing and IDP Theme for 2018/2019 this theme will ensure that

the IDP is not only a high level super plan that does not address pressing issues on the ground but instead ensure that there are efforts on the ground that are custom made to respond to the communities we serve, all of this is done with an intentional effort to excel in service delivery.

Kind Regards

Cllr B Baloyi

Executive Mayor: Midvaal Local Municipality



PROUDLY MIDVAAL

www.midvaal.gov.za